

ZPA 2(6)
LEIBBRANDT

AFRICANA.

MERENSKY-BIBLIOTEEK	
UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA.	
Klasnummer.....	Z PA 2 (6)
Registrernummer.....	66108

LEIBRANDT

NTERS.

PRECIS
OF THE
ARCHIVES
OF THE
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE
JANUARY, 1659—MAY, 1662.

RIEBEECK'S JOURNAL, &c.

BY
H. C. V. LEIBBRANDT,
KEEPER OF THE ARCHIVES.

PART III.

CAPE TOWN:
W. A. RICHARDS & SONS, GOVERNMENT PRINTERS.



ABRAHAM VAN RIEBEECK,

GOVERNOR GENERAL OF NETHERLANDS, INDIA,

BORN AT THE CAPE, ON THE 18TH OCTOBER, 1653.

DIED 17TH DECEMBER, 1713.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2015



ELIZABETH VAN OOSTEN,

WIFE OF ABRAHAM VAN RIEBEECK,

BORN 10TH AUGUST, 1660.

DIED 18TH MAY, 1714.

PRECIS OF JOURNAL

OF THE

FORT OF GOOD HOPE.

1659—1662.

January 1st.—Fine weather, cloudy sky. The before-mentioned Cochoquas of the troop of Oedasoas were this morning with Eva, in church. They seemed to be pleased when they were told what was taught there, and especially with the treatment received.

About 2 morgen of ground opposite the orchard behind Table Mountain, on which the first corn had been sown to make a trial, and since used without payment by Steven Jansen, put up to public competition for 3 years, and leased for f90 per annum, together with some adjoining uncultivated land bounded by the bend of the Liesbeeck opposite Herman Remajenne's place—, the lessee during that time to clear it.

January 2nd.—South-east.

January 3rd.—South-east. Oedasoas's men, well treated, depart. Eva remains here to be taught reading and praying. The Commander visits the freemen and their fields, which he often does to prevent negligence; setting them an example by means of the Company's farmers and men. Arrival of the English ship *Barbadoes Merchant*, with saltpetre and cotton-cloth, from Masulipatnam, where the Company's affairs were prospering. Five ships had arrived there, among them the *Erasmus* and *Vogelsang* from Persia, with many Portuguese on board, who had a fortnight before the Englishman's departure left for Batavia. There was still lying there the *Naarden*, which had brought 500 Portuguese, 200 of whom were priests. The young people were sent to Batavia and the older ones landed at Masulipatnam; they had all come from Neganapatnam, which our people had conquered. Goa also was so closely invested by our troops that it would most likely very soon fall into the hands of the Company. Time will tell whether this is so.

January 4th.—The *Schapenjachtje* sent to Robben Island with fuel and spars for sheep sheds. Strong S.E.

January 5th (Sunday).—Fine weather.

January 6th.—Ryk Oberhagen, superintendent at Robben Island, reports that there are 78 sheep there and 50 rabbits. "The geese promise well, eating the grass here. I cannot with kind words get Herry to carry wood to the hill. The rock rabbits are also increasing; I have seen 12 or 13. The carpenters are working lustily. Please send me some sealing-wax."

1659.

The *Penguin* returns from Dassen Island with oil; the other boat is at Saldanha Bay catching harders and other fish, and collecting salt found in certain pans in the neighbourhood.

January 7th.—Fine weather.

January 8th.—Ditto, and full moon.

January 9th.—The boat leaves for Robben Island with 5 Dutch ducks, which are in danger of wild animals at the fort, some pitch and spars. “As Kees and Heyn were very ill, Frederik is to return, and his place to be taken by Anthony, who is to finish the stable with walnut-wood. We send you wafers, as we have no sealing-wax.” Heavy S.E.

January 10th.—S.-East wind.

January 11th.—N.W.; warm weather.

January 12th.—Dark and rainy. 13th, the same. 14th, ditto.

January 15th.—S.-East.

January 16th.—S.-East. The English ship leaves, taking a letter to the Chamber of 17, under cover of Sieur Lucas Luce, the Company's correspondent in London.

January 17th.—Hot and calm. Riebeeck visits the farmers, who were very busy ploughing, threshing, &c., and already daily sending in some corn.

January 18th.—Warm weather, S.E. Some spars sent to the Island, with some purslain seed to be sown everywhere.

January 19th.—Changeable weather.

January 20th.—N.W. wind; 8 more rabbits born on the island. More wood wanted there; the shed on the west side to be made of wattle and daub. The ducks are commencing to lay. The seed sent all sown. A slave wanted to carry wood to the hill, &c.

The sheep, being driven from one place to another, fell down a deep and narrow gorge; 61 were killed, mostly ewes with young; the meat salted down for consumption. It seems to have been an accident for which no one is to be blamed. These 61 dead sheep and their unborn lambs were more valuable than 500 sheep bartered from the Hottentots, as they were all picked young ewes of Herry. Those bartered generally have something the matter with them, and must be killed at once, otherwise they die off, so that not 10 per cent. are saved. This is the reason why the increase is so slow.

January 21st.—Fine N.W. weather.

January 22nd.—Ditto.

January 23rd.—Riebeeck sees that the free fishermen and salt collectors are not over diligent. He had often urged them to do their best, but as some are suffering from mere laziness, which urged them to leave the Company's service, it was necessary to make a sifting and to put others who were more deserving in their places. Because of this close superintendence the agriculturists show more diligence and push on more rapidly.

Consequently Pieter Cornelis of Langesont, free hunter, and Carel Broers, servant of Leendert Cornelissen, sawyer, two very diligent and industrious men, and old servants of the Company here, have

been given the fisheries and everything connected with them instead of Pieter Jacobsen of Bodegraver, formerly companion of the stowaway Martin Vlockert, who neglected all his nets and other utensils and disobeyed the Company in everything, going on board English vessels against the will of the Commander, and taking off men to those ships. He likewise used to hide men desirous of running away, keeping them near the river, until an opportunity was found during the night to sail out of it and proceed on board. He and his mate, being great sluggards, have therefore again been taken into the Company's service, in order to accustom them to more diligence and make them serve out their debt, &c.

As the Saldanha fishermen have only 3 in the salt pans, 2 other fishermen are allowed to collect there also, that enough may be gathered in mounds, as otherwise we will annually fall short of the quantity required. Moreover, after February no more can be found. The best use is therefore to be made of the short time still at our disposal.

A slave of H. Boom deserts. Some days ago one of Vrelandt's company ran away and 2 of Leendert Cornelisz the sawyer; this puts the masters back in their work.

January 24th.—The boat despatched to the island with fuel for the beacon light, and a female slave whose husband was already there. Both were to be used in carrying the fuel to the hill, and fires were to be lighted as soon as vessels were observed. A good look-out was also to be kept. With this assistance the sheep could be cleaned of thorns and scab. The thorns were likewise to be carefully uprooted, as they did much injury to the feet of the sheep, and the overseer had to report regularly the number of sheep, rabbits and rock-rabbits on the island. A master carpenter was also sent to make the shed for the sheep.

January 25th.—Warm N.W. weather. The boat again despatched with timber and fuel to the island.

January 26th (Sunday).—Dark misty weather, wind west; some rain at nightfall.

January 27th.—Same weather. The *Penguin* brings some eggs from Dassen Island. The pigs seem to thrive well on that island, living on the green purslain and eggs, with which they are fed. Some sods sent thither for planting.

January 28th.—Cloudy N.W. weather. Riebeeck was informed by the free farmers that the Goringhaiquas, or Caapmen, and the Gourachouquas, or tobacco thieves, had been at it again, and stolen from Brinkman's company a cow and calf, and from the Company 2 oxen; that consequently all the Hottentots who had taken service in the different households had run away, and could nowhere be found, excepting Doman, about whom for certain reasons nothing is to be said as yet.

January 29th.—The same weather. Riebeeck visits some new salt pans situated opposite the Leopard Mountains, about 4 good

1659. — Dutch miles from the fort, and in the mouth of the river called by our explorers, because of the quantity of Dutch reeds which it contains, Holland's Reedpool (Holland's Rietbeek), now dry at the mouth, but having in the rainy season a large outflow into the great salt pans above the wreck of the *Haarlem* at the tail of the Leopard Mountains, and further running over the pans above into the Salt River, which discharges itself into the sea at the fort Duinhoop. The Salt River would be navigable with flat-bottomed boats in the rainy season, as far as the large salt pans, from which the boats could again enter the Holland's Reedpool, whence they might go higher and take the salt out of these new pans, the best and cleanest hitherto found, as it is formed in a running river, dry in summer and full in winter. Further inquiry will be made. At present it has only been noted down on the chart where the mouth at the great salt pan has been found to have its discharge.

January 30th.—Stormy wind since yesterday. The *Penguin* returns to Dassen Island, with some pigs which seem to thrive better there than here. They will also not be able to do any mischief there in gardens or land, the reason why people here won't have them.

January 31st.—The same heavy S.S.E. wind. Riebeeck went out to see where the Hottentoots were at present, and to find another road for the wagons which now crosses the freemen's lands. The farmers busy ploughing and threshing, &c.

February 1st.—Fine sunshine. The boat sent to the Island with fuel and planks.

Seven men offered themselves as volunteers to undertake a land voyage to Monomotapa, and in the first place to a certain nation called by the Hottentoots Namana or Namaqua, living in stone houses.

Resolution :—1st February. "Having heard through Eva that the great chief of the Hottentoots was the Chibonas or Coboquas, rich in gold, pearls, &c., and that on him followed the Namanas or Namaquas, living in stone houses, and 20 or 30 day's distant from this, who wear white prepared skins instead of the coarse ones worn by those here; and that they have churches in which they pray to God just like the Hollanders, earning a living with all kinds of trades, conducted by black slaves, themselves whitish, and having straight hair, in which they also trade, and likewise in tusks and cattle (in immense quantities), being very fond of red copper and yellow copper wire, red beads, &c., and whereas 7 men offer themselves to journey to these nations, viz: Christiaan Jansz van Hoesum, free hunter, thatcher and stock maker, chief of the expedition, whom the rest promised to obey.

Jochem Elberts of Amsterdam, free Saldanha trader, Hans Jacob Lisky of Dansig, free servant of the Ensign Pieter Jansz, of Middelburgh, free servant of the miller.

Gysbert Arensen of Bommel, free mason; Dirk Renskens of Maseyck, free mower; Jan Francken of Arnhem, corporal in the Company's service.

After having considered the matter, and read the order of the Hon. van Goens, confirmed by the seventeen dated 16th April, 1658, it was decided to accept the offer of these volunteers, who would if possible proceed until they found the Namaquas or other nations. They were to leave on Monday or Tuesday and be provided with everything required; also with 2 pack oxen to carry their things. These men are young and strong and of good character, and already some years in this country.

One of Riebeeck's Guinea slaves deserts.

February 2nd (Sunday).—Fine and warm. The boat again sent to the Island with wood and timber.

To-day (? Sunday) glory be to God, wine was pressed for the first time from the Cape grapes, and the new must fresh from the tub was tasted; it consisted mostly of Muscadel and other white round grapes, of fine flavour and taste. The Spanish grapes are still green; many stocks are quite full with them, and it is expected that they will yield abundantly. The grapes of three small stocks of 2 years old produced fully 12 bottles of must. What the latter will come to when kept over will soon be known. The return fleet will arrive just in time for the young wine and old beer, when all the kinds of fruit will be ripe, of which the autumn ships will also obtain a share, and when the spring ships arrive here in winter they in their turn will obtain a sufficient supply of vegetables of all kinds, and milk, which is scarce in summer.

February 3rd.—Fine weather. The expedition leaves with the following instructions and information. The native races hitherto known are:—1st, the Cape nation from which Herry has been exiled; then the Watermen hiding among these Cape men, called Goringhaina, or Goringhaiqua, whose chief is the fat Gogoso. Next come the Gorachouqa, or Gorachouma or tobacco thieves. These two tribes are always here, as they dare not venture among the real Saldanhar. The latter are, 1st, the Cochoquas, visited lately by the Ensign and some of yourselves, consisting of 2 powerful sections and rich in cattle. They are ruled by the chiefs Ngounoma and Oedaso, the husband of Eva's sister, dwelling mostly to the N.N.E. behind the high mountains. Then come the Khonaquas, also rich in cattle, living near the Cochoquas, and on good terms with them. These would, according to Eva, be the best guides to the Namanas, whom we would like to see in the first instance; they live in stone houses as you have heard, and we also, from her and others. But as they might be unwilling to be your guides, your first direction should be towards the west of the Leopard mountains on the Saldanha road to the Hosomas, who are the little Charigurinars, or Chariguriquas, in order to be brought by them to the big Chariguriquas, who according to all accounts have a knowledge of the Namanas and may bring you there, or show you the way. The Namanas, are the dominant Hottentoo race, living in stone houses with black walls, hung inside

1659.

with white prepared skins—they in time will be able to conduct us to the Chobonas, whose authority over this Cape people is still superior to that of Namana, and who are very rich in gold, and where it is supposed that the river Spirito Sancto lies, from which all the gold is taken to Mozambique, and not more than 120 or 130 miles to the north-east from this place. Their chief is evidently the Monomotaper, or Emperor of this distant region; but as soon as you have found any inhabiting fixed abodes and you hear from them that they can introduce you to other nations, we shall leave it to you to travel further or turn back; but you should do your best to induce some of them to visit us, and treat them well. If the journey be not too long and you can find nothing particular among these Namanas, we would be pleased by your proceeding towards the Chobona or the town Monopatapa, which is rich in gold and the dwelling place of the Emperor. The land also is rich in gold near the river Spirito Sancto. You are to be prudent, observe everything attentively and make full notes of everything. 1st. As soon as you cross the first (eerste) river, you are to set your course by compass, and note down how many hours and half hours more or less you travel on each course, as is done at sea, that everything may be laid down on a chart for the Directors. This is by no means to be neglected. 2nd. You must mark where there is clay or soil for agriculture; where the country is sandy, stony, or mountainous; where there are water and running rivers and mark their direction. Whether in mountain or river any mineral is hidden from which silver or gold may be drawn, and whether the roads are everywhere passable for wagons. Some prominent spots are to be named by you and you are to enquire after the names of the nations, their chiefs and cities in order to be known in future. 3rd. You are to find out when meeting a nation, how they live, what chief they have, what clothes, what means of earning a living; what their religion is, their dwellings, their fortifications are—what they best like; whether they have among them honey, wax, ostrich feathers, ivory, silver, gold, pearl, tortoise shell, musk, civet, amber, fine skins or anything else. 4th. What useful fruits or roots the country produces, and should you come on the sea coast you are to notice the bays and rivers which discharge themselves into the sea; in what direction they extend, whether there are means of getting water and refreshments; if there are oysters, pearl mussels, or tortoise shells fit for combs or other work. 5th. The strength of the nation, and with whom they live in friendship or enmity, and why? Their general name, and especially the names of their chief men, towns, &c., and also what instruments for war they possess. 6th. How they are disposed towards our nation; whether they are cruel or friendly; and whether they have any reasonable government. And that you may know how to write down exactly your observations, we give you for your information a specimen copy drawn up by our masters. For the rest we have also verbally told you what you are to do for the sake of your own honour and

gaining the reward promised, which will be in accordance with what is found, and God grant that it may be something considerable. We wish you a prosperous journey under the protection of the Chief Keeper of the pious, unto Whom we shall daily pray for you that He may abide with you with His grace. Amen.

The seven thus left with the best wishes of all, each armed with a good firelock and pistol, and took with them a list of articles carried by two draught oxen which might be acceptable for barter, &c.

February 4th.—Cloudy and dark sky, N. breeze. The boat sent to Robben Island with timber and fuel. Another ox given to the travellers, who could not get on with the one first given.

February 5th.—Warm, N. breeze. Heavy S.E. in the afternoon.

February 6th.—Full moon. Warm and quiet.

February 7th.—Fiscal Ab. Gabbema and the land surveyor, who understands a little of these things, sent out with some men round the Cape to take the distance of all rocks lying off the coast. The surveyor's work is to be carefully examined and put into a chart. They take 5 days' provisions, and are also to find out where the Cape men and tobacco thieves are, as it is reported that Doman, with all his Hot'entoots, as he calls them in the Herry style, had very suspiciously left during the night. Riebeeck himself went out to search for them, but fruitlessly, and the freemen were warned to beware of Doman, who had since his return from Batavia become very bold, and was less to be trusted than Herry.

Resolution of the Council:—"Whereas most of the freemen are in poor circumstances, and very much distressed that they may not receive credit for a higher sum than what the Company has stipulated, and whereas we are consequently afraid to give them more credit, but at the same time see that, unless they receive further assistance, it is impossible for them to right themselves and clear off their debts; it is resolved, in order to keep the corn-growers out of trouble and encourage them as much as possible, to pay them, independent of their debt, a third part of the price of their produce in cash or goods and to take the remaining two-thirds as part payment of their debt. In that way they will be somewhat consoled for their heavy toil, and have something wherewith to pay their Dutch servants. And this is further done in order to make it unnecessary for them to evade the law by mixing a lot of wheat with the refuse, and for the sake of a little money selling the whole as food for poultry, &c. To prevent this abuse effectively all who wish to sell food for pigs, &c., shall first bring it to the Castle or the granary to be inspected by the Fiscal and bailiffs; the buyer shall pay 3 st. for every bushel to cover the expenses incurred by the Company. Offenders to forfeit 6 reals of 8. And that no wheat may be exported and the order regarding the conveyance of wood from the forest should be maintained, all wagons passing the Company's house or Fort shall stop for examination. This shall

1659.

be done in the case of everything intended for shipment. And whereas the surveyor has divided the freemen's plots with beacons it is enacted, according to the order of the Hon. Van Goens, confirmed by the Masters, that everyone on whose plot a beacon shall be found missing shall forfeit 6 reals, a quarter of which amount shall go to the surveyor."

February 3th.—Heavy S.E. in the afternoon. Bought 48 sheep and 4 cows from the Cochoquas, who quickly departed, no doubt frightened by Doman, who is hiding in the neighbourhood, as Eva thinks, who endeavoured to remove their fears. They said they wished to fetch more sheep, and asked for some tobacco for Eva's brother-in-law Oedaso.

Yesterday Doman, when angry with Eva, hinted that he would cause the men on the land journey to be murdered in order to deter us from exploring the country. This news reached us too late, and we therefore leave the case in the hands of God; but if Doman shows himself at the Fort again, it will be necessary to put him in confinement.

February 9th.—Heavy S.E. Some smokers set fire to the cow dung in the kraal, which finally communicated itself to the thatch of the shed; it was, however, fortunately put out. By pulling the bell so violently, its eye was broken, and it fell to the ground; but this is a slight loss compared with the fire, which had already crossed the moat, and was creeping up the walls; the dry grass burning easily. The stables alone would have been a loss of 2 or 300 gl; whilst all the houses in the fort were in danger, and the sparks might have exploded the old magazine, as yet only covered with tiles.

February 10th.—Calm and very hot weather. A messenger sent by the surveyor that 13 or 14 hours on foot from the Cape the fiscus had been taken ill (see February 7th) with violent fever, which had been increasing since leaving the "bergh valley" (mountain valley). The expedition had made their inspection as far almost as the furthest point and verified it on the chart. At that spot Gabbema became so weak that he had to rest once every 10 yards. They were therefore obliged to return to their former resting place, where the fever violently increased, and to send one to give you notice. Should the patient improve they would proceed to the sand bay, where they would expect the Commander's communications, &c.—(Signed) Peter Potter.

Four slaves and a hammock sent to bring the fiscus home; they also took some wine and other refreshments.

February 11th.—N.W. cloudy weather.

February 12th.—S.S.E. wind. Arrival of the *Emmerhoorn*, all well. Had left the Vley on the 22nd October in company of the *Paarl*, &c.

Resolution, to send the above vessel to the Southland to make another search for the *Gouden Draak*, according to letters from Holland dated 26th December, 1657.

Cornelius Cornelisz of Haarlem confirmed in his appointment as master carpenter.

The fiscal, having missed the slaves, is brought home in a free-man's wagon, and very weak.

February 13th.—Heavy S.S.E.

February 14th.—Calm and warm.

February 15th.—Calm. The *Sea Lion* proceeds to Dassen, and the boat to Robben Island, with straw, &c., for the sheep shed, and the seed of some wild plant thriving well in the drought and liked by the sheep.

February 16th.—Fine weather.

February 17th.—The *Emmerhoorn* leaves for the Southland (see February 12th), and takes also letters for Batavia.

February 18th.—Death of Ensign Jan van Harwarden, after 6 or 7 days' illness. The Company has lost a diligent and industrious servant, who had been (and not beyond his deserts) raised within 6 years from the rank of corporal to that of Ensign. He leaves a widow and 5 children.

The wife of the free tailor Hendrik van Surwerden gives birth to a son.

February 19th.—Heavy S.E. The late ensign, having been the Company's builder and general superintendent, the Commander went out to-day for general inspection, that especially the plough might not be neglected or the work of threshing; the people commencing to think that as the superintendent was dead the work could go on anyhow.

February 20th.—S.E. wind; burial of the ensign.

February 21st.—Heavy S.E. Seven ships off the mouth of the bay.

February 22nd.—The vice-admiral driven to sea, again nears the bay. A boat with refreshments sent off.

February 23rd.—Fine weather. Arrival of the *Wapen van Amsterdam*, *Olipphant*, and *Vlissing*. The *Provincie* busy rigging another topmast. The other ships may have proceeded to St. Helena.

February 24th.—The Vice-admiral of the *Provincie*, Mr. van der Marek, lands.

February 25th.—The same fine weather. Strong S.S.E. in the evening.

February 26th, 27th, and 28th.—S.E. continues. No boats can move. At noon the wind became gentler, and water and refreshments could be taken on board.

March 1st.—*Resolution*:—"As it is to be concluded that the Admiral, Isaac Coedyck, with 4 vessels, could not enter the bay on account of the strong S.E., and consequently proceeded to St. Helena, so that we are deprived of our 22 lasts of rice and some clothing, to our great inconvenience, it is resolved to send a galliot to that island to fetch the articles, and in order to create no delay to send the assistant Gysbert van Campen thither with 5 or 6 men,

1659.

and with the present ships, in order to receive the goods and keep them there until the galliot arrives. The duties of Ensign Harwarden having been discharged by the Company's wheat grower, Pieter Cruythoff, under the superintendence of Fiscal Gabbema, said Cruythoff is appointed to the vacant office. He gets the rank of Corporal of Cadets and f16 per month, and Elias Giers is appointed junior corporal. As commandant of the soldiers, Pieter Everaarts of Cruyessaart is appointed with the rank of sergeant."

Fine weather. The boat arrives from Robben Island and reports that the 4 ships had taken their course for St. Helena.

March 2nd.—Fine weather.

March 3rd and 4th.—Fine weather. The *Penguin* brings fresh eggs from Dassen Island; also dried fish, which they are allowed to sell to the ships, &c.

March 5th.—S.S.E.

March 6th.—S.S.E. Death of the soldier, Antony Terron, of Antwerpen.

March 7th.—Fine weather. Despatches sent on board the return fleet.

Arrival of the English yacht *Suratte Frigate* from London. It had obtained some ivory and gold at Guinea, and was going to Suratte.

The expedition returns. They had found the land everywhere so dry and destitute of grass and water, that they had been forced to return. They had suffered heavily from thirst and want of food for the oxen, one of which had died. They had been with the Chariguriquas, who did what they could to keep them away from the Namaquas, so that they would have had to travel at their own risk. They proceeded until they came to a large river ebbing and flowing, from which they concluded that it emptied itself into the sea. The Soaquas, or *banditti*, an entirely wild nation without houses or cattle, but well armed with assegay, arrow and bow, had told them that they would still have to travel 7 or 8 days to reach the Namaquas; but finding that the country everywhere was equally dry, full of rocky mountains and destitute of water, they had, pressed by thirst, to resolve upon returning, believing that they had travelled about 90 leagues in different directions mostly on the northern side of Africa, but from their own notes it is evident that they could not have travelled more than 30. Their journey will therefore give very little.

March 8th.—Fine weather. The 4 return ships leave. Arrival of the *Princesse Royal* from Holland. Refreshments sent on board; had lost 8 men.

March 9th.—Fine, warm weather. Saw a ship and heard some guns.

March 10th.—N.W. breeze. More guns heard. The Fiscal sent to Robben Island to inquire.

March 11th.—Death of the arquebusier Corn van Warmesoo. The Fiscal reports that the firing had proceeded from the return ships as signals not to part company.

March 12th.—The boat sent to the Island, with orders that if the sheep shed was finished, to employ the men to carry shells to the landing place, and to send certain of them back to the Cape, &c. Provisions sent for 9 Dutchmen, also separate rations for the black convict Pasquaal and the male and female Guinea slaves, and Herry. The latter was not to be employed in carrying shells. Care was to be taken that they did not seize the boat; which also takes some straw for thatching. The shells to be carried in gunny bags.

March 13th.—S.S.E. in the afternoon. The English yacht leaves.

March 14th.—Stiff S.S.E.

March 15th.—Fine calm weather.

March 16th.—Fine, calm—afterwards a slight N.W. breeze. Arrival of the *Arnhem* from Holland, with 347 men on board. Had 11 deaths. Many still down with the scurvy. Refreshments to be daily and plentifully supplied.

March 17th.—Arrival of the English yacht the *Dolphin*—150 lasts—from Bantam to London with pepper. Full of sick. Her captain dead. His brother very ill, and almost all the men. Too weak to weigh anchor to come into the bay. Was assisted with 25 men of the *Princess*. Heavy S.E. in the evening.

March 18th.—Fine weather. The Englishman stows away all his sails in order to be here for some time.

March 19th.—Fine W. weather.

March 20th.—Fine. The *Princesse Royale* leaves with despatches for Batavia.

March 21st.—Fine weather. Arrival of the *Ulysses* from Texel. Had called at St. Jago to see whether any donkeys could be got there; but found the natives in arms, and after a delay of eight hours they left. After that the flute *Loenen* arrives, also from Holland on the 22nd Oct.; had suffered from contrary winds, and scurvy. In the afternoon the *Hector* arrived from Delft.

March 22nd.—W. breeze. Arrival of the *Paarl* with the Hon. Van Almonde on board—also of the *Cortenhoeff* and *Zuylen*. They had spoken the *Meliskercken* coming out of Saldanha Bay and going to Batavia. The *Paarl* had obtained some refreshments at the Canaries. Van Almonde lands in the evening, and is met by the Commander. Death of Sergeant Joh. Hulman of Amsterdam.

March 23rd.—Strong S.E.

March 24th.—Somewhat less.

March 25th.—Resolved in Council to despatch the *Zuylen* to St. Helena (see March 1), and to supply the English ship *Dolphin* with an anchor and cable and some sail cloth. Death of the trumpeter Jan de Beer.

March 26th.—Rainy N.W. weather in the morning. Van Almonde and Riebeeck, &c., visit the freemen's farms, forests, &c. They came home in the evening very wet.

1659.

March 27th.—Same weather. Van Almonde embarks.

March 28th.—Stiff N.W. breeze with rain. Arrival of the *Hoogelande*, from Zealand; had touched at Sierra Leone for refreshments because she had very soon lost 16 men and had 50 in bed; 7 more died afterwards. Refreshments sent on board. Had seen a ship to the west of the coast; believed to be an Englishman, which may safely keep away from the Cape, as one has nothing but annoyance from them.

March 29th.—Rainy W. weather.

March 30th (Sunday).—Calm. Broad Council on board the *Paarl*. The skipper and mate of the *Ulysses* had been quarrelling and fighting; resolved to make the latter exchange into the *Loenen* to keep peace on board the *Ulysses*.

March 31st.—W. weather. The *Arnhem*, *Loenen* and *Ulysses* leave for Batavia.

April 1st.—Fine. S.E. in afternoon. The *Paarl* and consorts leave, so does the *Zuglen* for St. Helena.

April 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th.—Fine weather. The *Hoogelande* leaves for Batavia with our despatches.

April 6th.—*Anniversary of the day on which the Cape was taken possession of*, and likewise a day for prayer and thanksgiving for the blessing which God has granted on all our efforts.

April 7th.—Fine weather.

April 8th and 9th.—Riebeeck visits the freemen and their cattle, &c., and urged them to let their ploughs go faster. He also visited the Island and found it very dry and without grass, but the bushes were green, on which the sheep were abundantly thriving. There was enough for 2,000, but the place was unfit for pigs; the rabbits had increased so rapidly that they would not be easily eradicated. In two or three years' time there would be a large quantity.

April 10th.—Riebeeck returns, and the *Naarden* comes in sight. About 29th March it had near the roads of Natal parted from the *Erasmus* in a storm.

April 11th.—The *Naarden* anchors. The wind west.

April 12th and 13th.—Fine.

April 14th (Easter Monday).—Heavy S.E. and drought.

April 15th.—Better, but warm.

April 16th.—The same. Riebeeck and the Hon. van Twist and party visit the freemen and inspect their farms.

April 17th.—Fine. N.W. weather.

Resolution.—The English vessel *Dolphin*, having already lost 21 of her 50 men, and the survivors almost all very ill, the captain asked for assistance to take his ship to Leghorn. It was resolved to give him the 15 or 16 Portuguese brought by the *Naarden*; for if the vessel remained here she would be a nuisance, and not being assisted, an unfavourable impression might be created. Other men are much wanted by the Company, therefore none can be spared. By giving the Portuguese, the danger of mischief from

them would be removed, and the Company relieved of all further expense. Moreover the *Naarden* would be able to economise her scanty stores. The English captain was glad of this offer. Fourteen men were given him; but the Portuguese captain and his ensign were allowed to proceed to Europe in the *Naarden*. Rain at night.

April 18th and 19th.—Dry and changeable.

April 20th.—Stiff S.E. and dark sky. Thunder showers.

April 21st.—Heavy S.E. during the night.

April 22nd.—The same

April 23rd.—Fine and calm.

Resolution, 23rd April.—“As the freemen of Dassen Island were allowed to buy up all the pigs, which did not seem to thrive here, but to thrive very well on that island, on condition that they would breed those animals only for the Company, which requires them so urgently, and as they have arranged to sell some to the Englishmen here, and also some sheep, it was decided to station one or two faithful soldiers on the Island to report proceedings there, the half of their wages to be paid by the freemen; also to send over a slave to take care of the pigs. Whilst half of the increase would go to the freemen, the latter are either to account or pay for the number wanting, and therefore the Fiscal shall shortly visit that place for inspection, and the purpose of having more wells dug, as the one there now is insufficient to water the pigs in the dry season. The island is well supplied with purslain and other greens.”

The *Naarden*, being short of stores, is allowed some from the dépôt here.

April 24th.—Fine weather. The Fiscal left for Dassen Island.

April 25th.—But was blown back to-day.

April 26th.—Same wind. Dark sky.

April 27th (Sunday).—Dark sky and rainy. N. wind, strong.

April 28th.—Stiff N.W. wind and rain. Boat of the *Naarden* smashed against the jetty during the night. Another one washed into the Salt River; takes a whale-boat instead.

April 29th and 30th.—N.W., rainy weather.

May 1st.—N.W. wind and rain.

The freemen propose four candidates as burgher councillors, viz., Jan Reynierz of Amsterdam, Jacob Cornelisz of Rosendaal, Wouter Cornelisz Mostaert and Jan Rietveldt. Two of these were to be chosen by us and to have session at our board in order to help us in investigating offences occurring amongst the burghers. It was deemed necessary always to have one of experience and not always novices, and therefore to appoint Hendrik Boom as senior burgher councillor, he having been junior last year—a married and well-to-do man; whilst Jan Reyniersz was appointed his junior—he is also married and a corn-grower. And as for the purpose of securing the peace and safety of the settlement against all attacks of the Cape Hottentoots and banditti, it was ordered two years ago

1659.

—

that the farmers and burghers should keep themselves well armed with firearms, and that every one should be thoroughly practised in those arms, it was further resolved, in order to maintain good order among them, to form them into a company of shooters under officers, and in the same way in which the Company's soldiers are kept here, viz., with a sergeant, two corporals and one drummer, who shall, excepting the drummer, be annually succeeded by others, who shall be elected by the burgher councillors, assisted by the sergeant and one corporal, and approved of in the ordinary way by the Council. For the first year the retiring burgher councillor Steven Jansz is to serve as sergeant, and Herman Remajenne and Cornelis Mostaert as corporals. The rules to guide the corps to be those used in Batavia as far as applicable.

Christiaan Jansz of Hoesum was appointed superintendent of the stables.

Pieter Cruythoff, the building superintendent, receives 4 reals per month for food.

May 2nd and 3rd.—Fine, S.E. breeze. The *Naarden* leaves, followed by the English ship *Dolphin*.

May 4th (Sunday).—In the afternoon we were told that the Hottentoots of Caapmen's camp had driven off from our people 7 of the Company's work oxen which were feeding a little way into the wood behind Table Mountain, but that our people had taken from them in return a loaded pack ox, and had broken the arm of a Hottentoot by a gun shot. Orders at once given to Corporal Cruythoff to pursue the cattle with 10 soldiers as far as the Hottentoot encampment; to recover them, if possible, without hostility, and if refused to tell them that the peace made with them, but broken by them quite sufficiently, would come to nothing.

May 5th.—Men returned early this morning, and reported that they reached the Caapmen's camp, which consisted of two parties, lying just below the Kleof, about 11 p.m. last night; that the latter were much alarmed, and at once prepared to restore the cattle, and also an ox belonging to the Commander stolen some time before. But 2 other oxen stolen the day after Van Almond's departure, and various others stolen long before from the free men, had been, as they pretended, devoured by lions. They refused to sell our men a sheep for food. One was therefore taken and paid for, the Caapmen not attempting to oppose. Our party believed that with 40 men at most they could easily have captured the camps of the Caapmen and brought all their cattle to the fort. Of the biggest camp, Gogosoa, the fat captain, was the chief, and a certain Ankeysaoa commanded the others. They had from 100 to 120 men capable of bearing arms, but as our men had no orders they were left alone. But as these Caapmen are daily adding to their offences against the peace concluded, it would not be surprising if they are one day paid like Herry, and thoroughly so. The Saldanhars are continually urging us to this, and also the freemen,

who consider themselves quite able to protect themselves, and would prefer the dangers of a battle to the continual thefts of the cattle by the natives.

Riebeeck was out to-day for inspection and making arrangements in case the Caapmen were to attack the settlement, but having arrived on the top of the Bosheuvel, which has a view over the whole flat between False and Table Bays, he saw the Caapmen retiring with all their cattle towards the point of the Steenberg, and intending to pass the night near the Tent River, an ordinary halting-place, when travelling towards the back of the Steenberg or the Bergh Valley, and the one where the Hon. van Goens rested when he examined the Bergh Valley.

May 6th.—Fine N.W. weather. Heavy rain during the night.

May 7th.—Stormy. The fiscal arrives from Dassen Island. He had passed the night on Robben Island, and it is surprising that he ventured the trip in such a small boat, as the sea was so very high in the mouth of the bay. He reported that there were only 20 instead of 40 pigs at Dassen Island. Four had been sold to the *Meliskerken*, and the rest had died. The 20 were progressing well, and mostly with young; he had left a Company's servant and a convict there to report what was going on. There was enough food for 1,000 pigs, and plenty of water in the rainy season. He had, however, left orders that more wells should be dug at certain spots.

On Robben Island, where a fine shed has been made, about 80 sheep have died from cold and rain, getting lame in the legs as if they suffered from berbery. He brought 7 with him to see whether any one was acquainted with the disease or knew a remedy.

The *Nuarden* and *Dolphin* had left Dassen Island. Riebeeck receives information that his house on the Bosheuvel had been burnt to the ground by means of a fire occurring inside of it.

The freemen in a body send a petition to Riebeeck and Council, in which they refer to the Caapmen and tobacco thieves, and the losses sustained through them; their tobacco, produce, harrows, the iron of their ploughs, their cattle and sheep, are stolen, and it was supposed that matters would mend; but now the Commander and Council plainly saw that the Caapmen, who laid the guilt on others, have also stolen the Company's cattle and sheep, which were found in their possession by us. Not long ago they would even have killed the skipper and mate of the *Arnhem* if assistance had not been rendered in time. When Herry was punished for his villany we found all submissive and afraid, and they therefore asked permission to revenge themselves thoroughly on the Caapmen to recoup themselves for their losses. Through the latter the petitioners have been incapacitated from using their ploughs, and they felt themselves strong enough to protect themselves against the natives if the Council would only order the Company's cattle to be grazed under the charge of soldiers above and on the further side of their

1659.

corn lands, as had for some time been done, to their great security, for then they would be better able to protect themselves against them than now, when, according to the Company's orders, every kindness is to be shown to these fellows—a thing most distasteful to the petitioners, for the natives are always doing mischief and injury to the freemen by stealing, principally their cattle and sheep. They expect an answer and are in the meantime prepared with their arms and ready to attend whithersoever ordered; at least one man from every house, and from others 2 or 3 or 4, and so on would be prepared to start. This 7th day of May, 1659. (Signed by) Hendrick Hendriksz Boom, Herman Remajenne, Philipus van Roon, Jacob Cornelius Rosendaal, Jacob Cornelis, Willem Coenraadt, Caspar Brinckman, Simon Intvelt, Jan Martens de Wacht, Carel Broers (all these made marks), Jacob Cloutten, Henrich Ellebrech (these signed), Otto Janse van Vreede, Jan Reyniersz: Cornelius Claessen (these made marks), Johannes Rietvelt (he signed), P. Cornelius van Langesond (he marked), Frans Gerritz: (he signed).

May 8th.—Fair but cloudy weather, with slight showers. Bought 32 sheep and 5 oxen from Oedasoas men, who were well treated and informed of the villany of the Caapmen, from whom we had taken only as many oxen as they had stolen from us, but that one of the thieves whilst driving the cattle away had been shot in the arm and died yesterday. The Cochoquas replied that the Caapmen ought to keep quiet, and were surprised that we did not root them out, as they give us sufficient cause every day. We replied that we did not like to do anyone any harm, but preferred to live in peace with the whole world.

Doman wishing to join in the conversation received a good thrashing from Oedasoas's men. Eva stated that Oedasoas would very likely one of these days attack the Caapmen, as he had been much annoyed by their thefts of sheep and cattle, their chief riches consisting in what they procured by plunder. They had therefore earned a punishment very well, if he only knew that we would not be offended.

May 9th.—Fine cloudy weather from the N.W. Arrival of the *Terboede* from Zeeland. Had off Cape Verde endeavoured to catch a Portuguese ship under English flag, but without success.

May 10th.—Death of the soldier Hicronymus of Straalsont.

May 11th (Sunday).—Quiet misty weather.

May 12th.—Clear, sunshine.

May 13th, 14th, and 15th.—Oedasoas' people sold us 3 lean oxen.

May 16th and 17th.—Fine weather. Yesterday the Caapmen stole 10 oxen from the company of Visagie, and 6 of those of Roon's people. They had been followed by 4 freemen, but without success. The latter reported that Doman was among the thieves, who drove the animals away, and that their servant who had charge of the animals had been mortally wounded and beaten by him,

Resolution :—“ The free carpenter Pieter Pauwels Kley having killed another free carpenter Dirk Adriaan Vreem van der Meere, and escaped from justice on board the English ship *Barbadoes Merchant* in January last, it was decided to confiscate all the murderer's property ; the burgher councillors representing the members of justice in affairs of the freemen.

It was likewise decided to sell by public auction the property left by the deceased Vreem, and liquidate the estate.

Inventory of the goods found by Pieter Cornelis van Lange-sondt, freeman, and Arend Andries van Bergen, coppersmith, in the forest of Pieter Pauwels Kley, carpenter and sawyer, on the 11th December, 1658, and who escaped from the main guard with the irons on his legs, having killed a carpenter Dirk Adriaan Vreem :—

1. An empty box with some old rubbish and a promissory note in favour of Kley and Vreem, and signed by the men of Remajenne's troop, who have mortgaged their house and erf, before commissioners, dated 24th May, 1658, for 400 guildens at 9 (nine) per cent. Interest to be added, f27.

One carpenter's box and contents, &c. List of debts left by Kley and Vreem. The debts to be sworn to and paid.

May 18th.—W. weather. The *Terboede* leaves for Batavia. Fires having been lighted during two nights at Robben Island, a boat was sent thither to enquire the meaning. It reported that the fires had been lit because of the mortality among the sheep, as since Riebeeck had left the Island 200 had died, mostly young ewes with young, and the death rate continued in the same way. The superintendent had expected to have 800 this year. Riebeeck visits the farms, and is informed that Brinkman's men had lost 3 fine oxen and Visagie one again, which had been herded by an unarmed Dutchman and a slave (which was contrary to orders). Last night Doman and some Hottentoots were also after Brinkman's whole troop, and driving them away, but followed with guns they were chased away and the cattle recovered.

As the thefts and insolence of the Caapmen increase more and more, and already 2 farms have been brought to a standstill, whilst the rest will also be ruined soon, and as the farmers, in spite of the warning to put a white herd armed with a gun in charge of their cattle, are so careless that even in these dangerous times they seldom provide their herd with a gun : it was arranged, with their general consent, to provide each house with a good soldier for the express purpose of herding their cattle, namely 4 for the 4 farms on this side of the Liesbeek, and 5 for those beyond, and one also for the Commander's private farm on the Bosheuvel, being in all 10 Company's soldiers, one billeted upon each house, under whose care the cattle will be somewhat safer and the people also will be more secured in their houses by night against any other attacks by the Hottentoots. The fiscal sergeant and corporal were also ordered to make daily rounds to enforce due regularity on

1659.

—

1659.

the guards. Towards evening a corporal was sent out with the surveyor and 3 soldiers, with 3 days' provisions, to discover secretly the camp of the Caapmen, the number of men and cattle together, and if successful to send 2 men back, one of whom shall be the surveyor, to report to us; the rest are to remain concealed and follow them should they change their quarters until our further orders. It was also hinted to the freemen that if any were found, they should be ready with their fire-arms. The Company's people were also told quietly to make every preparation.

Oncoming home Riebeeck reported his proceedings to the Council that the members might think the matter over during the night, and arrive at a ripe conclusion to-morrow, regarding the means to be adopted for the suppression of the robberies in the most serviceable manner for the Company and the public tranquillity; for which purpose also the burgher councillors have also been invited to attend the meeting, as what will be considered affects the peace or disquiet of the burghers.

May 19th.—W. wind. The Dassen Island boats arrive, having suffered much from the storm; they brought nothing, but came to be repaired.

Resolution.—"The sergeant and free burgher councillors added to the number of Council members to make the board larger, and a vote accorded to the fiscal and secretary, Abr. Gabbema. Riebeeck spoke as follows, that each might give his opinion after due deliberation, and a resolution be taken in accordance with the necessities of the Company and the tranquillity of the freemen; but above all, one consistent with the honour and approval of God, that our deliberations may by His omnipotence be gifted with the spirit of right wisdom and prudence, and instead of being punished that we may be graciously endowed with His Holy blessing. In His name then proceeding, the Commander submits:—

The malicious robbing, stealing and other annoyances suffered during the few last days from the Caapmen, with the participation of the interpreter Doman, who having gone to Batavia with Mr. Van Goens and having returned with Mr. Cuneus, has become too knowing and now a much greater pest to us than Herry ever was; having become acquainted with all our circumstances, and also learnt to handle fire-arms, which have hitherto, thanks to God, been kept out of his hands at the Cape, although he has persuaded his tribe *that during rain we cannot keep our matches alight*, and thus can hardly shoot, as is well known to all.

Also, besides the present daily annoyances suffered by us, we have been likewise warned that the Caapmen intend to carry off, if possible, in such dark and wet weather the cattle of the Company and the freemen, when we will not be able to fire, whilst they, provided with assagays and bows, would in fighting be stronger than the Netherlanders. This was confirmed by the interprestress Eva, who warned us to look out that we may not regret it when too late.

For the Commander, having yesterday caused some of the

Caapmen's Hottentoots (who hang about the Fort, pretending that they have nothing to do with the others, though they are nothing but spies) to be asked through Eva what they wanted, and whether it would not be well if some of them were to accompany 2 or 3 of our people to the Caapmen to ask what was the matter and to try to bring any differences which might be found to exist, to a friendly settlement, these Hottentoots were not to be induced to go there; and Eva told us plainly that the Caapman Captain Gogosoa certainly advised his people to keep the peace, and asked them what would become of them if the Saldanhars came down with a multitude of men, and whether they would retire: but that they had continually, at the instigation of Doman, spurned the advice, and remained unwilling to let us have any peace, for they could not even leave their own neighbours or countrymen unmolested. Eva also thought that if we sent such a friendly mission for peace they would believe that they had sufficiently become our masters, and would be confirmed in the belief by Doman, which they would continue to entertain until such time as they had generally and thoroughly felt what the Netherlanders could do.

Riebeeck also submitted whether, saying nothing of what had occurred before, sufficient cause had not been given to us for an attack upon these Caapmen as requested by the freemen, and in order to injure them as much as possible, for the Directors had been of opinion, expressed in their letter of 2nd September, 1658, that up to that time at least no sufficient reason had been given.

Cause sufficient had now been given, a cause in our humble faith just before God, and therefore such as we could answer for.

It should also be considered whether the proposed attack would secure the object proposed, not to secure booty of cattle, nor exactly for revenge, which belongs to God alone, but to be able hereafter to live in security and on friendly terms with the natives, as it is of the utmost importance that the ulterior objects of the Company, viz., further discovery and intercourse with the natives of the interior might not be frustrated by the insecurity of the roads, or by the natives being alarmed by the attack to be made on the Caapmen.

Moreover, it is not to be supposed, as do the freemen in their petition, that the temper of the natives will be improved by hostile conduct on our side, for they would become more exasperated and embittered, and the Caapmen especially would in revenge endeavour to do us all the injury they could devise, so that with an eye on the interests of the freemen there were greater difficulties in the way than they seemed to see, such as the firing of their houses, barns, ripe corn, &c., which they knew as well as we did had been already threatened by the Caapmen, and that Doman had said that he had seen the same done by the Bantammers at Batavia, so that this cunning fellow would instigate them thereto, and being the best informed would instruct them in everything.

The Commander therefore warned all freemen that it would be very inopportune for the Company again to re-establish those

1659.

whom it had once set upon their legs, far less would the Company think of giving compensation for any loss sustained hereafter in war, but that each one would have to bear his own burden.

Upon this all the freemen assembled on the Company's corn lands assured the Commander and the junior merchant Roelof de Man, in the presence of the burgher councillors and in the name of them all, that according to their memorial of the 7th inst., they adhered to their declaration of having never contemplated anything of the kind, still less would they pretend to any claim upon the Company, but that they would willingly bear all the danger rather than continue their present life of anxiety and be plundered by those with whom they only desired to have the most friendly intercourse. They therefore persisted in their petition, as matters were becoming worse day after day; they only prayed to be assisted with the Company's forces in order to act not only on the defensive but also on the offensive and take revenge. For this they felt themselves strong enough, whilst they were better able to act offensively than to defend themselves against their pretended friends. The Commander and Council (assisted as before) having carefully considered and weighed everything, unanimously resolved, that as there were no other means whatever of securing quiet and peace with these Cape people, to take the first opportunity as being the best to attempt to surprise and attack them suddenly with a strong force, taking as many cattle and male prisoners as possible, avoiding at the same time all unnecessary bloodshed, but keeping the prisoners as hostages so as thus to hold those who may escape in check and make them properly submissive, in hopes that quiet may be restored by these means; the rather as we are assured that the true Saldanhars, their enemies, will care as little about them as about Herry, but will come more freely and deal with us more confidently than before, as these Caapmen have always been found to be the chief preventers of that intercourse.

For carrying out the above, everything was to be held in readiness whilst the Council prayed to the Lord God for his blessing and assistance."

(Signed by) J. A. VAN RIEBEECK,

ROELOF DE MAN,

☒ Mark of HENDRIK BOOM,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,

PIETER EVERARTS,

℥ Mark of JAN REYNIERSZ.

The above Resolution was hardly an hour old when tidings came that all Brinkman's cattle, about 30, and all his sheep, about 70, and also the rest of Visagie's and Van Roon's cattle had been taken, and that Brinkman's comrade Simon In't Velt after having discharged his gun at the Hottentoots, had been attacked and miserably murdered with assegays, having received 7 wounds. A slave had also been wounded. Doman was among them, and had himself picked up and carried away Simon's gun. He was pursued

by 7 freemen, but we fear will not be overtaken; whilst the pursuers will run great risk. Orders were instantly given to send the soldiers already mentioned to the freemen's houses to defend them as much as possible from further disasters; and every preparation was made for the prevention of more mischief, as four farms are already ruined and brought to a standstill in the midst of the ploughing and sowing season, to the great injury of agriculture.

As soon as this report arrived at the fort, all the Hottentoots in the neighbourhood ran away with their wives, children, and all.

May 20th.—Dark, grey weather. All the stock brought to the fort, excepting the working oxen, which were left at the corn lands to continue the work, and the greater part of the sheep, for which we have no stables here; and as we see that the Caapmen are not to be won by kindness, and that they threaten to take all our cattle before they leave off, and to kill all who try to prevent them, full permission was given to everyone to seize or shoot them wherever found, *i.e.*, those who can be captured near the houses or are met elsewhere, so that each may stay at home to protect his own property, until other orders are issued for taking the field for that express purpose, after our spies return with certain intelligence as to where we can best get at them to annoy them the most effectually, and at once impress them with a proper panic.

Eva alone stayed in the Commander's house, and heard all the preparations that were made, for understanding Dutch well a secret can with difficulty be kept from her. Seemed much surprised, and said that those who were at the fort yesterday wished to entice her away also, but that she preferred staying here, being only afraid that some of Oedaso's people when coming hither might be killed. This, we assured her, we would take care to prevent. We had, however, borne the insolence of the Caapmen too long, and even on Sunday last requested them through her to make peace, which they not only rejected, but had besides cruelly murdered a free burgher in the afternoon, and in addition to what they had taken before, had carried off more than 70 sheep and 40 cattle—a crime most displeasing to the Lord God, because committed by people who do not know him. He had therefore allowed us not only to offer all possible resistance, but also do them all possible injury; that as they were impervious to kindness they might be brought to a better understanding and intercourse by compulsory means, to which righteous cause the Lord God would lend his support and aid.

In the evening the spies returned, and reported that they had discovered nothing in Hout Bay, Berg Valley, or any part of the country about this Cape; that judging from the grass and its not being trodden down, there could not have been cattle or encampment in that quarter for the last 6 months. It was therefore evident that they had retreated beyond the African mountains, where they will be as easily caught as the bird that flies. In the evening

there came news that all Jan Reyniersz' cattle had also been stolen from close in front of the house, chiefly through his own carelessness, as no one was attending them. He had come to the fort with his wife, leaving no one at home but his comrade and a slave, the cattle having been left out a little too late on the further side of the Fresh River.

We also heard that fully 20 Hottentoots had been seen at the Bosheuvel on the Commander's land, about $3\frac{1}{2}$ hours' walk from the fort, intending to carry off the cattle, but they had no opportunity. More soldiers were therefore sent out to the corn land of the Company, of the freemen, and of the Bosheuvel to take care of what each still had, and all working parties from the forest, &c., were called in so as to keep securely the Company's cattle, a very fine herd, and which they boast that they will come for in rainy weather.

The 7 freemen who pursued Brinkman's cattle last night were driven back by the Hottentoots who had stolen them—about 20 in number—but they had armed themselves very carelessly with pitchforks and only 2 or 3 guns, so that their repulse is to be ascribed to their own negligence. This the Hottentoots have from time to time observed and applied for their own benefit, especially Doman, who is continually encouraging them. We have therefore offered 100 guilders for him if alive and 50 guilders if dead. For the rest of the robbers 20 gls. each if alive and 10 if dead. Half price for women and children. To earn these rewards several artisans among the freemen and those who have now lost their cattle intend, and have offered to be employed, that we may try to get hold of the robbers, and particularly of Doman, when it is probable that these robberies will be somewhat checked, and some panic produced, which may God prosper.

May 21st.—New moon. Wet and stormy. Special prayers offered this day to God to turn from us His chastening hand, which we now feel severely in the mortality among our cattle and the robberies and murders by these barbarous men. Prayers are also to be proffered to-morrow, after which the volunteers will go out against the Hottentoots.

Jan Reyniersz begs permission to bring his wife to the fort, and the freemen of Otto's, Steven's and Harman's parties fell back on the fort, with all their sheep and cattle. They did not dare to stay in their houses for fear of fire. For the same reason the fiscal had proceeded to warn the wives and children of Hendrik Boom and other freemen to retreat in case of necessity to the redoubt "Coornhoop," near their dwellings, or towards the fort. The Company will try to keep their cattle at the "granary," and the Commander his at the "Boschheuvel" to the last, as the Hottentoots are eager to get hold of them, and our people are looking out for them in their turn. May God grant them courage, so that we may get hold of some of the rogues. It is a rueful sight to witness the flight of the poor farmers from the rye

and wheat daily sown and nearly all in the ground, and much of it looking already nice and green. Each farmer is now disposed to keep only 6 oxen at home, to make as many attempts as possible against the Hottentoots, and in case of need save whatever moveables he can with his wagon and oxen.

And the better to overtake the Hottentoots when running, in which they are too quick for us, it was resolved to release from irons all the slaves, who are very angry with the Hottentoots and would like to eat them, and employ them against the Hottentoots with half pikes in the first instance, until they get enough assegays for more effective offensive proceedings. More than 40 men are now engaged at the flocks and herds of the fort and Schuur, besides those sent out for the better defence of the freemen, so that there are now at the fort only a sergeant, a corporal, and two men to keep watch at the gate. All work is at a standstill, and it is to be wished that there were a ship here to give us some little help.

The burgher Boom has built a very good house, upon which he has expended all his means, having had 17 or 1,800 gls. to his credit, and drawn no wages for six years. He now remains at home with his wife, and the two soldiers sent to his aid (rather too bold a step), resolved to abide the worst, and to defend their treasure and lives—he has five children and much fine cattle, sheep, pigs, poultry, &c.—as long as possible before retreating to the redoubt, whither the wives and children of Jacob Cloeten and Jan Martens de Wacht have retired, leaving their husbands at home, as before stated, to take care of their houses and see what it is to come to.

Meanwhile the fiscal ordered a stronger “kraal” to be built at the “Schuur,” as all the cattle in Table Valley would not have enough food for a week, and must necessarily be sent to a distance for pasture. They cannot every day come to the fort, or be kept there, excepting some of the oldest no longer fit for breeding, and to be used as food for the garrison, and therefore to be kept at hand and killed in time lest they remain dead in the fields. To guard the best cattle and that of the freemen, with the latter’s houses, 32 soldiers were ordered out, 20 for the Company’s and 10 for the freemen’s property. The freemen at the fort assist in keeping the guards and patrols; some volunteers besides have gone out to lie in wait for the Hottentoots, and preparations are made for arming and encouraging to the same end the convicts from Batavia—thus earning their freedom—and some slaves, for whom assegays, according to their instructions, are being made after the fashion of their own country, which they can manage better than the Hottentoots. Orders are also given to take care that the slaves’ wives are kept here to prevent the men from staying away, as they seem much attached to their wives, and will not easily part with them.

May 22nd.—Boisterous, wet and dirty. According to resolution prayers were offered for help and blessing in these perilous and distracted times. Some Hottentoots were again seen near Rey-

1659.

niersz' and Boomtjes' houses watching the cattle. This wet weather is very favourable for them, as no one can keep his gun dry, which from Doman's instructions they know well, and therefore choose such opportunities.

Some of the freemen are so timid and panic-stricken that they fled last night to the redoubt Coornhoop, leaving their houses a prey to the Hottentoots, so that on all sides cultivation is standing still, no one daring to go into the field to plough or do any other work, and that just at the sowing season, so that a sixth part will lie fallow. The Fiscal was therefore sent out on the 23rd to awaken a better spirit among them, and to order those who had lost their cattle to bring their ploughs, harrows, and other farming instruments to the Company's "Schoor," or the stone redoubt, that they may be safe and not broken or stolen by the Hottentoots for the iron; those who still have cattle, but are afraid to plough with them, were to send them to the "Schoor," or the fort, for pasture. He was also to warn every one that the supply of matches would not last 14 days, and therefore to spare his share as much as possible; for which purpose lighted charcoal must be kept at hand, which is better than *pop-lont* (matches made of old linen in the form of puppets), and is at once ignited. No one was to abandon his house, though he might bring his family, corn, and movables to the redoubt or Schoor, for should the Hottentots perceive the fear and panic among our people, they would become still bolder and fire the houses, which must be particularly guarded against. The Commander's private servants at the Boshheuvel (on the remotest frontier) shall hold out to the last, continuing their farming operations as usual, keeping at the same time a good watch, and his carpenters were to make all haste in placing a fixed *corps de garde* against the kraal, that every one should take good care of what property he had left. That the parties sent out shall in the first instance make every effort to capture one or more Hottentoots alive to be employed perforce as guides, to enable us with greater certainty to find their camps, and to attack them with a greater force. All the freemen who are not engaged in farming to assist personally, and with their wagons and oxen, in cutting down and conveying from the forest 800 palisades of 10 feet in length and thick enough to construct the kraal directed to be placed at the "Schoor" for the protection of their cattle, property, &c.

The Company's superintendent, Pieter Cruythoff, was to be told to let the ploughs go as hard as possible; the oxen used for threshing should also be employed for manuring the lands, and when the weather is wet threshing might be proceeded with.

The land on this side the Dry River to be sown with wheat and barley, and on the other side with oats for the horses and mules, *i.e.*, the area on which the trees have already been destroyed.

The soldiers in charge of the cattle should always keep near the ploughs and harrows for their protection.

The same thing to be done at the Bosheuvel, that Boomtje

may herd his cattle freely with those of the Company, as he consistently remains at home with his family and goods.

The bridge across the Lies to be broadened as soon as the kraal is finished, for the convenience of cattle and wagons.

The Fiscal reported in the evening that Visagie's people were very much afraid, and though having a soldier with them, they would no longer stay in their houses at night; and having taken an account of each person's loss, we found that Jan Reyniersz's company had lost 6 oxen, 12 cows, 6 heifers—total 24; and retained 1 cow, 1 calf, 1 Cape and 5 Dutch sheep.

Brinkman's company had their partner, Simon-In't-Velt, killed, and been robbed of 10 oxen, 7 cows, 2 calves—total 19—and 67 sheep, having only kept 5 sheep and 1 calf.

Visagie's company—two men—had been robbed of 8 oxen, 6 cows and 3 calves—total 17.

Roon's company—three men—the newest freemen, who had not yet ploughed any land, were robbed of 6 oxen and 2 cows—total 8, retaining only 2 cows.

These companies had therefore been robbed by the Caapmen of 68 cattle and 67 sheep, and their farming completely ruined. The Company cannot this year replace their loss, as its stock at present only consists of cows and young bulls unfit for work, but the best plan will be made that can be found. As, however, the two mates of Roon are slow and lazy, and they have not yet run into the Company's debt, it will be necessary to take them all back again into service, and let them out for service to other freemen, who require hands very much.

May 24th.—Dark, W. weather. Some Hottentoots were seen watching for the Commander's cattle at the Bosheuvel. Two or three might have been caught had not one of the volunteers, who was lying behind some bushes, shewn himself too soon, when they saved themselves by flight, for they are too quick-footed for our people, and only to be caught by stratagem.

May 25th (Sunday).—The volunteers arrive without having done more than what is mentioned above (24th May).

The Commander visits the freemen's dwellings and makes the following regulations:—Every Sunday afternoon the *Town* burghers (*first mention of the Cape as a town*) shall, whilst the military of the fort are being exercised, march into the same and two or three times round; then they shall again leave through the gate for the house of their sergeant or chief officer, to meet there and after that appear with all the country burghers at the stone redoubt, Coornhoop, where the Commander or a member of the Council will always be found, in order after service to be held there to be witness of the parade of the burghers, and to inspect their arms, and to present every one with a cup of wine or brandy, and after that to let every one return to his ward. It is evident that many lazy ones will be tempted by the brandy who would

1659.

—

otherwise remain behind and indifferent, although the whole is for their own defence and necessities.

The free sawyer, Leendert Cornelisz: and his people are, however, too far away to attend, and will, therefore, be visited every Saturday afternoon by the fiscal and sergeant for inspection—they are, therefore, to be ready about one or two o'clock, fully armed.

The Commander's agriculturists are to do the same—they are the nearest neighbours to the sawyers, and the furthest distant and most outside of all the colonists.

Whoever does not keep his arms in proper order shall be fined, and orders will be issued for the good use of the same.

May 26th.—Good wind and weather as yesterday. Arrival of the *Zuylen* from St. Helena in 29 days, bringing the clothing, rice, &c, which the return ships had taken on to St. Helena. Of the 22 lasts of rice sent from Batavia only $2\frac{1}{2}$ were sent, so that of 60 lasts we have only received 19. Add to this loss the fact that the Caapmen and tobacco thieves daily and suddenly attack us to murder and plunder, impeding agriculture in general and bringing it to a standstill on many farms.

The return ships had left the island on the 8th April; four English vessels had sailed home in company. Two frigates, they said, were daily expected to convey them home, and that many others were cruizing in the Gulf of Guinea for Spanish ships, whence they intended to proceed to St. Helena; but not yet having put in an appearance, the four had resolved to sail together. They had been extremely kind to our people in order to show their appreciation of our assistance rendered to the Captain of the *Dolphin* (Morgan).

May 27th.—Dark and rainy. The free sawyer L. Cornelisz: of Zevenhuizen, attacked yesterday evening in the forest near the Bosheuvel, about 3 hours' distant from this, by 50 or 60 Hottentoots. He was only wounded in the neck with an assegay, and his people just came in time with firearms so that they ran away at once without a single one having been caught, as they are so nimble: they had only obtained 5 assegays, which had been thrown at them. The surgeon was at once sent to him with 4 soldiers and the surveyor—the latter was to show him how to make a breastwork of planks, like that at the Bosheuvel, for his protection, as the only thing we can do at present with our small numbers is to protect ourselves as well as possible. Otherwise we might have sent some after the enemy to capture a few and make them feel our firearms; this, however, is to be delayed until the next arrival of ships, and all we can do now is to make our position as strong as possible. The wound of Cornelisz: is only a scratch. About 30 Hottentoots had been on the Bosheuvel, but had run away when chased by the men with guns and the slaves with assegays.

Cornelisz: busy making his enclosure of planks.

Resolution, 27th May.—The Council being in consequence of the

illness of the sergeant very small, and because of the troubles with the Hottentoots, which caused a lot of work and deliberation, decided to give the Fiscal Abraham Gabbema a seat at the board—a man of great experience—and to make the Assistant Gysbert van Campen secretary, *vice* Gabbema.

May 28th.—Rainy weather, a light W. breeze. No Hottentoots seen.

May 29th.—Fine. Steven Jansz : reported that some Hottentoots had broken into his sheep kraal, but having been heard, had fled. H. Boom further reported that 17 had broken into his cattle kraal, and were already driving some out, when they ran away on seeing him and his people. He had not been able to shoot any, as it was too dark; he had, however, found tools for making a fire, and thought that they intended to set fire to his house. May God preserve them from this disaster, as it would be an insurmountable one, independent of the corn still unthreshed. A soldier was brought home in the afternoon from the Bosheuvel with two assegay wounds in the thigh. He reported that about 11 a.m. about 3 or 400 Hottentoots had rushed on the 25 cattle of the Bosheuvel, herded by 4 soldiers, and after a half-hour's fight had got them away. Doman led the troop, and had thrown 5 assegays at the soldier, who had not been able to wound a Hottentoot, as they knew how to avoid the bullets by dodging. They carried off the booty, and consequently made farming on the Bosheuvel, lying on the furthest frontier, almost impossible. About 25 morgen are sown there with fine white wheat and planted with more than 1,200 vines on the mountain slopes. All this is now quite ruined, whilst it will be impossible to extend the plantations now, the time being so very near for planting.

Resolution, 29th May.—In order the better to resist the present depredations of the Hottentoots, it is resolved to employ all the free men, no longer able to cultivate their ground, at 10st. per diem in order to increase our strength and send out parties for ambuscades, &c. They shall, however, be employed only so long as the present necessity and the service of the Company require them for the suppression of the thefts of the Hottentoots, who are further to be frightened by placing two cannons at the "Schoor," which might also protect the people beyond the Liesbeek (the neighbours opposite); and a two-pounder on the redoubt "Coornhoop," where one is lying already, so as to protect to the north the farms of H. Boom and J. Reiniersz, and to the south that of Steven. A four-pounder shall also be placed on the "Bosheuvel," for the better protection of the sawyers, and 20 of the worst cattle sent out with the paid men, to be left apparently slightly guarded, and as if feeding, in charge of one or two herds, in order to entice the Hottentoots to approach the spot where our men are in ambush.

Not one of the stowaways having been sent back from St. Helena, their accounts are to be closed and their wages confiscated. (Here follow their names.) The steward of the *Zuylen* punished

1659.

—

for dishonesty. His place is taken by Arien Fop, quartermaster, who is again succeeded by Jan van Lingen.

Cornelis Luyten, of Amsterdam, made master gardener, and Goris Claasz : made quartermaster.

May 30th.—Fine weather. To-day the cattle were sent out, as planned in yesterday's meeting.

May 31st.—Fair weather. The Commander went out with 4 horses and 6 soldiers to inspect everything and show himself with such a small attendance where the men were in ambush, to see whether the Hottentoots would not attack him, as they had boasted that they would look out for him, thinking that then they would have the mastery over the whole establishment ; but some distance behind the mountain it became very dark and commenced to drizzle. He, therefore, turned back, and postponed it for a while. The freemen were encouraged by seeing the guns brought to the country for their defence, and ready to supply oxen to bring them to the spots fixed upon ; also to cut palisades for the strong kraal at the "Schnuur" on condition of being paid for their trouble, for in these troublous times men are wanted in various ways.

June 1st.—Fine weather. Pentecost.

June 2nd.—Ditto. *Resolution* : This morning the sergeant returned and reported that last night 50 or 60 Hottentoots, led by Doman and other well-known fellows, had been very nearly approached, our people having concealed themselves in 3 ambuscades, and no doubt he would have given a good account of them, had his men not been prematurely discovered by the carelessness of the burgher H. Remajenne. It was, therefore, resolved to resume the attempt, the sooner the better, and for that purpose that the Commander and Skipper Steven Foran, of the *Zuylen*, the fiscal, 3 or 4 horses and some soldiers, should proceed beyond the Bosheuvel, as if for the purpose of inspecting the farms—to which the Hottentoots are accustomed—and at night to return with the same number of men, and to let the sergeant remain out with 18 or 20 of the best soldiers, and proceed quietly during the night to the Bosheuvel to the 20 lean cattle, placed there as a decoy under the care of 5 herds, in order to deceive the Hottentoots in one way or another, and if possible give them a hard hit, for with our present small force nothing can be done to them in any other way. Four powerful slaves are likewise to join this party, armed with assegais, in order to capture some of the fugitive Hottentoots alive.

June 3rd.—Windy from the N.W., cold and rainy. The Commander and his men went out for the purpose mentioned in the above resolution, and learnt from the cattle guard that they had seen the Hottentoots still at the Bosheuvel, and kept up a conversation with them, by shouting, as they were beyond the range of the small arms. Doman was the chief, and other well-known rascals were with him. They said they did not wish to do the Dutch any harm, but only wanted their cattle. Caspar Brinkman, who had been robbed of 19 cattle and 67 sheep (all that he had),

had also spoken with the thieves, who wished to know whether he had received others from the Commander, as in that case they would soon have them also, and drive them to their camp, which is so well hidden that at present it would be very difficult for us to find it. More zealous care is therefore used to capture some of the rogues, who will be made to show us the camp, so that we may manage to give them a good fight, as it is necessary that they should be intimidated.

June 4th.—Windy and bleak; heavy rain and storm.

June 5th.—The same N.W. weather; thunder and lightning during the night.

June 6th.—The same, but not quite so bad.

June 7th.—The same, so that we could do nothing. Our people can effect nothing against the thieves, nor can the latter do anything against us. During the whole week they have been vainly trying to get at our cattle, and we have done our best, without success, to capture their persons; but we hope to fall in with them once again in fine weather, and that God the Lord will be with us.

Resolution, June 7th.—“Whereas it has pleased the Lord recently to visit us for our transgressions with mortality among the Company’s cattle, with thefts committed by the Hottentoots in war on two of the burghers, and also with murder, every disaster falling upon us suddenly, to our great injury and oppression, and to the utter ruin of some of the farmers; although we always have been and still are disposed to live on terms of the greatest friendship with the said people: seeing, however, that this did not help, but that we have been obliged to have recourse to arms to oppose their violence, in which there has hitherto been no abatement, it is decided to have every Wednesday afternoon at 4 p.m. a fasting or prayer sermon to ward off the anger of God from us by praying and beseeching, to assist us by His power against our enemies, in order to conquer them and retain our victory, and so henceforth live on the same former friendly footing with them. Notice to be given to the congregation after the morning service next Sunday, so that each may prepare himself and proceed at the appointed time to the usual place for holding divine service.”

June 8th, 9th, 10th and 11th.—The same wet weather.

June 12th.—Fine and clear, with a S. breeze. The *Zuylen* leaves and the freemen return to Dassen Island.

June 13th and 14th.—Fine weather.

June 15th.—The same. Wet in the afternoon. The Commander, the fiscal, six soldiers and another person went out, and about half an hour from the fort they heard that not a quarter of an hour ago Heudrik Boom had been robbed of all his cattle, 30 in number, and 34 sheep, by about 20 well-known Hottentoots, headed by Doman; that the cattle were grazing in the nook on the slope of the Windberg, in charge of three men provided, one with a musket and two with short firelocks, of whom one was wounded in the shoulder, one only in his sleeve, and the third was

1659.

—

killed by five assegay wounds. We thought to overtake them with the horses, but they were so quick in driving the cattle on across the flat that we could nowhere get a sight of them. The Commander therefore returned late at night without effecting anything, having here and there issued orders to try whether we could not catch them at night in some of the passes which they must necessarily use, as they know how to hide themselves everywhere, and seeing a few men only with the cattle, and the chances very favourable, carry off the animals. The farmers themselves are chiefly to be blamed, particularly Hendrik Boom, as he always, against our orders, grazes his cattle so far from the rest in these dangerous times. They even compelled the soldiers given them individually to guard their cattle, to herd them apart, otherwise they would have been strong enough to defend each other, for 10 of the Company's men are ordered to attend on them, who are also 10 in number. They are therefore 20 in all, and within musket shot of each other, besides six others in charge of the Company's sheep and working cattle, so that if they had not separated, they would not have suffered this disaster. But each one seems to prefer his own mind to well arranged orders, and therefore Boom has lost his sheep and cattle, whilst his corn and dairy farms are (May God better it) in the dust.

June 16th.—Dirty and rainy. The boat arrives from Dassen Island with oil, and reports that the new shed at Robben Island has been blown down. A letter was at once sent to Oberhagen with notice that the master carpenter and two mates are in the boat to repair the damage, with a month's provisions for seven men. The thatch is to be taken off carefully, and a lot of garden seeds are sent.

June 17th.—Boisterous, N.W. weather; hail and rain. Just after noon Doman, with 50 or 60 Hottentoots, made an attack on the Company's cattle and those of Harman's mates. It was during a very dark and severe shower of rain, when one could not see five roods away, close to the Company's granary, between the Company's orchard and the bridge, opposite to Harman's houses. Harman saved his by driving them over the bridge, which was very near, but 29 of the Company's were driven off, and four to death. Our men, because it was so wet, could only get two or three shots at the Hottentoots, who managed to avoid the bullets cleverly, as they can do it, and they fled with the cattle at such a pace up the slope of the Windberg, and thence down again over the Brakke River, somewhat to the north of J. Reynierz's house, that none of our men or the burghers, who were all on their legs, could get up in time to intercept them there or anywhere else. Had our men not been up very quickly, the whole troop would have been lost, for about 20 Hottentoots at once attacked the animals, whilst the rest placed themselves in the order of battle to keep our men off, but, though on account of the wet weather we could not fire, they were unable to hold their ground, but were put to flight, and

so the best part of the cattle, excepting 29, were recovered. If it had been dry all would have been recovered and some of the Hottentoots shot besides. Our men could only perceive that one Hottentoot threw away his assegays, and that another, after a shot was fired, fell so that he rolled over and over three or four times down the hill, but whether he rose again himself or was carried off by his people no one knew. The other saved himself by flight, and it is therefore difficult to say whether he is heavily or slightly wounded. This also agrees with the report of the fiscal, who, when he heard the news, at once went thither for information.

June 18th.—Same boisterous weather. The Fiscal leaves to carry out the various instructions given. The boat was obliged to put back as the weather was too bad to reach the island, and it had lost its rudder.

June 19.—Fine weather. The wind S.S.E. The boat leaves for the island, and another for Dassen Island. As the kraal at the granary has been completed with thick poles planted close to each other as palisades, and the cattle can now be secure during the night, the whole lot of the Company and most of the sheep were sent thither, also all the stock of the freemen, to be herded with that of the Company as the pasture near the fort would be insufficient for all, and in this way the Company's ploughing oxen would be better protected by the 40 soldiers in charge of all being drawn together in one locality, and by the agriculturists and others who are lying in wait in different places. The freemen are also permitted, should they require cattle for work, to take their own from the general troop, but at their own risk during the time in which they make use of them. This arrangement is necessary, as many small herds depastured in different places cannot be so securely watched as one big troop by all the herdsmen together. It is to be hoped that it will diminish the attempts made by the Hottentoots to steal our cattle.

June 20th.—The same fine lovely weather. *Resolution* :—"As it was hoped that by the measures last adopted the cattle still left in our possession—among which are many fine young oxen fit next year for the plough—would be well protected, it was considered that a company of 30 or 40 men might besides be mustered to visit the Caapmen in their encampments, whose whereabouts we have hitherto failed to discover, as we have not yet succeeded in making a prisoner who might be induced by compulsion or otherwise to show us the spot. Herry will therefore be brought over from the island and employed for the purpose, but well secured. Golden promises as big as mountains will be made to him, but none will be held binding; and as the weather is fine a row-boat will be sent over at once."

Signed by J. v. RIEBEECK,

R. DE MAN,

A. GABBEMA,

G. VAN CAMPEN,

Secret.

1659.

Immediately after the Council's rising the Fiscal went out on horseback, according to daily custom, to see that all was in proper order, and on arriving at the corner of the Windberg one of the fishermen's servants ran up from the river to meet him and tell him that some Hottentoots had shown themselves there—he could not say how many—and that they were rapidly marching nearer. The fisherman's wife had therefore fled to the fort Duinchoop, which was near, and whence the report was also brought hither. Every preparation for defence was made, and the Commander, looking out from the roof of the *Cat*, saw them, and the Fiscal and the fisherman's servants going up to them. They appeared to number about 20. Some musketeers and the stable boy, all mounted, were sent after him, but before they had gone a quarter of the way he could see through the telescope that the Fiscal was coming with them in this direction round the high sand hills of Salt River. We believed that he (the Fiscal) had captured them, but on their reaching the fort we learnt, thank God ! that our good luck was still greater, and that, as Eva had constantly predicted, they were 7 men with 15 sheep sent by her brother-in-law, Oedasoa, the chief of the powerful Cochoquas, who stated that their chief offered and assured us his firm, unchangeable peace and closer alliance, though the Caapmen had endeavoured to draw him away from us : that they and the Gorachouquas, or tobacco thieves, had some weeks ago, just before the last stormy weather, sent to him and his fellow chief, Ngonomoa, presents of copper and tobacco, and asked for his assistance or for permission to remove towards the interior in order no longer to be injured by the Dutch, or have their people confined in the fort. They also said a great deal of evil against us to make him despise and hate us, but Oedasoa and Ngonomoa would not believe the Caapmen, &c., but sent them about their business with their presents, though Ngonomoa being rather covetous would have been inclined to take them. They had therefore also called home all their people living among the Gorachouquas that they might not suffer from the Dutch if we attacked that tribe.

We told them that they had acted prudently, and we were pleased with their conduct, as we would have felt it very much if any of their people had been made to suffer with these rogues.

They further stated that Ngonomoa had allowed himself to be frightened by the Caapmen's talking to such an extent that they (Phe) were afraid to send men to the fort, whilst Oedasoa had been warned to look out at what he did. The two chiefs had differed so much on this point that Oedasoa had told the other to go away with his share of people and cattle, and that he would take care of himself, &c ; that he was sufficiently old and wise, and required no advice from Ngonomoa about making war and peace. They had then separated—Ngonomoa intended to watch the termination of the dispute and to keep out of the way ; not in any way assisting

the Caapmen and Gorachouquas, but, if all went well, proposing to trade with the Dutch as before.

Oedasoia, however, had, as Eva had often declared, remained constant to his purpose to send his men to us to hear how things were going on here, and whether the Commander really intended war with the Caapmen, so that he might rely upon it, and with the Commander take steps to ruin the Caapmen. He therefore wished Eva and some Dutchmen to visit him, and promised that not the smallest piece of skin on their bodies would be harmed. That he would be prepared to come near to the Leopard Mountains and behind the salt pans, with 10 or 12 houses, and send his chief and favourite wife, Eva's sister, strongly escorted, to the Fort and in company with our people, that they might convey to us the words of his own mouth. On his side he affirmed that the Dutch and his people together would be able to manage in such a way that the Cape men and tobacco thieves would not much longer create any commotion and disturbance. We were only to take care that they stole from us as little cattle as possible, and not to trouble ourselves about those already stolen, as our loss would be repaid twice over. Moreover he would sell us by barter as much as we wanted. He was only too glad that we had become the enemies of the Caapmen, and wished that never again thoughts of peace with them would be entertained, as he on his side never could do because those rascals were never accustomed to keep peace very long, and could not live without stealing and murdering, or conduct themselves peacefully. They were always trying to attack one or other tribe at its weakest side and most unexpectedly, as he Oedasoia had once personally experienced, when he had been defeated by another tribe of the far interior. With the remnant of his people that had escaped with their cattle, lying wounded in their huts and thoroughly helpless, or having fled and lying hidden here and there, the Caapmen not only robbed them of the remnant of their herds but also killed everything that could not defend itself, murdering them most frightfully, including women and children; yea! the pregnant women they had cut open and thrown the unborn babes on the ground, treading them under foot. This happened shortly before we came to reside here, and he would never forget it, but having now recovered his former power and his wounds being healed, he would have paid them off long ago, if he did not think that we were in too close an alliance with them, because we lived on their lands, where he now hoped to live with us in peace and have free access to the Dutch to trade with them. All this pleased us much, and we treated these messengers finely. They had greatly raised the courage of the burghers and free agriculturists, who now saw their way clear, as they thought, to obtain sufficient cattle and so recover themselves.

The messengers also stated that Oedasoia had collected a few rhinoceros horns for us, and also caught a young horse with the intention of sending it alive to the Commander; it had, however,

1659.

beer too deeply wounded with the assegay and so it had died. They trusted however soon to get others. This, however, could not be done at once, because of the wound caused by the lion to his elbow, which confined him to his hut, as if he was, as they said, a woman. When the alliance between him and us shall be concluded, and we shall have had a further and personal interview with him, he will do his best to send his people to the interior for tusks, &c.

They were told to inform Oedasoá that if he wished to visit the Fort, a wagon would be sent for him. and a proper house furnished, that he might be cured by our surgeons, whilst he would have to eat and to drink as much as he liked. This was interpreted to them by Eva, and they replied that if they arrived home with our people they would convey to him our offers, and persuade him to accept them. Eva asked them for us whether they would show us the camp of the Cape men, for we would, in that case, send a number of soldiers with them, in order to give those Capemen a sound thrashing. This would show our good will towards Oedasoá, and also that we were thoroughly in earnest. They replied that they had received no orders on the subject, but to tell us, among other things, that we might be sure that when Oedasoá had heard them, he would consider the means proposed quite sufficient, and send us information, in order that their old enemies, who have lately become ours also, might be entirely destroyed. We were, however, to take good precautions in the meantime against further losses and inconvenience, and practise a little patience. We were not to be in too great a hurry, in order to proceed against them, &c. When they were shown the large assegay of Doman and some others taken in various encounters, they said that that was sufficient proof to assure them, and at the sight nearly jumped for joy, saying that Oedasoá was heartily sorry that our cattle had been stolen by the rogues, which he had sold to us for friendship's sake. We were, however, to be patient, and make our hearts so hard towards the Capemen that they will never again—like Oedasoá's—become soft, but remain as iron. If they observed that (in him) they knew that Oedasoá intended to do something, and would tell us something of his plans and so induce us that soon an end will be made of the rogues, and, by means of his alliance and friendship, we might have full satisfaction and a peaceful trade and intercourse with all, and a peaceful dwelling—a thing to be desired.

During the night news arrived that the Hottentoots had attempted to break into the house of Otto, a freeman, and to murder all, but the inmates having got up and fired at the marauders, had escaped by the latter's running away. Otto was most accidentally shot in the leg with 5 pellets by his mate Roseudaal. The fiscal and surgeon were sent out for further information and to dress the wound.

Yesterday afternoon the sloop returned with Herry on board, but as Oedasoá's people were here, and as Eva knew nothing of

his arrival, we decided that for several reasons he should be sent back without landing. So that the poor devil must have yesterday passed through a variety of sensations: of anxiety and of joy; for, yesterday, when he heard from the men of the *Schuaapejacht* what had occurred with the Caapmen, he pretended to fall very ill, and when this morning he saw a sloop suddenly arrive purposely to fetch him, the pallor of death suddenly fell on his features. When, however, our men showed him the clothes, shirt, coat, and hat which he had to put on, he thought he had been restored to favour; but when, on reaching the jetty, he found that he was to return instantly, one can imagine in what a glorious state of uncertainty he finds himself at present.

Only 100 of the 500 sheep on the island were still alive. The carpenters were busy rebuilding the stables, whose posts had been wrenched from its stone supports, causing the roof to fall.

The mortality among the sheep here is not so great, but the thefts of the Hottentots are so much worse; so that God the Lord has been pleased for a time to visit us on all sides. With hope we hope that soon we shall again receive His blessing. Amen.

June 21st.—The same fine weather. Another interview between Commander Riebeeck and Oedaso's deputation. The latter stated that Oedaso wished them to propose to the Dutch Chief never again to make peace with the Caapmen and tobacco thieves. We replied, that if Oedaso was as upright towards us as we were towards him, we were ready to promise it. They said, "That is good," for Oedaso's only object is to destroy the Caapmen, who had deserved it from both sides, as had been stated by them yesterday. That as soon as our men went inland, and had Caapmen as their guides, the latter had always begged Oedaso to deliver the Europeans to them, especially the late Jan van Harwarden. He had always replied that they were rogues, as he always desired that our people should return to the fort without a thread of their clothes being injured.

The Caapmen were, moreover, very jealous because the Commander had sent Oedaso presents by a wagon and escort. This they would like henceforth to prevent by war, but if we were resolved never again to make peace with them, except with the consent of Oedaso, there was a chance of chasing them all into such a trap that not one could escape.

We said "Yes," and, to make them even better disposed, we added that we no longer dared to refrain from destroying them, otherwise our God of Heaven, whom Eva is also learning to know, but of Whom these robbers do not wish to know anything, would punish us, as the blood of His people, which these rascals had so murderously shed, cried out to Him for vengeance, and we were therefore bound to take such an interest in the matter, that we must pursue them without ceasing.

They replied, that that was the word expected by Oedaso from the Commander, and for that reason he had deputed them, and also to

1659.

—

inform us that the kindness of the Dutch had become so generally known inland that every one wished to see or visit them. This, however, the Caapmen endeavoured to prevent in all possible ways ; but when this “word” of the Commander shall be known to all, everyone will endeavour to bring on whatever can be found in the country if they only knew what we wanted, even including the Chobonas, the Dutch name being so favourably and extensively known.

They were told that we had for a long time endeavoured to meet with such a great lord in order to form a permanent alliance with him, and whom we were prepared to supply with everything in the form of trade. He and all the inhabitants of the interior should therefore consider the matter, and what we did not have at present, we could order with our ships from Holland, India and all parts of the earth.

They said that Oedasoia had all along desired this, but he had always been seduced by the Caapmen. It was, however, his purpose now, in accordance with the word of the Commander, to locate himself here where the Caapmen lived, and to furnish us with as much cattle as we wanted, in order gratefully to enjoy the advantage of which the Caapmen had made an ungrateful use for a long while, and had also at present, and according to their natures (as they said) repaid it with theft and murder.

When Oedasoia is living in the neighbourhood he wishes to visit the Commander and receive that pleasant treatment from the Dutch which two brothers of one heart and soul would render each other. This is the intention of Oedasoia, they said, and as they had said enough and what they had said could be depended on, they begged to be allowed to depart, with a wagon and as much people as the Commander pleased, that the embassy having been completed on both sides, further plans might be made, and the question settled whether the Caapmen were to be attacked by the allies combined or separately and at different places.

We told them through Eva that the Fiscal had gone out to fetch a wagon and collect the people according to their wish, who were to go with them, but they insisted on leaving at once, as Oedasoia would otherwise be kept too long in suspense. We told them that it would be impossible for them to leave before to-morrow morning, as our men were away in different places looking out for the Caapmen, and could not be home before the evening, that the wagons were outside on the lands, &c. We also wished to send a good present to Oedasoia, and send it properly, as it is customary in the case of such great lords, by the hands of a person who could fully express our views. This seemed to please them, and they decided to remain. They were treated with food and liquor most kindly. God grant that they may be as sincere as we are ; something good might then result to the Company, as they propose to us only to tell them what we want, when they will do their best to obtain it if it is at all to be had, no matter where, and also promise to protect our people wherever they may be travelling.

June 21st (Sunday)—*Resolution*:—“It having appeared from the interviews with Oedaso’s men that this chief of the Cochoquas, or real Saldanhars, is sincere towards us, and it being plain also that everybody had this opinion of him from the first; further that he is encamped with a force of many thousands just right across the bay behind (beyond) the wreck of the *Haarlem* on the other side of the tail of the *Leopard Mountain*, mostly north by east, and about half a day’s journey from this; moreover, considering that his offer to enter into a closer alliance should certainly be accepted, and not the least idea of rejecting it be entertained, and that his deputations should not leave without the assurance of our inclination in that respect; also that his force is too great for us to oppose, and war with him would be too expensive for the Company, for we see already that with all the Company’s force and that of the freemen, we cannot prevent the robberies and murders committed by the two small tribes of Caapmen and tobacco thieves, so that it would not be advisable to make more enemies, but on the contrary, to make friends, the most pleasant course in the sight of God, especially when such friendship is formed with those always known as discreet, and from whom the Company mostly obtained all its cattle by friendly barter, and who, should they see their messengers (who had come to us confidently and at great peril during this time of war) return without the necessary respect or a decided answer—and that the Gorachouquas and Goringaiquas alone could thus annoy us—could with their innumerable forces reduce us to much greater straits and give us something very different to do, yea, so much so that not only would no one be able to live in any part of the country, but no one would even be able to work with safety in the Company’s garden, or fetch fuel, which must be brought from a distance, and for other weighty reasons more:—it was resolved to accept Oedaso’s offer and allow his request to send Eva to him (his wife’s sister), reported by the Goringaiquas as kept in chains by us, and also some of our men as ambassadors in the same confiding manner as he had done, and just as many as we liked, the number being quite indifferent to him, who might confer with him by means of the interpretation of Eva, and further hear his plans and offers for ruining the Gorachouquas and Goringaiquas, our and his enemies, and take measures with him for that object.

The deputation having declared that 10 Dutchmen would be sufficient, and seeing that although a hundred went, their reception would be just the same if the intentions of this chief were evil, considering the great number of his people, and if we were to send many, who would naturally be picked men, a misfortune to them would seriously weaken us and the garrison; or should our enemies attack the detachment on the road, it was decided in order to be better protected and oppose a large number successfully, to select 13 of the best men under the command of the sergeant, and to give them a wagon for greater security, which would also convey in a proper manner the presents to Oedaso, which

1659.

—

they consider as a great honour, and, as they stated, would be spread through the whole land to the honour of their lord. He will therefore himself be pleased very much, and be thoroughly convinced of our inclination for an unbreakable friendship and alliance. Our men were therefore ordered, after having greeted Oedaso, and delivered the presents, to state as follows: That his first embassy and offer of alliance had been very pleasing to us, and that we, wishing to reciprocate the same, not only permit his wife's sister Eva to return to him, but also send a deputation to assure him of our kindly feelings towards him. In proof of this the Commander had sent him these presents, with the request that he would receive them as from a brother of one heart and mind with him, and that he would send our people back with an answer as soon as possible, either in company of some of his own people or himself, to enable us to discuss affairs with each other.

That it would be very pleasant to us if he would order some of his people either alone, or assisted by some of our men, to search for and spy out the hiding place of his and our enemies. Could he show us the place, he would find how much in earnest we were to injure them, &c. Should he propose to attack the Caapmen at once with the 13 men and some of his people, the offer should be politely declined from motives of policy, with the excuse that no authority for the purpose had been entrusted to the deputation. They were to draw from him what his plans were, &c., and reply to everything that they would report it to the Commander, with whom he might treat personally or by deputy, whilst he might freely let his people come to the fort to sell cattle. For various reasons the Council did not deem it expedient to proceed inland with merchandize, and every effort should be made to induce the natives to come to the fort, in order that the chances of disaster might be confined to a minimum, and more security obtained, &c."—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Gabbema, Pieter Everarts, and Gysbert van Campen, Secretary.

June 22nd.—The same fine weather. The deputation leaves in a wagon drawn by 6 oxen about 8 a.m., escorted by the fiscal and 2 horsemen, who are daily out watching the approach of the enemy as far as the Brak Rivier. God grant that this chief may be sincere, and that our men may return in safety and with the desired result.

June 23rd.—Bleak windy weather. N.W. wind. The *Penguin* returns from Dassen Island with 6 half aums of train oil. News from Robben Island brought by the boat informed us that the sheep shed was nearly completed; that a number of sheep had died off, until only about 100 were left, whilst there was no sign of the mortality diminishing. The rabbits were multiplying beautifully.

Late in the evening our deputation returned with 6 other commissioners from Oedaso, amongst them his sister's son and the interpretess Eva. The sergeant reported that Oedaso had sent

some men to meet him a good distance from his camp, and with great pleasure accepted the greeting and the presents sent by the Commander; and that on learning our friendly disposition, and what further the Sergeant had been ordered to say, had placed his hand in his bosom, as if he was grasping at his heart, and said *Look! it is impossible to draw my heart of flesh from my body: if it could be done I would send it to the Commander, but let him take the soul out of it for himself, in order to unite it with his that the two may never again be sundered*, and tell him that I intend to visit him as soon as possible, in order to weld our hearts together like pieces of iron, and make them so hard that no one will be able to break or tear them asunder." He was also rejoiced that we now saw that the plundering Goringhaiquas and Gorachoquas were nothing but rogues and banditti, and that it was his particular vocation and office to punish such people; that he was going to consult his Council, who were the elders of his people, and after that orally commune with the Commander to tell him how to catch them, having a better knowledge of the nature of the country and its people than we possessed. The Sergeant suggested that he should only give one or two men to show us where they were encamped, and that then with the help of God we would conquer them, but, as he is a particularly quiet and civilised person he had briefly said: "It is good; the Commander need not be in such a hurry, but should be a little patient. As soon as I see him I will tell him everything, and give him such good counsel as will satisfy him. He will find that a little waiting will do him no harm, but be all the better, and secure a victory over the robbers."

Upon this our men, who had arrived there only this morning, civilly requested permission to return; this was at once granted, and he also gave 2 sheep to our men with Eva, and 6 of his people who were unarmed and only had walking sticks in their hands, a sign that they fully entrusted themselves to our keeping.

He was very thin from the constant pain of the wound received from the lion in the first hunt for a horse, which he had got up for us, as his surgeon could not heal him. He therefore hoped to get better assistance from ours; his wife, Eva's sister, was also not very well. When the two saw each other they did not speak for a long time because of their joy, nor could Eva interpret for our people for that reason. She continually lay her arms round the shoulders of Oedaso's wife, a sign that she was liked by her sister. Oedaso excused himself for not sending any cattle to us at present, as a great mortality had broken out among them, and also among his sheep, since he had been wounded. He would, however, take care that we did not want. According to the statement of our men, Eva reported that as soon as our people had arrived, Oedaso ordered all the women and men to leave, excepting his councillors, or elders, saying: "Though I am wise enough to perform my duty and govern my people, still it is the calling of you who are old and for a long time had experience in the world, to assist me with your

advice in overeverything and also with deeds, in cases of emergency, and particularly now. You will, therefore, be pleased to state what measures are now to be adopted in my own and our people's interest." The Elders replied as follows (according to Eva, who was leaning on her sister's shoulder), "Oh king, we see that great good fortune is at present hanging over your head, for as you, and Ngonomoa, who is next to or under you, are the mightiest of all the land, all must retire when they think that you are approaching; moreover because of your friendly nature you are much better loved than Ngonomoa, and when it is known that you have formed an alliance with the Dutch nation the whole world will consider you as the most powerful lord of the whole land, and try and keep on good terms with you in order to enjoy the Dutch goods, which you alone will henceforth have in your hands and power. Because of their thieving natures neither the Gorachouquas nor Gorinchaiquas have been able to understand this or make use of it for their own advantage. Therefore be prudent and arrive at a good understanding with the Dutch, otherwise others will immediately, upon seeing your diffidence, offer a firm friendship to the Dutch, and work you out like your enemies did with themselves, making such a clever nation their enemies, from whom they might have obtained such benefit and enjoyment, independently of that respect for their power, which has deterred even thee, during all the time since these people settled here, from even thinking of attacking these robbers, the most insignificant of your enemies, as you feared that the Dutch might take their part, as they (the robbers) always persuaded you to believe. It can therefore easily be imagined in what dread they will hold you, as you yourself are moreover a hundred times stronger and more powerful than these robbers, who are but a handful over against your land full of people." This, said Eva, is the substance of what the elders said to Oedaso, who had replied that he also understood the matter in the same light, and would use it to his advantage. Our people also confirmed the above, stating that as often as Eva interpreted to him an address, he first consulted the elders before he replied. This shows that he must be a very great chief, and of much consideration, one provided with councillors, with whom he discusses all affairs. Hence it is to be hoped that something good will be effected with him, and may the Almighty bless the work commenced, it being always better to live in friendship and alliance with those willing to trade and have friendly intercourse than with those who are principally disposed by nature to highway robberies, with whom we have hitherto been having intercourse in too civil a manner and under great difficulties. Now however we hope, judging from appearances, to have intercourse with good people, who are favourably inclined towards us, and instead of robbing us offer to assist in protecting us against the robbers, and to obtain for us from the interior whatever we may require, cattle also, which is the most important thing of all, for which we have long laboured and wished. Among these people

we may possibly in course of time and with better hopes of success spread a knowledge of God, seeing that the rudiments of religion already existing in Eva is by her being communicated to her people as occasion serves.

Eva further states that according to Oedasoa the cattle first stolen from us had been offered to him by them, together with some copper and tobacco, saying, "These are of your cattle, take them back, and let us be reconciled to each other as regards former quarrels, &c." That Oedasoa, however, had replied, "No, as in that case I would be a rogue on earth if I received back from the hands of robbers what I have bartered away. If I wished to have them I could easily send for them and take them away from you, therefore leave me with your stolen goods, &c." It was his intention to acquaint the Commander with all this at once, and for that purpose he had already despatched his messengers, but the wet and cold stormy weather had three times compelled them to turn back, so that against his will he had been obliged to study patience.

June 24th.—Fine, clear sunshine and fickle air. The following Resolution adopted with consent of the burgher councillors:—"The naughtiness committed by the burgher Elbert Dirkx: and the servant of his mother-in-law Hans Jacobsz: on the 10th last, viz., that they scaled the walls of the outer works and quietly removed the matchlock of the sentry, without, however, finding him asleep, as he was easing himself. The latter following them, and asking them to restore his matchlock, was moreover struck by them, as if they were not Christians but barbarians, as they had no orders to inspect the guards of the fort, but merely to call out to them when passing. But even this they had not done, nor did they answer when challenged. They have therefore committed a serious crime, which might have had dangerous results especially in these times of war, and if brought to the notice of the military court, would produce disastrous consequences. The Commander therefore, taking pity on the wife of Elbert, decided to lay the case before the ordinary Council, strengthened with the burgher councillors, who from pure pity decided not to bring the matter before the military court, but to fine Elbert 6 reals of eight, and Hans Jacobsz: 4 reals, and to permit the Fiscal to arrange with them regarding his lawful fees. They shall, however, in addition pay double gaoler's fees." (Signed) Johan van Riebeeck, Roelof de Man, (the mark of) Hendrik Boom, (the mark of) Jan Reyniersz: and Gysbert van Campen, secretary."

June 26th.—Dark cloudy weather. N.W. fresh breeze and showers. Nevertheless the Commander and some burghers went out, and the latter showed him behind the mountains various narrow passages by means of which seven years ago the Hottentoots for the first time drove off the Company's cattle. He accordingly ordered these places for the present to be covered with caltrops, that if our cattle be again stolen our people may know where and who

1659.

to pursue them, and by means of side paths come up with and recover them, at the same time preventing the escape of the thieves. On these spots our men have nothing to do, there being neither pasturage, garden or cornland there, they being quite useless for such purposes in consequence of their situation, so that there is no fear of their treading on the caltrops, of whose existence the crews of the vessels shall also be informed.

About noon Oedasoa's six men left with some copper, tobacco, knives, &c., as a present, after having been well treated. They took with them our greetings to their lord. Eva, the interpreter, accompanied them, but though we very evilly urged it they refused to let any of our men accompany them, as Oedasoa had so ordered, lest by going to and fro they might fatigue themselves too much. He had, however, requested that Eva might come and go at her pleasure, especially at the present time, in order to show him how the fruit and other dainties sent him by the Commander were to be handled and prepared for food. She would not remain away long, but return with him that he might speak to the Commander face to face, and place himself in the care of the surgeons of the Fort, that his arm might be cured. And though Eva's departure at Oedasoa's request raised the doubts of some, we could not decide to keep her here against her will, as in that case no service would be obtainable from her, whilst by leaving her to do as she liked they would all be more and more convinced of our sincere sentiments towards them, &c.

June 27th.—Fair weather. The Commander visits the people in the country to encourage them once again, and to give directions regarding the Company's orchards and cornlands and the safe custody of the cattle, &c. He found some busy ploughing, and others, who had lost their cattle, digging in order to raise some garden fruit this season instead of corn.

June 28th.—Same weather. Early this morning the Commander went out again, but somewhat further, as far as the other side of the Bosheuvel to the spot where the whole plain can be seen from one bay to the other, but nowhere could he see any kraals of the Kaapmen, the country in consequence of the late rains being everywhere covered with water, and having the appearance of a series of lakes.

Arrival of the ship *Oranje* from Zealand the 14th February last.

Resolution, dated 28th June, 1659. "In order to tempt Oedasoa, paramount chief of the Saldanhars, the sooner to visit us, it was decided to despatch seven men to him to-day with a present of tobacco and copper, and to inform him that a vessel had arrived, and to request him to visit the Commander that he might see in what way we may be of service to him, that thus an earlier opportunity may be obtained for further negotiation, &c.

Decided also, in order to prevent smuggling among those who are no innkeepers, to fix the price of brandy sold out of the

Company's stores at 56 stivers per Mengel (2 pints). This will prevent all further irregularities."—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, Abr. Gabbema, Pieter Everarts and Gysbert v. Campen, Secretary.

June 29th.—Early in the morning our party returned and reported that Oedasoia had been found very weak, and that he would have come nearer with his camp had he not been prevented by sickness, but he hoped to come within three days, and if he remained so weak to ask for a wagon, and that he felt ashamed of the presents already sent him, in return for which he would have sent us some cattle, but that he would prefer to bring them himself when he came to the fort. &c

His Confrater or Secunde, Ngonomoa, had also arrived there and joined Oedasoia; he was the first to meet our people on the way, and gratefully received a small present of tobacco and copper taken from what was intended for Oedasoia. He accompanied them to the latter, and conversed with them, and obtained from them two small flags to be used by his men when they arrived at the fort with cattle, as a sign of friendship, &c.

Ngonomoa also purposed visiting the Commander. The Caapmen had the day before yesterday driven off 21 head of his cattle, which were herded only by a boy. This intensifies the enmity betwixt them, to the great advantage of the Company as we sincerely hope.

June 29th (Sunday).—Resolution: "In order to be able to effect something worth while against our enemies while this ship lies here, and without detaining her or taking any men out of her, moreover to save time and for other pregnant reasons, it was decided to send another mission to Oedasoia to-morrow, and to show him more respect, to despatch the Fiscal with a wagon as if to fetch him. He would take with him another present of tobacco, beads, copper and copper buttons, with orders to induce him by all possible kindness to accompany him back, or should he further postpone his visit, to entreat him kindly and earnestly to lend us a few of his people as guides, as we possessed soldiers enough to defeat the marauding enemy, our only difficulty being that we do not know where that enemy is, as none of the spies sent out have as yet been able to discover them."—(Signed as above.)

During the afternoon five of Oedasoia's men arrived with the message that he would be at the fort to-morrow with Eva. At nightfall nine others arrived with fifteen sheep and the same news. It was notwithstanding deemed expedient that the Fiscal should go out to-morrow with a wagon to meet him, if the weather be fine, in order to bring him here more conveniently.

June 30th.—Heavy rain in the morning; but the weather clearing up, the Fiscal proceeded by wagon to Oedasoia, the expedition consisting of eleven men. The Fiscal left on horseback. The wagon contained some presents for Oedasoia and his "confrater" Ngonomoa, who must be first passed, and might take offence if he were not remembered in some way, &c.

1659.

July 1st.—Fine clear weather. The breeze variable. A considerable number of Hottentoots again made an attack on the Commander's farm at the Bosheuvel, but as a good watch was kept, it was frustrated. Our people, however, were unable to hit them with their firearms.

Resolution of Council, July 1st.—“Fiscal Abr. Gabbema returns this afternoon, and states that he had found Oedasoa weak and full of pain, and for that reason and because a child of his, which he seemed to love very much, was ill, had been prevented from visiting us. He did not seem quite satisfied with the interpretress Eva for causing so much trouble by our journeying to and fro, and all for nothing. He did not want a wagon to convey him to the fort, as he could not bear the thumping, much less could he ride on an ox, according to their custom, so that consequently we must await his recovery (and evidently also that of his child), when he would come on slowly. It is therefore to be presumed that Eva had spoken of the wagon for her own sake, in order not to have to go on foot, and that in other matters she also imposes on us, and says more, when translating, than Oedasoa has said, for it seems that he was somewhat displeased with her, without, however, displaying any change in the desire he had expressed for a close friendship and alliance with us, and war with the Kaapmen, assuring our people that as soon as possible he would visit the Commander at the fort, as he had before said, and have a personal interview with him, in order to make further arrangements. And as the Fiscal, in passing Ngonomoa, who from various circumstances appeared to be Oedasoa's secunde, had a'so understood from Eva that it was decided that Ngonoma would have been at the fort, with her to-day, he found that on coming to Oedasoa he was restrained by the latter, who had desired the Fiscal to tell the Commander not to take further trouble in sending emissaries to him (as if he regretted the fatigue caused to those sent), for as soon as he and his child were better, he might rest assured that he would come without fail, and if prevented, he would send Ngonomoa with Eva.

But as he could not resolve at the request of the Fiscal to send one two or three men to show us where the marauders had made their encampment, and as our men on leaving Oedasoa's kraal met three Hottentoots driving to Oedasoa's kraal a bullock with a rope tied to its horns in the same way as the draught oxen of the Company—this and other matters caused some strange reflections among us, and therefore the Council, strengthened with the skipper, merchant and sergeant of the ship *Oranje* lying in the Bay, after ripe deliberation, decided again to send out ten spies from our own men in order to search for our enemies, and starting from the high “Steenbergen” to explore all their slopes, as well as the downs from False Bay to Hottentoot's Holland, about E.S.E., or in a straight line ten hours on foot from this, behind the first mountain range of Africa, so that on their return we might further consider

what would be the best next step in the interests of the Company, and how to be on our guard against the said Oedaso, as well as against the plundering but open enemy, who last night made another attack on the Bosheuvel. In the meanwhile we shall patiently await the further disclosure of Oedaso's intentions, trusting that God the Lord will turn everything for the best."—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, H. v. d. Putte, Roelof de Man, Pieter Cocq, Abr. Gabbema, Pieter Everaerts, Nathaniel Walther, and Gysbert van Campen, secretary.

July 2nd.—Same fine weather as yesterday. Ten men sent out as spies with orders to stay at the "Bosheuvel" until midnight, so as to lead the Hottentots, who are spying the cattle of the Company and the burghers from their hiding places in the Bosbergen, to suppose that they had been merely sent out to protect the farm, and then to set out over that hill along the foot of the Steenberg, taking care to arrive in the dawns of False Bay before daylight, and so quietly proceed in their search for the camp of the Kaapmen until they arrived at their point of destination.

July 3rd.—Same fine weather. Intelligence brought during the afternoon that more than 300 Hottentots had been seen behind the "Bosheuvel," dancing and leaping. Orders accordingly sent on board the *Oranje* to land a party of soldiers, to be sent out in that direction and elsewhere, in order to act against these insolent enemies. The people of Steven's and Raynier's parties also stated that everywhere along the "Bosbergen" Hottentots had been seen, so that they scarcely dared to trust themselves in their houses.

Resolution of Council:—"Whereas, according to the report of Fiscal Abraham Gabbema, no people can be obtained from Oedaso to show the way to the camp of the Kaapmen and tobacco thieves, and it was accordingly necessary to send out spies the day before yesterday, in order to endeavour to find them, and as the *Oranje* cannot render us any assistance for a decisive attack upon our marauding foes without being delayed or deprived of men, and as the spies will most likely not return before the evening of the day after to-morrow or Sunday morning, and as no fresh expedition could, even in favourable weather, be despatched before Sunday night, and as we can only march by night to avoid being discovered during the day, and to be able to surprise the enemy before dawn, as they are too quick for us in daytime, and as difficult to catch as a bird in its flight, it will be impossible to hope for any assistance from the crew of this vessel, without delaying her departure beyond Monday or Tuesday, when at the furthest she will be ready to sail. And as we are also too few in number to undertake any expeditions in order to protect the Company's cattle from being stolen by the marauders, and the crops and houses in the country from fire and other evils, it was decided, after mature deliberation, in order not to delay the vessel for any expedition, to exchange some men, more useful on board than on shore, for an equal number of

1659.

—

soldiers, and besides to strengthen our garrison with 25 or 26 men, and for the rest to see what can be done on the arrival of the first ships, and how in the meanwhile things will turn out. The Commander will therefore at once give the necessary instructions for the exchanges, and levies (ligtuigers) that the accounts may without loss of time be made out on both sides, that the men may for the present be stationed as guards at the necessary spots.”—(Signed as above.)

The junior merchant of the *Oranje* having this morning been at the fisherman's house at Salt River, reported that the men of Oedasoa, having returned from the fort to their homes with good presents, had on their way conducted themselves very insolently at that place, and wished by force to obtain bread and tobacco from the woman, who was alone at home, but as she had seized a musket and pointed it at them, they had gone away, with very contemptuous gestures and threats, so that we certainly are far from knowing what the result will be, and whether we are to dread them more as friends or as enemies; for as Oedasoa's men come to and go from us unarmed, we must conclude that they are not such enemies of the Kaapmen as Eva pretends in her translations; and also because we find that the marauders are beginning to show themselves everywhere in greater numbers, whilst the Fiscal only yesterday, amongst other things, reported that he had found very few people in the encampments of Oedasoa and Ngonomoa, to say nothing of the bullock with the rope attached to its horns, which they had met on their return being driven along by Oedasoa's men.

July 4th.—Full moon. Beautiful weather.

July 5th.—The same weather. The spies return, reporting that they had carefully examined the country as far as Hottentoo's Holland, but had found no sign or trace of Hottentoo or cattle. Moreover, it was so wet everywhere that they had continually to wade through the water, and up to their middles remained wet and cold day and night, so that during the rainy season nothing can be done except remaining on the defensive, and saving what we still have, besides sending out daring fellows with cattle to decoy the Hottentoes within their reach. This was already begun to-day, for which purpose some of the new men were associated with the old, to make them in good time acquainted with the roads and manner of procedure.

Resolution of the Council (same date): “The spies, sent out last Wednesday, having returned this morning without having been able to discover anything, much less the encampments of our enemies the Kaapmen, so that considerably more time must elapse before any force can be brought against them, it was decided no longer to detain the *Oranje*, but to despatch her next Monday. (Signed by) J. v. Riebeeck, H. v. d. Putte, R. de Man, P. de Cocq, Abr. Gabbema, P. Everaerts, and Gysbert V. Campen, secretary.

To-day the sheep yacht returned from Robben Island with the following letter:—"To Commander Johan van Riebeeck. Hon. Sir,—The yacht will bring you 50 fowls' eggs and 29 sheep, so that 40 still remain here. Some of them have already signs of the disease, so that it is to be feared that they will not survive. The carpenters will have their work finished by the end of next week, and the thatcher will also have enough twine until that time. Our servant requests you to send him, if you please, 4 shirts, 2 pairs of shoes, 1 chintz, and 1 lb. of tobacco. Your humble servant." (Signed) Ryk Overhagen."

In the evening about 40 Saldanhars came from Oedasoa and Ngonomoa with only 8 sheep. They pretended that they could not understand us, and it was signified to them that they should always bring Eva with them to interpret.

July 6th.—Lovely weather, as above. The said sheep were purchased from them, and, after being entertained, proceeded home, well satisfied. This day several parties were sent out in all directions among the mountains to spy out the Hottentoots just as the latter are spying for our cattle, for as we cannot discover their camping ground, it is possible that we may capture one or more, to be employed as guides.

July 7th.—Some freemen report that five or six of the Saldanhars, who left the Fort yesterday afternoon, returned straight to their camp with their little flag, and that the others at nightfall had turned back; about seven of them had hid themselves in the "Bosbergen," and the rest, about 30 in number, had gone up through the kloof, along the seashore, towards Hout Bay. It being supposed that they intended to meet again by means of that pass, and so proceed together to the "Bosbergen," and make a raid on the Company's cattle, 11 men were sent out to occupy the pass and do as much mischief to the Hottentoots as possible, and should Oedasoa complain that his men, whose only business there would be to steal, had suffered, to tell him that, as only robbers could be expected in that locality, those found there would naturally be treated as such, and that he should be told, through Eva, to keep his people out of it, or whatever else may suit for the purpose. Should the thieves, however, not be found in the Pass, it was to be presumed that they were ensconced in the Cape mountains, and that these Saldanhars had proceeded thither to speak with them, and consequently that they were all treacherous rogues together. This induces us to keep a closer watch, and it is only to be hoped that they are in hiding there, for we should then almost have them in a net; and in order to find this out the Commander intends to go out himself, in order, at the same time, to point out the several passes and approaches to the inexperienced, and show them how to guard them, &c.

Thank God, during the afternoon the ship *Het Slot van Honingen* arrived, having as skipper Sander Gerritsz van Os, and as junior merchant Willem Quarles. She carried 341 men, of whom 12 had

1659.

—

died and 40 were still in their hammocks, whilst about the same number were suffering from scurvy.

July 8th.—Wind contrary, and preventing the departure of the *Oranje*. About eight o'clock the interpretress Eva arrived with more than 50 of Oedaso's Saldanhars. They brought with them a young ox, which the fiscal, when lately returning from Oedaso's camp, had met driven by that chief's people towards his camp. Eva stated that they had found it upon the road exhausted by overdriving. It was one of those stolen from us by the Kaapmen, and which until now Oedaso had taken particular care of, in order to return it to the Commander. He wanted nothing more for it than a fathom of tobacco as a recompense to the finder for having found and taken care of it. Further he offered his excuses and gratitude for the last deputation sent to him under the leadership of the Fiscal. At the time he felt so ashamed that he did not know what to do, seeing that one of the greatest of the Dutch had been sent with a wagon to meet him. For that he felt extremely obliged, and he certainly would have come down if his illness caused by his wounded arm had not prevented him, as well as that of his youngest child and the recent death of the mother of his wife, who was also the mother of Eva, about two or three days previously, and for whom he was still mourning.

Among the men who accompanied her there were five who had expressly come to have a personal interview with the Commander, and among these again one of the elders whom he had entrusted with the secrets to be communicated to us, having instructed Eva to interpret the same to us just as he uttered them, which secrets, however, were still unknown to her. They also desired to rest and wait until to-morrow morning early, in order then, as on the first occasion, to communicate their charge. This was granted, and they were shown a resting place and afforded all suitable entertainment, as well as their attendants, after the 25 sheep and three bullocks brought by them had been bartered from them.

Eva said that Ngongnomoa also intended to come, but that Oedaso had not wished it, saying that when he was in better health Ngongnomoa and all the chiefs and great men of the Cochoquas camps—who knows how many in number—would accompany him if he came himself.

Questioning her often on this point, we found her answers somewhat conflicting, contradicting herself when she said that Oedaso, as soon as he had shown us where the Kaapmen were encamped, intended to depart with all his tribe, and that she had therefore come to obtain a considerable quantity of tobacco for him, to last him for a long while, and that she had let fall from her, with a half sigh, that she would never again see Dutch people.

Afterwards in the evening, when talking with her again on the subject, she said that Oedaso did not know what was the matter with the country here about, as every day many cattle and considerable numbers of his sheep died off; and that this was the

reason why (to his great shame, as she said) he could not accommodate the Commander with any cattle in return for the many kindnesses he had received, and that therefore he intended to leave and look for better pasture further inland. However, to-morrow morning early his emissaries would explain everything further.

July 9th.—Hazy weather, and the wind variable. *Het Schapenjack'je* sent to Robben Island with the following letter to Ryk Overhagen :—"With this you receive provisions for yourself, the boy, one slave, one female slave and Herry. This boat will remain until the carpenters have finished their work, which we believe will be to-day. They shall therefore return with the yacht, also the thatcher, who is required here, for there will now be sufficient shelter there for the few sheep that are left. That the rabbits breed well is good, but this cannot recompense us for the loss of the sheep. However, you shall carefully attend to their further increase, and we must wait and see whether the Lord God will be pleased to grant us a fresh increase of the sheep that have survived. But to send you any more we could not approve. *Sieur de Man* sends you the change of clothing for the boy at his cost. You may give it to him," &c.—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck and Roeloff de Man.

This morning the Commander summoned the six emissaries of Oedasoia (one of whom was his son) to his office within the fort in order to appear before the Council. But they had nothing more important to say than that their master could as yet hardly believe that we were serious in our intentions against the Caapmen, and that therefore they had come here to hear it exactly once more. They were asked how Oedasoia could thus think of us, as we and the Caapmen were not of the same race of men, but that he and the Caapmen were, and that therefore we had more reason to distrust him than he had to distrust us, although—as we let him know, we had never thought of doing so, or had had the slightest suspicion, which, however, we are already beginning to entertain, and more and more so every day—we did not let them know this, that they were daily conspiring with one another to find means to ruin the Company's establishment here, a fact proved by the following arguments advanced by them, viz. :—That Oedasoia warned us to be our guard, because the Caapmen were taking measures (how could they know it unless they were in daily communication) soon to carry off not only all the cattle which the country people still possessed, but also to murder them, their wives and children one after the other, including the fisherman's house and the redoubt Duiynhoop, stating how they intended to proceed in order finally to surprise the fort, whose earthen walls they had sufficient courage to scale, and when once inside to break open all the houses and kill all the people, with other similar statements; saying also that they had heard from Doman that he had long since examined with this object every circumstance of the Dutch, and that in order to make an immediate commencement he was

1659.

lying not far from here with the Gorachouquas, Goringhaiquas, Ankeysoa, and all the beach rangers and vagrants he could scrape together. We were therefore to be on our guard, as Oedasoia intended to go away to look for other pastures for his cattle, among which there was a great mortality, and that for the present he would not return, and that therefore he requested a rather large quantity of tobacco, bread and other things that they might last him for a considerable time.

All these things were promised them, and they were then asked whether they had no orders to let two or three men accompany our people, to show the latter where our enemies were located. Hardly any answer could be obtained to this, but at last it came out that they were first to inform Oedasoia that we were urgently begging them to tell us; and Eva, being closely pressed, let it escape her that they preferred not to do so, but were willing to point out to us from the Fort here and from afar, in what direction they were to be found, saying further, that Oedasoia was surprised that we continually persisted in having men as guides, and believed that if we were in earnest we might find them ourselves, and that he could come to no other conclusion than that we desired to make peace with them.

Upon this they were told that it was good that they thus clearly expressed their views, that if Oedasoia intended to depart, we would not detain him, but that we would ourselves proceed against our enemy, and in such a way as time and circumstances would teach us; that it was as pleasant to us to conduct the war alone as with his assistance, that we did not desire to reject his friendship and closer alliance, and further offers of assistance, &c., but gladly accepted them in consequence of our good disposition towards him; that we remained disposed with heart and soul to adhere to this course; that our frequent consultations with him on matters connected with war first arose from his own propositions, but if his object did not extend further than, without discussing war matters, merely to conduct a peaceful trade with us, we would be very well satisfied.

Hereupon Eva said (after having translated the above), "Yes Mr. van Riebeeck, thus Oedasoia desires to do, and with that, his people say, everything ends"; meaning that everything was concluded, and that affairs are now mutually well understood and rightly arranged; that they therefore requested their dismissal, in order to report to Oedasoia without delay, as he was lying ready to depart to his own country as soon as possible, and leave us to manage our enemies as we liked, as he had left them unconditionally in our hands, to do with them as we pleased, caring for them as much as if they were nothing at all.

They were told in reply that that was good and pleased us, also that Oedasoia's people could come and go in order to sell us cattle, but that he would be pleased to take care that they never came without their little flags, and that they did not call at the houses of the people, but came straight to the Fort, and the more so as they

pretended that the Caapmen were desirous, under the pretext of friendship, also to come to us with cattle, and thus commit some act of surprise or treachery. (We did not wish) that Oedasoa's people should innocently suffer misfortune, as this would pain us, though we would not be able to prevent it.

They sent answer through Eva that on their part they would be very careful, and that we need not recognize as friends those who came without flags, even if they brought cattle, but might take any advantage of them that we liked, and that Oedasoa had recommended that we should no longer enter the country with wagons, or visit him, as the Kaapmen were everywhere lying in wait for our vehicles and ourselves, but had not yet attempted anything, in consequence of the intercourse of his people with us, but as soon as they heard that Oedasoa had departed, they would commence again, and call upon us once more with a much larger force, which was continually lying in readiness, &c. Whereupon after having received substantial presents and been entertained most abundantly they left well satisfied, Eva saying, "Mr. Riebeeck, take care, I shall not return for a long while; your country will now be merrily full of war." And although many strange conclusions may be drawn from these circumstances, and that all the friendship offered by Oedasoa may be false and assumed principally to get his wife's sister out of our hands, we could not for various reasons decide to keep her here against her wish, but to give her full measure and let her go, that should in course of time we find matters not otherwise than full of villainy, to seize the best and most favourable opportunity for acting in our own interests. Everything looks the more suspicious because Oedasoa's Secunde, named Ngonnomoa, is the same person whom we used to call the "Black Captain," who in the year 1653 was with us at the Fort the night before Herry stole the Company's cattle the first time, and therefore, should we be surprised by a large number of enemies, it may be safely assumed that they are all acting in concert for the sake of the copper, tobacco, bread, and other articles which they believe from the statements of Doman they will be able to obtain as booty. Moreover he had boasted that it was sufficiently practicable, and that after the destruction of the Fort he would also be able to keep those on board the ships from the land, or having first relieved them of their tobacco, to kill all the water fetchers and fishermen. From all this it is evident that matters show but little prospect of a peaceful solution, and that war is imminent, in which may the Almighty bless the Company with His assistance, in order to save our handful of people from this land full of brutal savages.

Towards evening the *Oranje* sailed away with a S.W. breeze. On the 10th, the Biscayan sloop was hurriedly despatched to Robben Island in order to fetch Herry thence, in accordance with the following Resolution:—Thursday, 10th July, 1659. "Inasmuch as we can obtain no men as guides from the paramount Chief

1659.

—

of the Cochoquas, Oedasoa, in order to enable us to discover the encampments of the Kaapmen and Gorachouquas, our open enemies, in order to effect something of importance against them with our present forces and the men obtainable from *Het Slot van Honingen*, and that hitherto we have not been able to spy out or capture any of the robbers, notwithstanding every effort, it is decided after deliberation, at once to send the sloop for Herry, to see whether anything may be got out of him (he knowing all the paths and hiding places everywhere better than we do) that may be of service to the Company and injure our present enemies. Also what is to be expected from Oedasoa, whether he intends to fight against the Kaapmen or join them, and whatever more may be of interest to get out of him.”—(Signed as above.)

During the forenoon those who had been stationed in the Kloof Pass returned and reported that they had seen no Hottentoots, nor the tracks or appearance of any, and that they had also met some of our Forest Guards, who had searched the forests in every direction, but that they also had hitherto found none.

July 11th.—Fine calm weather. Sloop arrives with Herry; the *Schapenjachtje* likewise, with the carpenters and thatcher as ordered. Herry having appeared before the Council and being interrogated, thought it hardly possible that Oedasoa would join the Kaapmen, though he might have so far promised them not to help the Dutch against them, or to interfere in their differences; that, however, some vagabonds, who are found even in the best governments, might join the Kaapmen for the sake of the booty. It was, he further stated, a difficult matter during this rainy season to show us where they were encamped or whither they had gone; that the dry season was the best time, as he had to find many hiding places of which at present he was altogether uncertain. Nevertheless our forest rangers and other parties were ordered to be here to-morrow to be despatched to the spots pointed out to us at a distance by Oedasoa's people, on which the Kaapmen and their fellows were said to be encamped.

July 12th.—Fine weather. *Het Schapenjachtje* takes the following letter to Ryk Overhagen:—“We send you back the thatcher in order to thatch the roof of the stable, as the straw is there which would otherwise spoil, and we believe that he will be able to finish it in 18 days. Louijs la Bee is also on board to take your place as caretaker; and therefore you may come over by first favourable opportunity in order to confer with us, and should the wind remain unfavourable you may load the little yacht with the shells lying on shore there.” (Signed by) J. v. R. and R. de M.”

During the afternoon 9 of Oedasoa's and Ngonnomoa's men arrived with five sheep to sell. They had nothing else to say.

Saturday, the 12th July, 1659: Captured this day at the fishermans hut, a Hottentoo of the tobacco thieves' or Gorachouquas tribe, our greatest enemies, and by means of threats and otherwise, without the knowledge of the Saldanhars, who are here at present, got

him so far that by means of the interpretation of Herry, he not only showed us from a distance where the Gorachouquas, Kaapmen and Ankaisoa were encamped, but also promised to serve as guide and lead our forces thither. To gain this object long and useless efforts have for a long time past been made. After mature deliberation, the Council, fortified by the officers of the ship *Honingén*, unanimously agreed not to let slip this opportunity, but as God the Lord affords us the chance to strengthen ourselves out of this ship in such a manner, that a considerable force can be led forth without interfering with the ship's departure, to make use of it and arrange everything so as to be able to march hence to-morrow evening with 80 men from the ship and 70 from the garrison, including volunteers, and to proceed without hesitation in the name of the Lord, in order not to be discovered in daytime; and, if it be possible, suddenly to surprise our enemies at daybreak, and with God's help give them such battle that among them such a terror may be created that henceforth they will leave in greater security and peace our people who are settled here and living in all directions unprotected.

In order to carry out the above-mentioned arrangements Fiscal Abraham Gabbema was appointed head of the expedition, divided into three companies, commanded (instead of captains) by the Sergeant of the Fort, Pieter Everaerts; the Sergeant of the ship *Honingén*, François Dominicus, and the Corporal of Cadets, Pieter Cruythoff; each one in charge of 48 or 50 men, besides 2 corporals from the fort and 2 ditto from the *Honingén*.

And in order to encourage the men the more it was decided to adhere to the original rewards offered, namely, f100 for the interpreter Doman alive, and f40 for every common Hottentoo, but half these amounts for their dead bodies, and as regards the (captured) cattle according as the booty may be great or small.

It was also decided to let 6 or 8 slaves accompany the expedition armed with assegays, in order to act as carriers and attend to the cattle." (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, Sander Gerritsen, R. de Man, Willem Quarrels, Abr. Gabbema, Pieter Everaerts, Pieter Cruythoff, and Gysbert v. Campen, Secretary.

July 13th.—This afternoon 150 men, consisting of 80 soldiers of the *Honingén*, and 70 soldiers of the fort and freemen, well armed and provisioned for 4 days, stood ready within the fort in order to undertake the above-mentioned expedition for the destruction of our enemies, and though Fiscal Gabbema had been appointed its commandant, in order that it might be conducted with the greater prudence—for he had often been far into the interior and therefore was well acquainted with the ways and the encampments of the Hottentoots—nevertheless the Commander, drawing attention to the gravity of affairs dependent on this expedition, submitted for further consideration to the Council, fortified with the officers of the aforesaid ship, and the military officers of the Fort and those on board, mentioned in yesterday's resolution,

1659.

whether it would not be as well, if not better, if the Commander personally accompanied the force in order to create more fear among the enemy, and rouse more courage among our men, as well as at all times to assist the aforesaid military officers with word and deed, and continually to remind them of his purpose.

But for various pregnant reasons the Council, by a majority, decided that the Commander should not and needed not to proceed so far inland and away from the Company's possessions, as the Fiscal was quite capable of doing what was necessary. Being the representative of the Commander they were likewise disposed to respect him as such. All the officers of the Cape military of lower degree, who were men of experience, believed him perfectly competent, and the naval officers who had had a seat at the Council Board expressed the same opinion, so that yesterday's resolution was adhered to, namely, that the Commander should remain at home because, besides the Fiscal, he had a very able adviser in the Junior Merchant, Roeloff de Man.

It was also deemed expedient that the captured Hottentoot, who understood but little of our language, and Herry (well guarded) should accompany the expedition, in order to let the prisoner fully understand our intentions regarding his showing us the encampments of our enemy, that he might carry them out," &c.—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, Sander Gerritsen of Ossen, R. de Man, W. Quarles, Abr. Gabbenæ, P. Everaerts, Fr. Dominicus, P. Cruythoff, Rob. Lowrens, Elias Giers, (x) the mark of Gabriel Male, and G. v. Campen, Secretary.

During the evening, after dark, the army left with fine dry weather, in the name of the Lord, in the direction of the encampments of the enemy. May the Almighty permit it to return in health with blessing and victory. Amen.

July 14th.—Fine, lovely clear sunshine. In the afternoon 40 of the ships' soldiers returned. Having proceeded 5 hours' march as far as the Luypaards mountains, they were unable to go further. This will weaken our force, but should it under the guidance of God be able to get near, or find the enemy, it is to be hoped that with His Almighty help and succour, everything will still end favourably.

At nightfall, thank God, the ship *Het Hoff van Zeeland* arrived, with a fine western breeze. Its skipper was Jacob Bartelseh, and its junior merchant Nicolaes de Raet. She had left Zeeland on the 3rd April last with 362 men—9 of these had died, 8 were sick in bed, and the rest fairly well. . . . On the 15th the yacht *Achilles* of Rotterdam arrived, commanded by skipper Cornelis Keyerse and junior merchant Adriaan van der Goes. She left Goeree on the 2nd April last with 190 men, of whom only one died. The rest were all well. . . .

July 16th.—A stiff S.S.E. wind during the morning. Dry summer wind, contrary to the nature of the time of the year.

In the evening the Fiscal and his three detachments returned

from the country. He reported that as indicated by the captured Hottentoo he certainly had discovered the place where our enemies had had their last encampment, but he had also found that they had fled from it about twelve hours previously; that he had had a mind to pursue them, but that the soldiers from the ship were too weak to march any further; also Herry had said that they would with difficulty be overtaken, as at present they dared not encamp in one body, or remain quiet one hour in daylight or darkness; that everywhere on the hills and eminences they had their scouts hidden among the bushes and undergrowth, and thus could easily discover our people, and how and in what direction they were proceeding, so that they generally would be able to hide themselves effectually, and know we would thus gain very little, except by surprising and suddenly falling upon them, and that for this another opportunity must be waited for, as well as whatever God the Lord may be pleased to grant for the best.

On their return our people passed the spot where Oedasoa had been encamped, and found that that chief and Ngonomoa had likewise left. They therefore tortured the prisoner a little, in order to discover from him where the one or the other might be. He confessed that Oedasoa had agreed with our enemies to help and to protect them, and that therefore they would at present be encamped together, he having permitted them to accompany him as far inland as they liked, in order to hide themselves from us. From this it is evident that Oedasoa has deceived and attempted to temporize with us until the Kaapmen were able to hide themselves effectually, so that the one is to be trusted as little as the other; so that it will be necessary for us, according to Eva's advice given us at her departure, to keep a careful watch everywhere, in order to preserve what we still have.

July 17th.—Beautiful, lovely dry weather. The ship *Honingen* receives its despatches for Batavia.

July 18th.—Fairly fine weather. N.W. breeze and cloudy sky.

July 19th.—Fine, calm, clear weather. This morning there was another encounter with the Hottentoots. Five of them attacked a soldier driving two head of cattle from the Company's Schuur to the Fort, which he had been obliged to surrender, after they had pierced his clothes with assegays. They carried the cattle off, but were intercepted and surrounded by the Fiscal and three of the mounted guards, near the pass whither they had to go. They were offered quarter, but did not desire it and defended themselves, after Fiscal Gabbema had been alone among them on horseback and compelled to retire. He was afterwards obliged to reload his gun, which he had fired in the air, and, assisted by the three other mounted men shot down two, after having surrounded them; the third was shot by another near the spot, and the fourth, it is presumed likewise, as the groom, Christian Doman, after having addressed him, and offered him quarter, which he refused, had hit him in a such a manner that the blood had been seen spurting from

1659.

his body. However, he escaped, which is a pity in one way, but good in another, that he may communicate the news to his comrades, for their intimidation. The said Christian was wounded in the back with an assegay, and one of the mounted men in the side and arm. The Fiscal and the three other mounted men escaped with a whole skin. When the Fiscal was alone amongst them, he was exposed to no little danger, so that from this encounter (seeing that 5 Hottentoots had dared to oppose themselves to 4 mounted men) it may be plainly seen that if hard pressed, they fear not to take a desperate resolution, namely: rather to die than allow themselves to be captured.

This news having been brought in by the Fiscal, at once some soldiers and the barber were sent out to meet the wounded; others were also despatched to fetch the heads of the slaughtered enemies. The mounted men confirmed the above narrative, though they added that they had found only one Hottentoot mortally wounded. The other two could not be found (one of whom when shot down had been twice stabbed by the wounded horseman, whilst the other after having been hit more than once by the Fiscal, had been nearly decapitated by the groom). They must have been dragged away by those who escaped and by other Hottentoots, for the one whom, as above stated, we managed to get into the Fort somewhat alive still (one of the quickest and most insolent rascals) told us that 13 of them had this morning left the camping place of the Kaapmen, Ankaisoa and Gorachouquas, and proceeded to the kloof in the mountains; that the enemy were encamped at and near Saldanha Bay, and had arranged with Oedasoa for permission to retire thither. The latter, however, and Ngonnomoa had gone straight across the country to beyond the Great Berg River, about 15 or 16 hours on foot from this. The aforesaid and other robbers were still lying in wait for further booty, which they also obtained without hindrance, viz.: all the six plough oxen of Vasagie's company, among which were 4 beautiful animals, but lately given them, to enable them to cultivate the rest of their lands; so that agriculture has been completely ruined, and only four farms, exclusive of that of the Company and of the Commander, are barely half in existence. The aforesaid oxen, though at once followed by our men on foot and swiftly, could not be recovered, but if we had had more horses, we would have overtaken them, and treated them as we did those met this morning. But in this we are principally deficient, otherwise they would most likely have turned tail more than once.

July 20th.—Fine weather in the morning. The freemen who came to church, reported that last night they had seen a large number of Hottentoots on the other side of the river Liesbeeck, and had heard them the whole night making considerable noise, and dancing. But at present, such a good and strong guard has everywhere been placed in charge of the cattle, that we do not think they will get much, without loss of men.

This day (Sunday) the Rev. Cornelius Jansonius administered the Holy Supper of the Lord, and baptized some children.

July 21st.—Lovely weather as before. The Commander again visited the agricultural plots everywhere, and gave the necessary instructions wherever necessary. He took with him the skippers and merchants of the ships *Hof van Zeelant* and *Achilles*, and showed them everything. Returning he was told that a number of Hottentoots had again been seen on the other side of the river, but the truth of this appeared somewhat dark; certainly they had attempted nothing anywhere.

Arriving home we found that the ship *Honingen* had left with a S.S.E. breeze.

July 22nd.—Calm weather. The *Honingen* endeavouring to reach the open sea.

Resolution.—"The Commander circumstantially communicated to the Council, strengthened with the officers of the *Hof van Zeelant* and *Achilles*, the present state of the war with the Hottentoots, and that many volunteers or adventurers, 15 or 20 in number, had offered their services to make an attack from Saldanha Bay (if conveyed thither by the boats of the Company and the freemen), on the rear of the enemy, who had retired to that neighbourhood. He therefore desired every member's advice and opinion (whilst also the skipper Jacob Bartels, an old experienced person, had good suggestions to offer in some matters, &c.). Decided, that as the offer is surrounded with many difficulties, it was at present not expedient to entertain it, the more so as the settlement here can only with difficulty be garrisoned and protected, and that therefore it would be better to be on our guard and watch those who come here to steal our cattle or commit murder or arson, lest unwittingly we may attack the wrong encampments (tribes?) of the Saldanhars, and so bring too many enemies on our necks, &c."—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, Jacob Bartels, Com. Reyertse Crimpen, R. de Man, Nic. de Raet, Adr. v. d. Goes, Abr. Gabbema, P. Everaerts; G. v. Campen, Secretary.

July 23rd.—Fair weather. It being prayer day, the persons whose banns were published last Sunday, were, after the sermon, &c., solemnly married by the Rev. Corn. Jansonius. At noon 15 persons, divided into three parties, were, in addition to the ordinary cattle herds, placed at the principal approaches of our brutal enemies, in order to watch them, if possible, just as they do our cattle, &c. With the men working in the gardens and elsewhere, not 10 men were left to guard the fort, who besides attending to their duties during the day were also obliged to take their share of the night work.

During the night the wind blew strong from the N.W., with now and then a shower.

July 24th.—The weather of the past night, continuing until the evening.

July 25th.—Fine weather. Westerly breeze, which became so

1659.

—

strong at noon that the ships' boats could not return on board. This prevented the departure of the *Hof van Zeeland* and *Achilles*.

July 26th.—Rainy and stormy weather.

July 27th (Sunday).—Wind and weather somewhat calmer; hail and rain.

July 28th.—Fine, lovely weather. The *Hof van Zeeland* and *Achilles* fishing for the anchors lost by them in the storm.

July 29th.—The above-mentioned ships receive their despatches, and leave in the evening with a S.E. breeze. Weather during the day beautiful. *Het Schapenjachtjen* despatched to Robben Island, in order to survey it properly and put it in the chart correctly, according to the instructions given to the surveyor, Pieter Potter, and the quartermaster of the boat, viz.: that they were to leave in the company of the free Saldanhars and carefully survey the whole coast and take soundings and mark off the results accurately on the chart, so that, if possible, no one may afterwards be able to detect any errors. They were also to make drawings of the high and low lands along the coasts and points of the said Bay (Saldanha), which together with this Cape Coast, Robben and Dassen Island, is to be carefully explored and measured and sounded, and the islands in it are to be correctly placed, &c. Being six in number, Goris and the Schiedammer were to remain on board continually in charge of the vessel, and Potter and Lacus, Pieter Wel te Vreden and Jan Jansz: Van Eyck, were always to be on shore with their arms, in order to make their surveys, trying to be always on board again or on the Schapen Island in the evening, in order to be safe from the Hottentots, against whom they were to attempt nothing; but if they had done their work and were ready to return, they might, should any of the hostile tribe visit them, bring them with them, but no others, but they were not to risk any danger in the attempt.

The boat will also take 14 empty casks to be filled by the Saldanha traders with seals' flesh, which they had to bring back with them, even if they had to wait for it a few days, that a larger supply may be assured as food for the slaves; but they were not to interfere with seal catching or salting before they had carried out their instructions, and then only when requested to assist, in order to hasten the departure of their vessel.

For their better defence their vessel would be armed with two pedereros, but these were not to be used except in an emergency for defensive purposes only, on pain of forfeiting three months' wages for every unnecessary shot fired.

Two muskets will be supplied to Pieter Wel te Vreden and Jan Jansz van Eyck, to be used on shore with Potter and Lacus, who are provided with firelocks.

In going they were not to touch at Robben Island, on pain of the above mentioned fine, &c." (Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

The Biscayan sloop was also sent to Robben Island with two sows about to litter, to see whether they will thrive there in the

place of the sheep that had died. She also took ten doe rabbits in a cage, which had bred here, in order to be set at large there with the others, who are multiplying beautifully.

As we have heard from the captured Hottentoots that Herry's people, called the Watermen, are lying behind (Table Mountain) in Hout Bay and Berg Vallei, whence they are continually harrassing our people through the Kloof Pass behind the Bosheuvel (Constantia Neck), the Corporal Elias Giers was sent thither this morning with 10 soldiers, in order to look for their huts, even to the furthest point of the Cape Mountain range, to watch for and do them as much mischief as possible, as they know how to come together on the plain through the Kloof Pass to meet the Kaapmen, and so combined behind furze and bush, unexpectedly making an iuroad, rob our people of their cattle.

The freemen having this day reported that they had seen some Hottentoots above and below the forests and kloofs of the "Wind" and "Bosbergen," the sergeant, four horsemen, and some soldiers, summoned from the houses of the freemen, were sent out during the night on foot to see whether they could find and unneastle any.

July 30th.—Lovely clear weather in the morning. The sergeant and men return and report that they had made a careful search everywhere, but had found nothing.

The Hottentoo prisoners informed us that those who went out to steal our cattle never lighted a fire day or night in order not to be discovered by our people and attacked unawares.

During the night the soldier Jan Vervoor, of Brussels, died; he had been landed sick from the ship *Honingen*.

In the afternoon the Biscayan sloop returned from the Island with the following note to the Commander: "Hon. Sir,—I arrived here safely with the cattle on Tuesday and found everything well. The number of sheep is still 40. Six died during my absence at the Cape, but as many lambs were born instead. The last ram is also dead, so that you must send us one by first opportunity. I have said the same regarding the boar. Thomas said that they will employ Gerrit Harmse for the purpose. The boat also takes 50 sea mew eggs and 2 fishes." . . . (Signed) R. Overhagen.

July 31st.—The wind NN.E. in the morning; cloudy cold weather. The Commander, R. de Man, Fiscal, and Sergeant went out in different directions and selected various spots on which to station hidden sentries. They also considered how best to protect the cattle of the Company and the freemen within the area taken possession of as necessary for the Company's purposes, and to do so in the most economical manner and with a smaller number of men than has been required hitherto. No decision, however, was possible to-day as it was found that in order to do so more daily expeditions will be indispensable.

August 1st.—Wind and weather as yesterday.

August 2nd.—Fine weather and wind as yesterday (full moon). The Commander, Secunde, Fiscal and Sergeant, accompanied by

1659.

the chief burghers, were out again for the same purpose, and found that the principal spot, about 500 roods broad, through which the Hottentoots for the most part drive off the cattle, might be closed off with a fence in order to stop the cattle from passing, just like the fences formed of poles for a cattle market at home. That two watch huts should also be erected to guard the fence; that this would be the cheapest and the only feasible plan, as no permanent ditch can be dug or breastworks thrown up, as the soil everywhere is soft and shifting and would always crumble away. No final resolution was, however, adopted, but every one was recommended, especially the freemen, to consider what he might deem even a better plan to adopt for the preservation of the cattle, and to communicate it to the Commander and the Council, the Commander intending to come out again next week and consider how the strip of country from the "Kromme boom," opposite the Company's lands and behind those of Brinkman and Vasagie might be garrisoned, so that the cattle might graze with more security in all directions. At present they are so confined and near each other, though protected by many men, that they cannot obtain half their food, so that they lose flesh and many die in consequence.

August 3rd (Sunday).—Fine, lovely, sunshine weather.

August 4th and 5th.—Same weather. The Commander and the same company of Thursday and Saturday last, went out at day-break, and considered that a fence as above described might easily be made from the "Kromme boom," between Harman's and Brinkman's houses, to the forest of the free sawyer Leendert Cornelisz, of Sevenhuysen (which is near the Kloof Pass). That the Hottentoots would not be able to drive any cattle through such a fence, and that it would be better than any ditch or entrenchment. The Commander therefore decided to lay the matter before the Council for discussion within a few days.

This morning Corporal Elias Giers, sent out on the 31st of last month to the Hout Bay and "Berghvalleijen," to the dales and mountains of this Cape towards the south, in order to make a thorough exploration and discover the Hottentoots in hiding there, who, together with the Kaapmen, are continually causing us the greatest loss and trouble, returned, and reported that about 9 or 10 o'clock last Sunday morning, about 18 hours' walk from this, the nearest way reckoned past the Bergh Valley and Mr. Van Goensberg, he had found the first traces of Hottentoots and their dogs behind different rocky mountains (Schorbergen), so called because of their height, steepness and rockiness, nearly at the furthest point of the Cape, and close to the sea-shore, just within the northern bight (Noord Kolk) of False Bay, or the southern point of the Cape Rocky Mountain land (Schorberghlant), between two high steep mountains in a bend (boggen); that following the spoor he had shortly afterwards found their camp, consisting of three reed huts, in which were 13 male adults and about as many women and children; that he heard them busy making assegays,

and might have suddenly surprised them if their dogs had not commenced to bark, when, naked and astonished, they rushed without a skin on their bodies from the rear of their huts, women, children and all, and sought shelter and hiding places among the bushes and rushes. The men were all well known, and used to be daily at the fort. They called out to us that they were Fishmen or Watermen, who had never had a share in stealing the cattle (as they said), though they had often been seen by us stealing cattle, some of which still feel the effects of their assegays. The Corporal had already advanced so far in conversation with them, that they would have soon joined him, so that they might have been captured without difficulty, if a musket had not unexpectedly gone off when they were on their way to us. They at once fell back, and endeavoured to save themselves by flight. Our men, seeing this, did not desire to have a fruitless journey, but fired at them, capturing their chief Captain, fairly old (who used to be Herrys' comrade), and killing two others. One of the latter was known to us as Siginman, formerly kitchen servant of the Commander. Our men brought with them his upper lip, as well as that of their chief named Trosoa, because he refused to accompany us to the fort, and it was too difficult to carry him over the mountains. He would otherwise have been a fine mate to be chained to Herry. The third, after having received his death wound, had fallen down the precipitous mountain to the bottom, so that we could not come near him, and hence we were unable to bring any part of his body as evidence. However, our men, after having offered to swear that he had been shot, and moreover must have been crushed by his fall from the steep rocks, were given the reward for him also, that is together £60 for the three. The three huts, with everything they contained, about 50 assegays, quivers full of arrows, bows and skins, had all been destroyed and thrown into the sea from the steep rocky mountains at the extreme end of the southern point of False Bay, so that the remaining 15 were left naked and completely deprived of weapons. These endeavoured to lie in wait for us in some narrow passages, beneath some steep rocky hills, where they rolled down such heavy stones, that it was impossible to pass through, for the stones as they fell loosened others, which rolled down likewise. Another passage therefore had to be sought continually, as they were always waylaying us, though always remaining beyond reach of firearms. We accordingly decided to return to the Fort, as it was impossible to proceed with our attack on the 15 Hottentots who had escaped, but who were left so naked and bare, that they did not even have a small skin to cover themselves. This, exclusive of the 3 killed, must be a great loss to them, especially as they have also lost all their assegays, arrows and bows, and their huts have been destroyed.

The three dead are, as above mentioned, the Captain of the tribe, who succeeded Herry, of fair age, and named Trosoa; the ex-kitchen servant, called by us Siginman, and by the Hottentots

1659.

—

Heybuka, one of the most cunning rascals; the third could not be identified, as he was killed from behind, and fell down the steep and rocky precipice. Among the 15 survivors were the following clever rogues, who were daily in the habit of fetching wood for someone or another, and to do other work about the Fort, and everywhere in the country among the freemen, and who^{as} a rule gave us the most trouble; having always been present everywhere as the principal champions in the war against us. They are called by the Hottentots, Carabinga, and by our people "Platneus"; Egutha, *alias* "Hoogh en Laagh"; Mosscha, *alias* "Kleine Lubbert"; Kaikana Makoukoa, *alias* "Claas Das"; Kherreby, who has no Dutch name; Goegoe, *alias* "Keesje Goegoe"; Heybinga, *alias* "Hans van Neurenbergh"; Louchoeve, who used always to lead the ploughing team of Vredens' company; Cicinte, ex-kitchen servant of the junior merchant, R. de Man; Hober, *alias* "Willem 'de Visser"; Beymatioukao Dankou, *alias* "Orenbare"; and Quasso, *alias* "Diknavel".

The other three were afraid to come so near, so that we could not recognize them. Those whose names are given belong to the Kaapmen and Herry's tribe, and stated that Doman and some other well known characters were in the Kaapmen Camp, near Saldanha Bay.

August 6th.—Beautiful weather, cloudy sky. The vineyards were pruned, and a considerable portion of cuttings distributed among the freemen. It was almost necessary to force them to accept any, as they only wished to have a few to plant against their houses. But as the Commander had had 2 morgen of ground prepared for the purpose, on his wine farm ("Wynberg") begun last year, he had about 10 or 12,000 of the cuttings conveyed thither.

The season is also approaching for planting and grafting the olive and all kinds of Home and Indian plants, so that the orchards of the Company and of others will this year be considerably extended, especially with thousands of orange and lime trees. But this industry is mainly confined to the orchards of the Company and the private ones of the Commander, the agriculturists busying themselves with the cultivation of grain and gardens, in order to have the quickest growing produce and some speedy returns. They therefore individually plant but a few trees and but a small quantity of sweet potatoes, though they have been informed of the excellence and usefulness of this tuber. Wherefore the Commander intends to surround his whole land with the same, two roods in breadth, exclusive of corn and vineyards, that this vegetable may protect the ripe corn from fire, to which it is very much exposed in the dry season when the Hottentots are accustomed to set fire to the dry shrubs and grass, which can with difficulty be kept from the ripe corn without green or bare spots lying between. All these necessary matters the freemen were particularly and earnestly recommended to attend to, especially in these times of war, and some have already begun to do so, that is, those who

have saved their cattle, who are also venturing to plough again at our express exhortation, and under the protection of soldiers lent them for the purpose. Others again are planting their gardens with vegetables, in order to get out of them as much as they can without sitting idle.

August 7th.—Fine calm weather. The Commander went out to measure the exact distance between the Fresh River at Jan Reyniersz's residence and the sea shore, in order for the reason already mentioned to close it off with palings. The shortest distance was found to be 500 Rhineland roods; the other (distance) above the Kromme boom, above mentioned, will also be measured at once, in order to be able to decide with more certainty what would be the best course to adopt for the safe custody of the cattle and at the least expense.

August 8th.—Lovely calm weather. Hottentots again observed at different places above the cornlands and behind the Table, Wind, and Bosbergen, watching for cattle, but notwithstanding the people cannot be persuaded to pass that way armed; for this day a free-man's servant, not being armed, was nearly surprised by 2 Hottentots. However, he observed them in good time, and retired to the outlying horsemen, who thereupon ascended the mountain and found various places where they had lately been digging roots for food, but they had in the meanwhile been able to hide themselves in such a manner in caves or underwood that they could not be found.

Accordingly after dark ten soldiers armed with firelocks were sent out against them under Corporal Mathias Benedictus, with orders to make a thorough search the whole night through, and to hide themselves at daylight and remain thus concealed the whole day until the evening, in order to see whether none of them could be discovered.

August 9th.—Weather rainy in the afternoon, and the wind northerly. Towards evening the Corporal returned, and reported that he had been able to find nothing. *Resolution* :—"As we more and more find that this brutal nation will not yet at present leave us in peace, though they have twice already suffered considerable defeat and loss in their persons, weapons, and houses, both through the Fiscal Gabbema and lately through the Corporal Elias Giers; but as they are daily continuing their endeavours to rob the Company and the freemen of the cattle which they still possess, and as it is almost impossible to discover a way by which to prevent them from doing so, except with a force of many soldiers, kept expressly for the purpose everywhere outside in the veld, to the particularly great annoyance and at the unpalatably excessive expense of the Company, for which reason the Commander had years ago already thought of means by which the cattle could be protected with less men and without such heavy expenditure; and as during the last days especially he had found, after much trouble, accompanied by his Councillors, and the chief burghers and agri-

1659.

—

culturists, that the Fresh River Liesbeeck, from Jan Reyniersz's house to the "Krommen boom," above the house of Jan Maartense of Vreelant, inclusive, if cleared of weeds, would be so deep and steep that it would be impossible to drive any cattle across it, except at three or four small places which could be easily deepened, and that hitherto the Hottentoots generally crossed between the sea side and the said Jan Reiniersz, a distance of about 500 roods, and also between the said "Krommen Boom" and the forest of the free sawyer Leendert Cornelisz : of Sevenhuysen, a distance of about 11 or 1,200 roods ; he thought that this ford might be deepened by digging or otherwise, but in consequence of the sandy nature of the soil in some places, it was considered that such work would not be permanent, and that it could only be effected at great cost, if made with palings and wicker work, which again could easily be set fire to. In other spots again the difficulties would be almost insurmountable, in consequence of the stony nature and hardness of the soil, so that the work would be very tedious, heavy and mightily expensive, besides the necessity of daily guarding the cattle with so many soldiers, without at the same time being sure, as the Hottentoots are much too clever, that they will not get in among them, and in consequence of their nimbleness carry them off without our being able to recapture them except with horses (of which we have only four passably fit for work), and as many horsemen to be employed for that especial purpose daily, which would not be less expensive to the Company. But for all that something had to be done and continued to be done. It was after long deliberation therefore—as after all the principal object was to prevent the cattle from being driven off—decided that the least expensive course would be, instead of spending a long time over a difficult and costly excavation, to erect a fence similar to those of the cattle markets at home with two high cross bars or beams, $4\frac{1}{2}$ feet high above the ground and 6 inches in diameter ; and to drive the cattle daily towards it for inspection and observation, and to take care that the fence be nowhere broken or hacked to pieces during the nighttime by the marauding Hottentoots. This the latter would only be able to do once (during the night) without loss of life, or without being captured, for they would not have the cattle just quite ready to drive through the gap, nor could they easily and without any noise or violence steal them out of the permanent kraals made of good palisades, as the one would then be ready to second the other. In daylight, however, they find special means to carry them off, especially when it is dark hazy and rainy weather, and our men cannot use their firearms or see them approaching at a distance. All which having been considered it was resolved and decreed to have the two fences erected at once on the places mentioned, as it was the cheapest plan, and also because these fences could be protected by daily supervision, so that they would not be broken down, but kept sufficiently strong to keep the cattle in, as there would be on their inside sufficient fine pastures, without any

other cornlands near, than those of the Company, Stevens, Vreden, Boomtjes and Jan Reyniersz, about 170 morgen altogether. But no more shall be given out for agricultural purposes there, that there may always be sufficient pasture for the cattle within the enclosure, in accordance with the well-conceived opinions and instructions of Mr. Van Goens. It was further decided to attach two wooden watch-houses, twelve feet square, to the fence, one about 100 roods from the Liesbeeck and Salt Rivers, and the other on the downs on the coast, as the best look-outs can be obtained from those spots, which are likewise the most frequented thoroughfares of the Hottentoots and Saldanharas. A third watch-house may also be erected between the free sawyer Leendert Cornelisz and the agriculturists of Vasagie's company, on the south side of the "Krommen Boom," opposite the clay-hills and "Bosbergen," in order to graze under their shelter the plough oxen of most of the freemen and the Company.

To hurry on the work as much as possible it was decided that the Company's woodmen and carpenters were to do the distance between the residence of Jan Reyniersz and the seashore, together with the two watch-houses so highly necessary, and to entrust the other portion, the longest distance, to the free sawyer Leendert Cornelisz, who has eight workmen in his service, and who is therefore sufficiently supplied with labour for the purpose. The work was accordingly offered to him at 16 stivers per rood—at the end of the work the end of the pay—(payment as the work proceeds). He had, however, to cut and prepare the timber in the forest himself, which was afterwards at the Company's expense to be brought to its destination by the Company's men or by freemen who might tender for that work. The timber was to be of the following dimensions:—Each rood to have two poles, each pole to be 6 inches across at the thin end and 8 feet long, 4 feet of the same shall be charred and 3 feet of it planted in the ground, that it may last the longer. Five feet shall remain above ground. Spars of the same thickness and 13 feet long were to be fixed along the top of the poles and scarfed together, and similar ones four inches across, half way down, so that the cattle may neither be driven over or under it; with the further condition that the work shall be finished within three or three and a half months, and be paid for according to measurement as beaconed off, one half in cash and the other half in reduction of his debt to the Company, so that in this way he will be completely freed of his liability. But he asked two or three days to consider the matter, which was granted, the Commander intending to examine the proposed works more closely next week.

Jacob Meyderse, of Quanen, who arrived here as soldier in the *Princesse Royal* on the 9th March last, and been employed as carpenter, having been found to be a good, industrious workman, is confirmed in that appointment at his request with a salary of f16 per month, provided that he serves out his time. Johannes Diel, of Goedensburgh, cadet, who arrived here in the *Breda* on the 30th

1659.

October, 1656, at f10, and has been since employed as mason, and since March last as master mason, having given full satisfaction, is confirmed in his rank as master mason at f16 per month, provided that he serves out his time. Thus done and resolved in the Fort Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above.—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, Abr. Gabbema, P. Everaerts, and Gysb. v. Campen, Secretary.

During the evening the Commander's farm servants, and afterwards the Company's gardener, Cornelis Luytens, and others, returning home from their work, reported that 5 Hottentoots had been at the house of the agriculturist Caspar Brinkman, addressed the latter's servant, and asked for his master; that, however, as he was a new-comer they could not make him understand, Brinkman being at the Fort. He had, however, invited them into the house, though he was perfectly alone, but the Hottentoots had not the courage to enter. In the meanwhile they saw Cornelis Luyten pass with a firelock and approached him. The latter, seeing that they had only one assegay among them, put down his gun so that they approached each other within range, and would have entered into conversation if the agriculturists Harman Remajenne and his comrade Jacob Cloeten had not come out of their house (which was near) with their firearms, when the Hottentoots fled in the direction of the African Mountain Range.

The general opinion is that these Hottentoots had no evil intentions, as they had so exposed themselves, and that evidently they would have much liked to speak to us about peace and good will. Therefore, in order to give them a more favourable opportunity we admonished all our people everywhere, to attempt nothing against those who came unarmed, but to show them every sign of friendship, in order thus to get them into our hands; promising for every such capture the same reward as if such native had been made prisoner of war. But if more than one be captured in this manner and brought to the Fort begging for peace, only half the reward shall be given for the rest. The Almighty grant that everything may turn out for the best in accordance with our rising hopes and wishes.

However, the fence will remain necessary, as they can never be trusted, even if peace be made with them; for the less opportunity is left them the more secure will be our intercourse with them, and the less chances will they have to steal and drive off our cattle, for it is the experience of the whole world that the opportunity often creates the inclination, so that the Company's woodmen and carpenters were ordered in accordance with this day's Resolution at once to make the two watchhouses of wooden frames and planks.

August 10th (Sunday).—Fine, lovely weather.

August 11th.—Dirty, wet and windy weather from the N.W.

August 12th.—The weather somewhat more favourable, with a slight S.S.E. breeze. The Commander, Fiscal and Sergeant left early this morning, in accordance with last Saturday's Resolution,

and found that the Liesbeeck River from the "Krommen Boom" to the forest of the free sawyers was in many places along its border closely covered with short, thick bush. Thinking over this carefully, and once more going over the distance, he concluded that it would be unnecessary to engage the free sawyer for the work, but to enclose the whole distance of nearly 1,500 roods in length by conveying thick underwood (Krekel boomen) to the open spaces, as considerable quantities were close at hand, which might be cut down by the soldiers that have to be on guard there continually, assisted by some woodmen. This plan the Commander communicated in the evening to the Council for their consideration.

This day the captured Hottentot named Glykeman died of the wound received in the encounter with the Fiscal on the 19th July; and that no Hottentots, not even Herry and the other prisoner who have been long kept apart from the deceased, should know of his death, the people were all forbidden, in case they met any Hottentots, to inform them of his death, but they were to say that he had been conveyed to Robben Island. This Herry and the others were also made to believe, and in point of fact this really occurred, for the body was secretly sent in that direction in a boat, but was on the way let overboard with weights attached to it, so as to have less trouble with the interment, and for other reasons besides.

August 13th.—Lovely, calm sunshine, but very cold weather, but there was a pretty severe frost during the night, and ice had been formed in various pools.

Resolution.—"Decided to fence the Liesbeeck as proposed by the Commander yesterday, and to carry out the Resolution of Monday last, regarding the 540 roods distance between J. Reyniersz's homestead and the seaside, as no trees are to be found there, and the soil is very loose and sandy. Since Monday the woodmen have already been employed to cut the required timber, and the carpenters at the fort busy with making the projected three watch-houses, which are to be erected at once, as it is the principal spot over which our cattle can in the easiest manner be driven off, and must be daily guarded by two horsemen and many soldiers.

In order to find out the condition of the Liesbeeck between the two fences, whether it was sufficiently deep and steep, it was decided to order the freemen to clear it the breadth of two feet on the side of the undergrowth, each one as far as his land extended, that it might be deepened wherever necessary. This would render everything more secure, dispense with many soldiers, who have in addition to their ordinary duties to protect the cattle, and might well be excused from being employed at the river works, though should the number of cattle increase they will have to take charge of it when depastured on the outside of the fence. But in the latter case all available men on foot and on horseback will be required, for even now, with all the thoroughfares guarded, it still remains very

1659. difficult to protect the cattle from these impudent and nimble Hottentoots.

And as the free sawyer Leendert Cornelisz refused the offer made to him by the Commander, as the amount was in his opinion too little (sixteen stivers per rood), and as the Company is provided with but a few woodmen and carpenters, it was decided to engage 4 of his men at 10 st. per *diem*, with food; to be employed at this most indispensable work, and to hurry it on as much as possible that the next ships may take as many men away to Batavia as possible, &c."—(Signed as above)

August 14th.—Calm, clear weather, like yesterday. The sloop sent to Robben Island with the following letter to Ryck Overhagen:—"You now receive two rams for the 40 ewes left, also a male and three female goats, to see whether they will breed there better than here; also some purslain and St. Helena sorrel seed, which we find the pigs very fond of, as well as the marsh mallow, or 'koesjesbladen,' which we intend to cut out as sods and send over, off and on, by the *Schapenjachtje*, whenever it returns hither from the Saldanha Bay, unless the sods previously sent are already growing. This you must let us know for our information. Send the bags back at once. Some tree seeds are also sent you, which you must sow all along the wall on the inside in undug earth, as in the course of a year they will grow higher than the wall, and so afford better protection against the wind."—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck."

During the afternoon one of the horsemen brought word that they had seen three Hottentoots on the southern slope of the "Windberg," where, however, in consequence of its steepness, they could not be pursued with horses; orders were accordingly given to go out during the night to look for their fires and endeavour to catch them. The horsemen also said that as soon as they saw the flag on the redoubt "Coornhoop" hoisted half mast, and a little flag on a pike pointing towards the spot where the said Hottentoots were seen, which is the signal agreed upon, they ran up the mountain as fast as deer, clearly perceiving that the signal referred to them.

August 15th.—Clear weather with a fairly stiff S.S.E. wind. The horsemen returned at nightfall and reported that they had not been able to discover the Hottentoots anywhere. This day a lion appeared among the plough oxen of the Commander, wounding two so severely that it was necessary to kill them; four soldiers stationed at the outer guard hearing of this came to the assistance of the Commander's farm servants, and after much trouble and many shots finally killed the lion. One of the soldiers, however, named Guillaume de Bunje of Disselgem was attacked by the lion, which wounded him with its claws, bit him in the arm, and scratched him with its claws in the hand and buttock, but not severely, so that as they are only flesh wounds, they will, with God's help, soon heal. The reward for killing the lion was paid to these men, seven in number, viz., the wounded man received seven and the other six

each three, altogether twenty-five gulden the amount fixed by Mr. Goens for the killing of a lion or tiger.

August 16th.—*Resolution*: “As the earth-works of the fort, in consequence of their slope can be easily scaled, especially by these nimble Hottentoots, &c., and the palisades which have surrounded them have mostly decayed, so that by a sudden rush they can easily be broken, it was decided for the better strengthening of the fort to erect a strong stockade all round below on the berm, consisting of rundles (sporten) eight feet long, four inches broad and two inches thick, just like the kraal made for the cattle. The making of these rundles was entrusted to the free sawyer Leendert Cornelisz at 3 stivers each, the tops to be pointed, provided that they are fetched from his place by freemen at the Company’s expense.

Tielman Hendricxz of Utrecht, bachelor and 27 years old, free farm labourer serving Commander J. van Riebeeck, having engaged himself to Mayken Hendrix van den Bergh, a native of Cooltjens plaat, 34 years old, and widow of Jacob Theunisse of Cooltjens plaat, late free burgher here at the Cape, requesting that they may be united in lawful matrimony and that their first banus may be published to-morrow after the sermon, the Council resolved as these persons are free and unencumbered, and engaged to no one else but to each other only, as confirmed by them on oath, to grant their request and to have their first banns published to-morrow (Sunday) and the second and third on the two following Sundays, in order after the third publication to be lawfully married by the Secretary of the Council (as we have no minister) before all the public” (signed as above). The S.S.E. wind still blowing stiffly.

August 17th.—The S.S.E. wind still blowing.

August 18th (New moon).—Calm, seasonable, bright sunshine.

Not only did the Guinea slaves show symptoms of insubordination, but it was also discovered that they intended to run away and take refuge among the Hottentoots; the males were accordingly all chained, so as to prevent loss to the Company, for if this strongly built and daring people were to join our enemies, they would be able to do more mischief than a hundred times as many Hottentoots, besides teaching the latter the art of war, as some of them have been present in the European war in Guinea.

Some soldiers sent out this morning to drag the spars from the forest, which had been cut down and prepared by the woodmen last week for the fence to be erected to prevent the cattle from being driven off, having shown a disinclination for the work, the Fiscal was sent thither this morning, but as he was obeyed as little as the Corporals, they were ordered to appear before the Commander, who, with the Fiscal and Sergeant, had proceeded to the furthest frontier, as far as the free sawyers’ forest, in order to consider and fix the position of the fence, &c.

These soldiers, 19 in number, having appeared before the Commander, their ringleader was discovered, and being bound,

1659.

conveyed to the Fort. Discipline was accordingly restored among the rest, who were left there in charge of a Sergeant and Corporal, in order to carry on the work with all diligence, &c.

The Commander, having returned home in the evening, found the following letter, brought from Robben Island in the Biscayan sloop :—"Sir,—I received in good order the rams, goats and seeds, which will be sown as directed. There are still 35 sheep, and the pigs seem to thrive well. I send you some of the green stuff which I saw them eat, but as at present there is still a large quantity of green grass, it would be a good thing if they would eat the green stuff mentioned, which always remains green, during the dry season. In that case there would be enough for 2,000 pigs, as the island is full of it. I also return one of the sods lately sent over, to let you see how they are growing. As the sloop was windbound here so very long, the men went about searching for eggs, as their food was consumed, and I also gave them rice so long. Amongst other things, they brought me a snake, which being opened, a rabbit was found in it; one of the last lot brought over by me. I would like to have two other slaves, as the two here at present wish very much to be at the Cape, so that I can get no work out of them, though I were to beat them dead. I also send you 20 heron eggs and some of the Hottentoo earth nuts."—(Signed) R. Overhagen.

August 19th.—*Resolution* : "Whereas yesterday, some showed unwillingness to drag the wood works out of the forest, which had been prepared as a defence against our enemies, it was decided, in order to prevent such insubordination in future, to promulgate the following extract from the "Article Brief" (Articles of Agreement between the Company and those taken into the service), and to give a copy of the same to the Fiscal to be handed by him to the sergeant superintending the works in the forest, to be published and affixed by him there also.

Section 108.—"All military officers and soldiers, and if necessary, all other servants of the Company, no one excepted, shall be bound both for their own security and defence, and in the service of their High Mightinesses the States-General and the Company, when ordered by the Governor General and Councillors of India, or of anyone else placed in authority over them, to work at the making and repairing of Forts, Batteries and Entrenchment walls or other works, without receiving for it more than their food during the time they are employed, in addition to the pay provided."

And whereas some yesterday began to act contrary to this regulation, and refused to carry out the service due to the Company, the Commander and Council have decided to make this section publicly known to the people and all others, and affix it with the express orders that every one shall conduct himself accordingly, on pain of such punishment as is customary to be inflicted on such disobedient persons, viz., those who permit themselves to be led astray to be expelled from the army, and the instigators to be punished cor-

porally or capitally according to the exigencies of the case." . . .
 . . .—(Signed by) J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, Abr. Gabbema
 (the sergeant absent with the workmen in the country), and
 G. v. Campen, Secretary.

In the evening the Fiscal returned and reported that the fence was being well made under the supervision of the sergeant, and progressed satisfactorily, as well as the one against which there was objection yesterday, for as the ringleader had been brought to the fort, the others went prudently and industriously to work.

August 20th.—Ordinary day of prayer. The weather somewhat hazy. During the night the S.S.E. wind commenced to blow stiffly, with drought.

August 22nd.—Fine calm weather. The Commander went out early to inspect the works everywhere. He found the pega-pega (= fence) commenced from Leendert's forest, already 600 roods advanced; the Company's ploughs were still going, and the freemen were everywhere generally busy with their gardens—the sowing of corn having nearly come to an end. What has been sown will have to suffice us during this year of trouble. May the Almighty save the ensuing harvest from being burnt by the Hottentoots, for then we would reap more corn than last year, as the growth is showing beautifully almost everywhere. To-day the two Guinea slaves of Herman Remajenne were recaptured in the lower end of the Bos river, which runs down from the Company's forest, and where their rendezvous had been, and they had formed a fine shelter, so that the slaves of the Company and of the burghers might have had an inducement to follow their example. This, however, praise be to God, was prevented in good time last Monday, and all were again rivetted in chains, but the one who had brought back his mate was set at liberty, and appointed watchman over his countrymen and slaves of the Company, of whom he is one.

August 23rd.—Rainy weather in the morning.

August 24th (Sunday).—Cloudy sky.

August 25th.—Ditto. This morning the frame work of one of the watch houses was carried to its destination very early by four wagons of the freemen, and the Commander having pointed out the site, the carpenters commenced erecting it, and quickly covering it with planks. It is 12 ft. square, 8 ft. high, with a protruding breast work of 3 feet. It is named "Uyt Kyck," as it is being placed on a high sandhill near the seashore in order to enclose the passage between Salt River and the beach, and prevent our cattle being driven off by the marauding Hottentoots, &c. To-morrow or the day after, the masons will also commence work at the other watchhouse by erecting large outside buttresses of stone, as there is not sufficient timber at the works for beams and joints, and that we may the sooner be ready and in a state of defence. But to be so ready and in a proper state of security, we do not neglect garden or field work; both defensive and agricultural works are

1659.

—

advanced together, whilst at the same time a careful watch is kept over the cattle, &c., so that hardly anyone is left at the fort to protect it if attacked; however, there is as yet no fear of this as regards these natives.

August 26th and 27th.—Fine lovely weather. The masons set to work on the other watch house for which the stone has for the most part been brought on, whilst the woodwork for the roof and the beams are nearly all lying ready between the Salt River and the Fresh River Liesbeeck on a high hillock well covered with bush and sandy, right in the middle of the passage or ford of the Hottentots. Here the foundation for the structure has been laid, which will bear the name of “Keert de Koe,” and is fully 340 roods distant from the watchhouse “Uyt Kyck,” the Salt River running between both.

Resolution : “Whereas the free miller Wouter Cornelisz Mostert of Utrecht has commenced to make a new watermill, as the horse mill sent from home, and long ago erected in a proper building with all its appendages, can no longer be used in consequence of the cattle of the company and mostly of all of the burghers having been stolen, and as it has further been found that even if we had sufficient oxen they could acquit themselves only with difficulty in such a horse mill, and moreover that such a mill would annually require the exertions of many oxen, with which much more necessary work might be done in connection with wheat farming; and whereas the aforesaid free miller cannot make much progress in his work, and the biscuit last landed from the ships, together with the rice and pearl barley are running low, so that it is indispensable that the mill shall be set working in order to enable us to bake henceforth bread of the present harvest here at the Cape, of which there is enough in store to last us for about six months; it was deemed most highly necessary to assist, at his urgent request, the aforesaid free miller in finishing his watermill—which is fairly successful, but in other respects evidently very slow in grinding—that the Company and free burghers may the sooner have the benefit of it, but on this condition, that in case the expense of making the mill shall be found to be too heavy for him to pay, the Company shall, under those circumstances, retain it for itself, and recompense him for his work, as far as possible in accordance with proper taxation.

And as, as already mentioned, the pottage is running to an end, so that it will be impossible for a long while to provide the people with spoon food as is done on board ship, and has hitherto been customary here in the case of the common people, as no barley can any longer be taken out of the ships arriving here—because the latter are generally not too abundantly supplied for the rest of their voyage to India—it was decided, until further orders shall have been received from the Directors, who have been addressed on this subject, to distribute food money to all the servants of the Company from the first of September next, as is usual in India, excepting the sick in hospital, for whom shall

always be catered separately according to ancient custom, that they may every day enjoy their proper rations; and to add to the food money, instead of 40 lbs. of rice per month, 30 lbs. of biscuits or 40 lbs. freshly baked bread as the times may allow; being $1\frac{1}{3}$ lbs. per day for each person, or $9\frac{2}{3}$ lbs. fresh bread per week, according to the accounts which may be referred to in the business and pay books; but the soldiers, as long as they are employed at the fences or any other works, shall as long as the latter last, and because they will find little to buy there, be provided with $1\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. bread and $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. pork daily without food money; and as the workmen, as well as the soldiers, have to watch during the night, and the soldiers have in addition their expeditions and guard duties, the food money shall until further orders be divided equally among them; at the same time, on the other hand, the custom of giving each man every morning $\frac{1}{2}$ a "Mutsjen" of brandy shall be resumed, excepting those exempted from mounting guard, as the nights are cold; so that the men may feel less inclination to spend their food money in the taverns. It was also decided, for their greater convenience, to privilege certain Town residents living near the Fort, to sell them all kinds of shop and chandlers' wares, provided that they bought the same for cash at the Company's stores, out of which, in addition to the beautiful Cape fisheries, &c., milk and butter, abundance of vegetables, ground and garden fruit will be obtainable in sufficient quantities, as auxiliary food. And that all may be able to make a living and no one set up a monopoly, it was decided to regulate the prices as follows:—

Fresh fish with entrails (? roe) and every thing, one penny farthing per 3lbs.

But, per 100 lbs., 2 guilders.

Salted ditto, per 2 lbs., $12\frac{1}{2}$ farthings.

($1\frac{1}{2}$ bras penning)

„ but, per 100 lbs., 4 guilders.

Dried fish, 2 lbs. for 10 farthings, or $2\frac{1}{2}$ d. (a stoter—an imaginary Dutch coin.)

But, per 100 lbs., $5\frac{1}{2}$ guilders.

Mutton, when sheep are killed, 3st: per lb.

Beef, „ oxen „ „ 2 „ „ „

Cape Pork, killed 4 „ „ „

Living Pigs, $2\frac{1}{2}$ „ „ „

However, what the Company may require of this article for its slaves or otherwise, is to be supplied at the rates fixed previously to this date.

If these and other articles are obtained from the Company, the sellers shall be allowed a discount, in order to have a proper profit.

Dutch and Cape butter, per lb., at the most 15 stivers.

Sweet Milk, at the most per quart, 4 stivers.

Butter Milk, at the most per quart, 2 stivers.

Whether there be ships in the Bay or not.

1659.

In the interest of the ordinary workman, it was agreed that henceforth no one shall be allowed to charge more, it having been found that the dairymen can subsist with these prices.

Fowl and duck eggs, at the most one for a stiver.

Penguin eggs, " " five for two stivers.

Goose and Plover eggs—according to discretion.

Seagulls', divers' and similar kinds of eggs, 10 or 12 at least, for two stivers.

Olive oil, per " mutsjen " (= $\frac{1}{8}$ of a quart), $2\frac{1}{2}$ stivers.

Vinegar, " " $1\frac{1}{4}$ "

Salt, per lb. " " $\frac{1}{2}$ "

Wheaten, } to calculate the price when the mill has been
Rye and } set going.
White bread }

Melons, water melons (ripe, and weighing at least 1 lb. each), $\frac{1}{2}$ stiver per lb., for which the Company will also buy them to refresh the ships.

Perfect cabbages, 2 or 3 st. each, according to their size.

Yellow, white and red carrots, 2 or 3 st. per bunch of 25 full grown.

Turnips, per bunch of 25, the same, according to size.

White Turkish beans, at the most, $2\frac{1}{2}$ st. per lb. or pint; by wholesale 2 reals per bushel (schepel).

All other ground fruits, fine or coarse vegetables, salad, garlick, onions, &c., in proportion.

Birds, as previously fixed, viz.:—

A wild goose, 6 stivers each.

A mountain duck, 5 st. "

An ordinary " 4 " "

Teals, pigeons and such, 2 st each.

Fowls, pheasants, partridges, quails, snipes, &c, at discretion.

With express warning and prohibition, as above mentioned in the case of butter and milk, that no one shall be allowed to demand more for the provisions mentioned, whether from the ships that may arrive, or from the garrison and Netherland residents, on pain of forfeiting what he has charged higher for, and three times the value in money, to be borne by the seller, one-third of the wares to go to the informer, that the people may be able to subsist here on their food or ration money, and especially that the butter may not be kept back so much for the arrival of vessels, in order to obtain the highest price, as has often ere this occurred to the great inconvenience of the residents here. The Fiscus is therefore officially charged with the duty of attending to this carefully, personally and otherwise, and without distinction of persons.

And that pigs may be bred more abundantly, it is understood that every burgher living in the neighbourhood of the fort shall for the present keep no less than seven, six sows and one boar, being at liberty to sell all beyond that number at the prices above fixed, and to whom he likes; that is, provided that every town burgher

has previously been provided with the required number. To that end every one of them shall receive in freehold as much land for carrots and other garden produce as he deems necessary, those excepted who possess land in the country, in order not to divert the agriculturists from rearing corn, this being the most important of all, in order to suffer no want of bread or other grain.

For necessary reasons it was also understood that the town burghers near the fort shall besides pigs be also permitted to keep Dutch sheep, but shall not be allowed to kill any of them before they have raised 50 in number, including 2 rams for breeding purposes, and then only rams and wethers. The town burghers may sell the ewes, however, to one another at reasonable prices, that everyone may be enabled to breed the above-mentioned number for himself, that in this way the Company's ships may obtain better refreshments. The agriculturists are permitted the same privilege, independent of their Cape sheep. Everyone is also permitted to sell all kinds of wares obtainable in the Company's stores, with the exception, however, of agriculturists, tavern keepers and tapsters, who are excluded because of their great returns (Slyiagie), that those who keep shops may the better be protected and also be able to draw their little profits. Everyone, however, is permitted freely to sell Cape butter, milk, eggs, fowls, geese, ducks, and all other birds, fish, fruit, and whatever else is obtainable or breedable on land, in the water or in the air, excepting corn and cattle, which the Company alone shall negotiate as it thinks proper.

The above subject to the approval and further consideration of our Lords Superiors and the High Government of India.

Thus done, &c." Signed as above.

August 28th.—A light westerly breeze. During the past night the freemen's vessel the *Peguy* returned from Dassen Island with some eggs, birds, and fish. During the evening their other vessel, the *Zeeland*, also returned from Saldanha Bay laden with salted seals' flesh for the slaves. Also the Company's decked boat called *Het Schapenjachtje* laden with 9 full casks of the same meat taken on board *en passant* in that bay from the aforesaid Saldanhars, whilst our men were staying there; and the land surveyor, Pieter Potter, was busy to survey the bay, sound and chart it, in order to put the whole in proper form, and which he has since done as instructed on the 29th July past. They had twice seen Hottentoots there, once seven and (? again) nineteen, who had been on the Schapen Eiland in the freemen's vessel, having mutually treated each other well. No cattle, however, were obtained from them, as they were Beach Ringers, who subsist on fish, and are well known to our people. They certainly, as they said, had heard of the Kaapmen's robberies, but they had never had a share in them, and were at present staying between the said bay and the Cape.

August 29th and 30th.—Lovely dry weather; since last Sunday a soldier has been missing named Louys Lake, who with

1659.

the consent of the sergeant had gone out early in the morning in order to catch some "Klip fish" along the beach of the downs and the tail of the Lion Mountain. This is generally done; he had been seen there by the free miller Wouter Cornelisz: Mostert and the free tailor Elbert Dirckse, but after that nothing more was heard of him, though he had been sought for until this day. It is therefore presumed that he must have slipped off the rock and thus come to his end, or he may have been destroyed by some wild animal, as no Hottentoots have been seen in the neighbourhood.

August 31st (Sunday).—Fine weather and wind as above.

September 1st.—Full moon. A drizzling rain in the morning with a westerly breeze.

September 2nd.—Drier weather. The Commander went out again with the Fiscal to make a general inspection. He found everything progressing well, and all fairly busy. The stone watchhouse named "Keert de Koe" was so far finished that the upper woodwork and thatch, prepared at the fort, and already conveyed thither, will presumably be finished this week as well as the wooden watchhouse. There will likewise be no great hitch in the pegapaga for the enclosure mentioned, as under the sergeant's superintendence, so that the fence of palisades and trees between the two watchhouses will soon be completed. The woodwork for the purpose has nearly all been cut this week in the forest, and will soon be ready; so that with God in the van, the work will soon be completed, if the Hottentoots will only, as they have done some time lately, leave us a little in peace, when they will not be able so easily to carry off our cattle as they used to do, but on the contrary will find more obstacles.

September 3rd to 6th.—Mostly loose, rainy, fructifying weather. All in every direction busy planting vegetable, garden and ground fruit, also many kinds of European fruit and foreign lemon and orange trees, according to the present time of the year.

September 7th (Sunday).—Fine, lovely weather.

September 8th.—Very dark dry mist this morning. The Commander went out again for a general inspection.

September 9th to 11th.—Generally the same weather. Nothing particularly occurred except that the Commander visited various places during these three days.

September 12th.—Rain in the morning—drier weather in the afternoon. This day the clothes, head and some bones of the missing soldier were found below the tail of the Lion Mountain, about 30 roods from the beach; the brain pan had already been bitten off, so that it is presumed that he must have been killed by a lion, from which animal our people sometimes suffer loss and attack.

September 13th.—Fine summer-like weather in the morning. The Fiscal inspected the remains found, and had them buried, &c.

September 14th (Sunday).—Calm, dark weather. As a beacon fire was observed on Robben Island during the night, the *Schapen-*

jachtjen was immediately despatched thither with the following letter:—"To Ryk Overhagen,—The *Schapenjachtjen* is sent you to inquire what was the meaning of the signal fires during the night, and to bring you one month's provisions, one bushel of barley and oats, two rabbits and two female slaves in place of the obdurate pair which you have there. Let them daily carry on shells, which, however, are not to be left so low down on the beach that they can again be washed away. If your fires do not mean anything particular, and it is not necessary to send us immediate information, then have the boat filled with shells and send her over so laden, even if the shells have to be fetched (put on board) by the boatmen, the male and female slaves. We would also like to know how the pigs are thriving, and whether the sheep are increasing, also the rabbits, &c."—(Signed) J. v Riebeeck.

September 15th.—Fine weather. The Commander was out and tried the fence made of branches like a pega-pega. Some of the strongest cattle he ordered to be chased against it to see whether they could break through it; but it proved quite strong enough. It is more than 1,150 roods long, and was made in 20 days by 30 men. The only difficulty is that it is very much liable to be burnt, and therefore three fire watchmen were appointed (to take care of it). Three carpenters in the forest were also told off to prepare the woodwork for the third watchhouse, which will be near the forest, and hurriedly to erect and cover it with planks, and to call it "Houd den Bul." The Commander also once more inspected the Liesbeeck, and left instructions that the places where cattle might possibly still be driven over should be marked in order to consider the cheapest and speediest manner in which to further deepen and strengthen them, &c., as at present the Hottentots leave us in peace, and accordingly allow us time for the purpose.

To-day the *Peguin*, the vessel of the free Saldanhars, arrived from Dassen Island with 4 half aums of oil and some fish and eggs, bringing news that last Sunday they had seen a ship at sea to the westward of the island, which evidently, in consequence of the continuous calms, is lying in the neighbourhood and doing its best to reach this bay, into which may the Almighty bring it safely.

September 16th.—Fine, lovely weather, with a westerly breeze (new moon). The other boat of the free Saldanha traders, also arrives from Dassen Island with 2,720 lbs. seals' flesh for the slaves, and 4 half aums train oil, fish and birds.

September 17th.—Wind and weather as yesterday. The *Schapenjachtje* arrives in the afternoon from Robben Island laden with shells, and the news that *the fire had been lighted to notify to us that their provisions were spent, and that one of the sows had littered*; also that the sheep were again beautifully fat and sleek and had increased to 46. That the rabbits were getting on well, and that the rock rabbits were commencing to breed finely.

September 18th.—Rainy weather in the morning. The *Schapenjachtje* having been discharged, was again made ready to proceed

1659.

—

to the island with the following letter to Ryk Overhagen : — “ At your request we send you seme eurlly kale, black radishes, carrots, turnips and other greens which have run to seed, for the pigs; they should be eut up and boiled with the dish wash and given to the pigs at certain times, in order to accustom them to remain near the house, and especially that the young pigs may be better reared. Ample room can be found for them in the large stable yard, and they should be provided with grass bedding, so that good manure will be obtained from them as well as from the sheep for the little garden there, which you must sow full of curly kale. You must also sow some in all directions on the island, together with purslain, of which we send you a whole chaldron (hoed). In St. Helena it is the best fresh food, and therefore should be zealously cultivated here; for as the pigs are still in small numbers there, it is therefore the best time now to undertake this work, so that soon this vegetable may become so abundant that it will be impossible to eradicate it. The curly kale seed sent must be sown on a small plot in the garden, and when about a span high transplanted two or three feet from each other, but in well manured soil. Attend to this carefully, as besides rabbits, pigs are exclusively to be bred there, as we do not dare to send any more sheep thither. We hope, however, that the 46 will multiply sufficiently; the wethers you shall from time to time send over whenever we require any for the ships.

The *Schapenjachtjen* shall take in another load of shells as soon as she has discharged the sods, which if laid down next each other will grow sufficiently well. The green stuff on them is also good pigs' food, as we have observed here.

If the hollow tree used there for making and containing the hogs' wash be not sufficiently large, let us know, and we shall send you one or two more, and fill the boat with earrot leaves and other greens of which there is a sufficient quantity here in the dry season. The pigs will no doubt also find food in the bulbs and roots there, which the Hottentoots eat, and which as Herry tells us are in abundance there.

We also send you tobacco for a month for the two female slaves, that is, one pound.

In the Fort, &c.” (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, 18th September, 1659.

September 19th.—Cloudy weather, and the wind variable.

September 20th.—The same weather, with a fresh S.S.E. breeze. In the afternoon the watchhouse “Kyekuyt” signalled that they saw Hottentoots. At once the outlying horsemen and free fishermen proceeded thither, as well as some men from the fort. The horsemen, who were the first to reach the spot, discovered that the Hottentoots, as they were holding up a flag, belonged to Oedosea, and had with them 7 or 8 sheep, as well as Eva, the interpretress, who having also met the men from the fort, entered it as friends.

After bringing greeting from her brother-in-law and communicating some news of small importance, she said that he had ordered her to inform us that the Kaapmen had come to him with the request that he would give them Eva in order to beg us through her to give them peace, but that Oedasoahad replied that they had Doman, who as well as Eva had been brought up in the Governor's house, and was sufficient master of Dutch, but as he was heavily wounded, having in the encounter with the Fiscal been shot by the superintendent of the stables, the bullet entering behind the shoulder blade and passing out through the chest, whilst three others were as heavily wounded as himself, and as no one else among them would venture to approach us he had agreed to permit Eva to bring us the message, and to say that they offered to return half of the stolen cattle and sheep, as the thieves had eaten the rest, as well as the Dutch sheep which they had stolen, &c. Upon this Eva was asked whether Oedasoahad not replied that that was a bad offer, and that they ought to offer twice as much as they had robbed us of. She replied that he had told them to offer as much as they had stolen from us, and that Oedasoahad was inclined, if possible, to bring it, with the request that we would be satisfied with the offer, for he had upon their ceaseless entreaty promised to act as mediator. They were accordingly told that when they were ready to depart we would inform them of our decision, &c.

September 21st (Sunday).—Fine, calm, sunshiny weather in the morning. In the afternoon S.S.E. wind commenced to blow stiffly. Eight sheep were bartered from the Saldanhars.

Conversing with Eva she told us among other things that the Kaapmen were very much annoyed with Doman, accusing him daily of being the cause that they were deprived of the beautiful enjoyment of intercourse with the Dutch, from which now they must remain banished, besides the loss of eight of their best and bravest men, and three, exclusive of Doman, lying severely wounded, not without danger of dying of their wounds; so that the disunion among them was very great, and not less the weeping and wailing among the women; moreover, the Chorachouquas, who had lost two of their bravest men in the encounter and had thus drawn our attention to themselves, had also separated from them, after some of them had for that reason already committed slight acts of hostility against them (the Caapmen); so that they, feeling heartily ashamed of themselves, having made matters even much worse than they were, had laid their heads on Oedasoah's bosom in order to ask us for peace through him. Oedasoahad therefore sent Eva to us, kindly to request us again to receive them graciously and in friendship as before, as at present in consequence of their doings, they found themselves surrounded by enemies on all sides and did not dare to rest in quiet a single day, for they imagined that they heard the Dutch firing in every direction and dreaded to be overwhelmed by them at any time.

1659.

—

Eva having been asked whether they did not doubly deserve it, &c., replied "Yes," and that her brother-in-law had told her the same, but if the Commander would this once forgive the poor wretches (these were her words), Oedaso would do his best to make us content, by enabling us to get back all our cattle. In reply to all this she was told, that if they brought all the cattle back we would speak of peace because of Oedaso's request, but certainly not on their account, but that some of their principal men might accompany her to the fort, &c.

September 22nd.—Stiff and dry S.S.E. wind in the morning. During the forenoon Eva and her people left with the above-mentioned reply, taking with her also some presents for herself, Oedaso and his wife, as well as her companions. But in passing the redoubt Duyinhoop, and finding no one there except the black wife of the freeman Jan Saeharias, they took from her a pair of tongs and an axe, and also beat her. She called to Eva, who, she says, refused to come, but slapping her buttock with her hand, passed on.

This evening news was brought that 13 Hottentoots had been seen this morning near the Bosheuvel, who had passed above the pega-pega or fence that had been made on the slopes of the Bosbergen, right behind them through the forest of Leendert Cornelisz: and on their return had again passed through that forest. What their intention was, or still may be, remains unknown; one thing is always evident, that one never knows what one must believe of Eva's message or this people, and that we must continue to remain carefully on the watch and take care. Seven of the cattle herds were accordingly at once despatched under command of a corporal to the forest of Leendert Cornelisz: with orders to warn the freemen in all directions as well as our men at the Schuur to be on their guard, and after that to station themselves at Leendert's place and the neighbourhood to find out what attack the Hottentoots intended to make, as it is feared that they may make an attempt on his saws and other tools, or on the Commander's corn fields and homestead at "Bosheuvel," which is situated at the extreme frontier, and for that reason the most difficult to be protected.

September 23rd.—Same weather as yesterday. The Commander went out early in the morning and met the corporal and men at the Company's orchard, from whom he gathered that the Hottentoots had attempted nothing, and that nothing more had been seen of them. He took the corporal and 4 of his men with him, thus having only 6 men with him, in order as usual to make a general inspection, that every one, seeing the Commander daily busy in all directions and at hand, might the better attend to his work, and should any Hottentoots be in the neighbourhood that they might know that a careful eye is kept on them, &c.

September 24th.—Same weather as yesterday. Not a tithe of the force of the wind felt behind the Table Mountain among the

corn lands. During the afternoon a ship arrived, but was prevented by the strong S.E. winds from reaching her proper berth, and had to anchor in the mouth of the bay.

September 25th.—Fine lovely weather in the morning. The officers of the vessel land early and reported her to be the *Erasmus*, from Batavia on the 16th January last in company of the return yacht *Naarden*. In about 34 S. lat: she had between the 29th and 30th March, in consequence of severe gales and damage to her stern, been parted from her consort, and compelled to make for the Comoro Islands, where she had lain at Ansuanny and in an unknown bay of Madagascar, whence she had come hither, having lost 30 men by sickness. They were very poorly supplied with food and provisions, as they only had six casks of meat, two ditto pork, three leaguers arrack, thirty or forty cans of oil, four leaguers of vinegar, and five thousand five hundred lbs. of rice. This was all to serve 86 men. Regarding their adventures they gave the following extract from the ship's journal: "On the 27th January they reached the open sea through Sundas Straits and shaped their course for the Cape. Between the 29th and 30th March they were overtaken by a severe storm accompanied with hail; decided, as the ship was so leaky, to make for the Comoro Islands for repairs. Finally they reached the Island Ansuanny, where they found a small English yacht, equipped by the new United British Society, named the frigate *Suratta*. She had called on her way at the coast of Guinea and was proceeding to Persia. With this friend they sent a narrative of their misfortune to the Company's residents there.

On the 1st July they left the roadstead Zamodo, where they had intended to remain to await the good monsoon—that is, until the end of August or beginning of September, but they were forced to leave on account of the endemial sickness, which sometimes in the harvest season attacks the natives also, and was daily attacking the crew very violently. They lost 17 men here, whilst 30 or 35 of their strongest men were laid up still. God grant all a gracious relief."

As the current continued against them, it was decided on the 17th to seek shelter on the coast of Madagascar in 15° or 16° of S. lat. In this they succeeded, arriving on the 25th in an unknown bay, where they provided themselves with water and fuel.

After a stay here of about a month they left on the 19th August. Twice they had sent boats up the river towards the interior in order to explore the country and obtain provisions. The first boat had met people, but could do nothing with them as they were too timid, and the second returned after three days' absence without having seen a living being. It is strange to see such a large coast country uninhabited, as Madagascar is said to have more than a hundred Kings, but according to report execrable devastations are in all directions committed by these barbarians among each other, so that a multitude of people dwelling on the coast, finding

1659.

themselves too weak for defence, have retired to the mountains. Hence the western shore of this huge island is found so desolate and deserted. On the 23rd August the skipper, Daem Pietersz Lely, after a long lingering illness expired in the Lord; and seven days later one of the military, "so that hitherto after a painful voyage thirty persons have to this day died." On the 25th September, praise be to God, after a passage of 8 months and 10 days from Batavia they finally reached Table Bay."

September 26th.—Cloudy sky. The *Erasmus* brought to her proper anchorage.

September 27th.—Cloudy sky. The following *Resolution* adopted:—"Council strengthened with the officers of the *Erasmus*, its boatswain and skipper, Cornelis Lodewycksz and Mangus Heyndricksz, passengers on that vessel. After mature deliberation it was agreed that the vessel might, after having undergone the necessary repairs, be able to leave about the beginning of March, in order to continue its voyage home by the course round Scotland and Ireland, as ordered by the 17 on the 22nd August, 1658: that smaller and weaker vessels performed the voyage safely in the winter season, &c., and therefore there would be no reason why the *Erasmus* might not do so likewise; that she shall therefore be provisioned from the outward bound ships touching here; that instead of barley she shall be supplied with rice for the homeward voyage, as the outward bound carry no rice, and that so long as she is here she will be provided with refreshments out of the gardens; that every man instead of rice shall receive 4 lbs. of bread per week, and to comfort them further after what they have endured, they were allowed at their request to receive out of the provisions still on board and saved during the voyage, besides the 4 lbs. of bread (as said provisions were already very old and nothing particular), 1 lb. pork on 3 meat days; 1 "mutsje" oil, and 1 do. vinegar, with 3 half glasses of arrack per week. Every other day they shall have a sheep and vegetables, every day as much as they can eat, with 8 or 10 lbs. of rice and rich soup, according to the discretion of the officers.

It was also decided to take 12 or 15 men out of her in order during these war times to assist us in cutting the wood required for the fence, and so be kept from idleness, so that we may be able to commence at the river also, in order to put it also in a state of defence, so as to be able to stop or turn the cattle. It was at the same time resolved not to allow the Portuguese on board to land, that they might not be able to spy out the Company's affairs here." (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, P. Gerritse, R. de Man, Abr: Gabbema, Vincent Vette, Tielman Cornelisz: Corn: Lodewycksz: Mangus Hendriksz: P. Everard, Dirk Jansz: Schaik, and Gysbert v. Campen, see:

September 28th (Sunday).—Cloudy sky and calm weather.

September 29th.—Ditto.

September 30th.—Full moon. The Commander was again out

early in the morning to make his usual rounds of inspection, it being fine weather; also to mark off the site of the third watch-house, the timber for which was now ready. He named it "Houd den Bul." He also selected 21 men to strengthen the river wherever it was necessary, and to steepen the banks to prevent the cattle from being driven across by the Hottentoots as often mentioned. And as many of the men of the *Erasmus* appointed to drag the timber for the fences out of the forest have been found rather weak, he allowed some of them to return home, intending to-morrow or the day after to go on board and see whether the rest were as bad or in any way unwell, in order to decide whether they shall be made to continue their work or be excused.

October 1st.—Dark weather in the morning, with a N.W. breeze.

October 2nd.—The N.W. breeze becoming stronger, with a little rain.

October 3rd.—Calm weather in the morning. The Commander goes on board the *Erasmus*. He found the discipline good and the men beautifully obedient to their officers, but they were generally of an unhealthy colour and appearance. Hence it was decided to employ none at the forest, except those who requested it of their own free will, and who were promised after having finished the work of dragging the timber out, a month's (extra) wages on account, as allowed to our own people, to give each man 1 lb. tobacco, and instead of 4 lbs. of biscuits weekly, to give them and all the seamen 5 lbs. fresh bread, half wheat and half rye, and those working in the forest 9 lbs. of the same kind of bread each, weekly.

To-day the captured Hottentoo was sent to Robben Island in the *Schapenjachtje* with some black radishes and carrots, which had run to seed, for the pigs.

October 4th.—Fine weather. The forest workmen return in the afternoon, twelve men of the *Erasmus* having been employed there this week with our men. It was left to their choice to return on board, but of their own free will they requested to be allowed to assist in dragging out the timber as long as they were here. This assists us wonderfully well.

October 5th (Sunday).—Dark weather. Dry N.W. breeze. A ship sighted in the evening, which arrived safely in the roadstead about midnight. She was the *Malacca*, commanded by skipper Van de Werwe and junior merchant Outhoorn. Had left the Vlie on the 29th May last with 352 men, of whom 36 had died and 30 were ill. The latter were brought on shore for recovery. She had called nowhere, had had no adventures, but always fine weather.

October 6th.—Fine calm weather in the morning, but towards night a stiff S.S.E. wind. The *Schapenjachtje* returned from Robben Island with the following letter to the Commander:—"Sir,—The yacht arrived here with 1 pig and greens for the same

1659. — Have 5 more little pigs. Unnecessary to send seals' flesh here, as they prefer penguins. Have also 4 more lambs, so that the number at present is 50." . . . —(Signed) R. Overhagen.

October 7th.—Slightly windy weather from the S.E. *Resolution* :—Council meets to discuss the affairs of the *Erasmus* and its departure.

October 8th and 9th.—Good weather, with variable breezes. *Resolution*, 9th October :—"The *Erasmus* provisioned from the *Mahacca* for 6 months, in order to be able to proceed home. As it would be contrary to orders of Directors to let her depart alone, and also very unsafe on account of the English and Swedish privateers, which daily capture and rob our ships, it was further decided to keep her here until the departure of the next return fleet, that is until the middle or end of February next. The officers of the vessel, however, demurred, and wished to leave in December alone, taking the straight course, as they said that the ship by lying here so long would not be able to keep up with the return fleet.

Jelle Henrix, of the *Cuynder*, who arrived here in the *Zwarte Vos* on the 4th June, 1653, as sailor, at f5 per month, and who remained on Madagascar with the French since the loss of the *Tulp*, afterwards went on board the English yacht *Catharina*, and reached the island Ansuanny on the 27th June, 1659, where he entered the Company's service on board the *Erasmus*, is, at his request, and in consequence of his ability, and also because his time has expired, re-engaged for three years as arquebusier at f12 per month.

Willem Cornelisz, of Rotterdam, who arrived here in the *Achilles* on the 15th July this year as trumpeter at f12 per month, and offered at the same time to take the gunner's duties in addition, having been examined and found fit, is given the latter office also, with a salary of f20 for both offices." (Signed by) J. v. Riebeeck, &c.

October 10th and 11th.—Wind and weather as before, with now and then a stiff S.E. gust. The men of the yacht *Erasmus* excused from further work and sent on board again.

October 12th.—The same weather as above.

October 13th and 14th.—Strong S.E. wind in the afternoon. The freeman Pieter Jansz came to report that near the Bosheuvel he had been surrounded by 9 Hottentoots, who after some conversation, had requested him to obtain a flag from the fort, in order to enable them to converse with the Commander without being molested, &c. This was given him, together with a soldier, whilst three of the mounted men were told off to follow him unperceived. At night he returned to the fort with some of Herry's people called watermen, who on the 3rd August last had been attacked by Corporal Elias Giers behind the Capo Mountains. They excused themselves by saying that they were not to blame for the war, or the theft of cattle; that it had been begun

by the Kaapmen under the direction and at the instigation of Doman. They accordingly requested that our men might no longer be sent out against them, but that as before they might with their huts, wives and children be again permitted to dwell in the neighbourhood of the fort, in order to serve us by fetching wood, water, and catching fish, &c. That they had no cattle or any wealth, except what they got out of the sea by fishing, which has benefitted the common people very much.

Being asked if they did not know where the Kaapmen were at present, they said no, and that they were not such good friends as to meet often. They had, however, heard a while ago that they had placed themselves under the protection of Oedaso, and that for that privilege he had received from them several cattle stolen from us, so that they believed that they had with the others retired far into the interior.

Being asked whether they would not go and search for them for us, they replied that they could not very well do so in a hurry, but if they were allowed to settle near the fort, in course of time the Kaapmen would no doubt visit them at night and at unreasonable hours, and thus endeavour to find an opportunity of again speaking of peace, &c.

Herry had been placed behind a thin partition where he could hear all that they said, that we might find out from him whether they told lies, &c., but being afterwards interrogated he said that they were all of his people and had spoken the truth.

The matter was therefore referred to the Council for consideration, and to-morrow it will be decided what to do with these 9 Hottentoots, whether to let them go or to detain them, &c.

October 15th.—The S.S.E. wind still blowing. *Resolution*; “As the S.E. wind prevents all communication with the ships, so that the officers of the latter cannot possibly attend the meeting respecting the Hottentoots here at the fort, and as this matter can brook no delay, but requires immediate attention, the Council after mature deliberation decides that it would be contrary to all justice and fairness to detain as prisoners persons who although enemies (although they plead that they are guiltless of the theft of our cattle) voluntarily offer themselves to make peace, &c.—the more so as no dependence can be placed on these naked fellows, whilst their detention would create such ill-feeling and distrust among the rest, that those in whom the Company have the greatest interest could never be trusted in this neighbourhood again—whilst if they were allowed free access as before, as requested by them, and the mischief done by them be winked at, the rest would venture with more confidence into this neighbourhood, and thus we may in due time find a better opportunity for proper revenge, or taking such other steps as may be found most beneficial for the Company and the public welfare; and the more so as at present the fence (in course of erection to prevent the cattle from being driven off by the Hottentoots) is not yet finished, and we can do little more than

1659.

protect our cattle with all our might, and which is very much diminishing in consequence of the consumption of the shipping, so that it is necessary to consider how best by barter to obtain others and more; which certainly could not be effected by detaining these persons, much less if we desire to entice the Kaapmen, our principal enemies, so far back to us in order to enable us to take effectual vengeance on them, as we might often have done before, and we hope by giving these men their liberty in course of time to be able to do again, or at least so far that they may come to be reconciled to us and restore some of the stolen cattle, and with more security enable us to trade with the others, which they are now, through Oedasoa, preventing us from doing, endeavouring to prejudice all against us, so that an antidote is urgently required, and no better one can be found at present than by permitting these watermen to come and go without molestation; the more so as their people cannot be prevented from spying out everything about us. And as we are making our position stronger every day, it is to be hoped that they will feel less inclined to disturb us, provided, however, that a strict watch be kept on everything and we remain on our guard in every direction, continuing with diligence at the fences and other defensive forts. . . ." (Signed by) J. van Riebeeck, &c.

In consequence of this Resolution the aforesaid Hottentoots, provisionally pardoned by us, were set at liberty, and conducted by the Fiscal past all the freemen's dwellings; and they were told, if they returned, what parts they were to avoid, and which roads they were to take, &c.

October 16th.—New moon. Fine, calm, warm, sunshiny weather in the morning. In the evening the house of the freeman Hendrik Boom was burnt to the ground, caused by the careless heating of an oven.

October 17th.—A fine rain fell in the course of the evening. Four of the above-mentioned Hottentoots came to the fort in company of the Commander, who had been out and had met them. They said that to-morrow their wives and children and huts would follow with the rest of their people, and that they would settle in the neighbourhood, &c.

October 18th.—N.W. breeze. The boats of the freemen arrived from Dassen Island and Saldanha Bay with a quantity of fish and eggs. They brought news that they had seen some of Oedasoa's people, and some of the tobacco thieves there and bartered from them more than 20 sheep. Cattle had also been offered them, which they were obliged to refuse, as they had no means to transport them, and moreover had no merchandize to barter for them. They were of opinion that otherwise a large quantity might have been obtained if one only knew how to get them here. For the rest they had experienced only affectionate treatment from them.

October 19th (Sunday).—Fine calm weather until night, when it began to blow heavily from the S.S.E.

October 20th.—Wind continuing. *Het Schapenjachtje* despatched to Saldanha Bay with the following memorandum for the land surveyor Pieter Potter:—"As we gather from the free Saldanha traders that the Cochoquas are encamped near that bay, and are inclined to trade, we have decided to send you 32½ lbs. copper wire, 4 lbs. tobacco and 4 doz. pipes, with which to barter sheep, as many of which as may be possible you shall convey hither; but in case you find no opportunity of trading there, you shall take on board and convey hither the sheep placed by the free Saldanha traders on the 'Schapen Island;' and as these men are off and on busying themselves with their fisheries, their vessel may be employed to carry some over; but should you meet with trade, they shall have to transport their sheep themselves.

"But before you leave the bay you four shall, as instructed, proceed overland, and endeavour to find out whether St. Helena Bay does not extend near to Saldanha Bay; sound, survey and chart it, as exactly as Saldanha Bay has been done, with your observations regarding the facilities for water, fuel, timber and other wood as well as the nature and situation of the mountains, hills valleys, &c., which you shall likewise examine from the Oliphant's hoek once more, in order to be laid down in the general chart, as has been done in the case of this 'Kaastrand.' For this reason especially you are sent thither with the assurance that you will properly perform your duty in this respect to the best of your ability, and with proper notes for the benefit of the Company. With this we wish you a pleasant out and homeward trip. . . ."

—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck."

Whereas the Watermen as mentioned on the 15th instant have again come to live in the neighbourhood of the fort, Herry was once more secretly sent back to Robben Island in the *Schapenjachtje*, so that not one of his people observed it. However, they ask as much about him as if he had never been born.

October 21st.—Heavy S.S.E. winds. Cloudy sky and a slight rain in the morning. During the night there were also slight showers. As the wind abated during the forenoon the *Schapenjachtje* and the free Saldanhar left.

Resolution:—"Whereas it appears from the confession of Sergeant Allert van Hafte and other examinations, that no other evidence can be obtained than that he had this morning stabbed Gilles van Muyden in his breast with his small sword, in consequence of which the said Gilles died, as appears from the report of the surgeon and the personal inspection of the Commissioners; and whereas the said sergeant confessed that he had committed the crime in self-defence of his body and life, and no contrary evidence is obtainable, the Council, strengthened with the skipper and junior merchant of the ship *Malacca* and the skipper of the yacht *Erasmus*, unanimously decide to refer the matter to the Governor-General and Council of India at Batavia, in order to be further dealt with by them; the more so as we are not provided here with any persons

provided with legal knowledge and capable of assisting the Council or the perpetrator to take further action; and further to send the said sergeant as prisoner on board the *Malacca* to be conveyed to India. . . .” — (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, J. v. d. Werff, P. Gerritz, R. de Man, W. v Outhoorn, P. Everard, and G. v. Campen, Secretary.

After this Resolution the officers of the *Malacca* received their orders for departure, and the letters and papers for their Honours at Batavia, including the documents connected with the sergeant.

October 22nd.—Clear weather. S.S.E. breeze. *Malacca* leaves.

October 23rd to 25th.—Fine, calm, warm weather.

October 26th (Sunday).—Ditto.

October 27th.—Calm weather until the evening, when it began to blow heavily from the S.S.E. The *Peguyun*, boat of the freemen, arrived in the morning from Dassen Island with some fish, eggs and birds.

Resolution :—“In accordance with our Resolution of the 27th August last the free miller was so far assisted that his water mill, which he was unable to put up without assistance, is now in fine working order; and as the time has now arrived for him to decide whether he wished to hold it as his own property or not, and he, after mature reflection, finding that the expenditure still connected with it will be great, even before a house has been built over it, it standing at present merely under a shed to enable it to work, decided to abandon the idea of buying it, but to request permission to hire it, as he did not see how he would be able to get such a large sum together, and feared to incur such a heavy debt with heavy interest. The Council accordingly agreed to take over the whole work for the Company for f218 12 st: 2 penn: foregoing the expenditure incurred by the Company in order to assist him since the aforesaid Resolution was adopted; and further to build over it a square fire-proof stone building, without a separate dwelling-house, but just intended for conducting milling operations; the water wheel to be also covered in to protect it from the sun; so that it is calculated that it should be 18 × 23 feet × 13 feet; above that a breastwork of 3 feet and the cap, which might at the same time serve as a granary. This the carpenters are to commence at once, so that as soon as the mason work is finished the timber may be immediately put up and everything properly finished off. The expense totalled up will not be much more for this water power than that required if horses or oxen were used, which would naturally be kept back for the horsemill, and so injure the progress of agriculture, as we have discovered.

And whereas the said miller, Wouter Cornelisz Mostert, has lost much by his fruitless labour and expense at the watermill and accordingly requests, as there is no other miller at the Cape at present, to be the first to have it on hire, his request was granted him on reasonable terms, and that he shall retain the monopoly as long as he is able to serve the Company and the public. He shall, however,

supply his own labour, and be responsible for fire caused by heat, quick revolution of the mill or otherwise, caused inside by him or his people, or those whom he may permit to enter with fire, fuse, or lighted pipes. The necessary repairs and all breakages shall be defrayed half by himself and half by the Company, though the Company has accepted the mill and retains it as its own, and will make the loft for storing the grain in it, so that the miller will have for his use only the ground floor with the mill works, scales, and bolting hutchies; all which if broken shall be repaired at the cost of the Company and himself in equal parts; in case of fire, however, he alone shall bear the loss that he may take the better care, &c. And whereas by last year's Resolution of the 26th July he was allowed 2 stivers for grinding corn and 1 stiver per bushel for malt, 1 lb for meal dust, and whereas there is at present greater tranquillity, it was decided where the freemen had no money to pay, to adhere to the aforesaid weight of meal dust, and to take for the grinding of grain one-sixteenth of the quantity to be milled, whether it be wheat, rye, barley or malt, one-half for the miller and one-half for the Company, and which the miller shall deliver once a week to the dispenser at the Fort according to the vouchers with the Company's mark, to be daily obtained from the dispenser, and without which he shall not be permitted to grind the least quantity of grain on penalty of a fine of Rds. 25 for the first, Rds. 50 for the second, and for all the successive offences committed during the same year Rds. 100, with annulment of the contract. To all this he shall bind himself by oath, but it was deemed best for the present not to attach any lease to it, the object chiefly being to see that for the present no more is milled, consumed, or wasted, than can be spared, that it may be made to go as far as possible.

The sixteenth portion of the wheat falling to the miller shall be paid him at the rate paid by the Company to the freemen for their grain, whilst for the present everyone shall receive his monthly ration of wheat, namely one bushel per head, children included, or more than 40 lbs., from which 50 lbs. of bread can be baked according to a trial made, but for unweaned children only half that quantity.

And as it is believed that of this quantity a portion will remain over, which people might for the sake of the profit, as we have already discovered, endeavour to sell in the form of bread, it was decided, after a proper calculation had been made, to fix the following prices on bread, expressly interdicting all, whether baker or anyone else, from selling at a dearer rate, subject to the penalty of forfeiting the bread found too light in weight, Rds. 20 for the first and Rds. 40 for the second offence, and in case of a third one heavier punishment in addition, so that bread shall not be sold to the public or the ships at higher rates than the following:—

Wheaten bread per lb. one "braspenning" (= five farthings),
whole and half rye loaves for the present one stiver per
lb. White bread as yet at discretion.

1659.

And that the burghers and others be deceived as little as possible the Fiscal shall at least once a month, when he deems proper, make the circuit with the two burgher councillors and inspect the bread, and without connivance pay particular attention to this, without distinction of person, &c." (Signed as above.)

October 28th.—Stiff S.S.E. winds in the morning.

October 29th.—Calm weather. Died in the hospital Jan Cornelisz: of Alkmaar, soldier, and Cornelis Hendricxe Hogerbeets of Hoorn, arquebusier, both left behind ill by the ship *Malacca*.

October 30th.—Full moon. Calm weather.

October 31st.—Dark variable weather in the morning, followed by a very stiff S.S. Easter.

November 1st.—The heavy wind continuing. This day the *first Dutch rose was plucked at the Cape* from one of the rose trees that arrived here last year. The cherry and medlar trees are blossoming (? sprouting) finely; also some small *orange trees*.

Those who have sown early in May are already reaping their barley crops.

November 2nd (Sunday).—Calm warm weather. S.S.E. wind in the afternoon.

November 3rd, 4th, and 5th.—About the same weather. During the afternoon a fine dry N.W. breeze.

November 6th.—Dark, cloudy sky. Wind N.W. with drizzling rain.

November 7th.—The same weather, with now and then a pelting rain and the same wind. Early in the morning between 6 and 7 o'clock the freemen's vessel *Penguin* arrived from Saldanha Bay with some fish and eggs. The *Schapenjachtje* also arrived with 18 sheep bartered by the freemen, and temporarily placed by them on the Schapen Island. They had found no trade, but had heard from the Beach Rangers that the Cochoquas had retired inland.

The surveyor Pieter Potter had visited St. Helena Bay, but had found it very much exposed except against the S.E. winds, without water or fuel, very arid and stony, and accordingly not advisable for ships to call there, it being merely an inlet (inwyck). But the Elephants Point of the Saldanha Bay he had found to be fine agricultural land, well provided with water and fuel. It could easily be converted into an island which might be stocked with cattle and pigs, as well as at St. Helena Bay. It might also be provided with a redoubt to protect it from all nations, which the Commander intends personally to inspect, as the English are taking possession of St. Helena, to find out whether the place might not serve as a harbour of refuge for the Company's ships missing the Cape; and to do so before the English hear of it and make a settlement there, and so exclude the Company from this beautiful bay.

Resolution:—"The freemen having yesterday been reprovided as far as possible with draught cattle and milch cows (namely, those who had been robbed by the marauding Hottentoots), that they

might be able to continue their farming operations, as they are urgently in want of them at present to ride in their mown crops and plough in the stubble, it was decided for the certain preservation of the same, to promulgate the following ordinance, viz:—As the freemen whose plough and milch cattle have been stolen by the Hottentoots, have been provided with others on credit, as far as possible, in order to carry on their farm work, and as those resident beyond the River (Liesbeeck) are in the greatest danger of again being robbed, against which no better preventive is conceivable than a fence of poles and trees, like the one at present being erected between the watchhouses ‘Keert de Koe’ and ‘Kykuit’; it was decided to order these persons, that is, all living on the other side of the Liesbeeck River to fetch from the forest with their own wagons as many poles and trees as will enclose the boundary of their lands, which poles the Company’s carpenters shall get ready, that their lands may also thus be fenced off. The same course also to be pursued as regards the lands of those dwelling on this side of the River at such spots where cattle may be driven through. And all open lands not belonging to any one shall for greater security be fenced in by the Company with pegapegas or bitter almond trees; which the freemen will also have to do as soon as the fence is finished, and for that purpose they shall be permitted to cut down the wood without charge and remove it from any forest, except that of the Company or of Leendert. The poles as far as they are sunk into the ground shall be thoroughly burnt that they may last the longer, they shall be 8 feet long and have double cross bars, standing 6 feet from one another, just like the one now being erected by the Company, and the sooner it is done the better, as it is a matter of urgent necessity.”

It was also decided to enact the following against certain fighters (voorvechters):—“As it has been found that very few care about the fine of Rds. 10 fixed on drawing the knife, and some are still easily inclined to do so, it is decided that whoever draws his knife or any other weapon shall according to the general ‘articul-brief’ (terms of engagement to the Company) forfeit 6 months’ wages, the freemen Rds. 25 of eight, even if no one be hurt or wounded in consequence. The freemen who are unable to pay shall be kept at the Company’s works until they shall have served for the amount at f9 per month. This ordinance is enacted to prevent many accidents and secure the general safety.” (Signed as above).

November 8th.—Cloudy weather and variable winds, mostly from the west. The *Schapenjachtje* despatched to Robben Island with the following note to Ryk Overhagen: “We send you 40 old and young pigs. Let us know how the others are getting on, and whether there will be enough food for them to enable us to supply you with greens. How are the sheep and rabbits getting on? Let the yacht always return laden with shells.

1659.

"Always attend to the beacon fires when at nightfall vessels are in sight, according to previous orders. If you are in want of fuel let us know, that we may send you a supply. Commending you to the grace of God, your friend." (Signed) J. v Riebeeck.

November 9th.—Cloudy weather in the morning with a westerly breeze.

November 10th and 11th —Gentle westerly breeze in the morning. Stiff S.E. in the afternoon, with heat and drought, as usual at this time of the year.

November 12th and 13th.—Continuous S.E. winds, which going down in the forenoon commenced again during the night.

November 14th.—New moon. Calm morning.

November 15th.—The same, with a westerly breeze.

November 16th (Sunday).—Misty weather in the morning; westerly breeze. During the night the *Schapenjachtje* returned from Robben Island with the following note to the Commander: "On the 13th the *Schapenjachtje* was despatched with a cargo of shells. It suffered much on account of the heavy wind, broke from its anchors, and was driven towards the rocks, but fortunately succeeded in reaching a small sandy bay. The rocks, however, greatly injured her, as you will yourself see.

"We only received 36 pigs and 4 troughs (baek). Six are already dead and more will follow. The young ones have no milk in the legs, and the old are so lean that the skin keeps the bones together. Those first sent are as fat as if they had been fattened. The rest I will manage to put flesh on as we are not in want of green stuff, and young 'duikers' and eggs can be obtained in sufficient quantity. We only want two slaves to carry the goods, as the two females are employed collecting shells. The number of sheep at present is 53, so fat that they shake. I have also a young kid.

"The rabbits increase well. In all parts of the island six or eight rabbits are found together, but mostly at the southern end.

"We shall not neglect the beacon fires. This is attended to every evening. For the present we have enough fuel. We send you six fishes."—(Signed) R. Overhagen.

November 17th.—Cloudy weather. Wind as above. About midnight the S.E. began to blow stiffly.

November 18th —During the afternoon the S.E. wind ceased.

November 19th —Wind and weather as during the previous days.

November 20th, 21st, 22nd.—Generally the same weather.

November 23rd (Sunday).—Lovely sunshine in the morning, with a westerly breeze.

November 24th.—Same weather. Towards evening the *Schapenjachtje* left for Sallanba Bay, having on board Fiseal Abraham Gabbema, with the skippers Mangus, Hendriex and Cornelis Lodewycksz, in order to explore it in accordance with the following instructions:—"To make a further examination; and inquire into the following, viz. :—

“As the English appear to take possession of St. Helena for themselves, and as we have since this information again looked about for a harbour of refuge for the ships that in consequence of heavy S.E. winds are blown past the Cape, and as we have found Saldanha Bay the most suitable for the purpose, as pointed out by our friends who have offered to make the investigation, and as we have deemed it expedient in the interests of the Company, we have readily accepted their offer, and fitted out the *Schapenjachtje* for the purpose, at the same time jotting down by way of memorandum the following points to be attended to:—

“Whether the nearest and furthest water on the land or in the valleys of the Oliphants Hoek, Rietvlei and watering place could, by being opened up, be made serviceable for the ships?

“Likewise that in the Lacus Bay, which, according to report, can be led down in a furrow?

“How the Oliphants Hoek at its narrowest could best be fenced in with poles, enclosed with trenches or otherwise, in order to prevent the cattle from being driven off by the Hottentoots?

“Where best to build a redoubt or other kind of fort as a defence against European attack, and how?

“Whether the shores are so unapproachable, and the land is so situated, that one could not convey artillery to the redoubt, in consequence of the hilly nature of the beach and the rockiness of the coast everywhere?

“How to fence in the gorge of the Rietbay, whether by trench, pole, or stone wall—like the sheep kraal at Robben Island—in order to serve as a pig run, the rest of the ground to be used for agriculture and pasture lands.

“Whether there or anywhere else any suitable timber, poles, and stones are obtainable, or could be easily procured elsewhere.

“And besides noticing the state of the water, also to examine the character of the soil for cultivation, from the largest area of the Oliphants Hoek to the watering place inclusive.

“Also to examine the green stuff that would be suitable for pigs behind the Rietbaaij, and which you may inspect on your way on Robben and Dassen Islands, so that you may know what they like best and generally eat, and so bear it in mind yonder.

“You shall also examine on the aforesaid islands how the Dutch and St. Helena purslain, the Cape “seyer” (? savin), “malve” (? mallow), “sparry” (? spargel—wild asparagus), and other greens are growing; also how the pigs, sheep, rabbits, and coneys thrive. The Fiscus has sufficient knowledge of these matters.

“For digging the water at the places mentioned, you will take with you two shovels, two spades, two pickaxes, two crowbars, and two spits, with provisions for one month for 11 persons. We hope to see you together back again in health and safety, which God grant.” (Signed) J. van Riebeeck and R. de Man.

November 25th.—A stiff S.S.E. wind towards evening, which continued until the morning of the 26th.

1659.

November 27th.—Cloudy, changeable weather, with a little rain and thunder, which is hardly as heavy here as the lightning and thunder at home.

November 28th and 29th.—Cloudy sky, with a westerly breeze and a little rain.

November 30th (Sunday).—The same weather. The *Sea Lion*, boat of the freemen, arrived from Saldanha Bay with dried fish and the news that the *Schapenjachtje* had met their other boat, the *Penguin*, last Tuesday in the mouth of this bay, and given her 24 sheep, of which 21 were put alive on Robben Island. After that the *Penguin* had returned to the aforesaid bay, followed the next day by the *Schapenjachtje*, after having suffered some damage at that island as regards anchors, in consequence of the heavy S.-Easter. After that Dassen Island had been visited and inspected, so that they had only arrived in Saldanha Bay the day before yesterday—that is, Friday—where the freemen had 18 sheep running on Schapen Island, which since their departure they had bartered from the Hottentoots, who were still encamped there. Shortly after their arrival, the Fiscal, with Skippers Mangus and Cornelis Lodewyksz, went to them with the object of continuing the barter, but what they effected these persons did not know, as they had, in the meanwhile, taken their departure as soon as their other boat and the Company's vessel had also arrived there.

December 1st.—Cloudy weather and westerly wind until the evening, when the weather cleared up and the S.E. breeze set in.

December 2nd and 3rd.—Same weather with varying breezes. The *Sea Lion* returns to Saldanha Bay to continue its fishing operations. The farmers everywhere busy harvesting their brown wheat and rye, which were most successful almost everywhere. The barley also yielded fairly and everyone almost has his crop garnered or stacked. Thank God, the white wheat promises equally well, which, however, ripens later, and will to all appearance yield a splendid return this season notwithstanding the hindrance caused to agriculture last season; if it only pleases God to permit us to garner it as safely as appearances hitherto promise, as no disaster has as yet been caused by the wanton Hottentoots, who have threatened to set fire to the corn, which may the Almighty prevent.

Resolution, 3rd December.—“As, thank God, at present the raising of wheat has so far advanced that we can already be fed from it, and have commenced to bake 40 lbs. of fresh bread every month for the garrison and the workmen independent of their rations, which baking causes great trouble to the Company, to say nothing of the additional staff to be employed for the purpose, and as we have for a long while already hinted that free baking will be allowed, and as at last Louwys Richart, inside cook, and Claas Lambertse, of Alsmear, outside cook of the Company, have requested, in consequence, free papers for the purpose; and as they have baked the first loaves for the Company's servants, and as

a trial has been made to discover whether they would be able to make a living by it, at the same time keeping in view the interests of the Company, it was, after mature deliberation, decided to grant them their freedom for that purpose, and to agree with them that they shall deliver to the Company for every bushel of corn, rye, or corn and rye mixed 50 lbs. of bread, just as the meal comes from the mill, after it shall have lain over a night and shrunk, without sifting any flour out of it; and that they shall receive for the baking of such a bushel of corn or 50 lbs. of bread, 9 stivers in money, or 3 lbs. of bolted meal at 3 stivers per lb., ere this received from home in casks, to enable them to bake white bread from it, cakes, cracknels, and other pastry for the convenience of those who desire to live more daintily, and that they will be permitted to sell such bolted bread at three braspenningen (15 farthings) per lb., and finer qualities at their discretion.

And as the said Louwys is a great pastry cook, roaster and cook, he and his mate are allowed, as long as they remain together, to prepare and sell all kinds of pastry, roasted and boiled food of every description for the public convenience, and further, do what they may desire in accordance with the conditions contained in their letters of freedom, the tap business excepted, with which they shall not interfere, as the seamen passing their nights on shore are sufficiently accommodated at the two inns near the fort and the small tap of the free fishers at the Salt River.

And as no bakeries have as yet been built, these first free bakers are permitted to use gratis the Company's oven and baking place outside the fort in the common kitchen, together with a small apartment adjoining, until they, or someone else, shall have built a suitable house and premises for them.

It was also allowed that no one besides themselves, as long as they could accommodate every one, should be permitted to sell any coarse or white bread, cakes, cracknels, &c., on forfeiture of the same and Rds. 20 fine in addition; one-third for themselves, should they catch any one in the act, and the rest "pro fisco" and the poor; provided, however, that the innkeepers and landlords or others, having for sale for the passing stranger any prepared food, or the husbandmen in the country having butter, eggs, or anything else to offer to a stranger for money shall be permitted to place before him some of his own home-baked bread and charge for the quantity consumed, as is permitted in more places in the country independent of the bakers; but not in such quantities as may be carried away and taken on board to serve for a while. This will only be permitted to the free bakers on the aforesaid conditions that there shall be committed no fraud by others and the poor man arriving here be not wronged. This the fiscus shall attend to and affix copy of at the usual places, that every one may be warned.

And whereas Willem Pietersz: of Nymegen, Michiel Bartholomeus of Swol and Dirk Corn: de Jonge Neuteboom, condemned on the 1st October last to a banishment of 5 and 6 years for sheep-

1659.

—

stealing, have since on all occasions conducted themselves well, and especially during the Hottentoo war, it was decided to pardon and set them again at liberty, viz: Michiel Bartholomeus and Cornelius de Jonge Neuteboom to settle here as free carpenters and Willem Pietersz to re-enter the service at his former wages of f10 per month and to be employed in agriculture, provided that the two first-mentioned shall remain 12 and Pietersz: 16 years at the Cape, reckoned from next New Year, when the wages of Pietersz: shall also commence. (Signed as usual.)

December 4th.—Good weather as above. Died Jacob Meyndertz of Quanen, who arrived here as soldier in Mareh last in the *Princes Royal*, and because of his good knowledge of carpentry and good character promoted to the rank of junior carpenter at f16 per month.

December 5th and 6th.—Lovely weather with varying breezes as above.

December 7th (Sunday).—Same weather.

December 8th.—Good weather as before, with a N.W. breeze. Arrival at nightfall from Saldanha Bay of the freemen's vessel the *Penguin*, with 21 sheep bartered from Oedasoa's people there, besides 8 others left on an island there.

The Fiscal and the skippers intended to follow the next day in the Company's vessel. They had still to visit Laeus and Potters Bays. They had with them in their boat the interpreter Eva, who wished to speak with the Commander. Oedasoa was encamped at the bay with about 1,600 of his Saldanhars. What further truth Eva will have to tell we shall soon hear when the Fiscal arrives.

Herry and the captured Hottentoo had 8 or 10 days ago escaped from Robben Island during the night with the boat of our people, which, however, was so leaky that there is no doubt that they would be unable to keep afloat, and must certainly have been drowned in the surf near the beach, which runs very high in 7 or 8 breakers; the more so as at the time a strong westerly wind was blowing, which gave them a lee shore and made matters worse for them. However, orders were issued to send 5 men to-morrow morning to look for them along the beach as far as Dassen Island inclusive, to see whether anything can be heard about them anywhere.

December 9th.—Drizzling rain and westerly breeze. Early in the morning Corporal Elias Giers and five men were sent out for the above purpose.

December 10th to 13th.—Fine cloudy weather generally; westerly breeze. The Corporal and his men return and reported that about 1½ days' journey from this they had found in a sandy bay, called by our people at one spot the Sand Sea, because of the high sand hills there, a little boat with two oars lying high on the beach as if pulled up by human hands, but they could nowhere find human footmarks or anything like them. They had therefore proceeded along shore until they were opposite Dassen Island, but had

observed nothing further. They brought with them an oar and an iron thole pin, which fully proved that this was the boat in which Herry and the other Hottentoo had escaped from the island, so that to all appearance they have escaped. What he will now do, time will show; opinions on the subject are differing, some think that he will do good, others again that he will do harm, and that he will endeavour to regain our favour by bringing the Chainouqua tribe with many cattle to us, as he has done before, as they are certainly his best friends, and so reappear at the Fort in order once more to rule the Watermen, his old subjects.

This day the first ripe cherry was plucked at the Cape from a tree which has been standing fully three years in the garden here.

December 14th, New moon (Sunday).—A N.W. breeze during the morning. The *Schapenjachtje* arrived from Saldanha Bay with the Fiscal and the skippers Mangus Hendricxz and Cornelis Lodewycksz, who reported that they had found the bay, in accordance with the sketch, good and very suitable for sheltering ships. But as regards cultivable lands at the Oliphants Hoek they had found nothing particular, so that the report in this case was not worth much; whilst the water was not fit for preserving for a long while as it was somewhat brackish.

The interpreter Eva having of her own accord and with the permission of her brother-in-law Oedaso, come over in the little yacht, said, that she had given the message to her brother, namely, that upon his intercession and request, we would make peace with the Kaapmen once more if they restored all the cattle and sheep which they had stolen, &c. That Oedaso had advised them of this and made them exhibit the stolen cattle, but that they did not let him see a quarter of it; that notwithstanding he had given them his little flag and told them that they might send their deputation with it to the fort, who should offer the restoration of all the stolen cattle, and promise that they would behave better in future, &c.; that he wished to proceed further into the interior and did not wish to have them with him, though they had very heartily requested it. But that he had refused and told them to endeavour to make peace again with the Dutch, before the latter suddenly attacked them; that they had promised him this, and that they would remain at the Bay with the little Choriguriquas only, as the great Choriguriquas and Gorachoquas, or tobacco thieves, had already departed for the far interior for fresh pasture, as Ngounno, Oedaso's secunde, had also already done, and that he himself would have broken up his camp ere this, so that if we had a galiot at present, we would by entering the bay with strange flags, lure our aforesaid enemies nicely on board and surprise and attack them finely, but it is to be feared that Herry, if he has joined them, will put them carefully on their guard and tell them how we made him the last time with a number of soldiers show us where they would be found, &c., although Eva is of opinion that he would not dare to tell it, but that in order to regain our favour he would endeavour

1659.

to visit the fort with many cattle of the Chainouquas, with whom he is still on fairly friendly terms, whose Captain Chaihantima, of whom ere this much has been said, and whose wife, of the race of Chobona, who was ornamented with golden armbands, was killed by the Cochoquas, had been driven away by his master the Chainouquar. Because in that encounter so many had been killed of his people, on account of his wife, he, Chaihantima, was therefore with five huts and much cattle also living with the Caapmen.

The interpreter Doman had recovered from the gunshot wound in the shoulder, but the arm had remained lame. He did not dare to return to the Commander as he feared that he would be hanged; the rest, however, very much longed to make peace, but not one of them as yet dared to go to the fort. The result will be seen in time, and we hope that God the Lord will turn it for the best.

The *Schapenijachtje* was despatched to Robben Island with the following note to Ryk Overhagen:—"We heard with great surprise last Monday from the free Saldanha traders that Herry had escaped from the Island during the night with the small boat and two oars. At once we sent men along shore about one and a half days' journey from this, who found in a creek near the Sand Sea a small boat high up on the beach with two oars, one of which we now send you, as well as a thole pin which was fixed in it, in order to be recognised by you as belonging to the boat in which Herry and the other Hottentoo escaped. We cannot understand how he managed it and that you did not take better care of the oars, or as ordered, did not take them home in the evening. In future you shall pay better attention to this, when another boat is sent to you, lest the slaves also escape in the same manner.

"We would also like to know how the sheep placed on the island by the fiscal are thriving, and whether any food for the pigs is required in this dry season; this you must not forget to let us know in time, also their number and that of the sheep, and how the Dutch purslain that has been sown, as well as other greens, are succeeding.

"The destruction of the snakes must not be neglected but diligently attended to. As at present no shells are required for lime, what is now on hand may be left in the little yacht until further orders." . . . (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck.

This afternoon a great treason was discovered by the chief surgeon Master Wiljam Robertson of Dondey (?Dundee). Three of the principal conspirators were placed in confinement, and a good watch placed everywhere.

December 15th.—Five more were placed in confinement to-day, all servants of the Company, as well as two others who had escaped into the country, and last night a freeman's servant. During the examinations before the Council it was revealed that 4 English, 4 Scots, 3 Dutch servants, as well as a black convict were implicated, besides 2 freemen's servants and 15 slaves, whose intention was first to kill the seamen of the *Erasmus* working in the forest, after

that the men at the Schuur, and after that to scale the Fort and murder all in it, the smallest child included; after that to proceed to the yacht *Erasmus* in the boats of the Company or the freemen, to seize her and depart in her. But the Almighty be thanked, who has been pleased to prevent this murderous conspiracy.

December 16th.—A westerly breeze. During the afternoon the *Gekroonde Leeuw* (skipper Frederik Pool and junior merchant Johannes Dorslaer), of the Enckhuysen Chamber arrives. Had left the 25th July last with 386 men, of whom 32 died during the early part of the voyage; she had been becalmed under the line nearly two months, and with the S.S.W. breezes during the months of August and September had touched at Annabon, where she had been well refreshed; hence the men were all hale and hearty. She left that Island on the 26th October.

Before her arrival our time was spent in examining the culprits and their accomplices, but no one could be brought to confession except the one who confessed yesterday to that enormous crime, and who was one of the chief instigators.

December 17th.—The case having been further investigated with the assistance of the officers of the *Erasmus* and *Gekroonde Leeuw*, three others voluntarily confessed.

December 18th.—On this day two more confessed, five of the principal ringleaders accordingly. They openly confessed everything, and their execrable purpose could not be heard without horror, of which five others whom they thought they had persuaded knew nothing, they having simply been sounded regarding an intention to proceed over land to Angola, to which however they would not consent. Two of the chief conspirators were still at large, a Dutchman and an Englishman, for the capture of whom alive a reward of Rds. 25 was offered, and dead, half that amount. The Council, strengthened as above mentioned, decided to pass sentence the day after to-morrow in accordance with the following *Resolution*: The Council of the Fort the Good Hope having been in session three days, assisted by the officers of the *Erasmus* and *Gekroonde Leeuw*, and carefully collected evidence, &c., regarding the very execrable and enormous purpose of certain persons against the Fort and the ship *Erasmus*, as well as the servants of the Company and all the freemen here; these persons having intended to plunder, murder, and burn, &c.; and progress having been made so far that it has clearly appeared to the Council by examination, &c., &c., and the voluntary confessions of the prisoners that they had intended last Sunday evening to commence their evil work at the third glass, if they could only have got their fellow conspirators together, who had all given their consent, one of the chief of whom was however apprehended about 5 o'clock that same Sunday afternoon, and the following day the rest, excepting two named Hendrik Hendrikse of Cloppenburg, and Jacob Born of Glasgow, ship's guards, who have absconded, whilst the following were apprehended and confessed, viz: Pieter Barber of Hamstede,

1659.

—

soldier; Jacob Dirxsz of Antwerp, soldier; Patrick Tjock of Glasgow; Marcus Tommelson of Ogel, soldier; and Pasqual Rodrigo of Teneriffe, convict. It was after mature deliberation decided (God willing) to hold a meeting on Saturday next in order to decide on the sentences in the best interests of the Company and the public, while steps were taken everywhere to capture, if possible alive, the two still at large, and if caught alive to give a reward of Rds. 25 of 8, but if brought in dead half that amount, in order to prevent any disaster that is feared from them. And as regards the other five persons confined, and three others still at large, as they have testified regarding the going away to Angola over land, of which they were aware already 3 or 4 weeks ago without divulging it, but cannot be convicted of having had a share in the aforesaid enormous treason, but had merely been addressed by the above-mentioned confessors to join them in their scheme to depart over land to Angola, it was decided to keep them in light confinement until the main points against the chief culprits shall have been decided." . . . (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck; P. Gerritsz; Fred. Riewertsz; Pool; R. de Man; Corn: Lodewyksz; Joh. Doreslaer; Pieter Everaerts; F. Jacobsz: van Ayr, and Gysb. v. Campen, Secretary.

Towards evening it began to blow very stiffly from the S. S. E., so that the officers could not go on board, but were obliged to pass the night on shore.

December 19th.—The wind continued, and between 11 and 12 o'clock at night, the two fugitive sheep-herds Hendrik van Cloppenburg and Jacob Born were brought to this Fort as captives; so that, praise be to God, no one is any longer away or missing. These two had been captured (Cloppenburg first) by the burgher Jacob Cloeten, who had seen him from inside his house, through the loop and peep holes, which he had made in the wall, and called out "Who is there?" Cloppenburg had replied that he wished to give him something, and Cloete had answered "Come in, I shall give you a dram." Cloppenburg then entered, and Cloete at once bound him, and gave him in charge of his comrade, until he had fetched the Corporal of the Cadets, the Company's Architect, and the Corporal of the outlying horsemen at the "Schuur," who compelled the prisoner to show where his mate was. The latter was found on the bank of the river, and was at once captured. Both were, without delay, brought to the Fort.

December 20th.—The S. S. E. wind still blowing severely. The Resolution of the 18th postponed for a while, until these two prisoners have been examined. Only one of them, Jacob Born, voluntarily confessed concerning the intended murders and everything, but Cloppenburg remained obstinate, though convinced to his face by all who had confessed. It is said that he was the chief captain and seducer of them all, who had directed the work, and continually gone to and fro to arrange matters, &c.

December 21st. (Sunday).—Fine, lovely calm weather.

December 22nd.—Cloudy, with a westerly breeze. Died in hospital Jan Theunisse of Dockum, quartermaster on the *Malacca*, who had been left here sick.

December 23rd.—Same weather. Council met. H. Cloppenburg makes a full confession, and the following *Resolution* was taken:—

“The Council, strengthened with the officers of the ship *De Gecroonde Leeuw* and the yacht *Erasmus*, after hearing the evidence, and after careful examination of the voluntary confessions of the accused, made without pain of bonds, iron or threats, is convinced that the intention existed to lay waste the Fort and the whole establishment here, and after that to seize the return ship *Erasmus* with its valuable cargo; also that murder and the destruction by fire of all the houses, granaries, &c., formed a part of the plot. Of the prisoners—Hendrik Hendrikse of Cloppenburg; Pieter Barber of Haemstede; Jacob Dirksz of Antwerp; Patriq 'Tjock of Glasgow; Marcus Tomelson of Ogel; Jacob Born of Glasgow; Pascal Rodrigo of Teneriffe, and Claas Wiskebroeck of Lingerick—the first mentioned has been proved to have been the chief instigator and manager of everything; his comrade Jacob Born declaring in addition that Hendrickse had seduced him, and had taken the oath of fidelity from them all, and received money from them with which to buy powder and lead, tobacco and provisions; that it was their intention to meet at the redoubt “Corenhoop” on Sunday the 14th of this month and thence commence operations; that, however, on that same day about 5 p.m., the Commander was informed of the conspiracy by the chief surgeon, William Robberson of Dundee; that on the 15th Cloppenburg absconded and was only recaptured on the 19th; that he denied everything, denied that he was the moving spirit and captain of the plot; that though for the second time he has been on the rack with a hundred pound weight, and, moreover, convicted by the testimony of his own comrade, he merely acknowledged that he had been an accomplice with the others and agreed to their proposals; that therefore it is evident that he is determined to confess nothing more but to bear all the torture, but that, as the Commander proposed, no sentence shall be passed on the prisoner at present, but further evidence collected in the meanwhile, until the arrival of the return fleet expected in 6 or 7 weeks' time, when the assistance of more experienced persons may be available to go on with the case. In the interim the prisoners were to be kept in confinement and chained in couples together by the legs. Those who were less guilty were to be lightly dealt with, and with all the English and Scotch, who were innocent, and had for the greater part been taken out of the *Oranje* in consequence of the Hottentoo war, were to be exchanged for other men from the *Gekroonde Leeuw*, and sent to Batavia in that vessel, in order to clear this place as much as possible of mischief makers.

And as the surgeon Mr. W. Robberson has, as an honest God-fearing man, discovered and reported the conspiracy in good time

1659.

—

the reward of Rds. 50 was given him in accordance with the 'Articulbrief' the 14th section. The matter of his promotion to stand over until the arrival of the return fleet.—(Signed as before).

December 24th.—Good weather, with varying breezes. Council again meets and the following *Resolution* was taken:—

In accordance with yesterday's Resolution, Council again meets and considers that Colyn Lousen, Jan Bruyn of Leswede, and Jan Bex of Dondey, who have not been apprehended, and Alexander Craffort apprehended, have confessed that for a long while they were aware that the conspirators had, as faithless deserters, intended to depart inland to our enemies at Angola, without informing against them; the result being the unheard-of conspiracy of murder, arson, &c., which would have begun on Sunday evening, if not reported to the Commander by Surgeon Robberson; that these persons, in consequence of their silence, whether purposely or by neglect, have had no small share in the matter, as it was their duty at once to report such villainous intentions—for instance, the desertion to the enemy—to their officers, and as the result could not have been otherwise than disastrous, the offence cannot be overlooked without correction, nor on the other hand considered without compassion, as these incriminated persons bring in as an excuse that they feared to tell, because they were not sure that they could substantiate or prove their statements; the Council therefore decides, that as nothing had been divulged to them regarding the conspiracy, to end the matter without form of process by this Resolution, and to sentence them each because of their shameful concealment of the truth, to be thrashed with the butt-end of a musket, with confiscation of three months' wages in the case of Lousen, Bruyn and Craffort, and two months in the case of Bex, to be applied as usual, together with the expenses of the provost's fees.

And as regards Willem Mores, Hendrik Wricht and Steven Nobel, who have been confined on suspicion, but who have been proved to know nothing of the matter, and not to have been consulted at all about it, it was decided to liberate them at once, and in accordance with yesterday's Resolution, because they were Englishmen, to send them away with the others on board the *Gekroonde Leeuw* to Batavia, and to act in the same manner with others who may still be discovered as having had a share in this conspiracy, that with prudence and further inquiry this place may be cleared of all such people, but not to burden the *Gekroonde Leeuw* with too many, the others will be sent with later ships.

Before the meeting broke up Gysbert Arisz: of Bommel, bachelor and free-mason here, 25 years old, having engaged himself to Anna Rodulphus of Grietziel in Emderlandt, spinster, 24 years old, and a passenger on *De Gekroonde Leeuw* requested that his marriage might be solemnized, and that the first banns might be published next Sunday. Request granted. The Secretary to marry them after the third publication as there is no minister here.

The ceremony to be publicly performed in the Council Chamber. (Signed as above.)

1659.

December 25th.—Cloudy sky, westerly breeze, fine weather.

December 26th.—Fine clear sky. Death of Hendrik Iden of Emden, cadet on board the *Malacca*, who was left here ill.

December 27th.—Same weather.

December 28th. (Sunday).—Same weather. The *Gekroonde Leeuw* receives its despatch and the letters for Batavia.

December 29th and 30th.—Cloudy wet weather with a westerly breeze.

December 31st.—Clearer sunshine in the morning with a slight breeze from the S.S.E. The *Gekroonde Leeuw* leaves, but as she wished to pass between Lion's Rump and the Whale Rock, she was becalmed behind the Lion mountain. Had she passed between Robben Island and the mainland she would have reached the open sea at once.

1660.

January 1st (New Year's Day).—Fine, clear, calm, warm shinny weather. Died this day, Philips van Roon, a free agriculturist.

1660.

January 2nd.—The same weather. The *Gekroonde Leeuw* gets away during the night. Heavy S.S.E. wind in the afternoon.

January 3rd.—Calm in the forenoon; same wind in the afternoon.

January 4th (Sunday).—Calm forenoon, heavy S.E. in the afternoon. Death of the servant of the agriculturist Caspar Brinkman, named Gerrit Sandersz of Blixem.

January 5th.—Same wind and weather. Another servant of Brinkman dies, named Jan Willebrant of Eynckelroo. This inconvenienced Brinkman so seriously that the Company and others had to assist him to cut his corn, which in fair abundance was standing ripe on the land.

January 6th and 7th.—Wind and weather as before. The *Schapenjachtje* despatched to Robben Island with some straw for mending the roof of the sheep shed, as well as with some timber for the pig-styes.

Death of Cornelis Arensz Riet of Corteraer, carpenter on the *Oranje*, who had been left behind on account of dysentery, which is at present so severe among the Company's servants that very few are exempt, whilst those of the *Erasmus* are also commencing to fall in. To-day one of the Company's best slaves also died, who was a great expert in ploughing, threshing, and other agricultural work, knowing as much as the best farmer at the Cape.

This evening died, also of dysentery, the bride of the free-mason Gysbert Arensz of Bommel, named Anna Rodolphus of Grietziel in Emderlandt. She arrived here in good health on board the *Gekroonde Leeuw* as a soldier in male attire, her second banns had already been published last Sunday; and she would have been married next Sunday.

1660.

Resolution :—As it has been observed that the roofing in of the water corn mill with the newly-invented baked tiles succeeds very well and makes a good fire-proof roof against fires from outside, whilst on the contrary the reed thatch which covers all the buildings within and outside the Fort is in great danger from outside fires and sparks from chimneys, as was lately proved by the burning down of the house of the free burgher Hendrik Boom, when we had enough to do to save the Company's thatches by throwing water on them; it was decided for the better security of the buildings and their contents, to cover all the Company's buildings with tiles and remove the reeds, which are to be sold to the freemen in order to reduce the necessary expenditure. An agreement was therefore made with the free brick and tile maker, Wouter Corneliz Mostert, who is also the free miller, to supply the Company with as many tiles as are required, each tile to be 6 inches broad and 12 inches long, and to be delivered at f10 per 1000, counted whole on the roof, provided that the Company provides the transport from the ovens.

And as straight lathes are required for a tiled roof, Leendert Cornelisz, of Zeevenhuizen, undertook to deliver the said lathes, each to be one inch square, at f13 per hundred feet of planking out of which they are to be sawn." (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, Abr. Gabbema, P. Everaerts, and Gysb. v Campen, Secretary.

January 8th and 9th.—Fine weather, with a westerly breeze. The signalmen on the Kloof notified that a vessel was seen under the land. During the afternoon she arrived. Her name was 's *Gravelandt*, having on board skipper Andries Pietersz, and book-keeper Robbert de Smeth. Had left Amsterdam on the 9th September, with 207 men, 9 of whom had died. Had called nowhere, but from 8° north lat. and across the line she had continually struggled with calms.

January 10th.—Same weather.

January 11th (Sunday.)—Dark, cloudy sky.

January 12th.—New moon. Clear warm sunny weather. This night and also last night fires were observed at the Luipaard Mountains, so that, in order to strengthen the Council, the officers of the *Erasmus* and 's *Gravelandt* were summoned to the fort, and the following *Resolution* adopted :—

The Commander having informed the Council that last night and the night before fires had been seen between and behind the Luipaard Mountains on the opposite side of the bay, so that some natives must be there, without, however, being able to tell who they may be, the interpretress Eva and the Hottentoots or Watermen living near the fort maintaining that they must be the Kaapmen and their followers, our open enemies, as the Saldanhars had gone too far into the interior, &c., it was decided, in order to obtain correct information, to send out some spies this evening to endeavour to find them. The following were accordingly selected

Elias Giers, of Stockholm, Corporal and head; Christiaan Janse of Hoesum, Pieter Mou of Dantzic, Pieter Hanse, Matthys Huybrechts, Nicolaas Delbort and Pieter Meerhoff, soldiers. The Corporal was ordered that if he found any camp of our enemies, to send three of his men back the next night (as he was not to march during the day, in order not to be discovered), and to remain hidden among the rushes with four men, to find out, in case of their departure, in which direction they were going. In that case two were to follow them secretly and two remain on the same spot to await our orders or the arrival of such a force as might be deemed expedient to despatch in the interests of the Company. The spies thereupon left this evening in the name of the Lord.
—(Signed as above.)

A vessel reported under the land by the signalmen on the kloof, which was prevented from reaching the roadstead by the S.E. wind.

January 13th.—This morning a fine westerly breeze brought her safely in. She proved to be the *Enckhuysen*, which had left the Vlie on the 9th September last with 283 men in company of the 's *Gravelande*. She was commanded by Skipper H. Siewertsz and Junior Merchant Justin d'Edel, and had had 18 deaths. She brought many sick.

January 14th and 15th.—Dry weather, with summer varying S.S.E. and W. winds. The *Schapenjachtje* and a boat of the *Enckhuysen* sent round behind the tail of the Lion Mountain to a small sandy bay called "het Leeuwen zant baayken" (Lion sand bay ? Three Anchor Bay) in order to cut some fuel growing there for the *Enckhuysen*. This can best be done at this time of the year, but they will hardly find enough.

This morning the spies returned, and reported that they had seen nothing, notwithstanding we saw the fires every evening on one and the same spot.

January 16th and 17th.—Cloudy, with S.W. breeze.

January 18th.—Heavy showers of rain in the morning, with a westerly breeze which wafted hither the free Saldanha traders in their boats *Penguin* and *Sea Lion* from Saldanha Bay with dried fish and 20 sheep obtained from Oedasoa's people, who were still encamped in the neighbourhood, and from the Kaapmen, our enemies, most of whom had visited them in their boats, as well as Doman and Herry, who had said that they, as well as the stout Captain, were inclined to come and live with us again, together with their people, if on their return with the boats they brought with them a note signed by the Commander, the Chief Merchant R. de Man, and the Fiscal Abr. Gabbema, together with some tobacco and four pieces of copper wire for their chief, &c. That this they would consider as a sign of peace, so that some of them would accompany them on their return voyage. The Kaapmen had also said that the Commander kept Eva near him, but Oedasoa allows her to remain or come and go as his agent to find out what takes place among us, and what intentions we have, all which she immediately reports to her brother-in-law.

1660.

—

They would not believe that we again tolerated the fishers or beachrangers at the fort, but if they were certain of this, or saw one of them return with the boat, they would be fully convinced that the Commander's anger was now entirely appeased; and that they had made war because we broke the best lands everywhere with the plough, and they thought that they were able to prevent this by taking our oxen with which we did the work; moreover some freemen agriculturists had done them much harm, especially Jan Reyniersz and H. Boom, who had once hung up one of their people in their house with a halter, but as Jacob Rosendael had cut him down he was saved alive.

But seeing now that we were strengthening ourselves against their vexatious proceedings, and that accordingly they found it impossible to expel the Dutch from the Cape, they desired once more to make and live in peace with us as before.

Herry had also asked to be permitted to come and live among his own people at the fort with his wife and children, and promised to make arrangements to obtain supplies of cattle from the Chainouquas, &c.

They also said that if Simon In't Velt had not fired at them when they came to take his cattle, they would not have killed him with assegays, or the servant of Hendrik Boom, as their only object was to obtain the cattle, but as these men had offered resistance they had been the cause of their own death. Otherwise they would have done them no harm, but only have taken away the cattle. Being asked why they desired again to return to the Cape and make peace, they had replied that it was their birth-place and their own country, full of beautiful water, after which their hearts were continually longing, whilst that in Saldanha Bay was everywhere scarce and brackish, also that Oedesoia did not wish to have them at the best spots and rivers, but had told them so to arrange with us as to be able once more to live in peace and quiet in their own country.

This being communicated to Eva, she confirmed the whole, but added that Oedasoia would not be sorry if we made peace with the Caapmen, but not with sincere love or in the soul; this, namely the soul, the heart, was to remain for him alone as brother, and only feigned peace for the Kaapmen, whose protestations of peace would not be otherwise, and that therefore we were to take care that they no longer caused any trouble. She added that Oedasoia had ordered her to keep this always before our minds, and desired that the Commander should always acknowledge him as the greatest lord of this country—which he indeed was—and as his own brother; that he should not turn his heart away from him, and especially not become too closely connected with the Caapmen, or trust them out of sight, as they would not refrain, one day or another, when they had the opportunity, to do mischief once more, however favourable a peace might be made with them. Whereupon Eva was assured that her brother-in-law, Oedasoia, was so

firmly imprinted on the Commander's heart, that no one would be able to obliterate it.

January 19th.—Dry, stiff S.S.E. wind in the morning, until

January 20th.—When the morning was calm, beautiful, and fit.

January 21st.—Same weather. The boats of the Saldanha traders leave for Saldanha Bay, with the Hottentoo, Claas Das, one of the fishers or watermen, who at their request are again tolerated at the Fort, with the following notes:—

A note for the stout Captain of the Kaapmen Gogoso and Doman, with a small roll of tobacco, a litre of brandy, and four ends of copper wire, together with consent that he and Doman and all his Kaap people were at liberty to visit the Fort, in order to treat with the Commander about peace. At the request of the aforesaid Kaapmen, it was signed by J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, and Abr. Gabbema. Note for Herry, with a small roll of tobacco, and consent that he and his family were at liberty to come and live near the Fort, if he only took care that many head of cattle were brought to us for barter." (Signed as above.)

The yacht's *Gravelande* receives its despatch for Batavia.

January 22nd.—She leaves at noon, with a stiff S.S.E. wind, and cloudy sky.

January 23rd.—Dry, heavy S.S.E. wind.

January 24th.—Same weather.

January 25th (Sunday).—Oppressively hot weather. Death in Hospital of Andries Stals of Lunenburg, formerly Cadet on the *Gekroonde Leeuw*—left here ill.

The *Enckhuysen* receives its despatch for Batavia, and leaves towards evening.

Two more deaths in Hospital this evening—Pieter Pieterse Gabbe of Amsterdam, Ship's Corporal on the *Enckhuysen*, and Andries Broeckman, Cadet on the *Gekroonde Leeuw*.

January 26th.—Same hot weather during the day; heavy scorching S.E. winds during the night.

January 27th.—Full moon. Same wind in the morning, with hot air.

January 28th-31st.—The wind blew as terrifically as has never been experienced, accompanied with extraordinarily heavy showers. The *Erasmus*, however, held on to her anchor; but it has never yet been experienced that any ships have been driven out to sea by these terrific gales from the S.S.E., but sometimes the anchors have been slightly drawn in or dragging, after which they held on the faster. This morning the gale was almost like a hurricane or a Japanese typhoon, and if the N.W. ever could blow so fiercely no ship could possibly be retained in its berth because of the lee shore and the heavy rollers from the ocean rushing into the bay.

February 1st.—The wind calmed down beautifully, but the breeze remained S.S.E.

February 2nd.—Same weather. The Fiscal left in the evening for Robben Island for the express purpose of immediately

1660.

signalling, should he meet the return fleet off that island that the *Schapenjachtje*, which is to be kept in readiness with rowers outside the roadstead, might with the Fiscus immediately sail to meet the fleet to warn it against the English garrisons at St. Helena, which according to orders of the Seventeen was not to call there this year. The letter given to the Fiscus was as follows:—

“To the Admiral and Combined Council of the Returned Fleet, &c., &c. Gentlemen,—With humble greeting, &c., this serves to inform you that the English have garrisoned St. Helena, and that the Seventeen have sent written orders that the return fleet shall not touch there this year, because it is not certain whether, in consequence of the tottering Government in England, a stronger alliance or war with that country and our State will be the result. This we notify to you by express that it may be of service to you if prevented by the S.S.E. winds from reaching Table Bay, or compelled to anchor elsewhere, or keep on your course, &c., &c.” . . . (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, and Abr. Gabbema.

February 3rd and 4th.—Fine weather. The Fiscal returns in the *Schapenjachtje* and reported that the orders entrusted to him had been given effect to, and that he had found everything well. The pigs and sheep were thriving, the number of the latter had risen to 90; among them 25 healthy fat rams fit for service. The *Schapenjachtje* is kept at sea with strong rowers in order to communicate with the return fleet as soon as it is sighted.

February 5th, 6th, and 7th.—Fine lovely days. Nothing particular occurred. The Commander visits the farmers all about and inspects their field work and the farming operations of the Company. He gave such orders as were necessary, and found all very busy ploughing the stubbles into the ground, whilst some were already threshing their new wheat.

February 8th to 10th (Sunday).—Stiff dry S.S.E. wind during the morning, continuing till the 10th.

February 11th to 14th.—Same weather, with intervals of lulls.

February 15th (Sunday).—A westerly breeze. Arrival of the flute *Loenen* from Batavia. Had left that port on the 22nd December last with rice and other necessities for this settlement. Had passed the return fleet on the 27th December, under the Island Crakatou in the Straits of Sunda. The Admiral (the Hon. Sterthenius) had sent the following letter with her to Commander J. v. Riebeeck:—

“The general despatch from the Governor-General and Council, which we are bringing you, will give you full information regarding the 9 return ships under our flag, with their costly cargoes and what they have on board for the Cape, and how besides, the *Loenen* has been specially laden with supplies for the Cape. As she is light and fast, she will no doubt reach the Cape before us, and we have therefore given her this letter that you may have notice of our approach at the earliest, and also that you may send her back to us

when we are within sight, to inform us of the state of affairs between our State and the Republic of England, as various rumours are current here, amongst others that the English have gone with a considerable force to St. Helena to take possession of it, but as no dependence can be placed on this, and under that pretext they may cherish some other design and in the form of reprisal, as they continually maintain that they have been insulted by us here, purpose to surprise our return fleet at the Cape, you shall let the little flute cruize about in sight of land with advices for us, that we may approach the Cape with greater assurance. In the meanwhile I shall pray that God may spare you long in health, and that we may soon meet."

On board the ship *Wapen van Holland* off the Island of Cracaton, the 27th December, 1659. (Signed) Your favourably disposed friend,
P. STERTHENIUS.

February 16th.—Calm, dark, misty weather in the morning, with a N.W. breeze, which died away during the day. Hence the Commander invited the officers of the *Erasmus* and *Loenen* on shore, and the following *Resolution* was taken:—

"The *Loenen* having arrived from Batavia with a note from Mr. P. Sterthenius, Admiral of the return fleet and Councillor of India, as well as with 60 lasts of rice and other necessaries for this settlement—the note desiring that as soon as she had discharged her cargo she was to cruize off shore in order to look out for the return fleet—and as this had been our intention all along, and we only awaited the arrival of the Cape galiot with three masts, hourly expected, in order to be able to inform the return fleet that the English had taken possession of St. Helena, and communicate to it the orders of the Directors: and as long as the galiot stayed away and no *Loenen* was here, the decked boat *Het Schapenjachtje* was lying ready with a letter for each vessel: the Council decided to fit the *Loenen* out without delay for the above-mentioned purpose, so that she may be able to leave with the first favourable breeze and some vegetables for the fleet. The chief mate of the *Loenen*, being ill, is temporarily replaced by the chief mate of the *Erasmus* as long as the cruize lasts. (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck; P. Gerritsz; J. Schraael; R. de Man; Abr. Gabbema; Vincent Vette; Abr. Blom, and G. v. Campen, sec.

February 17th.—Early in the morning the Fiscal was sent in the *Schapenjachtje* to the *Loenen* with a quantity of cabbages, carrots, and watermelons for the return fleet, as well as 2,000 fresh "harders," and the following order to Skipper Schraael to cruize off shore as above described, and, if the return fleet be sighted, to deliver the letters to Mr. Sterthenius and the officers of the several vessels, and divide among them the refreshments he has with him for the purpose, and, as he has everything on board, including water, he is to proceed at once to the offing, either by tacking or being towed out. The sick on board are to be transferred to the *Schapenjachtje* to be taken to the hospital . . .

1660.

Having thus received her despatch, the *Loenen* at once went under sail. During the day the freemen's boat *Penguin* arrived from Dassen Island with fish and eggs. The *Sea Lion* also came in from Saldanha Bay with 25 sheep, of which 8 had been obtained from our enemies the Caapmen, and the rest from the little Chariguriquas, among whom Herry is at present staying, and who, with our permission, would have gladly come over with the boat, but as the Hottentoo Claas Das (who is at present the chief of the Watermen in Herry's place at the fort) had gone in her to Saldanha Bay, in order to make the Caapmen, who were also encamped at that bay, believe that his people, the Watermen, were again tolerated at the fort, and as Herry and Das are not very good friends, they had excused themselves from bringing him in at present. This will give them greater faith in us, which for various reasons will not be bad.

The Saldanha traders and the Hottentoo Claas Das also reported that Pieter, Otegnekhuma, *alias* Jan (2 sons of the Caapmen Captain, Gogoso), Doman, Goteko Platneus, or Carabinga, both the Zynxous, and some others of the chief men among the Caapmen, had said that one of these days they intended to visit the fort with commissioners and as many of the stolen cattle as were still alive and not eaten by them, in hopes that the Commander would accept them, and make and maintain a firm and unbreakable peace with them, for which purpose a large number of them were already on their way hither.

Ngonnomoa, the other Captain of the Cochouquas, always called by us the black Captain, had united himself with the Gorachouquas or tobacco thieves (our other enemies), and separated from Oedaso, so that it is possible, as the Caapmen by Oedaso's advice are seeking for peace again (as they always seem to do), and as the Gorachouquas think too much of themselves to think of reconciliation, though this tribe has caused us great annoyance, that these two large bodies will not be so favourably disposed towards us as to leave us in peace; but as we are now obtaining horses and they are very rich in cattle, we shall be able to have a jolly haul on their preserves once more, far more satisfactory than what could be obtained from the Caap and Watermen, &c.

Resolution :—Decided to employ one of the vessels of the freemen in addition to the *Loenen* to cruize off Cape Point until the 20th March, and to pay the owners Rds. 8 for every letter conveyed by them on board any ship of the return fleet. Should, however, no ship be met by them, they were to be rewarded at discretion. The *Schapenjachtje* to be also continually cruising off the mouth of the bay, &c., &c. . . . Signed as above.

February 18th.—Fine, calm, fitting weather. The Commander went out to make a general inspection and have everything in order for the arrival of the return fleet and the inspection of Admiral Sterthenius.

February 19th.—Early this morning one of the freemen's vessels left with a S.S.E. breeze for Cape Point, whilst the other proceeded to Dassen Island and Saldanha Bay for its ordinary work.

February 20th to 24th.—Fine lovely weather, with varying breezes. Nothing of importance occurred.

February 25th.—During the night the S.S.E. began to blow strongly. This day the circle (area) of the Cape settlement was measured off (surveyed), and was found to be from the seaside at the first watchhouse "Kykuyt" and further on around the lands of the freemen and the Company and over the back of the Bosheuvel as far as the Bosbergen to the forest of Leendert Cornelisz: inclusive, a distance of 3,673 roods., viz: from the seaside to the principal projected cavalry watch house 1,320 roods, and the rest 2,353 roods, along which distance the intention is to plough a breadth of one rood and sow it with bitter almond trees and all kinds of blackberries and thornbush which grow rapidly, and to plant and sow the whole so closely that no cattle or sheep will be able to pass through it, so that it will be in the form of a fence or enclosure, just as in Germany and the territory of Cologne (Duyts and Keulslant) some Counts and Lords mark off their jurisdictions, and have here and there round watch or guard towers with bars between, in order to protect the farmers from attacks from outside; for a similar object the watchhouses already existing and the barriers connected with them will be of great service. The ploughing and planting as above mentioned will be the cheapest and readiest, as the ploughing will not occupy more than 2 or 3 weeks, and the bitter almonds can be collected in abundance about the end of March or the beginning of April, when they are ripe, so that they can be put into the ground after the first rains of the wet season. The thorns could then be planted at the same time. In 4 or 5 years' time they would form a good thick and strong fence, suitable for the object intended, for it has been found that the bitter almond grows as luxuriantly as any willow in the Fatherland, and giving thick wood would be difficult for even human beings to penetrate when intertwined with the thorn bush. No cattle would therefore be able to break through it, and they would only be able to pass through the barriers with consent of the mounted watchmen at the watchhouses. Thus the whole settlement, with its agriculture and forests, &c., will be beautifully enclosed as in a half moon, and safe from the Hottentoots.

February 26th.—Full moon. Fine lovely weather in the morning. The breeze westerly, but heavy S.E. winds during the night.

February 27th and 28th.—The same heavy winds. At noon a vessel was sighted off shore, which was found to be the *Loenen*, which during the night again stood to sea.

February 29th (Sunday).—Calm during the morning. Strong S.E. in the afternoon, which compelled the *Loenen* to anchor under Robben Island.

1660.

March 1st.—Strong S.E. wind in the morning, with which the whole return fleet anchored in good order in the mouth of the bay. The Fiseal sent on board the *Schapenjachtje* with our letters of warning, &c. The burgher Remajenne and two others, who had at their own risk and without our knowledge, travelled as far as Saldanha Bay, had fallen in with the Caapmen, conducting themselves in such a manner as if they wished to barter cattle for themselves. They accordingly obtained 6 sheep and a lean ewe, and brought back with them three of these natives, whom in the evening they conducted to the fort, and who requested the Commander to permit Herry and Doman to visit the fort with a present of some cattle and sheep in order to treat of peace. They desired to conduct themselves henceforth as good friends, and would never again cause us any trouble, &c. This was granted.

March 2nd.—The return fleet and the flute *Loenen* anchored in the roadstead. A N.W. breeze blowing. Heavy S.E. wind blowing during the night.

March 3rd.—Calm morning. The Caapmen sent back to their people, escorted by Herman Remajenne and a soldier, everyone having received as a present for himself and his chief some food, tobacco, brandy, &c. They also took with them a note, telling them that they might safely visit the fort to treat of peace. It had been signed in their presence by Mr. Sterthenius and the Commander, to give them greater confidence.

March 4th.—The free Saldanha traders arrived this morning with a westerly breeze, with a cargo of eggs, fish, and 20 sheep, obtained from the Caapmen and Chariguriquas. The Caapmen were already on their way hither, and intended to come and trade with us in a body. Herry had even entered the boat to come with them, but the Caapmen had taken him out again and desired that he should accompany them overland, fearing that if he came alone, he would communicate too many private matters, &c.

March 5th.—Heavy S.E. winds. The vessels of the free traders return to Dassen Island and Saldanha Bay, taking with them the assistant Gysbert van Campen and some merchandise for bartering cattle for the return fleet from the natives (if possible), the flute *Loenen* to be sent thither to fetch whatever may be obtained.

March 6th.—Heavy S.E. winds.

March 7th (Sunday).—Calm morning.

March 8th and 9th.—Fine weather. The flute *Loenen* sent to Saldanha Bay with the following instructions:—That whereas the Saldanha freemen have reported that cattle might be obtained from the Chariguriquas and as very little is at present to be obtained here, you shall if possible leave this evening for Saldanha Bay, whither the Secretary has already proceeded with some merchandise for bartering purposes. Whatever is obtained can be placed on the Schapen Island until you have collected as much as you think you can take on board, in order to deliver them at sea to the return fleet which will leave this on the 20th—the *Erasmus* three days

earlier—in order to give you notice. If you obtain sufficient cattle sooner, you are to return hither along the coast . . . and call at Dassen Island, where you shall obtain from the freemen as much train oil as they have ready” (Signed) P. Sterthenius.”—9th March, 1660.

The *Loenen* also took a note to the freemen at Dassen Island, requesting them to supply one half aum of oil to each of the 9 return ships, and that they would be paid at the Fort. During the night the *Loenen* left.

March 10th.—Heavy S.S.E. winds. Towards evening, the free burgher Harman Remajenne, as mentioned on the 3rd instant, arrived at the Fort with Herry and Doman, and a large number of their people, or Kaapmen. They brought 10 cattle and 5 sheep, and wished to treat of peace. This was allowed, but, as darkness was fast setting in, some delay took place; however, Remajenne was presented by Mr. Sterthenius with Rds. 25.

March 11th.—New moon. Heavy S.S.E. winds. Received 10 cattle and 4 sheep, as a present from the Kaapmen, for which, in return they were presented with so much copper, tobacco and beads, that they were richly paid, to say nothing of the food and brandy, &c, given them. It was provisionally agreed with them, that they might freely and unhindered return with their camp huts and cattle, as far as behind or beyond the Bosheuvcl, when further negotiations could take place, &c.

March 12th.—Better weather, cloudy sky, and a little rain.

Resolution.—“The Hon. Sterthenius, Councillor of India, Admiral of the Return Fleet, and Commissioner for the Inspection of Cape Affairs, together with a Council composed of that of the fleet and of the Fort, having carefully considered the documents containing the charges against the 8 prisoners: Pieter Barber of Haemstede, Hendrik Hendriksz of Cloppenburg, Jacob Dirkse of Antwerpen, Jacob Born of Glasgow, Patricq Tjoeq of Glasgow, Marcus Tomelson of Ogel, soldiers; Pasquael Rodrigo of Teneriffe, convict, and Claas Wiskebroecq, freeman’s servant, and having gathered from the same the evil intentions of these persons to run away to Angola, the territory of our enemies, to commit various murders, and plunder the Fort and the yacht *Erasmus*, all which documents have been referred to us by the Commander and Council of the Fort; further considering that at least 8 or 10 days must elapse before these criminal trials can be brought to a conclusion, to the great inconvenience and delay of the return fleet, whose officers would necessarily have to be on shore every day, and therefore neglect their duties on board; it was unanimously decided, although the Directors in the general “artical brief” lay down that all offences shall be tried in the place where they have been committed, because of the importance of the speedy departure of the fleet, to enter no further into the matter, but to refer it to their Honours at Batavia, with instructions to the Commander and Council of this Fort to distribute the delinquents among the outward bound

1660.

vessels, chained in couples, and thus ship them to Batavia, with all the papers'' . . . (Signed)—P. Sterthenius, Jan van Riebeeck, Justinus Weyns, Pieter van Borselen, Pieter Gerrits, Roelof de Man, and Abraham Gabbema.

March 13th.—During the evening heavy S.S.E. winds.

March 14th (Sunday).—Same wind.

March 15th and 18th.—Same weather.

March 19th.—Calm weather.

March 20th.—Calm in the morning. S.S.E. breeze in the afternoon. Departure of Admiral Sterthenius and the return fleet, together with the yacht *Erasmus*. Fully fifty persons had stowed themselves away on board—freemen, as well as Company's servants, of whom only thirteen were recovered.

March 21st (Palm Sunday).—S.S.E. winds still blowing.

March 22nd.—Lovely weather with a beautiful sea breeze.

Resolution :—"As the flute *Loenen* has brought a large quantity of rice from Batavia, the want of which made us decide on the 22nd August last to give board money to all the Company's servants instead, until furthers orders from the Directors, and as this arrangement can now cease, but as we have been informed that the men are better satisfied with their board money than with rations as customary on board, it was decided until further orders from the Directors to continue the payment of board money, and instead of 40 lbs. to give 45 lbs. of rice per month to each man with 6 lbs. salt meat and pork instead of the cash payment, but whenever fresh meat is obtainable a third more will be given instead, that the men may have food enough and have also a penny in hand every day. The freemen shall each be permitted to fetch 50 lbs. per month whether of rice or any other corn.

This day were also examined the twelve persons who had stowed themselves away in the return fleet, viz., eight servants of the Company and four freemen and ditto servants. It having been ascertained from them that they had been persuaded to desert by the sailors, who had even dragged some of them into the boats, making them discontented with the place and even cursing it, promising at the same time to hide them securely and bring them home safely, so that it is evident that they had been seduced by fair words, it was decided to pardon them with an admonition to be more careful, and to send each one back to his business, &c.

And as regards the free hirelings on Hendrik Boom's farm, who had also stowed themselves away and deserted the farm, they have surrendered their cattle and grain to the Company for debt, with the offer to pay the balance in course of time. To save further loss their offer was accepted, the more so as what they had already given was almost enough to cover their liabilities, so that the Company will not be the loser.

Decided to benefit the undermentioned persons at their request and for their abilities, with the following advancement and for the reasons adduced :—

Whereas it is more and more found how little dependence can be placed on some persons, and that the *Schapenjachtje* is in great danger of being one day or another deserted by her men, some of whom had already stowed themselves away in the return fleet, and it almost happened that the quartermaster of that boat also deserted and abandoned his vessel, it was decided, in order to prevent such a possible loss, to put a trustworthy man on board in the person of the married freeman Jan Reynierz of Amsterdam with whom things are not prospering very well, and to appoint him quartermaster and head of the *Schapenjachtje*, on which he may also be employed as sailmaker, and to pay him f18 per month, the amount earned by him before he became a freeman, according to the following deed :—

Jan Reyniersz : who arrived here in the *Vogel Phoenix* on the 16th August, 1653, as arquebusier at f11 per month, and afterwards promoted to be sailmaker at f18, and who since the 14th April, 1657, supported himself as a freeman, having also obtained his wife from home, but at present completely ruined by the robberies of the Hottentoots and the war, is at his request and because of his fitness, and also because we have no other suitable person, re-accepted as sailmaker in the service, and in order to have a trustworthy person on the Company's vessel, likewise appointed quartermaster on board. He is to serve for five years, unless in the mean time he may decide again to ask for his freedom, which will then be granted to him.

Jan Claesz : of Steenwyk, soldier, who arrived here in *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* on the 28th March, 1658, at f9 per month, and who has since behaved vigilantly and faithfully in many ways, and conducted himself as an honest person, is at his request promoted to the rank of "adelborst," with a salary of f12 per month from to-day.

Nicolaas Delbort, of Arien, arrived in the *Henrietta Louisa* on the 10th August, 1656, as soldier at f9. On account of his knowledge of masonry he was employed as a mason, to the satisfaction of the Commander. As long as he continues in that employment he will receive f13 per month.

Thomas Harmans, of Sevenbergen, boatswain, who arrived here in the *Provincie* on the 13th August, 1657, at f10 per month, has since been employed in the gardens, having a knowledge of gardening. Having discharged his duties to the full satisfaction of his revered Commander, his salary is increased to f12 per month.

Jacob Pieterse, of Brugge, arquebusier, arrived here in *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* on the 28th March, 1658, at f10 per month. Has since been employed in the gardens, having a knowledge of gardening, and as superintendent of the slaves. Having discharged his duties to the satisfaction of the Commander, his salary is increased to f12 per month. . . ." (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, Abraham Gabbema, Pieter Everaerts, and Gysbert v. Campen, secretary.

1660.

This afternoon the *Schapenjachtje* was despatched to Robben Island with the following note to Otto Jansz:—"We wish to know whether the return ships, when passing, caused you any trouble, and how many pigs and sheep you still have. Also attend to the beacon fires when vessels are under the land towards evening, and cannot reach the anchorage before dark. When they can do so you need light no fires; attend carefully to this. With greetings from your good friend."—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck.

March 23rd.—N.W. breeze. The flute *Loenen* returns from Saldanha Bay, which it had left yesterday morning at ten o'clock, without having waited for the return fleet or seen anything of it. Neither had it seen any Hottentots, except the naked beach rangers, nor any cattle or sheep, so that the voyage thither of the vessels of the freemen, as desired by the Hon. Sterthenius, has been a complete failure.

March 24th.—Same weather, with a little rain. The freemen's boat *De Zee Leeuw* also returns from Saldanha Bay without success. Had called at Dassen Island, and brought thence three half aums of train oil. They were much astonished that their mates had run away by means of the return fleet, and that in their name they had obtained many goods from other freemen, leaving their other boat, the *Penguin*, robbed of everything, and considerably injured.

March 25th.—Gentle weather, with a N.W. breeze like yesterday. Busy discharging the *Loenen*.

March 26th.—The same.

March 27th.—Full moon. Mild weather and variable breezes.

March 28th.—N.W. breeze. Arrival in the afternoon of *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*.

March 29th.—The officers land only this morning, and reported that Pieter Marreville was chief merchant, and Michiel Engelken skipper of that vessel, which had left the *Vlie* on the 17th December last in company of the *Amersfoort* with 337 men, of whom 8 had died. The rest were all well. Had touched nowhere, and parted company with the *Amersfoort* on the north of the line. The latter vessel had many dead and sick.

March 30th and 31st.—Lovely weather.

April 1st and 2nd.—Fine weather, with westerly breezes. Arrival of the *Amersfoort* about 11 o'clock at night, guided by the beacon fires on Robben Island.

April 3rd.—Same weather. Skipper Jan Munt and junior merchant Willem Boosum reported that yesterday they had seen three other vessels, and that since their departure from the *Vlie* they had suffered much from sickness. Thirty-one of the Company's servants had died, among them the Rev. Henrius Cool. The surviving 314 men were all well. Had called nowhere.

The yacht *Naarden* of the Chamber Enekuysen also arrived. Had left on the 24th December last with 111 men. Her skipper's

name was Pieter Egbertsz Groot, and that of the bookkeeper Wybrant Dubbeldekop. Only one death had occurred. The rest were all well. Had touched nowhere.

The yacht *Zierikzee* of the Rotterdam Chamber also arrived. Had left the 17th December. Rut Jacobs Buys was her skipper, and Johannes van Oppynen her bookkeeper. Of her 192 men 2 had died and been drowned; the rest were all well. Had called at Ilha de Mayo and obtained a sufficient number of goats there and some water melons for refreshments. At Cape Finisterre she had lost her foremast and bowsprit. The mainmast was also broken, and her spars injured. But damages had been repaired in such a way that she will be able to continue her voyage to Batavia. The yacht *Vlissingen* also arrived during the afternoon. Her skipper's name was Reyuiet Reyniers, who had broken his leg some weeks previously, and was still lying miserably in bed. As mentioned by the Rev. Cornelius Walrandt and bookkeeper Jan Blommert, they had left the 18th December last in company of the flute *Diemermeer* with 220 men, of whom 9 had died, 2 were drowned, and the rest were in bad health. Had with the *Diemermeer* called at the Island Boa Vista, where they could find no refreshments, and only brackish water.

April 4th (Sunday).—Cloudy sky and wind as above. The aforesaid minister preached on shore and baptized 6 children, viz. :—

One of the Commander, named Elizabeth.

One of the widow of the late Ensign Jan van Harwarden, named Johanna.

One of the free miller, Wouter Cornelis Mostaert, named Cornelia.

One of the gardener, Marten Jacobs, named Cornelis.

One of the free agriculturist, Jacob Cloeten, named Catryn.

One of the free Saldania trader, Joris Jansz, named Johannes.

Arrival of the ship *Walvis* of the Amsterdam Chamber, with skipper Albert Bruynvis, junior merchant Hendrik Duyker, and a minister named Nicolaas Heussens or Heussinius. Had left the Vlie on the 24th December last with 379 men, of whom 20 had died, and 40 were still ill. Had called nowhere.

April 5th and 6th.—Same weather. This day peace was once more concluded with the captain and chief of the Kaapmen, Herry, and all the principal men and elders. Promises were made on both sides no longer to molest one another. However, nothing was left of the stolen cattle that could be restored, but they promised on their part to do their best that as many as possible might be brought down from the interior by other tribes, and from time to time, though they firmly maintained their grievance that we had more and more taken of their lands for ourselves, which had been their property for centuries, and on which they had been accustomed to depasture their cattle, &c. They also asked whether they would be allowed to do the same thing if they

1660.

came to Holland, and added that it would have mattered little if we had confined ourselves to the Fort, but that instead we were selecting the best lands for ourselves, without asking them whether they liked it or not, or whether they were inconvenienced or not. They therefore urged it very pressinglly to be permitted once more to have free access to the same for the purpose mentioned. At first we replied that there was not enough grass there for their and our cattle. They answered "Have we then no cause to prevent you from obtaining cattle, as having many you cover our pastures with them? And if you say the land is not big enough for us both, who ought then in justice to retire, the real owner or the foreign usurper?" They therefore adhered to their old right of natural ownership, and desired to be allowed at least to collect bitter almonds which were growing wild in large quantities in that neighbourhood as well as to dig roots for their winter food. This likewise could not be permitted as they would find too many opportunities to injure the Colonists, and because we shall require the bitter almonds this year for ourselves in order to plant them for the projected fence. These reasons were certainly not communicated to them, but as they steadfastly adhered to their claims it was at last necessary to tell them that they had now lost the land on account of the war, and therefore could make sure of nothing else than that they had lost it completely, the more so as they could not be induced to restore the stolen cattle, which they had taken from us unjustly and without any reason, that accordingly their country, having been fairly won by the sword in a defensive war, had fallen to us and that we intended to keep it.

They on the other hand complained very much that the colonists and others residing in the country had caused them great annoyance by now and then robbing them of a sheep, calf, &c., taking their beads and armlets from their ears and arms and giving the same to their slaves, also by beating and thumping them, &c., without the Commander exactly being aware of all this (there is some truth in this), and not being able to bear this any longer had resolved to take revenge by stealing the cattle, so that they boldly maintained that they had sufficient reasons for what they had done. They were reminded, however, of the many instances when punishment was inflicted by us on those against whom they had brought their complaints for such and similar annoyances, &c., but that they had not been satisfied with this, but always desired to revenge themselves by robbing and stealing, and that (if this continued) no peace could be maintained between us, and that they would by the rights of war lose more of their country unless they had sufficient courage to drive us away, when according to the same rights they would become and remain owners of the Fort and everything as long as they could retain the same, and if they liked this, that we would have to see what we had to do.

They replied that this was a narrative of matters of the past, that they were satisfied henceforth no longer to think of causing

us any further molestation, and that they would complain to us if they were at all molested by our people, that after careful trial the guilty might be punished. This they would do on their part, expecting that one day the Commander would go out to show them the ways which they might use, and the limits beyond which they were to remain, &c. This was postponed until the departure of the ships; *peace was concluded*, and the chiefs Gogosoia, Herry, and all the principal men, about 40 altogether, were presented with copper, beads, and tobacco, as well as with food and liquor, and so well treated that all became merrily dusted (jolly drunk), so that if we had so wished it, we might have kept them in our power. For very many weighty reasons, however, we could not decide to do this as we could always effect this (as a last resource), and in the meanwhile make further inquiry regarding their intentions, &c.

Last night Anthony Tyckman, chief boatswain's mate on the yacht *Vlissingen*, was stabbed in the neck by the third officer of *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, named Cornelis Jansz, of Flensburg. The man having been killed, the murderer was placed in custody. Matter to be investigated.

April 7th.—S.S.E. breeze. The flute *Loenen* sent outside to look out for the two last return ships, and hand them warning letters not to pass this and not touch at St. Helena. For the same purpose a freemen's vessel and the *Schapenjachtje* were kept ready at the mouth of the bay to warn those vessels that might be sighted and by hard winds be tempted to pass on.

Resolution.—"The Commander and Council of the Fort of Good Hope, assisted by the officers of the ships at present in the bay, having gathered evidence and found, after further examination, that Cornelis Jansz, of Flensburg, had the night before last mortally stabbed Anthony Tyckman, so that the latter died during the following night; and as it further appears that the said Cornelis Jansz, according to his own confessions and various declarations, had been first provoked by the deceased, and also been wounded in his back, so that in order to settle the case clever-headed barristers would be necessary, and as such men are not to be had here, and as the *Amsterdam* is ready to leave with her consorts, so that there is no time to spare for further investigation, the ship's officers being daily required on board to discharge their duties, and having no time over to come on shore every day for this kind of business, &c., it was decided not to detain the vessels, but to refer the case, with all documents, to Batavia. . . . And as the *Amsterdam*, on which the offender is employed, may leave with the first favourable wind, it was further decided to send him on board the *Walvis* as a prisoner, and in the meanwhile to prepare duplicates of all the papers connected with his case for the information of the High Government, as well as to send on board the same ship as prisoner Jan Brouwer, who, in consequence of his disobedience to the offender, appears to have been the cause of the crime. . . ." (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, P. Marville,

1660.

Michiel Engelken, Jan Munt, Albert Bruynvis, Rut Jacobsz Buys, R. de Man, W. Bosem, H. Duyker, and G. v. Campen, secretary.

This day the Hon. P. Marville receives his farewell in order to leave with his vessel, *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, with the first favourable breeze. . . .

The case between the sergeant and H. v. d. Stratens, on the *Zierikzee*, is examined by Commissioners.

April 8th.—Fine weather and variable breezes. The Kaapmen and their followers return home, apparently pleased at the peace made, which may the Almighty grant that it be kept faithfully. This day being the annual thanks and prayer day, was kept as such, whilst the Rev. Cornelis Walrandt preached about our first coming here, and the abundant blessing granted by Almighty God in all things; and prayed that He would in His Mercy continue the same for the future. After the service he baptized a child of the free burgher Jan Sacharias, named Maria.

Resolution.—The Council decided to refer the case of Sergeant H. v. d. Straten to Batavia, for the same reasons as those mentioned in the Resolution of the previous day (*q. v.*).

The ship *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* leaves towards evening, with a strong S.E. breeze, but is obliged to anchor again.

April 9th.—New moon. Variable breezes in the morning. *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* leaves towards evening.

April 10th.—Fine westerly breeze; arrival of the flute *Diemermeer*, skipper Carel Alteras and bookkeeper Eeuwout Teelingh. Had left De Wielingen on the 18th Dec. last, with 154 men. One death had occurred during the voyage, and some of the crew were suffering from scurvy. Had with the *Vlissingen* called at Boa Vista, but obtained nothing there. Had long calms at the Line.

The flute *Loenen* also arrived with a broken bowsprit. Complained that the west wind was blowing fully six times harder outside than in the bay, and that she could hardly endure it. She had accordingly seen the ship *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* taking in its topsails, and proceeding with only the lower ones set. . . .

Death of the arquebusier, named Albert Albertz, of Blockseil, who remained ill here out of the *Enckhuysen*.

April 11th (Sunday).—Rainy weather in the morning, with westerly wind. The yacht *Naarden* receives its farewell. She proceeds to Batavia.

April 12th.—Fine, dry, lovely weather, with variable breezes.

April 13th.—Rainy weather. Wind variable.

April 14th.—Lovely dry weather. Towards evening a S.E. breeze was blowing, when the *Naarden* went under sail.

Resolution.—"The Commander and Council proceed on board the *Amersfoort*, and strengthened with the officers of the ships in the roadstead, read and deliberated on the charges against Roelo Boute, arquebusier on the *Amersfoort*. Decided to refer this cas

also to Batavia for the same reasons as those given in the two preceding Resolutions.

April 15th.—Lovely calm weather.

April 16th.—S.S.E. breeze. Departure to Batavia of the *Amersfoort*, *Walvis*, *Vlissingen* and *Zierikzee*.

April 17th.—Fine lovely weather.

April 18th (Sunday).—Heavy dry S.S.E. winds.

April 19th.—Same weather, with rain.

April 20th.—Same weather.

Resolution.—"The burghers living around the Fort submit that they find it difficult to breed pigs, and at the same time keep them out of the gardens. They propose, as is usual in Europe, to appoint a herd, every owner to take his turn for paying and feeding him, whether he owns many or only a few pigs. Thus the pigs could every evening be driven to their styes, whence they could every morning be collected by the herd, who shall be fined one quarter of a real for every pig allowed by him to break into a garden. Decided to adopt this suggestion and to make regulations for the proper payment of the herd. It was also resolved that all carrying on a business and desirous to become burghers shall consent to this before receiving free papers, agriculturists excepted, who shall be permitted to do as they think proper. And to make this tax as light as possible for the few burghers the servants of the Company shall also be permitted to keep pigs, that the Cape may in good time become full of these animals. Everyone neglecting to lock his pigs in during the night to forfeit one quarter of a real for each animal, which if not claimed within 24 hours shall be confiscated and sent to Robben Island or killed. No sows, but only hogs to be killed, and only with permission of the Commander, from whom they shall obtain a permit which will cost them nothing. Such slaughtered animals they may use for themselves or sell, at the price fixed ere this, and which the Company shall also pay should it require any.

And as in consequence of the departure of Abraham Gabbema, the Council has been left without a secretary to draw up deeds and other documents, it was decided to appoint the assistant Hendrik Lacus in his place, and to swear him in as such. . . ."
(Signed) J. van Riebeeck, R. de Man, Abr. Gabbema, P. Everaert and H. Lacus, Secretary.

April 21st.—Dry S.S.E. weather. Arrival of the flute *Vogelsangh* and the *Hilversum* from Batavia on the 17th January; had fine weather all along. The *Hilversum* had had three deaths on board. The rest were all well.

April 22nd.—Calm weather. The above vessels provided with some supplies from the *Diemermeer*.

April 23rd.—Very strong W. wind and some rain. One of the boats sent out to watch for the return ships with our letters of warning, &c., also returned yesterday, having, on the 17th, approached a vessel, which they found to be English, and which

1660.

put out a boat; but the freemen's vessel had outsailed it. The Englishman's course was northerly, towards St. Holena. The N.W. wind blew so strongly that the *Vogelsang* was twice sent adrift, running foul of and injuring the *Loenen*. Afterwards the *Loenen* also parted, and colliding with the *Hilversum*, both vessels were damaged, but the extent could not be known, as the weather made all communication impossible.

This morning, notwithstanding this stormy weather, the other vessel of the freemen arrived from Dassen Island full of penguin, seamew and plover eggs.

April 24th.—The same boisterous weather. The Lord God cannot be sufficiently thanked for having been pleased to let the said return flutes arrive here safely the day before yesterday, as they would otherwise, like the *Erasmus*, not have been able to weather the Cape, but been obliged to proceed to Madagascar or elsewhere. At least they would have had as much to do as they could.

April 25th (Sunday).—Full moon. The same boisterous weather with rain. During the night the rain grew heavier and the wind went down.

April 26th.—Calm misty weather. The return ships busy fishing for their anchors and repairing damages. Received some ropes, &c., from the *Diemermeer*.

April 27th.—Same calm weather. Death of Hidde Siebes of Jellum, a sailor, left sick here by the *Walvis*.

Departure of the *Diemermeer*.

Arrival of three emissaries from the Gourachouquas or tobacco thieves, sent by the chief Choro to ask whether they also may share in the newly-made peace like the Kaapmen, and be permitted as before to come and go, under promise that they would do their best to enable us to obtain abundant cattle by trading with them and other tribes in the interior, &c. They were told yes, provided that for the present they used no other thoroughfare than that through the field gates within sight of the watchhouses "Kyk-uyt" and "Keert de Koe," already pointed out to the Kaapmen; and also that we had received copper, tobacco, beads, brandy, and Spanish wine, arrack, rice, and bread, &c., for bartering purposes, and for treating them kindly and in a friendly manner. But that we had also received horses and other war material for fighting the evil disposed, &c.; that our intention was never otherwise than as it still is, to live in amity with the aboriginals of this country, and obtain for them from our country what they desired, in order to exchange it for their own produce, &c. This they understood, and were kindly treated until the 28th.

April 28th.—Fine, lovely sunny weather. The Gorachouqua emissaries leave with presents of copper, tobacco, bread, and beads for themselves, their chief Choro and his brother Gakingh, encamped at present about 3 days' journey from this with Gonnoma, Secunde of Oedaso, having much cattle with them. They intend shortly to come nearer, in order to sell some to us

Eva, the interprestress, stated that she had gathered from the conversation of these and other Hottentoots that we would obtain a mighty lot of cattle this season, as the Hamcunquas intended to send in cattle with the Chainouquas, whose chiefs would send the chief Chaihantima with them to the fort for barter. Time will show the success of this. Affairs do not always look bad.

April 29th and 30th.—Same weather. *Resolution* :—"As none of the stowaways on the vessels under the Honourable Sterthenius have returned in the *Loenen*, the latter having missed the fleet at the mouth of Saldanha Bay, it was decided to close all their accounts, and to confiscate all the amounts that stand to their credit. They are as follows :—

	Credit.	Debit.
William Jansz, of Alkmaar, arque- busier	f23 8 8	
W. Driesz, of 's Gravendeel, ar- quebusier		f112 17 8
Carsten Carstensz, of Amsterdam, boatswain	5 3 3	
J. v. Overmeer, of Overschie, boatswain		65 13 2
Corn. Bouwesz, of Dorp v. Leyden, arquebusier	18 3 8	
Corn. Cornelisz Luyt, of Amster- dam, gardener	94 19 4	
Fred Fredericksz, of Amsterdam, arquebusier		32 7 8
Marten Cleynpien, of Boom- gaarden, adelborst		56 11 2
Pieter Vervenne, of Bruges, soldier		101 0 0
Erenreich Dilman Ditman, of Barlyn, soldier		87 6 12
Niel Braursz, of Slangerop, adel- borst		81 5 3
Jacob Hendriksz, of Campen, adelborst	20 18 9	
Guilljam Sneuwart, of St. Boevius, soldier		88 19 8
David of Guchion, soldier		100 13 18
Lourens Verstraten, of Bruges, adelborst		88 1 10
Jan v. Gent, of Deventer, soldier	8 3 0	
Christ. Roeloffsz, of Wesselen- boere, young soldier		89 9 9
Jous Cauwell, of Houschoten, soluier	24 1 10	
Anthony Gevers, of Antwerp, adelborst		135 3 8
Anthony Direx, of Haarlem, boy on the flute <i>Loenen</i>		5 6 1

1660.

Freemen and Servants (loan).	Jurgen Gerritsz, of Weecke ..				131	8	8
	Jan Jansz Macca, of Delft ..	4	10	0			
	Dirk Cornelius Jonge Noteboom				2	11	0
	Michiel Bartholomeus, of Swolle				49	11	10
	Gysbert Arrisz, of Bommel, mason				129	10	0
	Jochum Elbertsz, of Amsterdam,						
	Saldanha trader				166	6	11
	Dirk Rinckes, of Masseyck, Sal-						
	danha servant	66	8	0			
	Pieter Jansz, of Middelburg, Sal-						
	danha servant						
	Jan Lourensz, of Haarlem, free						
	thatcher				15	13	0
	Jan v. Baerlem, of Brussels ..				68	10	1
	Jan Symonsz Elders, of Amster-						
	dam				130	9	8
	Hans Jacobsz Lisky, of Dantzig				110	13	4
Convicts.	Jacob Barthoorn, of St. Mar-						
	gareth's Parish	20	10	0			
	Egbert Direxsz, of Bremer Parish				108	13	0
	Jan Lieveniz Verloy, of Leyden				29	2	8
	Hendriek Gollalt, of Amsterdam				21	11	6
	Michiel Fransz, of Swolle ..				86	15	0
	Michiel Brugmans, of Antwerp				60	16	0
Convicts.	Jan Hendriksz, of Leeuwaarden, {	from Batavia.					
	Lourens Albertsz,						
	Lourens Cornelisz, of the ship <i>N. Euckhuysen</i> , left here."						

(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, Abr. Gabbema, P. Everaerts, and H. Lacus, Secretary.

May 1st.—Fairly fine weather. N.W. breeze with rain.

Resolution (morning). "Council, strengthened with the officers of the return ships *Vogelsangh* and *Hilversum*, consider the letters of the Seventeen to the Commander and Council here, as well as to the officers of the said ships; ordering the vessels not to touch at St. Helena, the English having taken possession of it; and, further, to proceed home behind and to the N. of Ireland and Scotland. The orders from Batavia containing instructions to await orders here from home, having also been read it was decided to follow the latter, and to leave it to the officers, after having passed Corvo and Flores, to decide which course to take thence, this being the usual course to adopt. . . The flute *Loenen* having been discharged and ballasted, and the Hottentoots from all accounts having left Saldanha Bay, and being on their way hither to trade with us, so that it will be perfectly useless to send this vessel to that bay as desired by Mr. Sterthenius to convey cattle to the Cape, it was decided, as it was better to attract the natives to the fort in order to obtain cattle from them, which if conveyed by vessel would cause great expense and be liable to destruction, not to send the *Loenen* to

Saldanha Bay. And as the Directors mention in their letters that the galiot *Packet*, built for this Residency, was still being kept back by the frost, to send the *Loenen* in search of the island St. Helena Nova, for if the galiot is waited for much longer, there would be no time left for conveying the news to Batavia by means of the May ships, to be of service to the return fleet to be despatched this year in the month of December next.

And as it is stated in the despatches from Batavia dated the 17th January that their Honours trust that when Mr Sterthenius has heard of the intention of the English, he will instruct the flute *Loenen* to accompany the fleet from the Cape as far as St. Helena, in order to obtain information regarding the doings of the English there, as this might be done without too much delay—for she would reach Batavia only a little later, whilst the time would not have been uselessly spent—and as from all this it appears how much importance is attached by the Directors and the High Government to the finding of a new St. Helena to replace the old one as a rendezvous, it was decided after mature deliberation to despatch the *Loenen* in search of the new St. Helena, that their Honours at Batavia may have full information before the above-mentioned return fleet is despatched, the more so as the *Loenen* is more defensive than the *Parkytjen*, and that she will at least require 30 men, as the Directors are of opinion that the said island is not only in possession of the Portuguese, but also well fortified, so that prudence is necessary, &c.”

Some rice provided to the return flute *Vogelsangh*.

Skipper of that vessel complained of the conduct of two sailors, Joost Joosten, of Amsterdam, and Dirk Jansz: of Buysen. Commissioners appointed to investigate the case and report.—(Signed), J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, R. Ram, J. Schrael, H. Francken, Abr. Gabbema, and H. Lacus, secretary.

Resolution (afternoon): “Consultation regarding the election of free burgher councillors and officers of the militia.

The freemen having as usual nominated 4 persons, namely, Jacob Cloeten of Cologne, free agriculturist; Leendert Cornelisz of Zevenhuysen, free sawyer; Wouter Cornelis Mostaert, free miller and brickmaker, and Joris Jansz, free tavern keeper, from whom to select two to have session at our Board as burgher councillors, in order to assist in the discussion of offences occurring among them; it was decided to elect Wouter Cornelis Mostaert, of Utrecht, as senior burgher councillor, he being the eldest of the freemen, who has also his wife with him, and Leendert Cornelisz, of Zevenhuysen, as junior burgher councillor. This to be communicated to them.

And as it has been ordered for greater security, peace, and the prevention of tumults, rebellion, and hostility on the part of the natives, that the freemen shall always be well provided with fire-arms, and for that purpose they have by Resolution of the first May last, that good order may also be maintained among them—

1660.

selves, been formed into a company of militia under the necessary officers, just like the company's garrison here, with a sergeant, two corporals, and a drummer, to be annually elected by the burgher council, the drummer excepted, and as the burgher councillors, strengthened with their selected sergeant and corporal, had according to the aforesaid Resolution nominated as sergeant Harman Remajonne, free agriculturist, and Hendrik Hendricksz, of Surwarde, free tailor, and as corporals Elbert Dirksz, free tailor, and Martin Jacobsz, free gardener, both of the fort, as well as Hendrick Elbertz, free agriculturist, and Pieter Cornelisz, of Langesont, free fisherman, both resident in the country, the Council decided to elect out of that number Hendrik van Surwarde as sergeant, residing with his wife near the fort; Harman Remanjenno as corporal in the country, and Elbert Dirksz as corporal near the fort. The burgher councillor, Leendert Cornelisz, to retain the command in the fort over his servants and free sawyers, in order to have the arms, &c., there properly taken care of, and the militia in general to observe the orders promulgated for them last year.

The following promotions and improvements agreed to:—

Pieter van Clinkenburg: of Middelburg, arrived in the flute *De Meese* in 1658 as junior surgeon at f18 per month; conducted himself well, and since the departure of the chief surgeon Guillaume Roberts, of Dondy (? Dundee) served in his place. Appointed surgeon at f30 per month with a three years' contract.

Ammon Dirksz: of Bergen, arrived in *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* in 1658 as arquebusier at f12. Employed since the departure of the "baas," superintendent over the woodcutters; now made "baas" with f17 per month and a three years' contract, provided, however, that should the present Commander leave before that time he will have his choice to proceed either home or to India.

Pieter Egbertsz: Uyttendam, arrived in the *Princess Royal* in 1659 as sailor at f9; has since been employed in the smithy. Accepted on account of his diligence as smith's assistant at f12.

Agreed to pay the free Saldanhars for cruising for the first squadron and for trading on behalf of the same at Saldanha Bay each with one vessel, one hundred guilders, and to have their damaged boat repaired by the Company's carpenters, as mostly all the free carpenters have stolen away, and in order to further increase their zeal to pay them f50 for having lain on the look-out for half a month for the second squadron. The two squadrons to be debited *pro rata* with the different amounts."—(Signed as before.)

May 2nd (Sunday).—Fairly good weather with a N.W. breeze.

May 3rd.—Same weather. Death of Jacobus Halsterbeeck of Leyden, left behind sick on the 9th April by the *Walvis*.

May 4th.—Very dirty, rainy weather. Same wind.

May 5th.—Beautiful, lovely, calm weather. During the afternoon some Gorachouquas arrive saying that they had left 12

cattle in the Kaapmen's camp, about six or seven hours' walk from the Fort, and that they would bring them to-morrow as a sure sign of their offered friendship. It is the custom among these tribes that whosoever, after a war, asks for or offers peace, and such offer is accepted by the other party, their chiefs bring a present of 10 or 12 head of cattle. Thereupon the other side, as a proof of having accepted, in return also gives a present, which in our case consists of copper, tobacco, eating, drinking, &c., which cattle these forerunners might have brought with them, but evidently they wished to be treated first, and as we knew their covetous nature this was done in order the more to draw them towards us, &c.

Towards evening Ohoro, chief of the Chorachouquas, arrived with a retinue of about 100 men, among them the eldest and principal of the tribe, bringing with them 13 head of cattle fairly old and young, as a present, requesting that we would accept them as a proof of their friendship, promising that henceforth they would live in peace and do their best to induce the natives of the interior to trade with us to our satisfaction, &c. This was received in a friendly spirit, and they were promised our friendship in return, and as it was growing dark the said cattle were driven into the kraal, whilst the visitors were treated on rice, bread, tobacco, and brandy, and were told that we would on our side give them presents to-morrow. Herry and Doman had accompanied them, and acted as interpreters and mediators. They and the aforesaid chief were treated separately and permitted to sleep within the Fort. They again insisted upon our removal from their pastures, &c.; but the Gorachouquas did not appear to mind this much, hence Herry, Doman, and their followers were told that this had been refused the last time, and that therefore they were not at liberty to talk on the subject any longer, as they had lost these pastures in their wars against us. The Gorachouqua appeared satisfied that we accepted his offered friendship, saying that we were not to let his people pass through any way than through the bars straight to the Fort, or any other way which we might point out to his people.

Ankaisoa was likewise present, and at his own request included in the peace, so that we have once more friendship and peace with the Goringayquas or tobacco thieves, Ankaisoa their ally, and the Gorachouquas or sheep thieves. They had commenced to make war on us about this time last year, and could command a force of about 1000 strong men for offensive purposes. It is to be hoped that this peace is sincerely intended by them, as in that case there will be a chance of obtaining once more a considerable portion of cattle, according to the expectations cherished on the subject by them and by Eva.

May 6th.—Ascension Day. Fine lovely weather like yesterday. This morning before the sermon the chief of the Gorachouquas and his followers received their return present in the form of

1660.

copper, beads, tobacco and pipes, certainly double the value of the 13 aforesaid cattle. After the sermon they were also treated with food and liquor, whilst a tub filled with a mixture of arrack and brandy was set open in the middle of the square within the fort, with a small sailor's cup in it, out of which they drank themselves so drunk that one beheld them making the strangest antics in the world, singing, dancing, leaping and with other strange behaviour; at one time one, at another another, fell down through drunkenness, and were picked up by those not so far gone, carried outside the fort, and laid on the grass to sleep. The chief excepted, however, who conducted himself fairly well, and did not drink himself more than half full, besides three or four of his eldest men, but even of these some could not refrain from dancing with the rest, whilst the women sang and clapped their hands so loudly that they might have been heard about 150 roods away from the fort, so that they appeared in their own way to be holding quite a triumph of peace.

This day the officers of the *Loenen* received orders to depart on their voyage in search of St. Helena Nova.

May 7th.—Misty weather in the morning. The Hottentoots again treated with food and tobacco. They left about 8 o'clock, very well satisfied, being escorted by the Commander and 6 horsemen as far as the barrier between the watchhouses "Keert de Koe" and "Kyck Uyt," where some outlying horsemen met them from behind the thickets, and accompanied them as far as the Brakke River, where they were shown the passage which they were henceforth to use, and what lands they were to keep away from. They thereupon crossed the river, whilst the Commander soon rode out of their sight at a good gallop on this side towards the lands of the Company and the freemen, purposely to show them the speed of horses, which produced great awe among them.

The inspection of the lands in every direction showed that a considerable quantity of rye and wheat had already been sown, and that portions were already springing up beautifully. It will be desirable to barter more draught oxen as soon as possible from these natives, as both the Company and the freemen are very poorly provided with these animals, and it will be breakneck work to get the old land under seed this year. It consists of 152 morgen, viz:

50	Morgen	at the	Company's	} Farms
35	"	"	Commander's	
10	"	"	Jacob Cloetin's	
15	"	"	Jacob Rosendaal's	
16	"	"	Steven Jansz's	
9	"	"	Harman Remajenne's	
3	"	"	Jan Martensz's	
10	"	"	Caspar Brinkman's	}
4	"	"	Pieter Vasagie's	

Total, 152 morgen, but if it pleases the Lord God to grant us but one-third of a last for every morgen as an average, we hope that it will go considerably far for the maintenance of man and beast.

May 8th.—Loose, rainy weather, with a N.W. wind.

May 9th.—Very heavy weather from the N.W. Early in the morning a vessel was seen anchored near the shore on the other side of the bay, and flying a white flag. The Commander accordingly proceeded thither over land behind the downs and on horseback, accompanied by the skipper of the *Loenen*, the junior merchant Roelof de Man, and some horsemen, and made signals on the beach on the vessel's starboard side, as if there were men stationed on the watch everywhere, though at such a distance from the fort. Arriving near the vessel she was found to be dangerously near the breakers, and appeared to be a Flemish frigate, having red spliced banners, but flying no flag, so that no further information could be obtained, nor could one thoroughly see what was written on her stern. She is very likely a Frenchman or a Genoese, and is lying as dangerously near the shore as possible, her topmasts lowered and her foreyard raised about one-third on high, so that in case she parted she might sail on shore with the foresail set, and thus save the lives of the crew, as she has not more than a musket shots' length deep water behind her. She, however, seems to be well provided with anchors and cables, and had two anchors down.

May 10th.—New moon. The same stormy wind and weather until about noon, when the wind went down so much that the ship could weigh its one anchor and carry out behind a spring on the other, finally succeeding in getting away from the shore with reefed sails, and safely reaching the roadstead. In the meanwhile one of the freemen's boats had boarded her with some vegetables and eggs, nominally to sell the same, but really to find out what vessel she was and who the people were. On their return they were accompanied by the late lieutenant of Mons. Laros, viz: Mons. Pierre Gelton. The vessel was a cruizer that had been here three years ago, and then had Admiral Laros on board. Her name was *La Marichal*, and she had left the Nantes River on the 20th January last, with 180 men, for account of Monsieur La Melleray, Governor of Nantes. None had died, and 7 or 8 were sick in bed. The captain was Monsieur Symon Veron, a native of Rochel, where most of the crew had been engaged. She was on her way to Madagascar, where the said Lieutenant was to remain as Governor in the place of the present Monsieur Durivé, left there three years ago by Laros, and who was to return in this vessel. During his stay there of three years the Lieutenant was to build a fort in St. Augustine Bay in order to command the whole island from one end to the other. Six months hence another vessel would follow with many married families, in order to enlarge the Colony there and plant one in St. Augustine's Bay also. They did not, however, intend as they said, to go to the Red Sea, but as soon as possible

1660.

return with their ship from Madagascar laden with ebony, hides and wax, and sandal and aloe wood, as well as tobacco from Mascarenhas, which they said was finely cultivated there by their people and slaves.

They were also to start silk culture there, and for that purpose had on board a silk spinster and her husband, who would thus earn their living on Madagascar, as already a considerable quantity of silk is procurable there, to judge by the silken upper skirts and dresses worn by the great, and shown us by those of this cruiser. This agrees with the report of the late junior merchant Verburgh, who had been there twice with the *Tulp* and died there.

These Frenchmen had called at Tencriffe and Cape Verde, and informed us that a little while ago the fort of the West India Company there had been plundered by a French vessel from Dieppe, under a Swedish flag and commission, and that two Dutch vessels, fully laden and ready to leave, had likewise been seized; that besides these vessels the Frenchmen had carried away fully three hundred thousand guilders in gold. This vessel had for two months daily as a friend hoisted the French flag whilst under the land and been often entertained by those of the fort, the flutes in the meanwhile taking in their full cargoes. Having spied out very carefully everything in his favour, the captain brought his vessel with 200 men to an anchor near the 2 flutes under the fort, nominally as a matter of courtesy to share in the farewell festivities to be held by the friends at the fort and those of the flute ships. A dinner had been arranged within the said fort in honour of the departing vessels, to which the Frenchman and 9 others (secretly armed with pistols under their clothes) had also been invited. After dinner, when all stood up to drink a parting glass together, the Frenchmen seized the opportunity, and placing their pistols on the breasts of the Governor and some of his retinue, compelled them to surrender as prisoners, together with all who were in the fort and were unarmed or had no idea of evil. At the same time they made a signal to the men of their ships, who at once attacked the flutes, and after a successful plunder they departed, leaving the Governor in possession of his plundered fort, though no one was killed. He had, however, been left in possession of some thousands of hides which the plunderers could not carry off with them. This narrative made us more prudent towards these visitors, though we never trusted them.

May 11th.—Stronger wind and weather than yesterday, with heavy rains.

May 12th.—The Captain of the aforesaid vessel lands and shows us his three commissions, one from the King, one from His Majesty's mother, and one from Governor La Melleray of Nantes, which were politely declined, whilst at the same time he was given to understand that he might perhaps have many other commissions from other potentates, but that we did not like to place any confidence in those submitted by him, &c. However, at noon he and the

Lieutenant dined with the Commander, after a good and careful watch had been placed over everything, so that we might be safe from treachery, whilst at the same time arrangements were made that the men who daily came for water returned on board at night and did not remain on shore. Weather better.

May 13th.—Fine lovely weather. Six head of cattle, one calf and four sheep bartered from the Gorachouquas or tobacco thieves, the first trading transaction after the peace made with them and the Goringaiquas or Kaapmen. They were given a kind of large red beads instead, which they preferred to copper, and which had been lately received from home. They also took a great liking to the tobacco pipes with large bowls, also lately received, so that the small ones are left on our hands, which we shall endeavour to sell to the burghers in order to cause no loss to the Company, but on the other hand obtain some profit on them.

During the afternoon nine sheep were obtained from some of Oedaso's men, for which they received copper, beads and tobacco. Their principal message, however, was to request some tobacco for their Chief in exchange for a fat wether for the Commander, nominally as a present and an interchange of friendship. They were therefore presented with about 1 lb. of tobacco, half a dozen pipes and some beads, and treated with food and liquor, about 20 or 30 in number. But they went to sleep outside the fort in the huts of the Watermen, as they were not allowed to "drink" tobacco in the hall (*voorsael*) or light a fire, as it stood on a plank floor above a cellar, and these people during these cold nights cannot do without fire, being so poorly clad, &c.

May 14th.—Lovely weather like yesterday. The flute *Loenen* leaves with a S.E. breeze.

May 15th.—Same lovely weather. Towards evening Oedaso's men leave with all their presents, promising to bring in much cattle. For that reason they had been more royally treated with food and liquor three times daily during three whole days, which is rather an expense to the Company, and adds to the price of the cattle, but that would not matter so much if we could only get sufficient for our wants.

May 16th.—Dark cloudy weather in the morning. Westerly wind and rain.

May 17th to 19th.—Continuous wet and boisterous weather from the N.W. In consequence the French ship *La Marechal* was cast on shore during the night between Salt River and the redoubt Duynhoop having sailed to the beach with the foresail (? jib) before the wind. After his vessel (not stronger than a Biscayan sloop) had cut its masts and been knocked to pieces on the beach, and besides had previously lost three anchors, all that it possessed, the men were seen making rafts and continually pumping, keeping the spritsail up in order to reach the beach with the rising tide, not sideways, but with stem on. Orders were thereupon issued to those in the redoubt to observe who and what kind of people,

1660.

goods or arms, &c., were being saved. About noon they sent two notes on shore by means of a barrel praying earnestly for assistance, as they feared to be thrown on their side, and in that case to be unable to save their lives. Hence, as it was impossible to reach them by water, an old Biscayan sloop (whale or surf boat) was placed on a wagon and conveyed along the beach towards the vessel. Only three men were saved this day in the two trips which the boat was able to make, being drawn to and fro by means of ropes. Two others had swum on shore through the surf, and another was lying ill in a tavern, so that six had been saved, among them the Prussian (Pruysser) who was to relieve the Governor on Madagascar already mentioned. They requested spots on which to pitch tents for their people and the storage of the goods, &c. These were pointed out to them right in front of their ship, and under the protection of the redoubt Duin-hoop.

May 20th.—Fairly fine calm weather with a westerly breeze. Sixty-one Frenchmen landed from the wreck, among them the captain, the aforesaid lieutenant, the Bishop, and the three priests. The captain requested permission to hire the boats of the freemen, in order to endeavour to recover his anchors, and having discharged his vessel, to endeavour to float his ship again by means of them, if possible. In order not to appear discourteous this was granted as far as the permission would not interfere with our duty.

In the evening, after consultation, it was for good reasons deemed expedient to notify to them to-morrow, in courteous terms, through the Secretary, Hendrik Lacus, who speaks French well, that as they themselves have desired to know how and according to what they were to regulate themselves, with the promise to act accordingly, &c., that they would be pleased to surrender without delay to us the arms landed by them, for which we would give them a receipt, and which we would take care of. Also an exact list of their crew and their names, that we might know where each one was domiciled, so that if any one should wish to lodge with a burgher, he would inform the Secretary and obtain a written consent from him. That all the goods daily saved by them should be declared, in order to be registered, that we might know where they have stored it, and be able to make a search for the same in case of their complaining that any were missing. That if the officers or others wished to sell anything, they should first notify it to the Company that the matter might be properly attended to. That they were not to permit their men to go further than between the redoubt Duynhoop and the fisherman's house, where fresh water would be allowed them for their use, and that they would be allowed thus far to fish in the river and on the beach. And finally to accommodate themselves to everything reasonable that might from time to time be communicated to them, and especially to hold no public meetings anywhere for Roman worship by means of their priest, much less draw any of our people to the same, &c. The

burghers to be ordered on pain of heavy fines not to permit it in their houses, barns, or grounds.

May 21st.—Fair weather in the morning. The Commander makes a general inspection of the lands outside. A heavy rain in the afternoon, however, obliged him to return, and, passing along the beach, he saw the men of the French ship lying all about in a deplorable state, sheltering themselves from the rain in casks and under sails, without even an attempt made to form a tent of the same, the officers appearing as if they had lost their heads, and could not maintain proper authority over their men. One of the freemen's vessels had been on board, and brought on shore some goods of the Captain, Lieutenant and the Priests, according to a list kept of such things. The freemen reported that the men on board, including the mates, were drunk and under no control, and that they had accordingly told the Captain that they would not go on board again, as they threw everything down into the boat, and would in that way inevitably sink it, &c.

This having been communicated to the Frenchmen, they replied that they did not understand why they were to surrender their arms, as they were to obtain food with the same in the country, and that accordingly they could not be constrained to keep their people within defined limits; although they had been told that their arms would be restored to them uninjured, as soon as they got their vessel into deep water again, and that we would defend them against the natives whom we have under such subjection, that they must lay down their arms before approaching the watch-houses and come to the Fort without them, and regarding the limits fixed for their common people, that the reason was that they might by those means keep them in better discipline and subjection, as well as prevent any disputes between our and their people, that might occur beyond those limits, &c. However, we could not bring them to understand that they were to deliver their arms and remain within the prescribed limits.

The rest of the conditions they did not appear to object to, but Captain Veron expressed a wish to see the Secretary alone to-morrow morning at 8 o'clock, so that neither the Bishop nor the Lieutenant might hear him, as he was of the reformed religion, whilst the others were Papists, and that therefore they differed from each other in some matters.

The aforesaid Lieutenant had also said in Dutch: "There is no chance of getting our ship off, therefore I wish to go inland with my people to look for food; this we cannot do without arms," adding some more forcible and desperate expressions.

And as their ship is in no immediate danger of breaking up where it is lying, and the men accordingly are not in danger of their lives, it was ordered, in consequence of this violent reply, that until further orders neither our boats nor those of the freemen were to board the wreck or land any casks or goods, as the general direction had been entrusted to us, and the more so in as much as 81

1660.

persons had already landed, from whom we have nothing but trouble, &c.

During the night it commenced to blow very heavily from the S.S.E.

May 22nd.—Wind continuing. Witnessed great disobedience on the part of the French crew towards their officers, each one wishing to go wherever he pleased, and refusing to listen to orders, so that nothing was done that was required to shelter the goods.

In the forenoon the captain and the Prussian, Mons. Gelton, visited the Commander, and told him that they could not for any reason in the world understand why they were to deliver up their arms—the Prussian, who expressed himself in the strongest terms—saying that he intended, and would adhere to his intention to go inland with his people, and therefore did not desire to be deprived of their arms, besides adducing many arguments to show that his lord and master, as well as the king, would be too much affronted, so that he could not bring himself to do it, preferring to die rather, as our conduct towards them was not that of friends, but of enemies.

In all courtesy he was told in reply that such desperate words had not been expected from persons of quality, and that they would be pleased to understand the motives of those who, according to proofs already given in accommodating them and in the saving of their lives and property, had endeavoured to treat them not as friends but as brothers.

And as regarded their proceeding inland, and permitting their men to retain their arms, that these were two points in direct antagonism to the orders of our Lords and Masters, as this was not permitted even to their own servants, hence they were requested on these subjects to be pleased to make no further request.

And as they pointed out that they could not very well permit themselves to be disarmed, they were allowed six muskets and six sidearms for the chief officers, in order to keep their people under better control and store their goods with proper power and authority, our inspection being continued lest they should bring a larger quantity of arms on shore, which would be contrary to orders and beyond what we had undertaken to permit, &c.

The Prussian, not ceasing in desperate expressions, saying that his men must have their arms or that they would rather die, and that we must take care that it be not paid back in Holland, also that it was also impossible for him to tolerate it, he was civilly answered that it was impossible for us to act contrary to orders, and that therefore they should be pleased to be satisfied, as nothing but accommodation had been rendered them, and all friendly assistance offered and effectively rendered to enable them to save their goods, and that they would find us ready to assist them further on every occasion where they believed that they required such assistance, whenever the rendering of the same did not interfere with the service of the Company, or was not contrary to the orders of our Masters.

However, at noon the aforesaid Prussian and Bishop called at the gate of the Fort, and through the Secretary requested that the freemen's boat, which they had hired, and the Company's sloop lent to them, might again be given them to land their goods from the wreck, adding that after further consultation among themselves they had decided to regulate themselves regarding their arms according to our orders, and permit a regular examination of the boats' cargoes, that we might be sure that no arms would be landed which they did not intend to deliver to us. They therefore wished to see the Commander in the afternoon to speak to him. This was granted at once, as well as their request for 3 or 4 men to help them to launch the hired boat, and 30 or 40 slaves besides, to show them our readiness to assist them, &c. They were also told that it was not intended to confine their men to one definite spot, but merely to prevent them from going whithersoever their whims might direct them, and that accordingly they would be under more absolute control when required for storing their goods, but that they were to remain without arms or side-arms excepting six pieces intended for the head officers, as already mentioned. Of these six armed men two were permitted to go out and see whether they could not shoot any game, taking care, however, not to molest the natives, their cattle or goods, in any way, &c.

Captain Veron, walking alone with the Secretary, told him that he rejoiced (as the Lord God had been pleased to visit them with this misfortune) that he was among people of his own religion, for if he had been wrecked anywhere else, without doubt he and all his men would have been massacred by the Papists. He therefore requested that if possible his crew of 44 men might be taken into the Company's service as soon as they had stored their goods, as they were all of the Reformed Faith, and that he should say a kind word for them to the Commander, as they had been all engaged by him at Rochelle and were natives of the Island St. Martin, &c.

Towards evening the Captain, his second captain named Kirequadiou, the Bishop, Monsigneur Estienne, and Mons. Gelton, the intended successor of the Governor in Madagascar, came to say that after consultation they were prepared to accept our conditions and regulate themselves accordingly, acknowledging and fully understanding that they were not otherwise than fair. Even the Prussian joined in and requested us to forgive him his desperate threats of this morning, as they were the results, not of ill-feeling, but of sadness, as he had through the wreck been separated from his rulers, the ship having already burst asunder and the water flowing into and out of it, &c., and that they were disposed during their presence here to live amongst us as our sincere friends. A proper reply was given, and they were at the same time assured that they would find that our good intentions tended in every way for their relief and accommodation, and as a proof of this the Commander invited them to dinner on the morrow, which they accepted, and after having drunk a glass of wine and beer, they departed

1660.

apparently well satisfied and thankful for everything, to their hired lodgings in the "Stadts Herberg" (Town Tavern).

May 23rd (Sunday).—Fine lovely weather. The Bishop, second Captain and Prussian dine with the Commander. The Captain himself had proceeded on board in the boats of the freemen and landed a large quantity of arms and all their powder. Everything was properly received at the Fort and noted.

This day happened to be one of those on which all the militia (schuttersburghers under arms) turned out, and all that could be spared outside collected within the Fort. *According to the Sunday custom*, the men having paraded and each one of his own accord having personally cleaned and particularly brightened his weapons and dressed himself in his best, it was clearly seen that the French could not sufficiently admire the good order and the fine, well-developed, and healthy men so full of courage. Many of them came to offer themselves to the Company, who were civilly told first to obtain a letter of discharge and consent from their officers.

May 24th.—Full moon. Particularly fine, lovely weather. The Frenchmen hard at work landing as much of their goods as possible, we watching that no arms remained in their hands.

Resolution.—"Showing the pregnant reasons that induced us to enrol some of the Frenchmen into the service. The Commander refers to the trouble experienced from the Frenchmen since the *Marchal* went on shore. They were about 145 or 146 altogether, and much might be dreaded from them. Their ship has broken up and the men pay little deference to their officers, so that they may be tempted to take desperate steps, especially on account of want of food of which they are already complaining, hence some of them have already offered their services to the Company for food only. Council decides, in order to minimize the fear resulting from the presence of such a strong body of men, to enlist a large portion of the same, and to offer the officers to relieve them of as many men as they may not require for saving their cargo. These men may then be sent into the country unarmed to take the place of those kept here on their account; and prepare the ground where the bitter almond hedges are to be planted as a fence, sowing the same with the seeds of bitter almonds and other trees, until the arrival of ships from home, when they can be sent at once to Batavia, where men are always wanted. In the meanwhile the land intended for the proposed fence can be properly prepared, as on account of the want of ploughing oxen it will otherwise be impossible to do so this year, however highly necessary it be that it shall as soon as possible be so thickly and closely overgrown that no cattle can be driven through it. The principal object, however, remains, namely, to get under our authority as many men as we can fairly obtain with the consent of their officers, in order to be exposed to the least danger, especially if it be borne in mind that another French ship acted so treacherously, under the guise

of friendship to the West India Company, by surprising and plundering their fort and two laden flute ships at Cape Verde whilst under a Swedish commission; therefore, to guard against a similar danger, we are compelled at present to take many men away from the threshing floors, thus greatly hindering this necessary work, as well as recall many of the watchmen stationed outside to keep an eye on the Hottentoots, that they might guard the chief fortress of the Company here. All this having been carefully considered, a Resolution was adopted as proposed, the Council feeling assured that both the Directors and the High Government in India would approve of it, as a step taken in the best interests of the Company. It was also decided to grant passages to Batavia to such of the officers as might ask for the same on payment of such a sum as they might agree upon with the High Government there, we not being in a position or authorised to do so. . . .” (Signed as above).

The following warning was published yesterday afternoon, after the sermon:—“The Commander and Council notify that for weighty reasons they have deemed it necessary to give the following warning to the freemen at the fort and in the country as well as the Company’s servants, viz.: That no one shall detain or in any way render assistance to any of the men of the wrecked French vessel after sunset, that they may be the better under the control of their officers, who will thus be able more easily to save their goods and store them in tents between the redoubt Duynhoop and the fisher’s house at the river.

“No one shall accept any of them as a lodger before the Secretary has been informed of it, whose written consent must be first obtained; that their officers may as far as possible be maintained in their authority, as they have already suffered enough loss and inconvenience, and accordingly are in urgent need of all possible assistance.

“No one, however, shall permit in their houses or on their ground any other than the Reformed religion, and should a transgression of the order be discovered in the country or anywhere else it shall at once be reported to the Fiscal, who shall take such action as may be proper.

“Especially is every one ordered, should a Frenchman enter his house with fire or side arms, to notify it at once to the guard at the nearest watch-house or redoubt, who shall at once remove the same, and take charge of it till further order; those neglecting to comply with this order to be liable to be apprehended by the Fiscal and criminally proceeded against as the importance of the matter and the moment may require.” . . . (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, 22nd May, 1660. Promulgated 23rd May, 1660.

Arrival of Choro, the head chief of the Gorachouquas, with his brother Gakingh, bringing only three lean oxen and two cows, with a following of about 40 or 50 men, who, after the barter had been concluded, had also to be treated with food, brandy and

1660.

tobacco. They were, however, told with a smiling face that henceforth none of the ordinary people, but only the chiefs, would be treated, and those who brought cattle for sale, as it was rather expensive to do so when they came in such large numbers with so few cattle.

May 27th.—Steady thick rains, with a slight breeze from the N.W. The following notice affixed:—"Warning!—As at present the men of the wrecked French ship the *Marischal* are landing a considerable quantity of brandy, which they offer for sale to one person and another, the burghers shall, before buying, obtain a written permission and pay the duty enacted by the Company, that is, $\frac{3}{4}$ real of eight for each 'mingel' (quart), on pain of a fine of 100 reals for the buyer, as decreed ere this, whether sold in small or large quantities." (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck.

The stable intended for the outlying horsemen, in the open to check the Hottentoots and protect the lands of the freemen, and their cattle, being now fit for occupation, the following regulations were issued to the men:—

The Mounted Guard.

- (1) They shall especially take care that no Hottentoots are permitted to pass over their boundaries towards the freemen, but that all shall be directed to the watchhouse "Keert de Koe," and made to pass through the barrier there direct to the Fort, whether they have a freeman with them or not, as as yet they must not be permitted to call there (the Ruyter stal). Therefore the Corporal of the Mounted Guard shall be at liberty to search the houses of the freemen, should he in any way suspect that Hottentoots have been harboured or hidden in any of them, whom if discovered he shall bind and bring to the Fort, as they only try to obtain access to the freemen for the purpose of spying out the situation in order the better to steal the cattle, &c.
- (2) They shall not permit any cattle or sheep of the freemen to be depastured beyond the boundaries of the "Ruyter wacht," and should they see any, at once drive them inside, and claim from the owner $\frac{1}{4}$ real for every head of cattle thus depastured beyond the limits.
- (3) That should they find any cattle being chased, they shall at once proceed thither, and finding that it is being caused by Hottentoots, without hesitation pursue them as enemies and endeavour to subdue them, in order to recover the cattle and if possible return them to the owners.
- (4) That therefore they shall pay close attention to the signals of the watchhouse "Houdt den Bul" and at once despatch 4 horsemen thither, to see what is the matter and do as above required; the rest in the meanwhile remaining at the stables until necessity requires

their presence, which will be notified to them by a cannon shot, to be fired by those at "Houdt den Bul" from the piece mounted there, thus at the same time warning the freemen and the neighbourhood to drive back their cattle.

- (5) As soon as they observe anything wrong on the said farms they shall continually let their flag be hoisted and pulled down again, and those at "Keert de Koe," "Kyck Uyt" and "Duynhoop" shall do the same thing, and should these two watchhouses be the first to signalize as a sign of disturbance, the said horsemen shall, as mentioned in the case of "Houdt den Bul" proceed thither, at which signal the Company's horsemen, infantry and burghers of the fort and from every direction, shall join them without delay for their assistance.

Additional orders for the watchhouses "Keert de Koe," "Kyck Uyt" and the redoubt "Duynhoop."

- (1) That as soon as they see the flag of the mounted men hoisted up and down they shall at once do the same, and likewise when they observe any danger, as a warning to the fort, in accordance with the regulations framed on this head.
- (2) That so long as the French are here, a man from "Keert de Koe" shall always conduct to the Fort Hottentoots that may pass through with cattle or sheep, and keep the French away from them. Should, however, they have no cattle with them this will not be necessary.
- (3) They shall above all not permit any French, English or Hottentoots to enter the watchhouses, but immediately close the doors should any French or other foreigners make their appearance there, and proceed to the battlements under arms, and civilly refuse them entrance, so long as they do not use violence; but should they endeavour to do so you shall defend your positions as brave soldiers, without revealing your strength.

May 28th and 29th.—Dirty, wet rainy weather, with a N.W. wind.

May 30th and 31st (Sunday 30th).—Same weather.

June 1st to 3rd.—Same wind and weather.

June 4th.—The weather quieting down, and the sky becoming clearer.

June 5.—*Resolution*.—"The Captain of the *Marischal*, Mons. Veron, the Governor-designate of the fort in St. Augustine Bay, Mons. Gelton, and the Bishop, Mons. Estienne, request the Commander and Council to take some of their men into the Company's service, as they have too many, being prepared to relieve them of their oath, seeing that their ship is a thorough wreck, and all their bread has been wetted, so that they cannot any longer feed such a large number; besides there were too many for the work required

to be done, as regards the storing of the goods, &c. The Council, bearing in mind the friendly disposition of our masters towards our neighbouring allies and friends, especially to the master of the said officers, Mons. La Milleray, and their desire to render them assistance (which we have also done from the first moment after the stranding of their vessel), decides to comply with their request, and to accept all who may offer themselves on the usual terms, provided that they work for their pay as long as they are here and until they can be sent on to India for employment there, &c.

And as Captain Veron and Mons. Gelton further submitted that they intended to employ their sailors to save their goods, but that the mates and other officers were rather backward in doing their duty, and that he (the Captain) was extremely anxious to save all the goods and guns for his master, Mons. La Milleray, and after that to endeavour to repair the vessel and again float her, we also agreed to their request to assist them with our authority and to admonish the aforesaid officers to do their duty. They were therefore summoned before the Council, and told how readily we rendered them assistance as allies and especially as servants of their Lord and Master, Mons. Marisheal de la Milleray, from the moment of the stranding of their vessel, in the first place by conveying a boat in a wagon along the beach to where their vessel lay, that the ship's company might be rescued, as no boat could reach the wreck by sea; and how after that they were provided with a vessel and a row boat hired from the freemen, from which the deck had been removed that their goods might be landed as long as the weather remained favourable, which vessels would otherwise have been employed by the freemen on the islands for the Company's convenience to transport hither many needed articles, all which, merely to help them, we had left at a standstill and neglected.

That, however, it appeared to us that the inferior officers were neglecting their duty in saving the cargo, rendering no assistance to the Captain; that the freemen are bitterly complaining of their unorderedly conduct and afraid to board the wreck with their vessel, as the cases, casks, &c., were not lowered in a proper manner with ropes, &c., but just thrown down into the boat, so that not only the goods but the vessel itself was very much damaged and shattered.

That therefore they were to improve all this, and behave properly and diligently under their officers, and assist them to the utmost, to see whether the empty vessel cannot again be floated. And if this be found impossible after proper investigation they would be furnished with a passage to India or Europe, as they may desire, without causing any loss to the Company, but not before they have submitted a written declaration, signed by them all, that with all the assistance we could render and the means employed by them they had found no chance of refloating the ship, which they had consequently been obliged to abandon as a wreck, as we believe

this to be the proper course, that we may at all times prove to our superiors that we have done our duty and rendered every assistance; and in order further to show our diligence, care shall be taken that not one of them shall be taken into the service or sent on to Batavia who is not favourably mentioned by their Captain and officers.

Nor shall they be permitted to engage themselves to private persons, or stow themselves away in any of the Company's vessels.

They were therefore to make haste, for in idling away their time, they would naturally consume their victuals, but that they would not be able to obtain a further supply from any of the Company's ships, as everything is required in India. Moreover the Company was already suffering sufficient inconvenience on account of the extra consumption caused by those already taken into the service, in order to relieve the Captain. For neither we, nor any of the outward bound ships of the Company would be prepared for the consequences of a foreign vessel wrecking here, as the ships bring out as many men as are required in India, and food in proportion, so that they were to understand that everything had been done merely to accommodate them, and that we shall further endeavour to render them all possible assistance, but that they on their side were likewise to do their best. All this we desired to do, that their master, Mons. La Melleray, should have no cause for complaint, especially in this that we had prevented his men from saving his goods, but on the contrary, that he might be able to see as clearly as the sun, that in consideration of the friendship between allies, we had endeavoured in every possible manner to assist them, as if they were our own brothers, &c.

We therefore held ourselves irresponsible for all damage and loss which might result from the want of diligence among the inferior officers—the diligence of Captain Veron appearing in everything—and that therefore they were to take care to do their best to render him assistance, that everything possible might be saved for their master, as it should be.

This address being ended, the said inferior officers replied that they would do their very best, &c.—and thereupon left. The Council then proceeded to enroll the discharged French soldiers, 35 of whom were entered as soldiers in the service, at seven, eight and nine guilders per month, with $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. of tobacco for each, whilst clothing was served out to the naked among them.

Thus done in the Fort the Good Hope *dato ut supra*.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK,
R. DE MAN,
ABR. GABBEMA,
P. EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

The weather was fine and lovely.

June 6th (Sunday).—Same weather. Note.—The above Resolution has been thus purposely extended, and the assistance rendered

1660.
—

pointedly referred to, that it may serve to refute contrary prattle and such claims as Mons. La Melleray may at any time be inclined to lay against the Company. Everything has therefore been minuted in detail, to be used by the Directors whenever required.

And to prevent the men from injuring the vessel, the captain and officers were admonished to take care that nothing was removed from it, as Mons. La Melleray might perhaps at any moment request them to refloat it. This they promised.

This admonition was merely given to induce them to leave the wreck intact, which might otherwise be hacked to pieces, whilst it might still be found useful in other ways, &c.

June 7th and 8th (New Moon 7th).—Fine weather. The free hunters shot a lioness, and those at the Company's "Schoor" two wolves, for which they were paid the premiums fixed by Mr. van Goens, in order to keep them zealous in the destruction of all kinds of injurious wild animals, which are doing much damage among the tame cattle.

June 9th.—Again somewhat boisterous weather with a N.W. wind. Arrival at sunset of the *Vogel Phenix*, skipper Jan Lucasz Meeuw and junior merchant Albertus Oosterwyk. She also had on board the Rev. Gerardus van Holckenburgh, and had left the Goeree on the 13th March with 273 men, 2 of whom were drowned and one died.

June 10th and 11th.—Loose wet weather. Wind as above.

June 12th.—Fine, lovely calm weather. N.W. breeze.

June 13th (Sunday).—Lovely weather. Rev. Gerardus Holckenburgh administers the Holy Sacrament, and many Protestant (Gereformeerde) Frenchmen were in the church; Captain Veron and many of his men partook of the Sacrament after the minister had, at the conclusion of his sermon, baptized two children, viz., one of the free tailor Hendrik van Surwarden, named Katrina, and the other of the free tailor Elvert Dirksen, named Dirk.

June 14th.—Wind southerly. Arrival of the *Nagelboom* from Hoorn; skipper Dirk Cornelisz de Beer and junior merchant Samuel Lotz. Had left the Texel on the 10th March with 299 men, of whom only three had died; the rest were all well, though slightly suffering from scurvy. Refreshments sent on board at once.

June 15th.—Dry S.S.E. wind. Two of the free Saldanha traders arrive overland, reporting that their vessel, the *Zee Leeuw*, had been thrown on the rocks at Marcus Island, and had been much damaged. They asked for two screwjacks, which they intended to convey thither in the other boat, the *Penguin*, now employed by the French, in order to endeavour to refloat the craft. They also asked for other articles, all which were granted.

June 16th.—Same wind and weather. At the request of the Bishop and the officers of the French ship *Marichal*, the Commander and skipper of the *Phenix* and the *Nagelboom* proceeded on board, to see whether it would be possible to refloat

her, but she was found so much broken that the said skippers and carpenters deemed it impossible. The following declaration was therefore given to the Bishop and the officers :—

1660.

“16th June, 1660.

“The undersigned skippers of the *Phenix* and *Nagelboom* declare that we went on board the French ship with two ship’s carpenters to examine her, in the presence of Commander J. v. Riebeeck, the Bishop, and the officers on board ; that we declare on our word of honour, which we are ready, if necessary, to confirm by oath, that the said vessel has been so injured below on the port side and in different other places, that we deem it impossible to refloat her or draw her higher up on the beach to get her on her side and reach the broken places, as proposed by Captain Veron. She would at once sink in deep water, and is at present too much fixed in the sand to be able to be moved.”

June 17th and 18th.—Fine, lovely weather. The *Phenix* will take with her 58 of the French crew to Batavia.

June 19th.—N.W. breeze. Commander summons the officers of the *Phenix* to meet his Council on board the *Nagelboom* to enquire into certain disputes between the junior merchant and the sergeant of that vessel, as well as between the skipper and the said junior merchant Lotz. Decided to remove the sergeant, named Thomas Smitz, to the *Phenix*, the one on the *Phenix* taking his place on the *Nagelboom*. Two adelborsten, named Adriaan Decker and Johannes Heemskereck, who had a part in this trouble, were disembarked in order to be sent on to Batavia in other vessels. The skipper and junior merchant were finally advised to keep good friends during the rest of the voyage, and referred to the orders of the Lords Masters on the subject, some of which were plainly interpreted to them. (Signed) on board the *Nagelboom*, &c., by J. v. Riebeeck, Jan Lucasz Meeuwen, R. de Man, A. van Oosterwyck, P. Everaerts, H. Lacus, Secretary.

During the night a very cold S.S.E. wind blew, so that the *Phenix* got safely away.

June 21st and 22nd.—Fine, lovely weather. The wind variable.

June 23rd—Cloudy weather. Westerly breeze. The following warning published :—“As, notwithstanding the peace concluded with the natives, it is sufficiently known that whenever they see a chance they do not refrain to rob us of our cattle wherever they can do so, everyone, whether servant of the Company or freeman, is warned hereby expressly that as soon as he perceives the signals of alarm, namely, the constant pulling up and down of the flags on the guard houses, at once to drive his cattle into the nearest kraal, and with his arms proceed to the place of danger for the assistance of our people and the hurt of the marauding enemy.” (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck.

The *Nagelboom* leaves at noon with 58 Frenchmen on board, also one woman and child belonging to the *Marischal*. Full moon.

1660.

—

June 24th.—Good weather and wind like yesterday. The above-mentioned warning was duly affixed, and the instructions for the watchhouses and outlying horsemen renewed, as these natives, notwithstanding the peace made with them, dare not be trusted out of sight. Moreover, the great carelessness displayed by our people makes it necessary to stir them up and urge them to do their duty.

During the afternoon, while the Commander was out inspecting the Company's plantations, it began to rain heavily, so that he was obliged to return wet and dirty without having accomplished his object.

June 25th and 26th.—Fine weather and wind as before. The Commander resumed his tour of inspection, and found that almost all had the seed into their old lands, whilst others were preparing new plots for wheat and rye to be sown next season.

June 27th (Sunday).—Clear weather in the morning, with cold south south-east winds.

June 28th.—Cloudy sky. N.W. wind. The *Loenen* returns between 7 and 8 in the morning. She had been despatched on the 15th May last to search for the island St. Helena Nova, which, however, could not be found. Hence she returned, and had left the latitude of old St. Helena on the third, thus making the passage in 25 days.

Her officers were at once instructed to fish for the three anchors of the *Marischal*, in order to prevent accidents to other vessels, the reward being according to the tariff fixed by the Hon. Sterthenius, $\frac{1}{4}$ of the value of the iron, calculated, according to the valuation of our Lords Masters, at £10 per 100lbs.

June 29th and 30th.—The same rains and N.W. breezes. Towards evening 10 of Oedaso's men arrived with only one ox and eight sheep. The former was obtained from them for beads and tobacco, and the latter for pipes and tobacco. They would not have any copper for them, but preferred a good entertainment in the form of eating and drinking, &c. This was complied with in order to make them more accustomed to us, though for some days back the sudden departure of Herry, Doman, and all the Hottentoots makes us dread that there must be some consultation among them, as the Caapmen named Gorichaiquas, who had approached near unto us, had again retired after the departure of the *Phenix* and *Nagelboom*, and were now encamped near Oedaso, whilst the tobacco thieves, called Gorachoquas, were in the company of Guonnomoa, Oedaso's other or second chief of the Cochoquas. Eva, at the same time, also insists on accompanying these few men of Oedaso in order to visit her sister. Whether this sister-visiting is merely a pretext to get away, and whether there is something brewing, is difficult to guess, hence we have to keep careful watch, and therefore take the necessary precautions in every direction. A watchful eye, it seems, must continually be kept on these natives.

July 1st.—Dirty, rainy, and fairly stiff windy weather, like yesterday and the day before.

July 2nd and 3rd.—No entries.

July 4th (Sunday). — Fine, lovely weather, and the wind variable. Discovered to-day, as often before, that the free burgher Herman Remajenne, of Cologne, does not hesitate, contrary to all orders of the Seventeen and the placaten, secretly to carry on a trade in cattle with the natives, bringing the animals to his homestead surreptitiously during the dark hours, and, instead of using the same for breeding purposes, killing from 12 to 15 sheep and from 2 to 3 oxen at one and the same time, and selling the meat to the burghers and the ships, as well as the Frenchmen that are still here, and as we have been informed that he will return this night once more with cattle and sheep from the camp of the Gorachouquas, the sergeant and some soldiers were sent after dark to his house to watch it, and saw him return about 12 or 1 o'clock in company of his comrade Hans Bas, of Angel, with one ox, six sheep, and a lamb bartered from the Gorachouquas. Three Hottentoots were driving the animals. For various reasons visiting the Hottentoots has been forbidden. Hence Remajenne, the three Hottentoots named Heyde, Nantisa, and Oedimackka were brought to the fort, and the Hottentoots declared that they had never been inclined, and that their chiefs had never given their consent, to pass through the forbidden places to the freemen's homesteads, or to sell any cattle to the freemen. That, however, Remajenne always visited them, and when he was told that their chiefs had agreed with the Commander to sell cattle nowhere else than at the fort, he had replied that that did not matter much, as the Commander wished to have everything for himself, and so forth.

For a considerable time, he had on various occasions indirectly and secretly carried on the trade, killing the cattle immediately after his return home, selling the meat to the freemen in the country and even to the residents in the fort, as well as to the ships that called here, bartering the meat for salt meat, pork, bread, cheese, and especially tobacco and copper, which he used for keeping his trade going. Thus he had obtained from time to time between four or five hundred sheep, employing the narrators to carry the slaughtered meat before him in bags, and that they did this only lately, in the case of the *Nagelboom* and *Phoenix*, which they mentioned; yea! not so long ago he had the meat of about 10 sheep on his wagons under the firewood, in order to sell it to the burghers at the fort as well as to the ships. They also mentioned the names of several persons who had paid him for the meat in their presence.

They also said that he knew how to make small copper chains, with which he paid for the cattle, giving as much for one head as the Commander gave for five or six oxen or sheep.

One of these chainlets Harmen took from his pocket and gave to the Commander, acknowledging that about three weeks ago when they had shot the young rhinoceros, he and the freemen Jan de

1860.

Wiltshut (the hunter), Jacob Cloeten and Caspar Brinkman, had been there and bartered for himself 8, for Cloeten 5, and for Jan Wiltshut 4 sheep; Brinkman, however, did not obtain anything then, though sometime previously he did. He had obtained 2 oxen, which he had immediately killed and sold. The French had obtained a portion, but how much they could not tell.

During the war last year Harmen had with these Hottentoots twice visited the Caapmen, and managed to obtain sheep from them and hold secret intercourse with them.

To this narrative the three aforesaid Hottentoots adhered, adding that Harmen had taught them to fire a musket, as was shown in the case of the rhinoceros, which Harmen, firing first, missed, whilst one of them hit it with a carbine shot, Jacob Cloeten smashing its leg with a discharge from his musket.

Harmen had also told them that he would have been willing before the war to have taught them how to injure us in the most effective manner, &c.

It therefore appears that he knew that during the war a troop of Hottentoots had for a long while lain in ambush among the bushes behind the houses of Steven and Rosendaël, in order to seize the Commander when he went out. He, however, declares that he had only heard of it from the Hottentoots after the peace had been renewed.

Many also affirm that during the war he could have shot down Doman and three or four others on various occasions, if he had only wished to do so. But this he expressly denies.

On the other hand, it was shown that when during those troublesome times the sergeant and a number of men (among them Harmen) were lying in wait for the enemy, who were approaching finely to run into the trap, he showed himself to them, thus warning them, and as much as made them run, so that the Company lost an opportunity of destroying at least 50 or 60 of them, and thus creating a wholesome dread among them, &c.

He had also been heard to say that the mounted guard was certainly useful for the protection of their cattle, but was too much in the way to enable them to exercise their private cattle trade. It likewise prevented the Hottentoots from free communication with the freemen. That therefore the natives had decided to destroy it in the best manner possible, men, horses and all. This he acknowledges having heard, though he was not certain of it. It, however, appears that he sometimes has some knowledge of the secret designs of these natives but never reveals them.

He also had much knowledge of the designs of the conspirators last year on the Fort and the yacht *Erasmus*, the said conspirators having received the best assistance from him and frequented his house the most, obtaining most of their provisions from him. He also knew when the play was to begin at the Redoubt "Coornhoop," for about noon of that Sunday, when towards evening we had secured the chief conspirator—and the attack was to be made that

night—he had said to some persons, “To-night something wonderful will occur near the Redoubt,” &c.

All these matters being very suspicious and contrary to the direct orders of the Company regarding private cattle barter, the burgher Councillors were summoned to attend the meeting next Saturday, and assist in the discussion of the case.

The Hottentots were set at liberty and warned to keep away from the forbidden paths, as misfortune might easily overwhelm them, for which they would have to blame themselves only, after having been again warned, our people having been instructed to kill them if found there, and if caught alive, that they would never again be set at liberty. Hence it would be better for them to bring their cattle direct to the Fort where they could trade in peace.

They replied “Yes, this is good; but the Commander does not want old or lean animals, whilst the freemen are not so particular on this point, as they at once kill them, besides giving for them as much as, and whatever we like for them, even iron.” This is an article which it is desirable to keep out of their hands, as they only make assegays and other instruments of war out of it. They were, however, told that everything could be obtained in abundance at the Fort. They replied that they could sell their lean and old animals much better to the freemen than to us, as already mentioned, but that henceforth they would no longer expose themselves to danger, but adhere to the agreements made with their chiefs. Moreover they would not have done what they did had Harmen not personally invited them to his house, &c. All which goes to prove that Harmen has generally been the great obstacle in the Company’s cattle trade. The Hottentots also mentioned that Harmen and others had certainly bought of them meat of animals that had died, which meat they (the Hottentots) had carried to their Harman’s and others homesteads, and that the same price had been given for it. The buyers, however, did not know that the meat was that of diseased animals. All this shows how the cattle trade has suffered, so that stockbreeding cannot prosper. For these objects the Company is incurring such a heavy expenditure here, whilst its intentions are frustrated by those whom “ex caritate” it has helped on their legs, and whose mouths it still keeps open at its own cost and on credit.

There are no more than 90 sheep here at present. Yesterday the second sheep during the period of two months was slaughtered by order of the Commander, and for the use of the officials. This was done to save as many as possible for the ships, for during a very long time not eighteen sheep were offered for sale at the fort, the result evidently of Harmen’s private ventures, to say nothing of his frequent conversations with the Hottentots in their camp, which are certainly of no advantage to the Company or the public.

July 6th.—Fine lovely weather. The *Loenen* still busy fishing for the anchors of the French vessel, that other vessels anchor-

1660.

ing here may not have their cables damaged by them. None found as yet, though the French mate pointed out the place, he being also on board.

July 7th.—Same fine weather.

July 8th to 10th.—Same fine weather. The *Loenen*, however, still unsuccessful in her search. Her skipper accordingly summoned to the Council Board, when the following *Resolution* was adopted:—"That, as the *Loenen* has not succeeded in recovering the lost anchors, and her officers have declared that after a search of 6 or 7 days they had found nothing, and it is not likely that anything will be found at present on account of the quantity of seaweed and sand which have been washed into the bay during the N.W. gales, and will not be washed out again before the S.E. season, it was decided to send the vessel at once to Batavia, with the hope that the galiot *The Parkiet*, intended for this place, will soon arrive from home, and be able to continue the search.

The following promotions were made:—Claas Lambertz, of Aelsmeer, arrived on the 22nd March, 1659, as arquebusier in the *Princess Royal*, since employed as cook for the Company's slaves, and baker of the ration loaves for the garrison; both appointments confirmed with f18 per month.

Pieter Jansz Sampus, of Leyden, arrived on the 13th March, 1658, as sailor in the *Wapen van Holland*, being as able as a full-grown man, and having since his presence on Robben Island tended the sheep and pigs, and according to the superintendent did good service, receives an increase of f4 to his original pay of f5 per month. . . . (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, &c.

At this same meeting it was decided to fine Harmen Remajenne the sum of 20 reals, for his illicit cattle traffic, and to confiscate for the benefit of the Company the six sheep and one ox lately bartered by him. The other freemen, though they had a hand in the business, were declared not guilty, because they had been seduced by Harmen, though they were warned henceforth to beware, as they would not be let off so easily next time.

Some disputes between a few of the burghers were also settled, and the meeting was adjourned until Saturday.

The free Saldanha traders return from that Bay and bring with them their vessel which had been wrecked there (see journal 15th June), three half aums of train oil and ten sheep bartered from the Chariguriquas, who have now gone inland, and only beachrangers were at present at the Bay, so that it will be useless to despatch the *Loenen* thither for cattle. She will therefore be sent to Batavia.

July 12th.—Same weather. The Commander goes out and arranges for the planting of bitter almond and other trees, on the line of the projected defences, in order to enclose the area of which the Company has taken possession, and to create a barrier to prevent the Hottentots from lifting the cattle.

July 13th.—Calm weather. The Kloof watchmen report a ship under the land, becalmed.

July 14th.—Cloudy N.W. weather. Arrival in the afternoon of the *Muscaat Boom*. She had left the *Vlie* on the 8th March in company of the galiot the *Parkiet*. Her skipper is Jan Harmans of Amsterdam, and her junior merchant Jacob van Dam. She has also on board the Rev. François Caron, and 299 men, 16 of whom had died; the rest were more or less suffering from scurvy. The galiot had parted company from her under the line.

The *Loenen* leaves this evening.

July 15th.—Calm weather. This day being the weekly sermon day, the above-mentioned minister preached in the Fort, and baptized a child of the sick visitor Pieter van der Stael, with the name of Antonia.

July 16th.—S.S.-East breeze in the morning. The *Loenen* finally gets away.

July 17th.—Lovely calm weather. One of the freemen's vessels proceeds to Saldanha Bay, and *Het Schapenjachtjen* to Robben Island, with 30 young rams to be castrated there and made fat.

July 18th (Sunday).—Fine weather. Westerly breeze, with rain in the afternoon. The freemen's boat returns from Dassen Island, and *Het Schapenjachtjen* from Robben Island. The latter brought some sheep manure for the gardens here.

After the sermon a child of the free agriculturist, Thielman Hendricks, was baptized by the aforesaid minister, and named Jan Netgen.

July 19th to 21st.—Westerly wind, and such heavy rains as have not fallen here since the Company took possession; consequently many private as well as the Company's gardens were flooded, and portions of the seeds sown, washed away.

July 22nd.—Full moon. Dry stiff S.S.E. winds. Arrival overland about dusk and from Hout Bay of the junior mate and two men of the galiot *Parkiet*, which had taken refuge in that bay from the N.W. storm. They brought the following letter:—To Commander Riebeeck, &c. "Greeting. Arrived here on the 20th. During the night of the 19th we were overtaken by a N.W. storm below the Lion Mountain, when about half a league from shore, and were obliged to run into Hout Bay. It was dark misty weather; we were on a lee shore, and had a very unmanageable vessel. We send you our letters by bearer, &c." (Signed) Isbrant v. Bancke.

July 23rd.—The following reply was sent him overland:—"Received yours of the 22nd. You must do your best to reach this without delay, that we may consult with the officers of the *Muscaat Boom* how best to mend the shortcomings of your vessel. Should you be detained by adverse winds you should take in some stone, as the lead on board must be sent on to Batavia by first vessel, if possible by the *Muscaat Boom*, which will leave on Monday or Tuesday. As your men are very tired, this is brought you by the land surveyor and three other persons, whom you may employ to help you should you require it. . . ." (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, Abr. Gabbema.

1660.

As yesterday, so also to-day, two advance messengers arrived from the Chainouquas, a large tribe possessing numerous cattle, bringing the news that their lord was coming down in order to sell us a large quantity of cattle, and as these fellows' object was merely to get something, they were treated with food, brandy, tobacco, &c., the Caapmen joining them as usual as brokers for the sake of the good cheer.

July 24th.—Fine, lovely weather.

July 25th (Sunday).—Same weather.

July 26th and 27th.—Same weather. Westerly breeze. The *Parkiet* arrives in the roadstead with 21 men, all suffering from scurvy. Had called at the island St. Vincent, where they found but little refreshment and very bad water, which made it urgently necessary for her to reach the Cape without delay.

July 28th to 30th.—The *Muscaat Boom* leaves with a S.E. breeze, leaving 11 sick behind, and taking instead 9 healthy and 6 Frenchmen.

July 31st.—A S.S.E. breeze on the other side of the Bay, with beautiful, lovely sunshiny weather.

August 1st (Sunday).—Grey sky and variable wind. Forty of Oedasea's people arrive with 9 cattle and 16 sheep, bought as follows:—

8 oxen for beads	} and tobacco	} and pipes.
1 do for copper		
7 sheep for copper		
9 do for tobacco alone		

They were, however, according to custom to be treated with brandy, arrack, bread, &c., which raised the price of the animals obtained. They reported that Oedasea's wife, Eva's sister, was dead. Eva, living in the Commander's house, showed great grief.

August 2nd to 4th.—Fine lovely weather. Some of the Chainouquas arrive towards evening, whom for some time now, and especially on the 23rd last, the Caapmen or Goringhaiquas and others had described as on the way to us with such a quantity of cattle, that we would not have enough merchandise to buy them. The beginning, however, does not promise large results, as they only brought 11 head of cattle, of which 4 were bartered for copper, tobacco and pipes; and the other 7 for beads, tobacco and pipes.

They were also treated with food and drink in order to attract them the more, as they made us hope that they would come down daily with more. They had brought these 11 animals as a trial, for, as has often appeared to us, they bring lean things belonging to the Caapmen which they have taken in exchange for their better conditioned cattle, for they—the Caapmen—know how to manage it that the natives coming from the interior first visit their encampments before they reach the Fort. Thus they collect very fine cattle and pass on to us their own old and worn-out refuse, which for various reasons, especially in these delicate times, is not taken notice of, but looked at with kindly eyes.

August 5th.—The same lovely weather.

August 6th and 7th.—The same fine weather. The *Schape-n-jachtje* leaves for Robben Island with the following note to Otto Jansz: "We send you 27 young rams to be castrated and fattened, also some old butter. You must send over your cans for the ink. You also receive half a leagner and two half aums of hog's wash, a cask of bran and a cask of biscuit crumbs for the sick pig and the sows that have young ones. You must use the whole economically, as we cannot always collect so much. Let us know in return how many young and old sows, boars, sucking pigs, wethers, rams and ewes there are. The half aums and all casks with iron hoops must always be returned at once.

"We also send you ten rooted vines to be planted on the N.W. end of the stable and the house. Some may also be planted in the garden.

"You also receive some vine branches to be cut into slips with five eyes each; three of which are to be underground, and two above. If the ground be properly prepared and manured, they will certainly grow. Some you are to plant between the rooted ones at the stable and the house, the rooted plants being blue and the unrooted white grapes.

"The sloop accompanies the little yacht in order to be used for landing the manure, she can be hauled to and from the shore with a line and kept afloat, as our men are accustomed to carry manure to it up to their necks in water. We believe that this can be done, and therefore must be done.

"When the *Parkiet* has been repaired, I shall very likely come over and see how you are doing.

"Mind that you light the beacon fires when ships are in sight towards evening; and remain greeted by your friend. In the Fort the Good Hope, the 7th August, 1660." (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck.

This being the appointed court day some questions which had arisen among the burghers were settled in the presence of the free burgher councillors. Others were civilly corrected for faults committed, and a few of the Company's servants tried by the Council of the Fort.

August 8th.—Dark grey weather; N.W. breeze. Between 9 and 10 in the evening Corporal Elias Giers and his horse were drowned in the Fish River not two musket shots away from the watchhouse "Keert de Koe." He was rather intoxicated, but we lost a gallant soldier, and in the horse about 200 reals, as she was the best Cape mare and with foal. The horses trained under the saddle are greatly dreaded by the natives, in consequence of the wonders done by them, in their eyes.

August 9th.—Heavy rains.

August 10th.—Heavy rains still falling. Nothing like them has fallen this season.

August 11th.—Fine, clear lovely sunshiny weather.

1660

—

August 12th.—Stiff N.W. winds with rains. *Resolution of Council*.:—"The officers of the galiot the *Parkiet* having asked for the premium ordered in the "Articul brief," to be paid out to the officers of a vessel after a speedy voyage to India, and the vessel being destined to remain here, and, therefore unable to proceed to India, it was decided to pay them two-thirds of the reward, that is: f400, the more so, as they will always be employed in dangerous waters, which the whole world dreads. Had they been able to proceed further, they would have had about seven weeks to complete the voyage to India, the time usually taken. Moreover, as the vessel was badly ballasted, great care had to be taken to keep her afloat, all which retarded the voyage. This was also seen when, within sight of land, she was obliged to run into Hout Bay to escape the heavy seas. This fault it is intended to remedy, and Council adopts the suggestions of the officers and ships' carpenters of the *Muskaat Boom*. The wood required for the purpose to be obtained from the free sawyer Leendert Cornelisz: of Zevenhuysen, who shall at once prepare it, that we may have the use of the vessel as soon as possible . . ." (Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

R. DE MAN.

ISEBRANT VAN BANKE.

ABR: GABBEMA.

P. DANIELSZ: COOCKER.

P. EVERAERTS.

H. LACUS, Secretary.

August 13th.—Same stormy weather, with stiff N.W. winds.

August 14th.—Same weather.

August 15th.—Weather abating and becoming fine. In the evening, those on Robben Island lit the beacon fire; and therefore on August 16th, it being lovely weather, a boat was sent thither to enquire the reason. On its return, it brought the news that the storm had cast the *Schapenjachtje* ashore there, that one of her sides was completely smashed, but as she had been thrown high up, there was a possibility of repairing her.

August 17th to 20th.—Fine lovely clear weather. Nothing particular occurred, only we are daily busy repairing the walls of the Fort (which on account of the heavy rains had been collapsing); as well as deepening and widening the canal, and laying a dam wall below the "Reyger" point in the river, to stop the water and lead it round the Fort, in accordance with the first orders given by the Directors to Mr. van Riebeeck in 1651, at his departure from the Fatherland, and also to draw off this water, which stands very deep, by means of pipes and cocks from the said dam into the casks, for the great comfort and convenience of the men of the passing ships; all in accordance with the plan submitted by the Commander, in March last, to the Hon: Commissioner Sterthenius, and his positive orders on the subject.

In the afternoon it began to blow heavily again from the N.W., with heavy rains during the night.

August 21st.—Full moon. Stormy weather as before.

August 22nd.—Same weather, with rain and hail.

August 23rd.—The weather abating towards evening, some Chainouquas and Cochouquas, conducted by some of the chief Goringhaiquas or Kaapmen, arrived with a fair number of cattle and sheep.

August 24th.—Fine weather. Bartered from the Chainouquas 36 head of cattle, and from the Cochouquas 14 ditto, besides 43 sheep, viz. :—

35 mostly lean old cows,	{	For copper beads, tobacco and pipes, as well as a fore-and-after entertainment on bread, rice and brandy, besides some small presents to the chief men.
5 ditto old,		
8 fairly young oxen, and		
2 sucking calves,		

During the night it began to blow from the N.W., with rain and hail.

August 25th and 26th.—Same weather.

Resolution of the Council (26th August) :—"As in consequence of the extraordinarily heavy rains the earlier built portions of the walls of the fort, thrown up without timber or fencing, have almost all collapsed; as this entails heavy work on the men, which will continue some time, and as the widening of the canals and the making of two strong dams below the point "Reyger," have been taken in hand, that in accordance with the orders of Mr. Sterthenius, based on our plans, the men of the ships may more conveniently and without waste or the breaking of casks, obtain pure, clean and filtered water; and in accordance with the orders of the Directors to Commander Van Riebeeck to collect and lead the water into the canals of the fort, and to have all this work done with the least labour and expense; it was decided by the Council, in consideration of the heaviness of all this work, and of the necessity at the same time of performing guard duty and occupying the posts, to divide the work into sections, that it might the sooner be completed, and in order to encourage the men, to give them whenever a section is completed, that is, those only who work at the walls and canals, a cask of the best brewed beer and a rich dinner or "kroeg," as the common people call it, and when everything is completed to give each one separately, in addition to his ordinary allowance, a month's wages in cash on account, besides a general reward to all collectively of f200, two warm meals daily to every one, and at noon meat, fish, or whatever else may be obtainable, with half a pound of rice, beyond their allowance of bread and food money, until the work is done."

(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, R. de Man, Abr. Gabbema, Pieter Everaerts, and H. Lacus, Secretary.

Notwithstanding the dirty weather some Chainouquas arrived once more at the Fort with 12 cows, 2 old and 7 young oxen and bulls, all which were exchanged for beads and tobacco, and so cheaply obtained that each head did not come to more than one

1660.

skilling. These natives seem to be very fond of beads, which cost the Company very little, but do not care at all for copper like the Cochoquas, our neighbours, do, whose sheep cannot be obtained for less than the value of half a real of copper, and sometimes more, and their cattle for less than two reals, on account of the dearness of the copper. But we receive them gladly nevertheless, if they be only brought to us, and this may happen if the interpretest Eva is not telling fibs, and it be true, as she says, that these two tribes, the Cochoquas and Chainouquas are jealous of each other, and that therefore her brother-in-law, Oedaso, chief and king of the Cochoquas, in order not to appear to us as wanting in wealth and means, is endeavouring to bring on as much cattle and sheep as the Chainouquas, who are, however, much more numerous in people and extraordinarily rich in cattle, far surpassing the Cochoquas in this respect, who are, however, supposed to number between 17 and 18 thousand souls, divided into different groups and two chief camps, under Oedaso and his secunde named Ngonnomoa. The success to be expected from the above-mentioned trade, of which the Goringhaiquas and Gorachouquas or tobacco thieves make so much, we shall learn in time, with the hope that God the Lord will be pleased to grant success and His blessing on the same.

August 27th.—The same, dirty, boisterous weather, causing the collapse of the southern end of the Point Walvis. It was, however, a portion of the old unfenced works thrown up in the first instance when we had neither cattle nor horses to bring in wood and water. This can now be done nicely by the wagons of the Company and the freemen, so that the works can be made so strong that there will be no fear of further damage. At present, however, only damages are repaired, in order not to have too much on hand. The walls are now well made, and are surmounted by strong, thick, burnt palisades of durable hard ironwood, so that being made of earth and naturally sloping they may not be scaled. For the same reason the *berm* is being surrounded with a good palisade, from the bottom of the canal, which gives additional strength, and is the more required in order not to be suddenly surprised by Europeans, who sometimes arrive here, mostly from France, as well as the Genoese and other pretended friends and open enemies; for the Company, by having lost St. Helena, has now more interest in this place than previously. In such a case the principal and chief object must be to endeavour to keep the feet and guns of the enemy from the land, and should a landing be attempted, to do him as much mischief as possible, for the Fort, having been strengthened as described, could hardly be taken without the help of artillery and mortars. But let us hope, with the drummer, that it may not come to that, &c.

August 28th.—Calm weather in the morning.

August 29th (Sunday).—Again wet, stormy weather from the N.W., which abated at midnight.

August 30th and 31st.—Fairly good weather, but still somewhat wet, dirty and rainy. N.W. wind.

September 1st.—Fine, lovely, calm weather.

September 2nd to 4th.—The same, with a W. breeze until the evening, when, it being new moon, it began to blow heavily from the N.N.W., with heavy showers.

September 5th (Sunday).—Loose weather. Twenty-eight Chainouquas arrive with 77 cattle and 18 sheep; 74 oxen were bought with beads, tobacco and pipes, as well as 6 sheep, and 3 cows and 12 sheep with copper, tobacco and pipes. As usual they were regaled on bread and brandy, all which included made the cost of every animal not to exceed 8 or 9 stivers, whilst that of a sheep, as they were bartered for copper, amounted to twice as much.

These people had met the free hunters and fishermen the day before yesterday behind the Leopard (Tyger) mountains, and they were found to be such utter strangers that they could not speak a single word with our people, only making signs that they wished to go to the camp of the Caapmen, but as we knew that the latter would in that case exchange their lean cattle for their best ones, the freemen dissuaded them from their object and conducted them straight to the Fort. They agreed with us that the aforesaid freemen should each time accompany them to and from their encampment, nominally to protect them from wild beasts with their fire-arms, but really to keep them away from the Caapmen and thus the better accustom them to us. And in order the better at present to keep these people from exchanging their cattle with the Caapmen, it was agreed to pay each freeman 25 stivers daily as food money as long as he was away, and to pay him the amount due in cash immediately on his return. This made them eager for the work, and they were finally recommended carefully to observe everything that these people possessed or that could be obtained from them, &c.

September 6th.—Good weather. Arrival of some more natives with 8 cattle and 2 sheep, which were bartered for beads and tobacco; the sheep we obtained for copper. The Commander spends the day in inspecting the cultivated lands and giving the necessary orders. The *Parkietjen* having been repaired, the Commander proceeds in her to Robben Island about five o'clock in the afternoon, a S.E. breeze blowing. He wished to see whether the *Schapenjachtje* could not be repaired, and arrived on the Island after dark.

September 7th.—The Commander lands and finds the *Schapenjachtje* a complete wreck; she was therefore dismantled and abandoned. The Commander after that makes a general inspection of the island, and in the evening returns in safety to the fort.

September 8th.—Lovely warm sunny weather, the wind variable. The officers of the *Parkietjen* ordered to fish for the lost anchors in the bay. Decided to build another small vessel to take the place of the *Schapenjachtje*, it being often necessary to visit Robben

1660.

Island. The ships' carpenters are therefore to proceed to the forest to-morrow to prepare the timber, which the freemen will convey to the fort in their wagons.

As the agriculturists Pieter Visagie and Jan Coenraat Visser are becoming daily more indifferent to their work and consequently piling up their debt, without displaying any zeal whatever in the rearing of wheat, with which alone they will be able to pay what they owe, it was finally decided to instruct the Company's agricultural superintendent, Cruythoff, daily to urge them on to their work as if they were still in the Company's service, until they shall have cultivated their lands to such an extent as will make them equal in value to their debt, seeing that the Company advances everything to them at a cheap rate, keeps their mouths open, and helps them up from the very bottom. It is therefore but fair that they should make every effort for repayment, without being compelled to do so by the Company.

September 9th.—Lovely weather. The *Parkietjen* fishes up an anchor, the fourth, and a very old one weighing about 500 lbs. As arranged by Mr. Sterthenius, one quarter of the weight went to the men, at the rate of £10 per 100 lbs, or £12½ as their share.

September 10th and 11th.—Stiff N.W. wind without rain. Twenty-four cattle bartered from the Chainouquas for beads, tobacco and pipes. They consisted of 12 fairly good cows, 3 old and 9 young oxen and bulls.

This trade enabled two good (fraaye) men to associate as agriculturists, and were promised 30 morgen of land in freehold in the neighbourhood of the "Boschheuvel" provided that they remain 12 years in the Colony from the 15th of this month. The one is named Cornelis Claesz of Utrecht and the other Dierq Mayer of Lunenburg. Both have been free three years, and in the service of others, giving good proofs of their conduct.

September 12th (Sunday).—Windy weather as before with heavy rain and hail. Nevertheless the four free fishermen accompany the Chainouquas inland. (See 5th Sept.)

This week some Dutch apple, pear, quince, and medlar slips were grafted on some of the forest trees in the forest and in the Company's gardens. The same experiment will be made with lemons and oranges, so that if successful we may sooner have abundance.

September 13th.—The Commander once more makes a general inspection of the lands, and amongst others selected a fruitful hill behind and at the foot of Table Mountain, above the Company's forest, on which to plant a vineyard for the Company. Here he ordered some vinestocks to be planted and all kinds of seeds, beans, &c., sown on a small plot specially prepared by way of experiment. He also inspected the piece of land granted to the two agriculturists (see September 11th) in order to have it surveyed, &c.

The freemen, seeing the fair success of the Commander in vine planting, are now nicely following suit. Hundreds of stocks are

given and offered to them, as they can be planted easily on the poorest soil, after the corn has been put into the ground, and without interfering with that work.

September 14th.—Very fine weather. The men of the *Parkiet* busy the whole day, but only find bits of old rope, &c., thrown overboard from the ships. Strong S.S.E. during the night, To-day the first eel was caught in a weel in the Fresh River by the agriculturist Tielman Hendricksz: of Utrecht, fully twice the thickness of a man's arm, fat and delicate.

September 15th.—Lovely weather. The *Parkiet* recovers one of the Frenchman's anchors, 1600 lbs. in weight, attached to which was half a cable of 13 inches, which, being new and good and serviceable for heavy flutes or yachts, the men received f20 cash for it, in order to keep up their spirits. For the anchor they received f40.

September 16th and 17th.—Variable windy weather.

September 18th.—Somewhat milder. The Commander goes out early in the morning with some men, spades and shovels, in order to have the road repaired, which had in many places been injured by the heavy rains; as well as to have the lands of the new free-men surveyed.

The *Parkiet* still fishing for anchors without success.

September 19th.—Full moon. Rainy, changeable windy weather, with hail, which destroyed all the peas on the private lands; the Company having as yet sown but little, with other garden produce, as an experiment in its vineyard (Wynbergh), at the bottom of which very rich ground having been found, the overseer was directed to put the plough in to-morrow and to prepare it for May next, when it can be sown with wheat, as much of the old land having become impoverished, must be allowed to lie fallow on account of the want of manure.

September 20th.—Loose weather. The Fiscal sent out on a general inspection tour to see that everything is in order and put everything straight, &c.

September 21st.—Strong S.E. wind towards evening. Return from the country of the free land messenger Jan Zacharias, the free fisherman Pieter Cornelius of Langesondt, and Carel Broers, with their free servant Jan Wolff. They had been away 10 days, having accompanied some of the Chainouqua tribe, whose king they reached after 5 days' journey, and who treated them kindly by giving them milk, sheep and lodging, &c.

The aforesaid King or Chocque, which means as much as king, and who is also called Soesoa, is encamped with only one troop four days' journey from this, the rest he did not wish to accompany him, as he desired to remain some time where he was and make closer acquaintance and trading relations with us, just the opposite of the neighbouring Saldanhars and Caapmen, who are always endeavouring to keep us away from the inland natives, mostly for the purpose of keeping us ignorant of their encampments and pasture

1660.

—

grounds, pretending that these and other tribes would not be tolerated by us without their mediation and company, and that no natives would be permitted to come to us without them, which may be too true, as they tell the natives inland just the opposite of what our sentiments are towards them. This becomes more and more evident to us, the result being that these Caapmen are becoming rather powerful and rich in cattle. Not one of them had any longer any copper or beads round their arms, in their ears or on their necks, all had been bartered away to these Chainouquas and Saldanbars for cattle, none of which they bring to us for sale. Their old worn-out cattle is all that they offer. This is borne with as yet, that in course of time the inland tribes may become accustomed to us, and be assured of the sincere intentions of the Netherlanders towards them, viz. : to be on friendly terms with every one without distinction, and the more so as we see at one time one, and at another another tribe visiting us, so that all party feeling is set aside, and every one is welcomed as a good friend. At the same time great care is taken that the Goringaiquas or Caapmen and the tobacco thieves or Gorachouquas do not place too many impediments in the way of the Company (we fought against them last year), as we find that the inland natives, whom we have now and then visited, have received our people with all affection and kindness, and endeavoured to enter into closer intercourse with us, &c.

This Soesoa, true Choeque or king of the Chainouquas, sent the Commander a young ox and requested in return some red beads as a sign of friendship and a wish to enter into closer alliance with him; also that our people would visit him in his country with merchandize, when they would obtain sufficient cattle. He was an old man, and being unable to walk far, could not very well visit the fort, however much he desired to see the habits of the Dutch with his own eyes; his people (who had been at the fort) having told him more than he could believe, &c.

This was confirmed by many of his people, who with wives and children had travelled a day's journey in order to have a look at the freemen, having previously seen none but their own race. None know how to show us sufficient friendship; whilst the two who returned to-day with the freemen said that they had never before this day seen any ships. According to the interpretation of Douman and Douckema, put into better Dutch by Eva, this Lord or King had only one son, as the freemen also saw with their own eyes, to whom he had entrusted the government of the kingdom, and whom he had proclaimed king, only retaining for himself the chief title and all riches and domains as long as he lived, as well as the highest honours, which were always shown him when present with his son, who shared with him these same honours as heir to the dominion. According to the translation, the latter had such power, and was so dreaded, that neither Oedasoa nor any of his subjects nor others would dare to come to us to trade, as long

as these Chainouquas were in the neighbourhood; but they would all make way for them, and come to greet the King with presents of cattle, &c., to show the obedience they owed to him as the representative of the nearest (relative) of the chief King, said to be the Hamecunquar, who also dwells in huts of matting, but never "treks" about, and whose subjects make their living not only from their cattle but also by cultivating the valuable herb Dacha, which muddles their brains, like opium, "ginje," strong tobacco, brandy and such things, the reason why this tribe is so fond of it.

The chief of these Hamecunquas, who is said continually to live in a fixed residence, surrounded by a countless number of dwellings very far inland between both the seas of the Cape land, is supposed to be the chief Lord of all the Hottentoo tribes, and briefly known as the Khoebaka, which means as much as chief of all the kings and lords of the country, for "khoe" means all this, viz., "a high mountain," "rich," "happy," "king," &c., and "baka" that all must show him reverence, so that he really would be Emperor of the Hottentoo race, whilst the Chainouqua, above mentioned, whom our people had visited, was the most important of all the kings after him, being called the "Khoegue," that is to say, the "king." He is also called Soesoa, and his son Goeboe, to whom he has entrusted the government, and is therefore called Khoequoa, or the king's successor, being acknowledged as such. Children not being entrusted with authority or dominion are generally called Khoেকেকone, that is, sons and daughters, the name being common to both sexes. But the son or prince is called "Kheysa," the daughters are called Khoegue Achebasis, and the nobles Khoেকেbj; that is, people of royal descent.

Humque is an appointed or elected lord or governor over the people, a person of the highest though not of royal descent. Then Oedasoa, the chief of the Saldanhars, is named, whilst his secunde or adjunct, Ngonnomoa is called Chamhuma, that is, second lord over the territory and people.

The chiefs of the Chariguriquas are also called Humque, as they are the highest born in their country, but all can be removed from administration and authority by Soesoa, though this seldom happens unless there be grave cause for doing so, and even then seldom without dissatisfaction and even wars. Hence they are very loyal and obedient.

The Gorachouquas and Goringhaiquas, or tobacco thieves, and Kaapmen, are merely mentioned as Khoesanhuma among the great, but they arrogate to themselves also the title of Khoegue over their bands, which often brings war upon them, so that they do not very well dare to let it openly appear before the Chainouquas, hence so little respect is shown them by those who are in inferior positions to themselves, especially when Soesoa appears in the neighbourhood, who, according to rumour, intends to come and live permanently on a spot, one or two days' journey distant from this; that is, Soesoa, and his son Goeboe, with their tribes, in order to

1660.

have continuous intercourse with us; whilst the rest of the community will come and go, depasturing the cattle. Should this be the case, it may turn out to be the best thing for the Company, considering the authority he wields among his people, so that more dependence could be placed on any agreement made with him. Time will show what results the Lord God will grant. In the meanwhile, his two domestics who accompanied our travellers have been well entertained, and informed of our intentions by the interpretress Eva, who has learnt to speak good Dutch and tolerable Portuguese. They were also advised to place everything in a favourable light before their chief, to whom they intend to return to-morrow with some presents for him, which we promised to have ready. This pleased them much, the more so as the Commander said that he would with pleasure acknowledge Soesoa as a father and his son Goeboe as a brother, in order thus to associate with one another as people of the same race; thus the old man, having only one solitary full-grown son, would in his extreme old age beget a second one, who was prepared to obtain for him from all quarters of the world everything that he desired, by which his name would be made greater and more famous; yea, he would thus obtain higher honour even from the Khoebaha, whom he would be able to supply with all kinds of rarities as a result of his intercourse with us.

When the aforesaid domestics, named Oocktis Koukoua and Hankumma, caretakers of their chief's cattle and sheep, were afterwards introduced into the Commander's room, and placed before a large mirror, they appeared to be completely at a loss, at one time thinking that the reflections were persons in another room, at another time recognizing themselves and other persons; they believed that they were seeing spooks, so much so that Eva, Doman and other Hottentots living near the fort had enough to do to explain matters to them. Thus we have often wonderful jokes and amusing oddities with these strangers.

September 22nd.—The same heavy dry S.E. winds. The domestics of Soesoa and his son Goeboe receive for their chiefs as a token of our desire for further friendship and closer alliance, as well as in return for the young ox sent to the Commander as a present, nine bunches of red beads, six bars of yellow copper, one small looking glass, six pipes and about a pound or a pound and a half of tobacco, for each, about as much as is required for bartering five or six head of cattle. The presents, therefore, appeared to please them very much, and they gave us to understand that their chiefs would be highly pleased and particularly inclined in consequence to come nearer as soon as the waters in the rivers had fallen. At present they could with difficulty cross with their cattle, the result of the extraordinarily heavy rains, which have inundated the country this season in all directions; yea, they had no doubt that they (the chiefs) were inclined to visit the Commander in person, as

the presents proved that he was well disposed towards them. They were told that we were prepared to receive them with all honour and respect, as well as entertain them, and, all our lives associate with them as our own blood friends, and as proposed by their masters, when they have come nearer, after the ground has become drier, to let every day our men and theirs mutually travel with merchandise for barter, so that we would very much like to see them come to the Fort for that purpose, where we would show them many things that would please them, and of which they might obtain as much as they fancied. They were then presented with three bunches of beads, tobacco, pipes, &c., and their knapsacks filled with bread.

September 23rd.—Fine weather. The Hottentoots leave, very well satisfied. The Commander told them, through Eva, that we wished their masters a thousand years of life, many children and a multitude of cattle; this being the most pleasant way of wishing them well.

They declined the escort of some of our men, saying that they might be drowned in crossing the rivers, and that their masters would in consequence, and because of the sorrow that would result, not dare to face us. They thereupon left, very well satisfied. God grant that some good may result for the Company from this unknown tribe. They are complete strangers, and have never before been so near the sea as to have seen any ships, or other tribes, except their own. Our purpose must therefore be, as much as possible, to prevent all intercourse between them and the Caapmen, so that it will be of advantage if our men, armed with muskets, escort them to and fro, and thus prevent them from bartering their fine cattle for the inferior animals of the Caapmen.

September 24th and 25th.—Cloudy sky. Variable weather. The men of the *Parkit* fish up an anchor and portion of a cable. The *Parkit* sent to Robben Island with the following memorandum for her commander: "As the S.E. wind prevents you from fishing for more anchors, you shall, without delay, proceed to Robben Island, and there take on board the sails, &c. of the *Schapenjachtje*. The wreck you shall break up, and bring hither all the timber that may still be serviceable. The rest you shall convey to the beacon hill, as otherwise fuel must be conveyed thither from Hout or Saldanha Bay. This will save a trip and should be attended to at once, that you may be back here soon and recommence fishing for anchors, in order to clear the roadstead.

"You will also take with you some clothing for the slaves, to be delivered there to Otto, who will tell you whether the boy named Pieter Jansz: Sampus is still so disobedient towards him. He must be brought back by you, and you shall leave one of your men in his place. If, however, the boy has improved, this will not be necessary." (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck.

N.B.—The officers also receive the following note for Otto Jansz: "The *Parkytjen* will bring you some clothes for the slaves, as well

1660.

as an Indian 'Negros' dress for the baby which the female slave is expecting. It is, however, not to be given to her before she has been confined.

"If the boy Pieter Jansz : Sampus is still as disobedient as ever, he must be sent over to us.

"We send you the oil, forgotten last time, also some sweepings and biscuit crumbs for the pigs that have young ones. You are to send us the two pigs which you mentioned in your last, or two others instead; and also mention the number of porkers in your charge, that they may be sent hither from time to time to be fattened. We also expect to be informed how many ewes, wethers and rams you have, and whether you do not require one or two Dutch rams, that we may obtain them from the freemen, who are breeding them beautifully.

Attend well to the beacon fires, and be greeted by your friend,"

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK."

September 26th (Sunday).—Same weather. After the service the following notice was published:—"As some agriculturists do not attend to the breaking up of their lands whilst they are still moist, for which purpose cattle have been given them at fl2 (and that even on credit), but prefer to be carriers of fuel for this one and another, even for the French, and thus exhaust their cattle and unfit them for the plough, to the great injury of wheat and other culture; all agriculturists are hereby expressly forbidden to carry any fuel, except what they may require for their own use, before the beginning of the month of November next. In the meanwhile they shall confine themselves to the breaking of their lands and ploughing the same without carrying any wood, except once a week, viz: Saturdays or Sundays before nine o'clock in the morning, on pain of forfeiture of the loads of fuel for the Company, as this is believed to be in the best interest of the public."

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

September 27th.—Fine weather. Variable breezes. About 30 Cochouquas arrive with three old cows, a calf and 27 sheep. Mostly all were bartered for beads and tobacco. Doman and Eva informed us that Oedasoia had by his commissioners sent his greetings to the chief of the Chainouquas named Sousoa, and his son Goeboe, and that these men, after waiting three days, had at their request obtained permission to remain with us for the present for trading purposes; and that he (? Sousoa), when he had come nearer, would further speak with Oedasoia. The Chariguriquas and Gorachouquas had also sent their greetings by commissioners, whilst the Goringaiguas or Caapmen had so arranged matters that they had been accepted as the best guides for the aforesaid Soesoa and sen. Eva added that these Caapmen were too clever for all the Hottentoots, and that the fish or watermen were such poor beggars that they did not dare to show themselves anywhere, but were obliged to shelter themselves under the Company's wings, in order to fish, wash, scrub, &c., for the burghers. This is rather convenient.

From this good news received by Oedasoia from Soesoia and his son, it is hoped that he has not retired as far as it was feared, but that he will remain near enough to enable Eva to see her people sometimes visiting us, as she knew that it would be a great trial to them to be left destitute of tobacco, &c.

We told her to induce Oedasoia, instead of retiring into the interior, to proceed to the North of Saldanha Bay, whither we might send the *Parkyt*, in order to barter from him young cattle and sheep, as that vessel could not take full grown ones on board. This she considered a good idea, and would endeavour to impress on him. Should it succeed we would be able to traffic in two places; here with the Chainouquas, and there with all the Saldanhars.

There was, however, a certain other tribe named Hesaquas, which we had never before heard mentioned, regular Dagga makers of the Hameumquar, and more numerous than the Chainouquas. Their language differed greatly from that of the Saldanhars, so that they could not understand each other, except through an interpreter. She said that he had ordered away from him the Saldanhars, Caapmen, and all the rest in the neighbourhood, in order to make place for him, as he would suffer none of them to remain here longer, and if they did not remove at once, he threatened, distant as he was, that he would turn them all away, the Chainouquas included, as he intended to remain here himself, in order alone to trade and associate with the Dutch people. Being the strongest, he arrogated this right unto himself, and coming here intended to take possession of the whole territory. This intention shows that there is something wonderful on the tapis. Time will show the result. Daily it becomes more evident that natives, hitherto strangers to us, are obtaining knowledge of us, and would prefer to trade with us direct, instead of through their countrymen in our neighbourhood. We therefore decided to advise the Cochoquas to go to Saldanha and the Caapmen to Hout Bay, as we could reach them at those places in the *Parkyt*; but it is doubtful whether the Caapmen will again venture to place themselves in the net, as they have hitherto kept themselves and their camp and cattle beyond our range, and have succeeded in obtaining greater favour with the Chainouquas than Oedasoia (who seems to be somewhat crusty, and consequently not too humble), apparently because the Caapmen have discovered that it will hardly be possible to keep the Chainouquas and others from the interior, any longer away from us. These tribes, being informed that a nation had come to settle here, from which they can obtain their merchandize direct, will be inclined to visit us in person. Others, further distant, will in their turn hear of our presence when trading with the former, and thus in course of time the Hollanders will become known through the length and breadth of the land, so that after a lapse of years, those of Monomotapa may also send some of their people to us, who beholding our kindly treatment of

1660.

the natives, compared with the domineering ways of the Portuguese, may be induced to transfer their ivory and gold trade to the Cape, as they are not much further from the Cape than from Mozambique or Sofala.

This, however, requires years to accomplish, but for the reasons adduced above, the appearances are favourable.

Two of Oedaso's councillors, who accompanied the cattle barterers, asked through Eva, to speak to the Commander alone early in the morning.

September 28th.—The councillors met the Commander and his Council in his office and said that Oedaso begged that we might not throw him out of our thoughts with the Chainouquas, as he would not fail to trade with us as long as he was permitted, for which purpose he had asked and obtained the consent of Sousoa, to whom he would otherwise not have submitted to such an extent. According to these councillors Sousoa was the more inclined to grant his request, because with Oedaso's help he would be better able to keep away from here the threatening Hessequas; otherwise they believed that Oedaso's request would have had little effect, as he bore no good will to Oedaso, because the latter, once finding Goeboe rather defenceless on a certain spot, had carried off the latter's wife, who was the last deceased wife of Oedaso, and sister of Eva, who is therefore sister in law to both these great lords, as she always pretends, though others confirm it.

This Goeboe has now (as a wife) the sister of Osinghkinma, the daughter of Gogoso, chief of the Caapmen; hence the latter are in greater favour with Sousoa and his son.

Eva appears to be on good terms with all except the Caapmen, who are jealous of her because they (say) that she tells us too much of their history (legenten) and the condition of the country, &c. This is certainly true, for without her we would not know many things, though she is sometimes detected in a little falsehood.

Oedaso was told that he need not doubt us, as we did not wish to part with the friendship of anyone, but to let it strike deeper and deeper root towards all who visited us, and that he might be sure of this, he was presented through the two councillors, (independent of the presents to themselves) with some copper plates, beads and tobacco in order to keep up the friendship. This seemed to please them, as well as the advice given them regarding Saldanha Bay (already mentioned).

They also told us that Chorou, chief of the Chorachouquas, who had been a long while encamped with Gonnomoa, had parted with the latter in anger, because Chorou had clandestinely taken away Gonnomoa's wife, and that bloodshed might have resulted had it not been for Sousoa, who had the power to banish or degrade the guilty party. It always seems that every one has the same dread of Sousoa's authority and much more so of that of the Hessequas who have also two councillors who are both great lords.

All this is food for thought and gradually increases our knowledge of the aborigines. The Almighty grant us from one thing and another more good fortune and prosperity for the benefit of the Company.

September 29th & 30th.—Fine weather; cloudy sky. The *Perkit* returns from Robben Island. Yesterday the two boats of the freemen, the *Peguy*n and the *Zeeleeuw*, returned from Saldanha Bay with oil, fish, and seal's flesh for the slaves. The skipper reported that Ankasoia, the Caapmen ally, was encamped there with half his kraals, on the S. side of the Bay, and that, having no tobacco, they could only barter two sheep. Some of the Chairugriquas, whom they saw there, had asked them whether some strange people had not appeared at the Fort from the far interior; a sign that their approach had already been extensively spread amongst them. God grant that if they reach us, they may be inclined to trade, and that the Company may get on better with them than with those in the neighbourhood.

Those of the *Perkyt* busy with discharging the salvage from the wreck of the *Schapenjachtje*. As soon as the weather is calmer they will resume anchor fishing, &c. During the afternoon Sousoa, chief of the Chainouquas, entered the fort riding on a large ox, accompanied by his son's wife. He was conducted by one of our horse guards. They dismounted on the shoulders of one of his men, and brought with them 33 head of cattle, old and young, as well as 15 sheep, which we bartered for copper, tobacco and pipes. A good reception was given to Sousoa and his people. He told us that his people had told him that the Commander wished to accept his son as a brother and himself as a father, and that therefore he had come to visit his new son, to see what sort of a man he was, &c. A suitable answer and mutual assurances were given that unalterable and everlasting friendship would be maintained. For that purpose he would come nearer, that we might more conveniently trade together, for which he seemed much inclined. He was therefore treated to cheese, fresh bread, and sugar in a tin dish, and seated on a mat in the Commander's room with the aforesaid dirty princess (his son's wife), a favour never shown to anyone before. We also played for him on the 'claversingel' (primitive piano?), all which appeared to please him immensely, as well as the beer, Spanish and French wines, which he relished exceedingly. However, he did not take as much as would have intoxicated him. His followers were entertained in the front hall with biscuits and brandy in such a way that they sang lustily, jumped and performed various monkey tricks.

Sousoa and his son's wife having been conducted through the house above and below, said there were people living in the country who also possessed such dwellings, which however were in somewhat different style, though permanent. He pointed to the ring on the Commander's finger (and said) that these people had

1660.

also such gold, and further, to the end of his little finger, to describe the size of the white glittering stones which he had seen among them. He was thereupon shown French and other precious stones, diamonds, rubies, pearl necklaces &c., *but he said that he had never seen or heard of anything except gold and white stones, pointing to the diamonds*, and that he was well acquainted with the nation called Chobona or Choboqua, and that he was prepared to do his best to bring one of them hither to prove that he had spoken the truth, &c. And as a certain large tribe (Hottentoots like himself) were jealous of his power, and consequently endeavoured to do him every injury, and would have endeavoured to do so still more in order to impede his intercourse with us, he asked us whether we would not be willing to assist him with soldiers against his enemies should they trouble him? We replied that if he knew how to help us to cattle in sufficient quantity, and induce the Chobonas to come down to us with their gold and precious stones, we would do so, provided that his adversaries were not our allies, especially the Cochoquas with whose chief we had a treaty of friendship, &c.

He replied that his enemies were others, and that he requested the assistance not with the intention first to show evidence of what he had said, for the Commander did not as yet know what sort of man he was, but that time would reveal it to him. He intended to settle with his principal camp in the Hottentoots Holland, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ days journey hence, in order to associate with us daily, leaving the rest of the people to go to and fro; giving many other reasons besides, which did not appear strange.

October 1st.—Bought 10 oxen from Sousoa's people for beads, and 5 sheep for copper, so that the latter cost as much per piece as three oxen bartered for beads, and which do not accordingly cost more than 9 or 10 stivers each. A heavy expense, however, is the food and drink to be provided for so many persons, who are always in their retinue.—N.B. Weather in the morning rainy, with a westerly breeze.

October 2nd.—Dry S.E. windy weather. Sousoa and retinue being about to leave, the following considerable presents were given to him for himself, his daughter-in-law, his brother, and another son that was with him:—

- 42 lbs. yellow and 8 lbs. red copper.
- 6 doz. beads, and false silver chains.
- 3 pairs of false jewelled bracelets.
- 4 lbs. tobacco.
- 4 lbs. red beads.
- 9 iron hoops.
- 17 lbs. staff iron.
- 2 axes.
- 2 iron bolts (drivers).
- 7 quarts brandy.
- 2 small mirrors and fully 100 lbs. biscuits.

All this and his three days' entertainment pleased him much, and he left with great satisfaction. He had his son's wife mounted on a large white spotted ox, and, after having passed the fisherman's house, he himself bestrode a red one, having passed the intermediate distance on foot with Eva, with whom he conversed on many subjects and whom he entrusted with the following message to the Commander, viz.: That if the latter would be patient he would find out that he was the man to content him, but that care should be taken that what the Choboquas demanded for their gold and stones should pass through his hands, that he might be considered as the principal broker between the parties. Already he had given free permission and thoroughfare to all his people in his dominion to come and trade with us.

The spotted ox on which his son's wife was mounted had been sold to us, but we lent it to him at his request to carry his goods received here. He promised to return it with more cattle and by first opportunity.

October 3rd (Sunday).—Lovely weather. After the service 13 or 14 Chainouquas arrived with 27 fine cattle, of which 24 were bought for beads, and the rest, with 6 sheep, for copper and tobacco. They had not met this King Sousoa on their way hither, but mentioned that more of them would be here to-morrow, being already encamped at Hottentoo's Holland where they generally intend to rendezvous until Sousoa permanently settles there.

This will be a severe blow to our neighbours, as this place was always their best pasture ground; nor have any Caapmen or Saldanhars or any of the rest dared to appear here; much less the Beachrangers, who have always lived in this neighbourhood, so that it seems that this Sousoa is considerably feared, an impression confirmed by Eva and Doman. The latter has been completely elbowed aside by the former in the favour of this nation, Eva having ingratiated herself much with them, without, however, sacrificing the interests of Oedason. About the Caapmen and the rest she seems to care very little, and be more against them than in their favour. She is accordingly cordially hated by them, but because of us, also feared and dreaded, on account of the information she has given us about the country, so that we are gradually coming to the truth. This annoys them exceedingly, as it has always been their principal object to keep us in the dark regarding these matters, as they always denied that there were Chainouquas, Cochoquas or other tribes in the interior, and declared that they, the Caapmen, were alone the real Saldanhars and the most powerful, &c. This position becoming daily more untenable for them, they are beginning very much to creep into their shells.

October 4th.—Fine weather. Westerly breeze.

October 5th.—Cloudy westerly sky, with rain. Obtained from the Chainouquas, referred to the day before yesterday, 31 head of cattle for beads, and 37 sheep for copper and tobacco. One of these natives was Eva's uncle, named Eycouqua, who brought us

1660.

—

2 cattle and 5 sheep for barely the half of six bunches of beads and 17 lbs. of copper, with some tobacco, advanced him on the credit of Eva's word three weeks ago, that he might buy cattle in the interior as agent for the Company as cheaply as he could, being paid for them here at the current prices, that thus with his own profits and the original capital in hand he might become a prosperous trader. The original merchandise was therefore left in his hands a while longer, to be paid back later when he has become a little richer; whilst at the same time he was told how in course of time he would be able to make much profit and accumulate wealth. This had been our intention with Herry in the beginning, but by his faithlessness he had ruined himself instead of becoming a rich man, and of the greatest influence among all the Hottentots. At present he is a beggar, neither respected nor regarded by any of his countrymen, as Eva well knows. This therefore is impressed on her uncle through her, that he may be made to understand it thoroughly, as he is living among one of the Chainouqua hordes (under Sousoa) from which the greatest number of cattle can be obtained. Should we be successful with him it will be a very good thing for the Company, which will be able constantly to obtain cattle by means of his going to and fro. He was therefore entertained the better in order to encourage him the more in such a serviceable business. Some goods were at the same time advanced to his grandfather Hustkhema who had brought on his own account 5 oxen and 6 sheep. He was entrusted with 5 lbs. staff iron, 10 plates, weighing 15 lbs., and 12 sticks, weighing 5 lbs., all yellow copper, and 10 bunches or 1 lb. beads and $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. tobacco.

October 6th—9th.—Dark, westerly sky, with a little rain. Sousoa and his brother bring only 7 cattle and 2 sheep. Among the former was the ox he had borrowed a few days ago; the cattle we bought, but the sheep were a present. This Eva did not wish to interpret, as he was so close in his communications, and again had sent to ask for presents, &c.

She showed herself displeased with him, and felt ashamed that he behaved so badly. She told us that she conveyed to them exactly what we said, but that for very shame she was often unable to tell us in her own words what he and other Hottentots said. She further said that she did not dare to tell us more than that he having made the acquaintance of the Commander had now only come to visit him out of courtesy. She knew that the Commander would entertain him well and pay him every attention, and for the rest that she knew the nature of the Dutch to be such that they were liberal enough and willing enough to make and maintain friendship with all men, and that the presents which they freely gave were intended to invite all the tribes towards them in order to open trade intercourse with them, especially in the articles, besides cattle, already enumerated, viz., Gold and Precious Stones. This, she told him, he might have concluded from the manner in which he had been greeted by the Commander, who had

him addressed on his arrival as follows, viz., that the Commander was glad to see him again and that he would be well entertained if he were only pleased to say what he liked, as the Commander believed that according to his promise, he had, after his return home sent out men to fetch the gold and stones in order to show them to him, also that he had encouraged his people to bring down much cattle, ostrich feathers, tusks, hart and other skins for sale, when large presents would be given to him, especially if he showed us any gold or precious stones, and brought us one of the natives of the Country whence they were obtained.

In the meanwhile he was entertained with cheese and fresh bread and sugar in a tin dish, as well as with wine and friendly conversation.

October 10th (Sunday).—During the usual Parade this afternoon the musketeers fired a salvo, and he was told that this was never done except for great lords, such as we deemed him to be. We further amused him with the violin, the 'Claversingel' and other instruments, saying that we were thus showing our good will towards him, and that when he brought in some gold and stones (which he still said he would do) we would once more have a handsome present ready for him, &c. He therefore clearly understood from all this that at present he could expect nothing beyond his good reception, and therefore said nothing more to Eva about any presents, but expressed his surprise at the great quantity of copper, beads, &c., exhibited to him and which we told him were for the purposes of barter, so that he should send his people to us. He said he had already informed them all in every direction.

Towards evening it began to rain heavily. This continued the whole night.

October 11th.—Westerly wind, with heavy hail and rain. Nevertheless Sousoa left content and in a friendly spirit, with a great deal of tobacco, pipes, brandy, bread, and 8 lbs. of iron. He promised from time to time to show us proofs of what he had told us. Having been once more encouraged to do so, he took his departure. He would have left yesterday, but was detained for the abovementioned salute in his honour, and also that he might behold our mode of worship, and we might find an opportunity to speak with him on the subject, and of their creed, &c. This was done, and he set off well satisfied with the promises above made.

October 12th and 13th.—Fine cool, cloudy weather, with a W. breeze. A ship in sight off Robben Island, where the S.E. wind suddenly springing up, compelled it to anchor. The wind continued on the following day (the 14th).

October 15th.—Lovely clear weather. Arrival, with a westerly breeze, of the flute *Vollenhoven* from the Texel on the 22nd May, in company of the flute *Loosduynen*. She carried 126 men, 4 had died, and 30 were severely suffering from scurvy. Her skipper was named Bastiaan Jansz : of Nieuwendam ; and her

1660.

—

bookkeeper Evert de Keyser. Had parted from the *Loosduynen* between 14° and 15° N. Lat. : the latter had at the time only one dead and but a few sick. The *Vollenhoven* had been greatly detained by calms and light winds. We trust that her consort, as well as the *Olipiant*, will arrive soon, as they would find sufficient refreshments here, both fresh meat and vegetables.

October 16th.—Same fine weather. Obtained 2 cows and a calf from the Caapmen for beads, and a sheep for copper and tobacco.

October 17th.—The same weather ; wind variable.

October 18th—23rd.—(Full moon). Fine weather. Wind as above. The *Parkytjen* leaves for Saldanha Bay, with the following instructions to the officers :—As the vessel's bottom is to be cleaned, which cannot be done here, you shall, as soon as the wind is favourable, proceed to Saldanha Bay, and there clean the galiot thoroughly.

For trade with the Hottentoots you will take with you 76 lbs. copper, 21 lbs. tobacco, $\frac{1}{2}$ gross pipes, with which to buy young, but no full grown or old cattle, which latter could not be conveniently taken on board. What you get you shall put on Schapen Island until your return, when you shall bring them with you. You shall also, whilst there, endeavour to catch harders and other fish found there, salt and dry them for 'abberdaen' and otherwise, as supplies for this place. All this should be done carefully and not hurriedly, and the galiot shall further be laden with fuel best obtainable in Lakus Bay. (N.B.—Abberdaen = Labberdaan—Salt Cod or Aberdeen fish.)

You shall also find out whether shells will not be more easily obtainable at Saldanha Bay than at Robben Island, as we shall soon again require some lime.

As soles, plaice, flounders and other flat fish, as well as haddocks are found there, it would be well if you were to tow some behind the vessel in a drumnet (Kaertjen), that they may be brought hither alive ; also some oysters which are found opposite the bank in the mudchannel. They could be easily conveyed in kegs as is done from Holland to England. Have also some skate and shark skins dried, that we may find out whether they are of the kind required in Japan. Above all do not waste time, but return as soon as possible, as the Commander intends to visit the bay himself in December. Recommending the service of the Company to you and wishing you a speedy voyage to and fro (we remain),

In the Fort "the Good Hope," this 23rd October, 1660,

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.

In order to provide for a more orderly consumption of provisions, especially of liquors, than appears to have been the case during her outward voyage, the following instructions were given to the officers of the *Parkyt* :—

The distribution of brandy, oil, vinegar, meat and pork &c., shall be strictly in accordance with the ration-regulations of our

masters, and not the smallest portion shall be withheld from the men. No double allowance of brandy shall be given to the boat-swain except on extraordinary occasions of cold, wet and other discomforts, when the sailors who have also suffered similar discomforts with him shall be equally supplied for the extra work done. A large allowance would create drunken (? petty) officers, whom it least behoves to be in that state, and who might be satisfied with an extra slice of meat, pork or something similar.

Those of the saloon, however, are wise enough to remain within bounds, so that it will not be necessary to prescribe any rules for them.

Meat and pork days shall always be issued according to the Company's regulations, that is, when no fresh meat is sent on board in order to be supplied to the men with vegetables and fruit, instead of salt meat.

Twice a day the gardener shall have in readiness, besides the saloon delicacies, such vegetables and fruit for the men on the roadstead that they may eat as much as they like, at noon and at night. The grey and white peas, however, are to be kept for the voyage, when no vegetables are obtainable. They shall also not be used when much fish has been caught, as they are obtained here with difficulty. But barley and prunes are necessary, and must be regularly supplied every morning to the men for breakfast; and should a large quantity of milk be sent on board, then rice porridge instead.

In the Fort "the Good Hope," the 23rd October, 1660.

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.

During the afternoon the *Parkytjen* leaves with a S.E. breeze.

October 24th (Sunday).—Stiff dry S.E. wind in the morning. Calm during the evening.

October 25th, 26th.—Calm, warm weather. Two oxen and 8 sheep bought from the Cochoquas and Chariguriquas, who were accompanied by two of Ocdasoa's domestics, who earnestly requested the Commander to send to him the sergeant, another man and Eva, as he wished to visit the fort with some of his councillors to speak with the Commander on matters which could not very well be confided to everyone's mouth. He was told that we were pleased that he intended to visit us personally in order to speak, as he desired, as secretly as possible with the Commander. It seems as if he wishes to enter into closer alliance with us, and to sound us whether he could not be accommodated with some soldiers against his enemies in the interior; but we shall know when he comes. And as he can hardly mount an ox on account of his wounded arm, and accordingly requested that a wagon might be sent him for his conveyance hither, it was decided to have a vehicle prepared and send it to him with Sergeant Pieter Everaerts and eleven prime soldiers, that it may bring him and his councillors to the Fort, so that we may hear from him what he wishes to say.

1660

To-day the last lot of grain of last year's crop was threshed, reaped from 50 morgen of land, viz:—

24 $\frac{1}{8}$	muids	oats.	
150 $\frac{1}{4}$	"	rye.	
113 $\frac{2}{8}$	"	barley.	
214 $\frac{1}{2}$	"	white	} wheat.
6	"	brown	
508 $\frac{1}{2}$	muids	at 19 muids per last	= 26 $\frac{29}{38}$ lasts.

What the freemen have raised has not all been sent in as yet; it will hardly be more than 6 lasts, so that as yet everything depends on the Company's farming and assistance. This, however, is the chief reason that the freemen mostly squander away their grain instead of paying their debts to the Company. This cannot be prevented unfortunately, however strictly they are watched.

To-day the first crop of barley was mowed on the Commander's lands on his farm named den 'Uytwyek.' The S.E. winds had seriously injured the ears during the night, otherwise the grain itself is remarkably fine and stout.

October 27th.—Fine weather. Sergeant Pieter Everaerts and 10 soldiers leave, accompanied by Oedasoa's domestics and Eva. They are provisioned for 6 days, and have with them a wagon and 6 oxen. The Almighty be their guide to and fro.

To-day the officers of the *Vollenhoven* received their despatch and the papers for the Batavia Council. The S.E. wind, however, commenced to blow so strongly during the evening that they could not weigh anchor.

October 28th.—Same wind until the afternoon. The *Vollenhoven* leaves.

October 29th 30th.—Fine weather. The one olive tree, which had been in blossom some time, is beginning to show a fine lot of young fruit, so that we trust to taste some this year; the orange, lemon, medlar, quinee, cherry and currant trees are likewise promising well, especially the vines.

October 31st.—Dry windy weather from the South-East.

November 1st.—Same weather. Very injurious to the ripening grain.

November 2nd.—Milder warm weather.

November 3rd.—Same weather. (New moon). This afternoon the sergeant returned with the king of the Saldanhars, Oedasoa, and the secunde of his army, Koukoso, with a considerable retinue, but with only 19 sheep, 2 cows, a small bull and calf, besides a pack ox carrying his things and intended to carry him back. From the front hall they were conducted by the Commander to his own room, seated on a mat and welcomed for the present with a glass of wine and shaking of hands. Then fresh wheaten bread was served, with cheese and sugar in a tin dish, whilst Eva told them for us that only the great men in Holland always ate such bread and out of such dishes, but no common people, &c.

Herry, who was at the Fort, joined the party, but did not dare to squat down on the mat; neither Doman. After some friendly conversation of no importance with the chief as well as between him and Herry, he (Oedasoa) took a slice of bread and personally gave it to Herry. Doman, however, remained sitting somewhat at the back, but finally also received a piece from Koukoso, who, with Oedasoa, helped himself from the dish. With his own hand Oedasoa helped his daughter, a beautiful, well-shaped girl, not darker than an ordinarily white Mestiso. Neither was he ugly, in fact, all the people from the interior are fine, well-built men. A pity that they make themselves so ugly by besmearing themselves, &c.

November 4th.—Fine, cloudy, calm air. After the Thursday morning's sermon the following 'warning' was affixed at the proper place.

WARNING.

"As it has been observed that many, yea, even Company's servants drawing pay and board money (who have accordingly been corrected), as well as some freeman (who had, however, been prosecuted with only half proofs against them) do not hesitate to sell fresh bread, fixed at ten doits (een braspenningh) per lb., at 3 stivers to the public, which is shameful usury and a most injurious swindle, which may not be tolerated in a well-conducted Government, but should at once be suppressed and extirpated, therefore (we ordain that) every one (no one excepted, whether freemen or Company's servants) shall beware of making himself guilty of such bloodsucking (uytsuyperry) and not sell bread at more than a 'braspenningh' per pound, or butter, whether sheep or cow butter, at more than 15 stivers, whether it be to people on board or on shore; that no butter be kept back with the hope that a higher price may be obtained, to the great inconvenience of the public. Offenders to be fined as decreed last year, as in this not the slightest connivance will be tolerated, but the sentence carried out at once without distinction of persons. At the same time great attention is to be paid to this and other matters, that offenders may at once be corrected. Let therefore everyone beware of loss, especially the Company's servants, who are expressly forbidden to sell bread, for if convicted they shall be doubly fined or even more severely punished, according to circumstances and persons, as this course has been deemed best in the interest of the individual and all good residents.

In the Fort "the Good Hope," the 4th November, 1660.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

During the afternoon Oedasoa, Koukoso and Eva met the Commander and Council alone in his office, unattended by any other Hottentoots, in order to communicate, according to Eva, something private, which came to this that if we assisted him with men, when attacked by enemies, he would come and live nearer to us and fix his abode, with his huts, cattle and women, below the

Steenbergen, Hout Bay and Mountain valleys under our protection, when he would be able with our assistance to withstand his enemies.

He was told to inform us who those enemies were, for as we had once more made peace and a new alliance with the Chainouquas, himself, the Goringhaiquas and Gorachouquas, that it would be contrary to reason to war with our allied friends, as well as lend him men against those tribes. Eva interpreted that it was the strange tribes of the great Chariguriquas, Namanas and Chobonas.

Oedosoia was then told that it was our principal object to make friends with the people of the land and trade with them, but if he could find a way to supply us with such cattle as we continually required, as well as with the gold and precious stones that were to be found among the Chobonas, Namanas, &c., he would find us reasonable in every way and bring about that he will be acknowledged and sought after on account of his merchandize as one of the greatest potentates of the Hottentoots; which merchandise the tribes mentioned would be able to obtain from us through his means. But that this object could be better attained by kindness and friendly alliance than by war.

Little more could be obtained from him in reply to this, than that he believed that we were sufficiently provided with cattle. He was told, however, that we annually required for the ships and our men fully 1,000 good head of cattle. To this he gave no answer, but pretending to be sleepy he went to the front hall to take a little sleep.

In the meanwhile the 5 old and young cattle and 19 sheep were bartered from his men outside, who were three times daily lustily entertained with food, tobacco and brandy.

He, the chief, was specially honoured, as Sousoa was, with a parade and discharge of musketry, and beautifully and lustily with Koukosoia and his daughter entertained at, and from the Commander's table with 'Claversingel' music.

After that Eva came to talk to us about a large present to be prepared for him to-morrow or the day after, when he intended to leave.

November 5th.—Oedasoia and retinue leave with the following presents, viz. :—

2 pieces bar iron, weighing 20 lbs.	} total 35 lbs. iron.
2 „ flat „ „ 13 lbs.	
6 bunches red beads, weighing $\frac{1}{2}$ lb.	
1 chain round his neck, made of iron beads.	
10 sticks of thick yellow copper wire, weighing 9 lbs.	
1 axe.	
6 lbs. tobacco.	
1 doz. tobacco pipes.	
6 knives, and	
3 ends of old rope.	

Koukoso, his second (received)—

- 1 piece bar iron, weighing 20 lbs.
- 6 bunches red beads „ $\frac{1}{2}$ lb.
- 2 knives.
- 4 lbs. tobacco.
- 6 sticks thick copper wire, weighing $5\frac{1}{2}$ lbs.
- $\frac{1}{2}$ doz. tobacco pipes.
- 2 ends of old rope.

Oedaso's daughter, named Namies (received)—

- 6 bunches red beads, weighing $\frac{1}{2}$ lb.
- 2 knives.
- 4 lbs. tobacco.
- $\frac{1}{2}$ doz. tobacco pipes.
- 1 „ bead chains.
- 4 sticks thick copper wire, weighing 4 lbs.
- 5 „ thin „ „ 2 lbs.

Eva, the interpretrass, called by them Krotoa, who again leaves with Oedaso, receives for her services—

- 12 yellow copper plates, weighing 18 lbs.
- 12 bunches red beads „ 1 lb.
- 5 sticks thin copper wire, weighing 2 lbs.
- 10 „ thick „ „ 9 lbs. } together 11 lbs.
- 1 small roll of tobacco, weighing 4 lbs.
- $\frac{1}{2}$ doz. tobacco pipes.
- 2 cow hides.
- 1 axe.
- 2 pieces bar iron, weighing 40 lbs.
- 1 doz. bead chains.

Moreover they received for the journey fully 80 lbs. rice, 100 lbs. bread, 3 cans of brandy, 2 cans Spanish wine, 20 lbs. meal and some sugar and spices. All this is exclusive of what was consumed by them during their stay here, which consisted of—

- 150 lbs. biscuits.
- 16 cans of brandy.
- 254 lbs. rice.
- 10 lbs. tobacco.

November 6th.—Fine weather, like previously. Oedaso prepares to leave, but as his one pack ox could not carry all the presents, he decided to remain here until he had obtained more from home. He at once sent men away for the purpose, but in the meantime remained on our necks with a large number of his men, who were again treated and in every way fully encouraged that we might see what the result would be. But nothing particular was again mentioned by him, excepting that he would always maintain good friendship with us and permit free and unhindered trade with his people, &c., showing how the iron and copper beads should be made, and promising to encourage his people, as far as he was able, to bring us, besides cattle, also wax and white stones (? diamonds) found in the mountain, and possibly crystal, according to his own

1660.

—

description and that of Koukosoā, in the presence of Herry and Doman, at whose request, it seemed, he also begged that we would permit the Goringhaiquas, or Caapmen, again to settle on their lands, behind the 'Bosheuvel,' below the 'Steenbergen' and beyond our limits; as well as at the Hout Bay, and the 'Berghvalleyen,' &c. This we allowed on condition that they would not use any but the permitted roads, through the barriers and beyond the mounted guard which is the furthest beyond, and has the superintendence over everything, in order to prevent any Hottentots from travelling over any other road, or passing except through the barriers on their way to and from the Fort. And should they live in the 'Houtvalley' they were to travel along the seashore, along the 'Gevelbergen,' through the 'Leeuwen Cloof' in this direction, this being the road by which they drove off our first cattle in 1653, and the barriers through which they drove off most of the cattle last year, through the lastmentioned of which they and all animals must return to us, no other thoroughfare having been left open to them, every place having been nicely fenced in, which gives us greater security; which barriers it is not only necessary to keep in good repair, but every effort must be made to make the area occupied by us, stronger with a close hedge of bitter almonds and thorn trees, which we have already begun to plant this year, &c.

After some friendly conversation Oedasoā and Koukosoā had something to eat and were treated well with some glasses of wine in the Commander's office. He then went to the front hall to sleep there, after he had despatched some of his men to fetch more pack oxen on which to remove his presents, while Herry and Doman (no doubt from the wine having got into their heads) had more access to him for talking than before; but on account of their being merry with wine their conversation appeared to be of little importance.

Different kinds of beads having been shown to him and his men he said that mostly all would find a ready sale, if not among his own people, then among others from the interior, who, when informed of our disposition to make friendship with everyone, without war, would in time come down to us and buy all kinds from us, more even than he could tell, but if we wished to help him in war, much cattle, as well as a sufficient number of slaves, would thus be obtained.

He was told that we preferred to trade in friendship, as war was always uncertain, that we absolutely required cattle, and held it as our principal maxim to make friendship with all nations as far as practicable, as he himself had experienced, so that he might depend upon it that neither he nor his would ever be insulted or injured by us, but that we would always be towards each other as blood friends.

Towards evening some of Gonnomoā's people brought 19 sheep and 6 oxen, which were forthwith purchased. This Gonnomoā is

the other chief ruling the smaller section of the Cochoquas or real Saldanhars, who are divided into two governments, viz.: the upper, which is that of Oedasoa, who appears to be the highest born above all, and another or second, which is that of Gonnomoa, each consisting of different hordes, each of which has in turn its own petty chieftain, besides the abovementioned Choquees or Kings, who are respected according to descent or birth.

November 7th (Sunday).—Fine weather in the morning, but heavy S.E. in the afternoon. Oedasoa's two pack oxen arrive.

November 8th.—Same wind. After a good breakfast Oedasoa, his followers and Eva left at 10 o'clock, well satisfied with his presents which had been packed on three oxen. Shortly after he had taken leave of the Commande he said that he remained disposed henceforth to live in friendship with the Dutch all his life, and that if attacked by his enemies he would (having a lame arm as the result of his encounter with the lion last year and accordingly unable to defend himself in war as well as others could) place himself, his wives and cattle under our protection, and send out his other troops to make war everywhere in the country, but as for the reason stated he could not personally lead them, Koukoso and his people would therefore always remain in his neighbourhood to keep him company and off and on bring us sheep and cattle according to his ability. To this he was induced and encouraged in every way, if good entertainment and affable treatment can effect anything. These have especially been provided for him and the King of the Chainouquas (named Sousoa) and their wishes thoroughly and fully complied with. We trust that God the Lord will more and more grace this work with blessing and prosperity.

The Gorinaiquas, or Caapmen, very much wish to return and dwell about Houtbay, below the Steenberg, and everywhere outside our boundaries in the Caapland, but hitherto they have not ventured to approach nearer than opposite us behind the Leopard mountains. They promised us, that as they will never part with any of their cattle, to supply us with the wax of the honey eaten by them and found in the forests, which they had hitherto thrown away.

The Soaquas, a tribe without cattle, dwelling beyond, among the mountains of Africa (in't Overgebergte), and mostly robbers, told us that they would supply us with horses from their country. They brought in 2 or 3 stuffed heads, which were extraordinarily beautifully striped, but with ears as long as those of asses. The rest of the head is exactly, as regards head and mouth, that of a horse. If one were brought us alive we would be able to judge better, our men having seen a few now and then at a distance, running wild.

The Soaquas eat much of them, saying that the meat is better than beef. In order to induce them to bring us some, they were promised as much for one brought to us intact as we usually give

1660.

for 4 full grown oxen. They are such adepts at shooting with arrows, that it would be a pity if they could not bring us a living specimen. The freemen and others have accordingly also been promised that if they could manage to catch one and bring it alive to the fort they would receive a reward of £150. What the result will be, time will show.

November 9th and 10th.—Still heavy S.E. winds until the morning of the tenth, when it became calm, with a N.W. breeze. To-day the watermen brought us the first wax, about half a pound.

As heavy rewards had been offered for Volunteers prepared to proceed to Monomotapa, and some had offered their services voluntarily and are earnestly begging to be permitted to go, the following Resolution was adopted :—

Wednesday, the 10th November, 1660.

“There being at present, thank God, peace with the Gorinhaiquas and Gorachouquas, &c., who warred with us last year in their own fashion, and as we have further entered into friendly relationships with mostly all the Hottentoo tribes in the interior, viz., the Cochoquas, who are the real Saldanhars, and the Chainouquas, a much larger nation, subject to the Hameunquas, whose Lord is said to be the chief of all the Hottentoo race, of whose friendship made by the same with the Chainouquas there is no doubt, and which nation live nearest to the Chobonas (supposed to be the Monopotapers), mostly in a N.W. direction from this, so that with the friendship made with all this people the approaches thither have been made more secure for us than they were before, and for which reason the said nations (who had been here to make friendship) have accordingly been treated and entertained the more liberally, so that our people, travelling through the country may everywhere meet with a more friendly reception :—

And whereas, in answer to the report spread that an expedition was desired to proceed to Monomotapa, under the conditions stated below, Jan Danekaert, of Nynoven, who arrived here as ‘adelborst’ last year in *De Geerde Leeuw*, a person of more than an ordinary soldier’s capacity for such a land journey, has offered himself as leader of the adventurers, twelve in number, besides himself, namely :

Johannes Doerhagen, of Gronou, ‘adelborst’ ;

Pieter Meerhoff, of Copenhagen, arrived here last year in the *Princes Royal* as soldier, and who has since been employed as junior barber (surgeon) ;

Jan Baptist, of Frankfort, ‘adelborst’ ;

Theunes Kagh, of Rygenbagh, ‘adelborst’ ;

George Fredericus Weede, of Uts in Lunenburgh, ‘adelborst’ ;

Christiaan de Soete, of Tedegom, soldier ;

Pieter Roman, of Schorsel, soldier ;

Pieter Hansz, of Nymegen, soldier ;

Jacob Pritzel, of Dresden, 'adelborst', a miner;
 Pieter Harthoven, of Cologne, 'adelborst';
 Pelagius Weckerleyn, of Cosmis, 'adelborst';
 Cœnraet Schatman, of Dunkirk, soldier;

All fine, strapping, courageous men who, from personal desire and inclination, have offered themselves for the service, besides the said Jan Danckert, for the expedition; the following conditions have been laid before the said Danckert, viz.:—That the travellers shall remain away half as much longer than the time that the provisions taken with them will last; their pay to be doubled from the moment of their starting.

And if they find any permanent towns laid down in the charts given them, and they should decide to proceed further, their pay shall be increased from that time one portion more, viz., three times as much as their ordinary pay, until their return to that same spot and thence double as aforesaid until their arrival at the fort.

That of all the valuables in gold, precious stones, pearls, or whatever may be obtained by them on this their first journey, the value shall be royally paid out to them in cash according to the rates at home, however valuable it may be, and however cheaply they may have obtained it.

All this independent of the premium which each shall receive in accordance with the importance of their discoveries.

Especially if they succeed in reaching the permanent Towns of Monomotapa, Butua and Davugulat, and in the neighbourhood of the River Spiritu Sancto, and bring hither with them men of that country, with or without leaving some of our people there as hostages, whom we shall at all times endeavour to get back by all practicable means, &c.

Jan Danckerts shall during the journey receive double pay, and be acknowledged as the head of the expedition, and everyone shall make up his mind to go as far and remain away as long as their Commander may order, and share all comforts and discomforts with him, who shall treat all unwilling or contumacious members as if he were the Commander (Liebeeck) himself.

In case of his death, which God forbid, Joh. Dorhagen shall take his place and in case of his death then Pieter Meerhoff and so on to Jan Baptist, Theunis Kragh and George Fredericus successively; and whatever Jan Danckert and the majority may decide the others shall obey implicitly without regarding the objections of anyone (which we do not think need be feared), but the Resolution shall be carried out as is proper.

And whereas every member of this expedition not only appears willing but also cool, and many of them have volunteered for the service as soon as they heard of it, and have declared that they will render proper obedience, and have accepted the duty voluntarily and from personal inclination:—

1660.

And whereas Mr. Ryckloff van Goens, as Commissioner, did in his Instructions, amongst others, order us to send out such expeditions, and the Lords Seventeen not only desired the same in their despatches, but also expressly ordered us to offer rewards to such travellers according to the value of their discoveries: It was decided, after careful deliberation and consideration, especially of the friendship made with mostly all the Hottentoo tribes, not to delay this important expedition, but to despatch it as soon as possible, and to accommodate the travellers with three of the tamest yack oxen, in order to be able to take so much more provisions with them, as well as with some light merchandise of different kinds, made up in small parcels.

For that purpose, and because all kinds of beads are coming daily into greater favour with the foreign (vreemde) Hottentoots, who have for some time been visiting the Fort, and because we are not provided with such beads, it was decided to buy some samples from the French, besides other articles of merchandise which they have with them for traffic at Madagascar, if we can come to an agreement with them.

It was also decided to promote the following persons:—

Pieter Raderotjes, of Uts, in the land of Cologne, who arrived here as freeman in the *Arnhem* on the 16th March, 1659, with his sister Fytje Raderotjes, wife of the burgher Jacob Cloeten, who begged us to be taken into the Company's service, and who, since April last, has been employed at the Company's 'Schuur,' is, in consequence of his good knowledge of agriculture, accepted by us as agriculturist, at f10 per month, provided that he remains here in service ten years; his pay to commence on the 1st April, the day on which he entered on his duties at the 'Schuur.'

Pieter Mouw, of Dantzic, who arrived here in the *Orange* on the 12th July, 1659, as 'adelborst,' at f10 per month, and who has in many ways proved himself vigilant, and after the death of Corporal Elias Giers succeeded to the vacancy, is, at his request and for his abilities, confirmed in the rank of Corporal, at f14 per month, from the 25th October last.

Thus done in the fort 'The Good Hope,' *datum ut ante.*"

(Signed) JAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secret:

In confirmation of the above Resolution the following was likewise drawn:—

Memorandum for Jan Dankerts, as chief of the travellers and accompanying volunteers, for their information and attention in various matters, principally the following:—

"Whereas, for your own pleasure, you have decided to undertake this journey, and not to return within 'brec or four months, or

before you have found permanent habitations or another nation than the Hottentoots :

1660.

You shall, according to the chart given you, in order to reach as soon as possible the first place named, Cortado, on the river 'Infante,' situated about 40 Dutch miles from the sea shore, and about 110 in a north-easterly direction overland from this, at once proceed in the direction of False Bay, on the continent side, where Sousoa, the king of the Chainouquas, is often encamped, and with whom we lately made a treaty of good alliance and friendship, and who has promised that he will obtain for us from the Chobonas or Choboquas men and precious stones, as he may perhaps be induced to assist you somewhat in guiding you thither. You need not, however, expressly look for him, because, according to his information and the indications of the map, the way is clearly pointed out to you, the shortest that you can take in order to reach Cortado, where, according to the description, sand gold is found in the river and among the people.

Thence, further north by east, about 40 miles further, is situated, besides other places on either side, a town named Belugaris, on the river St. Lucia, which discharges itself into the sea into the Bay of Medaos do Ouro, which town or village is situated fully 60 Dutch miles westward from the sea.

Thirty miles further to the north-east lies the town Davagul, on the River 'Spiritu Sancto,' 70 miles westward from the coast, in which the Emperor of Monomotapa has his residence longer, and keeps more of his gold treasure than in the town of Monomotapa itself, which is situated on the same river, but 30 miles higher up in a westerly direction.

Beyond this river lies the real country (called) Batua. Twenty-five or thirty miles in a N.N. Easterly direction, and above the town Davagul, are situated the towns or villages Mogax and Agrasalle, right in the country, where Buramina de Oro and another small place near it are marked (on the chart), whence the Portuguese in Mozambique obtain all their gold.

This Portuguese factory is much further from it than the Cape, so that it is hoped that the natives may be induced to visit us by means of friendly intercourse, as well as the other place. This must be particularly attended to as your principal object ; and should you meet any natives capable of speaking the Portuguese language a great deal might be gained, as Jan Danckert has travelled in Italy, and Dorhagen knows the Latin language. You must, however, be on your guard, that, as the Portuguese are not in alliance with our state, the natives do not, in consequence of their friendly disposition towards that nation, do you any mischief or deceive you in any way.

It is, however, possible, and we firmly believe it, that in consequence of the tyrannical Government of the Portuguese, the natives may be found inclined to our peaceful intercourse, according to

1660.

information imparted to us ere this by Martinus Martinio, who has travelled through almost the whole world, and experienced and described much. But in order to instil proper confidence in the Dutch nation you must do your best to induce the natives to send one of them to visit us, to enable us to show our good disposition towards them more effectively, even if they wished to retain one of you as a hostage. This may be possible, as no doubt one of you will not be unwilling to remain there for the purpose, whilst we shall use every effort to get him back again.

And as the people around Monomotapa and Davagul, where the Emperor resides, as well as the land of Batua are rich in gold, and also those of the aforesaid river 'Spiritu Sancto,' we urge you carefully to attend to the following, make full notes and observe :

Firstly,—As soon as you have crossed the barrier over the 'Bracke' River you shall at once mark your course by compass and note down how many hours, half hours, longer or shorter, your stages are, just as the seamen do on board, and mark it down on a chart for the Lords Masters in the Fatherland. This should be your chief work and is not to be neglected.

You shall also mention where there are clay and agricultural soils, sandy, stony, mountainous country, water or running rivers, and in which direction they flow. Also, whether in any of the mountains or rivers any minerals exist, from which silver or gold may be extracted. For this purpose, Jacob Pritzel, who is a miner, will be of good service. You shall also observe whether the roads are everywhere passable for wagons, give names to prominent places, and ask after the names of the people, their chiefs and towns, that they may be known in future.

You must find out also, when you fall in with any tribe, on what they live, what chiefs they have, what clothing, what industry, what religion, what habitations, what defences and what they like best. For this purpose you will take with you beads of different kinds, strips of silk, prints, and other merchandise for their selection, and find out whether they have among them honey, wax, ostrich feathers, tusks, silver, gold, pearls, tortoise shell, horns, musk, civet, amber, fine skins, or anything else ; what useful tree or earth fruits the countries produce, and should you reach the coast anywhere, what bays there are, and what rivers run into the sea, what directions they take, what facilities there are for water, wood or refreshments, &c., and whether anywhere in the neighbourhood oysters or mussels containing pearls, and tortoises fit for making combs and other ornaments are obtainable.

What the strength of the nation is, with whom it is living in friendship or enmity and why, how they are generally called, and especially the names of their chief captains or kings, places, towns and villages, what their arms are, how they are disposed towards our nation, whether they are cruel or friendly and have a reasonable form of government. And that you may note down everything

carefully, we have for your further guidance given you a copy of the memorandum of the Seventeen, to guide you in making your reports, so that, besides our verbal instructions you may know how you are to act for your own honour and the gaining of the reward promised you, according to your deserts, which, God grant, may be considerable. In conclusion we wish you a happy journey to and fro, under the protection of the chief Preserver of all the good, and we shall daily remember you in our prayers, that He may remain with you with His grace.

In the Fort 'the Good Hope,' the 10th November, 1660."

(Signed) J. VAN RIEBEECK.

November 11th and 12th.—Quiet drizzly weather in the morning. Between 11 and 12 o'clock the travellers started for Monomotapa in the name of the Lord, and with the following provisions, ammunitions, and merchandize laden on three pack oxen, viz. :—

As samples and also to be used on the road to be bartered for food :

- 100 bunches red beads, ' quispel greyn,' weighing 8 lbs.
- 3 lbs. of all sorts of beads bought from the French.
- 1 bunch yellow beads, glass amber.
- 10 strings of all colours of skein silk, weighing 2 ' loot.'
- (loot = $\frac{1}{2}$ oz.)
- 1 roll tobacco, weighing 26 lbs.
- 6 doz. tobacco pipes.
- 1 ' St. Thomees ' dress.
- 1 strip of ' Negroos ' stuff.
- 1 piece red and white ditto.
- 2 do. Mourees.
- 2 do. Salmpourees.
- 2 do. Chintz.
- 2 do. Taffachilas.
- 1 do. Niquanias.
- 2 do. red, 2 do. blue and 2 do. white bethilles
- Some strips of all kinds of silks, and white handworked lace, silk ribbons and fancy trimmings (passementers).
- 10 lbs. yellow thin copper wire.
- 1 pair bracelets.
- 4 gilt chains.
- 1 doz. beads do.
- 1 parcel earrings.
- 2 copper bells (bellen).
- 2 copper do. (schellen).
- 2 copper small compasses.
- 4 French hatbands.
- 1 parcel with 100 needles for stitching.
- 2 small mirrors.

1660.

2 books white paper, 6 lead pencils, 1 bundle quills,
as stationery.

Materials.

2 pickaxes.
4 handaxes.
1 spade.
1 wimble.
5 lines, viz., 4 white and one tarred.

Provisions.

520 lbs. biseuits.
50 lbs. pork.
2 'mengelen' (4 pints) brandy, and 2 do. Spanish wine
in two tin flasks.
50 lbs. salt.
1 small bag of pepper, 2 oz. mace, $\frac{1}{2}$ oz. cloves, 2 oz.
nutmegs, $\frac{1}{4}$ lb. cinnamon, 4 lbs. sugar—as spices.

War ammunition.

13 pistols.	4 arquebusses.
13 muskets.	2 $\frac{1}{2}$ doz. fish hooks.
12 cutlasses.	Fish lines.
195 lbs. lead.	One string pack thread.
65 lbs. powder.	1 small kettle.

This afternoon the Commander and Sieur de Man went out to visit the eornlands and found the barley ripening beautifully everywhere; next week it will be cut. The haymakers are likewise very busy, and the rest of the crops are fairly good, &c.

November 13th.—For the second time, one of the Caapmen brought a piece of wax weighing about 2 lbs., which, though very impure, was well paid for, in order to encourage the trade and to teach them to do better in future. Drizzly weather in the morning.

November 14th (Sunday).—Dark, westerly weather in the morning, which cleared off in the afternoon, when the watchmen on the kloof signalled that a vessel was in sight.

November 15th.—Fine, lovely and variable weather. This morning early the vessel arrived in the Bay about eleven o'clock, thank God! She was the *Oliphant*, commanded by Phillips de Baeker, with Jan Raphoen as junior merchant. Had left the 'Vlie' on the 27th June last, with 364 men, of whom 6 had died. About 40 were suffering from scurvy, who were at once brought on shore in hospital in order to recover more rapidly. To-day more than three boat loads of fresh fish, a great abundance of salad and other vegetables, as well as of fresh meat, were sent on board as refreshments. She had called nowhere, and had sailed as far as the islands of Tristan d'Acunha on the 23rd last in company of the *Loosduynen*, which may be expected every hour of the day.

November 17th.—Full moon. Very misty weather in the morning, which cleared off with a N.W. breeze. About 8 o'clock

a.m. the *Loosduynen* arrived, thank God! safely with 52 men. Two had deserted in Gunca, at Cabo Monte (where she had called as she had done previously in Torbay for water), and been left there. One had died. She had called nowhere else. In company of the flute *Vollenhoven* she had left the Texel on the 22nd May, with 55 men, commanded by Carsten Crynsz: Reehter, with Cornelis Valckenier as bookkeeper.

November 18th.—The same weather.

November 19th.—Light showers, with stiff S.E. squalls, which grew worse and worse during the afternoon.

November 20th.—Same S.E. winds. The skippers of the vessels ordered on shore and with them the following Resolution was adopted:—

Saturday, the 20th November, 1660.

“As the officers have complained, and the consumption accounts of the *Loosduynen* have proved it, that in consequence of the long voyage of that vessel she had been quite denuded of pot food, and must necessarily be furnished with fresh supplies for her further voyage to Batavia, the Council, strengthened with the officers of the *Oliphant* and *Loosduynen*, after having examined the stock of the former vessel, found that the *Loosduynen* could be supplied with

1 half aam oil.

2 aums brandy and

4 casks of barley and peas.

Decided accordingly with warrant under the Commander's hand.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort ‘the Good Hope,’ on the day and in the year above mentioned.”

(Signed)

J. VAN RIEBEECK,

PHILLIPS DE BACKER,

JEAN RAPHOEN,

CARSTEN CRYNSZ: RECHTER,

ROELOFF DE MAN,

ABRAHAM GABBEMA,

CORNELIS VALCKENIER,

PIETER EVERAERTS,

HENDRICK LACUS, Secret:

November 21st.—Windy S.E. weather in the morning, but calm towards evening.

November 22nd-25th.—Stiff windy days from the S.E. Towards evening the Chocque, chief or king of the Cochoquas or Saldanhars, Oedaso, returned to the fort with a large number of his people, bringing nothing but 16 sheep.

November 26th.—Fine, lovely weather in the morning. Bartered the 16 sheep. At his request Oedaso was brought on board, in order to see the ships, where he was well entertained.

November 27th.—Variable winds, mostly westerly. The *Loosduynen* receives her despatch and the officers receive the letters for Batavia. May God grant them a safe passage.

1660.

—

November 28th (Sunday).—Calm weather. The *Oliphant* receives her despatch, together with the letters for Batavia.

November 29th.—Misty N. weather. The *Perkytjen* arrives from Saldanha Bay. When she left on the 23rd October last, the S.E. wind blew her right away to St. Helena Bay, where she was detained some days until a N. breeze enabled her to reach Saldanha Bay, where she was completely cleaned. She only obtained 10 sheep there, but brought between 6,000 and 7,000 dried ‘harders’ and fuel. On the 19th she was already within gunshot of Robben Island, but was driven back to Dassen Island by the S.E. wind. There she landed the sheep and was only able to leave the spot yesterday.

November 30th.—N.W. breeze, preventing the *Oliphant* and *Loosduynen* from leaving.

December 1st.—Dark sky, same wind.

December 2nd.—Calm weather. The two vessels reach the outer roadstead.

December 3rd.—Same calm weather. The vessels’ boats came in to fetch more water, and were supplied with some sheep and garden produce, also $\frac{2}{4}$ of a bullock for the *Oliphant* and $\frac{1}{4}$ for the *Loosduynen*.

During the afternoon Commander Van Riebeeck left in the *Perkyt* for Saldanha Bay in order personally to inspect the same. He left the following memorandum for the Junior Merchant Roelof de Man and the Fiscal Abraham Gabbema, who are to act together during his absence:—

“That matters shall be kept going and attended to in the ordinary manner. That for the present, summer lands be cleaned and prepared with all possible despatch below the ‘Coorn Sehuyr’ as far as the river side inclusive, until the drink water river is ready, that then the men may be able to raise the embankment for the dam and so have it ready without delay.

That Gysbert and three men of the ‘Coorn Sehuyr’ shall at once remove the wood cut on the ‘Newlands,’ split and collected near the ploughed lands, and burst the thick roots with powder, in order to be used for the lime kilns; that thus the lands may be completely cleared for the winter corn of the next season.

Ammon and his men shall continue sawing platform planks for the guns, in the forest, which shall be removed thence every other Saturday by the men of the ‘Sehuyr.’

The carpenters shall at once close the gaps in the stockade round the Fort and level the berm there. And when they have finished the N. W. side they shall begin the same work at the Fort, provided that the battery (‘eat’) is covered above with tiles, and the work at the small store, which is being renewed, does not stand still, much less that on the new vessel for Robben Island, &c.

When the gardener has cleaned the gardens of weeds he shall with all his available men commence levelling the new gardens, draw the plough through them once and then harrow them, &c.

Strict watch shall be kept by the outside and inner guards, and nothing shall be neglected. Good government, justice and everything connected with them shall be carefully maintained according to circumstances and the orders promulgated for the same, consulting with each order in every case so that the Junior Merchant and Fiscal shall undertake nothing without each other's knowledge or without previous communication with one another.

As the Commander must necessarily leave for Saldanha Bay in the *Parkytjen* the said Junior Merchant and Fiscal are appointed in his place during his absence, with authority to administer everything as if he were present personally, and watch over the Fort and further possessions of the Company, as it should be. And we therefore commend the officers and inferior servants of the Company, as well as freeman and all others, whoever they may be, to acknowledge them as such until the Commander's return, to obey and be submissive to them as before said, that everything may be maintained in proper order and discipline.

Particular attention shall above all be paid to the crops, and wherever shall be necessary, the Company's slaves shall be employed for collecting the ears on the half, as was done at Tielmans, in order to obtain more grain. This has been found worth the trouble.

Care shall also be taken that the pay and business books of the Company are kept balanced and correctly closed, that on his return he may be able to compare them with the contents of the warehouses, stores, &c. The account of every one is to be kept up to date on debtor and creditor side, that everything be in order, and it may appear at once how and for what the material, &c., taken out has been employed.

Not the slightest neglect shall be permitted in this; and for that purpose everyone shall be kept at his duty.

Likewise Potter, lately employed as a draftsman.

These are the principal matters to which we draw your attention, for having lived here a considerable time the persons entrusted with the Government should have a sufficient knowledge of affairs, and we further commend to them the good harmony, discipline and the discharge of the Company's most important service in everything that may occur during the Commander's absence."

In the Fort 'The Good Hope,' the 3rd Dec., Ao. 1660."

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

December 4th.—Fine weather, wind variable.

December 5th (Sunday).—Fine, clear sunshine; same breezes as yesterday. Heavy S.E. in the afternoon, which lasted until late in the night.

December 6th.—Fine weather in the morning; the South-easter, however, continuing, the freemen left with their boats for Dassen Island and Saldanha Bay, The S.E. wind blew very violently, continuing until

1660.

—

December 7th.—Late into the night of this day.

December 8th.—Fine sunshine in the morning; The S.E. still blowing on the other side of the Bay. During the afternoon sultry weather, with a N.E. breeze.

December 9th.—Dark, cloudy weather in the morning, with rain. Breeze northerly. The Commander returns between one and two in the afternoon from Saldanha Bay. Nothing particular had happened during his absence, except that some Hottentoots had brought some articles for barter, and the farmers were busy harvesting.

His Honour found affairs here in the same good order in which he had left them

He found Saldanha Bay to be an excellent harbour with pure sand in the anchor grounds, and easy of access to ships, which would be sheltered there from all winds. It was also rich in fish of divers delicate kinds, easily caught with hook or sein, and as good as one could ever wish for.

But there is no good fresh water there at all, or any suitable ground on which to sow or plant anything; as all the mountains, hills and valleys consist of only white coral or 'bick' stone (beautiful for masonwork), which causes the salt-peterishness of the water according to a trial made with some of these stones laid for 24 hours in Cape water, which we found in consequence as saltish and salt-peterish of taste as that at the real watering and other places.

In Lacus Bay there is not always water in summer time. It has been properly laid down in the chart, but is quite unserviceable and too dangerous as an anchoring place because of the S.S.E. winds.

But Pottersbay (also without water, but full of fish) can harbour from 2 to 4 return ships, which can easily, after having been sheltered there from the S.S.E. winds, run out with a northerly breeze towards Table Bay. The best, however, in any case is Salmanders Bay, as assisted with the ebb tide which is very strong, ships may with one or two tacks easily get outside.

This Saldanha Bay can therefore only be of service to such return ships that in consequence of the S.S.E. winds miss the roadsteads of Robben and Dassen Islands, which can only seldom happen, as fully pointed out in the ships' instructions. Moreover the roadsteads of these islands are so convenient that vessels can easily weigh and make for Table Bay long before they can (whilst waiting for wind and tide) get out of Saldanha Bay into the open sea, where, should they again encounter a S. Easter, they might be blown away a considerable distance and be placed in a very desolate condition, that is during the S. E. Monsoon, as will appear from the memorandum to be drawn up on the subject by the Commander in consultation with the skipper and mates of the *Perkyt* after a thorough enquiry. In the meanwhile there is hereto annexed the journal during the Saldanha Bay trip.

“ Between 2 and 3 o'clock in the afternoon of the 3rd the Commander left in the *Perkyt* for Saldanha Bay. Passed Robben Island in the evening and was becalmed nearly the whole night between that and Dassen Island.

About noon on the 4th passed with the same S.W. breeze Dassen Island, and about half an hour before sunset arrived in Saldanha Bay before Teelings Bay.

On the 5th (Sunday) landed in the morning, with the same breeze, together with the skipper and some men, at the ‘Oliphants Hoek,’ and not only inspected that spot, but the whole neighbourhood on the south side with all its valleys. We found the whole quite useless, consisting of only white free stone (‘bick steen’) which made all the water saltpeterish and saltish. Not always could we find any soil fit for agriculture or gardening, so that there is nothing to do there for the Company. There is not a land in the world so poor and without the blessing of God the Lord, as it seems; only fish is very abundant in that bay, whilst on this side it is very convenient for all ships to anchor in Teelings and Salmanders Bays.

On the 6th we sailed in the morning across with a S.W. breeze to Pottersbay, and having anchored there went overland to inspect Lacus Bay, which we found unserviceable. Pottersbay can only accommodate from 2 to 4 ships, judging from the S.E. storm which arose at noon, immediately after the return of the Commander on board, when the mooring rope broke at once (as we lay somewhat outside) and we had to throw out our daily and sheet anchors. But the waves and seas were so tremendous that we feared every moment that both these cables would also break and the vessel be cast on shore; the boat's painter also gave way, and with difficulty we secured her. Hence this bay would hardly be safe for more than two or four return ships. Towards evening the storm abated.

On the 7th we had fairly good S.E. weather, and saw the free-men's vessel, the *Peguyu*, lying at the southern point of this Pottersbay. Coming on board, the men reported that they had with their consort arrived there about 10 o'clock last night, having left Table Bay at 9 o'clock in the morning, called at Robben Island, and left that spot with very fine weather. However, shortly after noon they had encountered the same storm, and having reached the lee of Dassen Island found that their consort's rudder was broken so that she was obliged to remain there. They, however, could not do the same, but came here at the risk of their lives, and without any food, which was all on board of their consort. Often they had been in that state, so that they believed that they would perish. During all their lives they had never experienced such a S.E. storm at the Cape or its neighbourhood.

They were kept on board in order to recover the lost anchor, but as the wind became violent again, the *Perkyt* sailed further into the bay for better protection.

1660.

—

Towards evening the weather abated, but when we wished to haul up the lost anchor the boy rope broke, so that we were obliged to cast down the grapnel near it.

On the 8th the skipper himself proceeded with the ship's boat to the spot with a small grapnel in order to recover the anchor, which he succeeded in doing with the assistance of the freemen's vessel. After that the wind veered towards the west, so that we went under sail in the afternoon, meeting in the mouth of the bay the other freemen's boat, bringing a letter from the Cape that everything was still well there. Proceeding on our voyage, and the wind turning towards the north, the Commander arrived here in the *Perkyt* on the 9th about one o'clock in the afternoon."

December 9th.—Fine, rainy weather. Good for the plantations.

December 10th.—Same westerly weather. The Commander and Fiscal go out to inspect the lands and other matters in all directions, in order to give such directions as were required.

December 11th.—Same favourable weather. Nothing particular occurred.

December 12th (Sunday).—Clear sunshine, with a N.W. breeze.

December 13th.—Fine weather, suitable for vegetation; soaking rains and a stiff N.W. breeze.

Monday, the 13th December, 1660.

"The Commander having, during his voyage to Saldanha Bay in the *Perkyt*, experienced the very unfavourable condition of that bay for return ships drifting by (which happens often annually) to reach this (Table Bay) in good time, as well as that there in so good water obtainable there, or the least land fit for rearing fruit for refreshments; whilst on the other hand he witnessed the more favourable facilities of the Roadsteads of Robben and Dassen Islands, whence vessels can quickly reach Table Bay: the Council, after consideration of matters, deem it highly necessary, yea! altogether expedient, in consequence, as soon as possible to despatch the *Parkytjen* to the said Islands for the express purpose of once more sounding those Anchorages and note down carefully how and where the return ships drifting by (which generally happens every year) may lie protected in the securest manner from the violent S. and S.S.E. winds, in order, as soon as these winds subside, at once to proceed to Table Bay with the west-south-west, northerly or N.W. breeze, which often blows unexpectedly.

Pieter Danielsz Koocker, appointed to succeed skipper Isbrant van Bancken, who has left for Batavia, and the junior mate Christoffel Handelsman, successor to the chief mate on the aforesaid galiot, having requested the Commander and Council to be granted the increased pay attached to their new ranks, it was decided, considering their efficiency and good conduct, &c., to grant them the following certificates, viz.:—

Pieter Danielsz Kooeker, of Bommel, who arrived here on the 27th June last in the galiot the *Parkyt* as chief mate at f48 per month, at present provisional skipper on that vessel, in consequence of the departure of skipper Isbrant Baneken, which appointment he has satisfactorily filled since the 28th October last, is confirmed in that rank, and according to the 'artieul brief,' by halving of pay, granted a salary of f60 per month from the first of January next, provided that he serves out his time for it.

Christoffel Handelman, of Yburgh, who arrived here in the same vessel as junior mate at f32 per month, and succeeded Kooeker as first officer, is confirmed in his appointment, with a salary, according to the rules, of f40 per month, on the same terms as above.

Maerten Jansz, of 'Hoogh Caspel uytte Streecq,' who arrived here in the same vessel as quartermaster at f14, and was employed almost the whole voyage as cook and steward, in the place of Jacob Albertsz: Camp (found unfit for the post and therefore discharged), is confirmed in that appointment with a salary of f20 per month, or f1 more than the halving of the pay, to take effect from the 28th October last, on the same conditions as above.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort "the Good Hope," *datum ut supra.*"

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTSZ,
HENDRICK LACUS, Seeret:

December 14th.—Very pleasant, calm, sunshiny weather in the morning. Towards evening two of the travellers returned to the fort, on account of illness. Ten days ago they had parted from the expedition, proved by the following certificate which they produced:—

"Whereas Gregorius Fredericus and Pieter Harthove have requested to be permitted to return to the Fort, saying that they are not strong enough to complete the journey, we have after careful deliberations decided to grant their request and supply them with bread for eleven days, which will be sufficient for their return journey. They left us on the 6th December, 1660. Confirmed with our signatures."

(Signed) JAN DANCKAERT,
PIETER MEERHOFF,
JOHANNES DORHAGEN,
T. K.
JEAN BAPTISTA.

Here follows the letter of Jan Danckaert, the head of the expedition.

To the Commander,

Mr. Van Riebeeck,

"As Gregorius Fredericus and Pieter Harthove are returning to

1660.

—

the Fort, I cannot refrain from informing you of the health of us all. Only Theunis Kagh is slightly weak from dysentery, which I hope will soon be over. We are all still full of courage to perform our journey, though we have laboured 8 or 10 days fruitlessly to cross the mountains. Hitherto this has been impossible for us. But our hope is that if we cannot reach Corrado, we shall arrive at Mosata. For that purpose we are travelling as much as possible N.N. by E. and N.N.E. We trust by the grace of God, should our travels not succeed according to our wishes, to be home again in February, but should everything happen as we wish it, in November, 1661. I remain, with our united greetings (Signed), Jan Danekaert.”—(Below stood in the margin):—At a Fountain, the 6th December, 1660.

From this note, containing their decision to proceed to Mossata, should they fail in their endeavours to reach Corrado (Mossata, according to Linschoten's chart, lying on the river towards the coast near Cabo das Vacas, named Dubaya, and above C. Talhado R. de pescaria), and thus along that river in a northerly direction towards Samut and Cummassa, they will evidently endeavour to proceed along the mountains in order to go round them and to reach Jouros, and thence Monomotapa, Davagul, &c., which, God grant may be successful, as according to the two who have returned they were still full of courage and decision to complete their journey; the two being dissatisfied with themselves that, in consequence of their debility, they were deprived of the honour of such a notably rare journey, because of the hopes which they cherished of a good success, &c.

From the note it is evident that they had made fruitless efforts to cross the steep mountain ranges of Africa (fully double the height of Table Mountain), and according to the two who have returned, to get as far as 48 Dutch miles from this, so that they were obliged to take quite a northerly course, whilst one of their pack oxen fell down a precipice and was killed, notwithstanding the three had been off loaded and their loads had been carried by the men up the mountains, so that at present they have only two left.

For rations each one took one biscuit daily, also the two Hottentots, viz., the interpreter Doman and Bisente, who were told when the two travellers were returning that they also might go back with them if they liked. They were, however, determined to remain with the expedition to the last, saying that they had promised the Commander this. It seems that Doman wishes to put himself right again, and to repair his faults in connection with last season's war (which ended contrary to his expectations and their shame) by means of extraordinary services, which will certainly be beneficial for the travellers.

For adding to their larder they had already shot three large elands. In the rivers here and there they had caught many beautiful barbels and other fish.

They had also fallen in with a certain small (sized) poor people which had helped them during their passage over the first mountain range and shown them good friendship. They had presented them with some dried fish and honey. They are little people, which ere this had more than once been met by men sent out by us on expeditions nearer this; very poor in condition, living in bad low huts made of branches which our people found standing empty here and there, and which these little people appeared to occupy during the night. They are well provided with bows and arrows and know very well how to use them to kill game for their food, using also honey for that purpose. They are covered with even worse skins (of wild animals) than those of the Hottentoots, and accordingly not so dirty, dirtiness being a sign of richness in cattle and condition, &c. They have also curly Caffer hair and are of the same colour and language, somewhat modest, though also clucking like Calicut Cocks (turkeys). The further one proceeds into the interior the more this is experienced. Among these Hottentoo tribes the great ones have a language which they use among each other, but which the common people do not understand, though no one has been found among them anywhere that knows anything of reading or writing.

One of our people named Pieter Meerhoff, who has a knowledge of surgery, had shot a wild horse below the mane in the neck. The animal having fallen down, Meerhoff had jumped on it, intending to cut off one of its heel sinews, but not getting his knife out soon enough, the animal had time to jump on its legs and with him on his back make a leap over a stream, so that he fell off and received a kick in the face.

This horse was very beautifully gray dappled over its whole body except behind from the back over the buttocks and along the legs which were flame coloured, with white, sky blue and reddish brown stripes, wonderfully beautiful. It had small ears just like a horse, a fine head and slender legs like the best horse that could be wished for.

The stuffed heads and pieces of skin which the Hottentoots sometimes brought us belong evidently to another sort, as they have long ears, though extraordinarily, curiously, and beautifully flame coloured in white and chestnut brown. Our people saw many of them in the country, snapping at them like dogs, just like mules, to which they may best be likened. The Hottentoots also distinguish these two sorts from each other, as they call the horses *Hagua* and the mules *Doqua*. We cannot, however, induce them any longer to bring us some young ones alive, no matter how much we offer them as a reward; evidently because they see more plainly every day that we know how to keep them by those means too much under control, &c.

They had seen only one elephant, but many rhinoceroses, as well as multitudes of harts, roebucks, and elands everywhere at

1660

the waters, also pheasants, partridges, doves, &c., but very wild everywhere.

They believed that the miner had discovered red copper in a certain mountain, but as yet there had been no semblance of any other valuable minerals.

The men who had returned, had found a better road along the back of the mountains which they had crossed on their outward journey, and in their weak state only took ten days to accomplish the distance back, which in going had taken them more than 20 days. They had been well treated by the Hottentoots whom they had met here and there, as well as by the little people above mentioned, &c. The road is therefore safe enough, but the travellers find travelling very difficult in consequence of the heavy bush everywhere, and the steep mountains in their course, as they do not wish to go much out of their way by searching for the paths of the Hottentoots, wishing to make their journey as short as possible.

The two who have returned we might employ with a wagon, which on occasions would be very welcome.

December 15th.—Fine weather. The Commander goes out to inspect the lands, forests, &c, and arriving home in the evening he found Sousoa, the king or chief of the Chainouquas, with a large following and Herry as interpreter, at the Fort. They had brought with them a large number of cattle (83) and sheep (71), and were accordingly well entertained and well taken care of; also Herry, because he thus tries to make himself acceptable likewise, &c.

December 16th.—Full moon. Fine clear air in the morning, with a stiff dry S.E. wind, which causes the oats, wheat and rye to ripen lustily, so that the mowers are everywhere very busy to commence work.

The *Perkyt* receives its despatch, with the following instructions to the officers:—"As the service urgently requires it for security of the Company's vessels, especially the return ships, which are annually blown off the coast by the violent S.E. winds and so often cannot reach this Bay, that the roadsteads of Robben and Dassen Islands shall be properly sounded, you shall with the first favourable wind first perform that duty at Robben Island and afterwards proceed to Dassen Island for the same purpose, and confine yourselves principally to sounding and examining carefully the ground there for the safe shelter of all vessels from the S.S.E. winds, showing where they are sandy, where the anchorage is good, and where the Company's large and small vessels may most safely ride. You are not to return before this work has been thoroughly done as we have more fully explained it to you verbally, according to our Resolution of the 13th last expressly adopted for that purpose. And that you may do so with the greater facility, we have entrusted you with no other duty besides. We expect you back

at the proper time in good health, depend on your zeal, and wish you a happy voyage to and fro. On your return you may bring with you the sheep which you bartered at Saldanha Bay and placed on those Islands."

1660.

In the Fort the 'Good Hope,' the 16th day of December, 1660.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

The *Perkyt* leaves during the forenoon. The 83 cattle were bought from the Chainouquas for beads, tobacco and pipes and the 71 sheep for copper, tobacco and pipes. So that in consequence of their preference for beads (so little in value, but esteemed by them far above copper, which, however, they take for sheep) three cattle hardly cost more than a sheep, which generally costs us from 20 to 30 stivers each, but for all that cheap enough, so that we take as many as we can get. These Chainouquas, who live eastward and have their trade there, seem to prefer the red beads and the 'kabarys' (? cowries), whilst the Cochoquas, or Saldanhars, living towards the N.W., prefer the red copper chains. From the latter, however, we obtain the least cattle, but on the other hand more sheep. They are, therefore, in consequence of this noble trade, when they visit us in hundreds (among them many Caapmen and tobacco thieves) lustily entertained by us with food and brandy, which are the heaviest tax on our merchandize. Their chief Sousoa, however, dressed in beautiful leopard skins, Choro, the chief of the tobacco thieves, and Herry were separately served in the Commander's dining room and regaled on sugared cheese and fresh bread in a tin dish, as well as Spanish wine, *quasi* a royal entertainment, separating them from the common people, &c., which entertainment had the more willingly been provided for them because they had found and returned a pack ox belonging to the Agriculturist Harman Remajenne, which had strayed away a few days ago, and for which they received a small present of a span of tobacco and 2 bunches of beads, a sign that they wish to prove their friendship and fidelity. After this, Sousoa, still half happy from the wine, left towards evening with all his people, without waiting for the presents which Herry told him the Commander was preparing him for the morrow. He had, however, replied that he intended to return within a few days with another large troop of cattle, together with another grand lord, one of his allies, who had never been out in this direction, but was now inclined to have himself conveyed hither on a pack ox, in order to see the Commander and make his acquaintance. His name was Hamkeysooa, with his subjects a branch of the Hamcumquas, who never move their huts, but earn their living by cultivating Dacha, among whom Sousoa disposes his merchandize for cattle, which they have in extraordinary numbers, as well as the tribes living still further towards the N.E., who in their turn obtain their goods from the Hamcumquas, to whom they are subject, viz.: Chamaquas, Omaquas, Atiquas, and Houtunquas. All Cauquas, and like the

1860.

—

Hamecumquas all Dacha planters, rich in cattle and men, and having permanent residences. They live, however, in mat huts like all the Hottentoots, and are clothed and besmeared like the latter. Beyond them the Choboquas or the people of Monomopata are supposed to live, some of whom Herry had seen among the Chainouquas, though he had never been in their country. They are black Caffres, like the Guinea and Angola slaves, dressed in calf and sheep skins, of which they have many. Of gold and precious stones he knew nothing more than what he had heard from Sousoa. All these nations reside mostly between the middle of this African Continent and the sea to the east of the Cape, where, according to Herry, they would be found in various bays, and friendly reception would be received from them if our people only told them that they were of Soury's nation, as the Commander is known by that name everywhere among the Hottentoo tribes. It means as much as 'Lord of the Land,' who wishes to make friendship with all nations, and advise them all to live in friendship with one another, &c., so that everyone (hearing of the Dutch nation) would be very anxious to see us.

Those who reside towards the N.W. from the middle of the African Continent towards Saldanha Bay and Angola are, first, the Cochoquas, whose paramount Chiefs are Oedasoia and Gonnomoa.

The next are the great and little Chariguriquas, who elect their chiefs, but have rebelled against the Cochoquas, all Hottentoots like this Cape tribe, and then the Namaquas, dressed in prepared skins, who make baskets and vessels large and small, and also churn as is done in Holland. In the vessels they preserve the milk, and eat with spoons made out of tortoise shells. They have permanent huts with which they do not travel from one place to another, but they have no stone houses. It seems that Herry is now beginning to be more truthful in his communications, seeing that we can no longer be hoodwinked, as we are now obtaining much information from the Chainouquas. In this respect Eva has given much false information to please him. Much of this is now becoming evident, though off and on we still find her 'drawing the longbow.' She knows how to flatter and to talk, as she thinks that it is acceptable. At present she is staying for a while with her brother-in-law Oedasoia, dressed in Hottentoo clothing. Herry lives with the Chorachouquas, on the Chainouquas road, whom, if he sees approaching with cattle, he accompanies to serve them here as interpreter, as Doman is away with the expedition, for which at present he has received such a good reward that he is beginning to become once more a good servant.

December 17th.—Fine, cloudy, calm weather in the morning. Herry returns home quite happy after he had been shown the samples of the French beads, all of which he approved. They were accordingly received to-day by the Fiscal and the Sergeant

from the priests at the latters' previous offer and at the price agreed upon with the Commander, together with 6,000 flints.

The *Parkytjen* arrives this afternoon from Robben Island to notify that food was required for the sows and their young, the latter dying in consequence.

Also that the stable and its roof had been greatly injured by the last S.E. gale.

The officers of the galiot had finished their work of surveying and sounding, and found the grounds and roadsteads as laid down in the charts and according to instructions given them, so that in this respect no change is necessary.

She again leaves this evening for Dassen Island to continue the survey (see 16th instant).

Nine sheep bartered from the Chainouquas, who had arrived later, for copper, tobacco and pipes. During this visit of the Chainouquas we have obtained from them 83 cattle and 80 sheep. They tell us that within 8 or 10 days they will bring another large troop.

December 19th (Sunday).—Same weather. The Hottentoo Claas Das informed us that some of the Cachouquas (Oedasoas' people) had been told that three of our travellers were laid up, a long way off, among the Soaquas, with sore legs and feet, caused by the brushwood. These Soaquas are mountain tribes principally living on the game which they kill. Our three men were staying with and being maintained by them with hart and rhinoceros meat, and after having rested awhile intended to resume their journey homewards.

December 20th.—Fine weather in the morning, with a S.S.E. breeze. The Company's new sloop named 't *Vliegertjen* was for the first time despatched to Robben Island with the following letter to Otto Jansz.

"Received yours of the 17th instant. Are surprised that you did not mention the number of ewes. We now send you another good Dutch ram, though we believe that the two young ones last sent you will be old and strong enough for breeding purposes. We are also surprised that you are in need of food for the pigs, as Ryk Overhagen has had during the past years beautiful cabbages and water melons in the enclosed garden, and made a good mess for the sows of chopped cabbage leaves, thus accustoming them to return home every evening. This the freemen at the Fort are also doing beautifully, so that we do not know what you have let the men and the two slaves do all that time, except taking care of the sheep (which is a trifling matter) and minding the garden by planting it full of crisp cabbage, which can be so very easily done, as you have manure in abundance, and we have purposely gone to the expense of enclosing the garden with a wall to protect it from the animals, whilst the geese could easily be kept out of it with a gun fired by those working in it, as this would

1660.

make them shy ; for how would it otherwise be possible to keep them out of the lands here which cover so very many morgen of ground ? Moreover they make a very delicate dish, though it seems that you wish us with our own hands to stuff it into your mouths. But if you do not know how to attend to these matters better and keep your men at their duty, in which you are always supported by us, there are persons here who are only too anxious to have that good appointment and might be sent over to take your place, as it is not convenient to the Company because of a little quarrelling among the men continually to send others in their stead. For that Commanders are appointed in order to keep them to their duty and in peace, &c.

Nothing will come of your request to be made a freeman on the Island, as it will be inconvenient to the Company to have freemen there. You may, therefore, dismiss that from your mind. If, however, you deem yourself fit for agriculture, you may realize your wishes here at the Cape.

We send you some cut tobacco for the slaves and four casks of bran for the sucking pigs. If you had taken good care of the garden this bran mixed with vegetables would have gone a long way. Now, however, you must instead collect wild sorrel and purslain which the pigs on the island eat. This chopped up in water and mixed with bran will be some substitute for cabbage leaves, for if you continue to waste the food as you have done hitherto, the pigs will become a too expensive luxury. You are to keep better order in these and other matters, and this at once, otherwise we shall be obliged to send over another man in your stead, as long waiting will be too injurious to the Company.

The beacon fires must also be carefully attended to, and every evening a good look out for ships shall be held. This must never be neglected.

You must let us know for whom you require the 'negros' clothing and hat, that we may debit him with them.

The Fiscal will on an early day visit you to make a personal inspection, and tell you further what is to be done. You shall, therefore, regulate your duties accordingly. He shall also with the carpenter inspect the damage done to the scaffolding (stellingh) in order to have it properly repaired."

In the Fort the Good Hope.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

In consequence of the large number of cattle lately obtained for the Company by the opulent barter with the natives, which had been so much desired, so that what we have now must be depastured beyond our present limits, which have been already planted with bitter almonds as a protecting fence, and which are growing fairly, the Commander went out expressly to see how far that fence might be further extended in order to include sufficient pasturage for our present wants, but as all this could not be done

in one day further inspection will take place of the rest of the country, as more pasturage is urgently required.

In the meanwhile one bull and 2 young oxen were bartered from the Cochouquas for beads, tobacco and pipes, also 5 sheep for copper and ditto. They, however, could tell us nothing about our travellers, so that we hope that the bad news received yesterday is untrue.

This evening orders were issued to strengthen the mounted guard with a corporal from the Fort, and that the Fiscal and Sergeant shall every alternate day make the rounds, to see whether the orders issued are carefully carried out, as it is of such great importance that the beautiful herd of cattle at present owned by the Company, and which by barter will be considerably augmented, shall be properly protected, and that we may devise means sufficient for their safety, as the Goringhaiquas or Caapmen and Gorachouquas or tobacco thieves, as well as the Souaquas, the hill tribes (who live on catching game and stealing tame cattle), and last, not least, the Watermen (who live near the Fort and in Hout Bay), as soon as they see the least chance, will not refrain from stealing the Company's cattle as much as they can; so that not only the loss will be suffered, but a fresh war will result, to the great detriment of the present flourishing trade and friendship now being contracted with all the Hottentoo tribes far in the interior, who are now coming down to us so beautifully and confidently, &c. Hence, if we obtain more cattle, the aforesaid Caapmen must be completely excluded from the Cape pastures, as the Company will require them all for its own cattle, as the pastures within the fences erected and the river Liesbeecq are hardly sufficient for the cattle of the freemen (who have already about 200 independent of their sheep), whilst in Table Valley and the plain behind the Lion mountain, &c., there is hardly sufficient grazing ground for the mares and colts, or the sheep of the Company and the freemen residing near the Fort. The large herd is therefore to be depastured in various directions, far away, and requires the careful attention of horse guards and footmen.

December 21st.—Strong S.E. gales.

December 22nd & 23rd.—The same weather. During the afternoon a small vessel was at the mouth of the Bay tacking to and fro.

December 24th.—A stiff S.E. on the other side of the Bay, on this side the breeze was N.-westerly. The little vessel still tacking. Its flag showed that she was English. Managing to catch the N.W. breeze, she reached the roadstead before noon. She was named the *Despasche* (*Dispatch*), of 40 or 50 lasts, commanded by Captain or Skipper Benjuin Visser and Merchant Tomas Nieuman, with 26 men. One man had died on the West Coast of Sumatra, but since 14th/24th December last year, when she left Gravesend, she had lost four others. She had been eight weeks from Sillebar,

1660.

where, and at Indrapoura, she had bartered a cargo of pepper for pieces of eight. This pepper she intended to convey to Leghorn: the reason why she did not call at St. Helena, was in order not to be frustrated in her purpose by the officials of the English company there, &c., as happened with the English ship the *Dolphyn* (a private vessel like this one) last year.

December 25th.—Christmas Day. Fine lovely weather. The breeze as yesterday. Oedaso arrives with 16 sheep expressly to say that the people had told him that we had been informed that his people had molested our own in the interior. He begged that we would not believe this story, but he assured us that if his people met ours, the latter would be most amicably received, &c. A suitable reply was given, and he was further told that such rumours had never reached us, so that he may be quite at ease on the subject, for he had also been told that in case of any hostile act we would surprise and pursue him everywhere in the country with many horsemen of whom they are particularly afraid.

December 26th (Sunday).—2nd Christmas. Fine stiff breeze in the morning. Oedaso having been treated well and presented with bread, tobacco, rice, &c., leaves, for which evidently he had produced this trumped up story. Hence he was told, but in a smiling and friendly manner, that if he brought us such large troops of cattle as Sousoa, the king of the Chainouquas, did, he might expect a handsome present; that, however, his company was agreeable to us, and would be the more so in proportion to the cattle he brought us, &c.

Eva, the interpretest, again stayed behind in the Commander's house, having laid aside her skins and assumed the Indian way of clothing, in order to enable her once more to do her duty as interpretest. She appears to have somewhat grown tired of her own people, in which whims she is left to do as she likes, in order to have the better service from her. She appears, however, to have grown so much accustomed to Dutch life and food, that she will never be able to completely abandon either the one or the other.

December 27th.—Fine lovely weather in the morning, but a stiff S.-Easter in the afternoon, as is usual at this season of the year.

December 28th-31st.—The same weather.

1661.

January 1st.—New Year's Day. Lovely, warm, sunshiny weather in the morning, with a W. breeze on this side of the bay, but between 8 and 9 a.m., before the sermon, the S.E. wind began to blow very strongly on the opposite side, which the English vessel, the *Dispatch*, took advantage of, leaving for Leghorn, with a letter to our Lords Majors, *via* that place, dated this day, and addressed to the Amsterdam Chamber, with another for that of Zealand.

January 2nd.—Wind and weather like yesterday. After the sermon the following notice was affixed:—

“Whereas it is from time to time becoming more evident, especially from the general complaints of all the freemen, that the ‘free’ huntsmen are very dilatory in hunting, so that no one can obtain any game for money, whilst if the public were allowed, everyone would obtain what he requires: it is resolved, that as the people cannot be left without any, because of the laziness of one man, and as the public interest should not be sacrificed to those of private persons, henceforth, and until further orders, to allow everyone to hunt everywhere for his own domestic requirements, provided that he does not trespass on his neighbour’s lands and does not go beyond three musket shots outside the boundary from the Salt River, without crossing the same towards the sea shore, from the mouth of that river to the hindermost of the salt pans, whence the river takes its source from the interior inclusive, as this is set aside for the hunters exclusively; subject to the pains and penalties decreed and still to be decreed.”

Done in the Fort the ‘Good Hope,’ the 2nd January, 1661.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

January 3rd.—South W. breeze and fine weather. The Fiscal leaves for Robben Island in the sloop ‘*Muskitjen*, in order to mend matters there, and appoint in the place of Otto Jansz, as commander, the freeman Jan Sacharias, considered fit for the post, and installed with f10 per month. He is to live there with his black wife, a Bengalese woman, as he is no agriculturist, &c.

January 4th.—Fine weather. The wind N. and S.-Westerly. The Fiscal returns and reports that the sheep, pigs and rabbits were thriving well, but that some food should be prepared for the breeding sows. There were greens enough on the Island for the purpose, and he had given orders that this should be attended to, &c. Old and young, the pigs number between 60 and 70. There were four strong rams for forty-eight ewes, 23 young ditto, 40 full-grown wethers, 21 young ditto, total 136. Rabbits were observed in hundreds in every direction, so that they are breeding well, but they would do even better were it not for the number of snakes and adders which are daily being destroyed and are considerably diminishing.

Shortly after noon the *Parkytjen* arrived from Dassen Island with information regarding the roadstead there. She reported that under the North End there was a safe roadstead of from 16 to 18 fathoms of pure sand for return ships which were prevented by the S. Easter from reaching Table Bay or the Robben Island roadstead, where they would be protected from the violent S.E. gales, which never blow so hard there as in Table Bay, so that boats may always sail to and fro, as will be seen more fully in the memorandum submitted.

January 5th.—Fine weather, with a fresh westerly breeze.

January 6th.—The same weather, with a cloudy sky. Bartered from Oedasoa’s people 22 sheep for tobacco, and 1 for copper.

1661.

The crew of the *Perkyt* sent behind the Lion Mountain in order to cut some fuel in the 'Leeuwenbaytje,' to be held in stock, and to be conveyed hither in that galiot.

January 7th.—Fine, N.W. wind and rain.

January 8th.—Same weather. Towards night the wind veered towards the S.E. which blew considerably.

This evening the child of the free gardener Marten Jacobsz. died, named Cornelis Martensz.

January 9th and 10th (Sunday).—Clear weather, with a stiff S.S.-easter.

January 11th & 12th.—Mostly westerly breezes until the evening, when the South-east wind again began to blow very stiffly.

January 13th & 14th.—Fine weather, with a westerly breeze.

January 15th.—Same wind, with a fine shower towards evening.

January 16th.—Fine sunshine, calm weather.

January 17th to 20th.—Same weather. The travellers return this afternoon, who had had but poor success, as they did not proceed further than 55½ German miles from this in a N.-Easterly direction. The principal causes of their failure were the sickness of some and the unwillingness of others to proceed further, whilst their leader Jan Danckaert feared to exact a too absolute submission from them, so that they had too little respect for him, as appears from the information collected by us. Otherwise his will was good enough, as appears from the following journal:—

Notes made by Jan Danckaert on his late Journey into the Interior.

November 12th, 1660.—“Started on our travels to Monomotapa with the following persons (see for the names journal of the 10th November, 1660).

Jan Danckaert, of Nynoven, is leader of the expedition, which we hope with the blessing of God to bring to a successful issue.

The first day we proceeded to the foot of the 'Tygerberg' to the two pans there, without encountering anything of interest. The next morning we took a N.E. by E. direction across the 'Tygerberg' to near the place where Jan Remens was bitten by a lion. Here we were obliged to remain, as our baggage was in two small bags and our cattle were knocked up. The distance travelled was about 2½ miles. On the morning of the 14th we proceeded towards the N.E. to the kraal of the stout Captain, which we left about 500 roods on the N.W. Thence we travelled eastward, passing through the valley where our men lost the way when they followed the Hottentoots, until we arrived within two hours from the kraal of the 'Tabackteekemans' (the Tobacco taking (stealing) men), situated below the mountain called 'Clampus,' where we passed that night.

On the morning of the 15th we went on in the same direction, after having done our best to obtain a pack ox from the Tabackteekemans' Captain, but which we could not obtain, until we arrived

at a valley where there was a river or marsh running from the 'Clampus' mountain, and about 500 roods in length, which we could not cross with the cattle, so that we were obliged to change our course and proceed S.E. by E. about 300 roods, when we passed the river and again took a northerly direction, passed another river which also flowed from the 'Clampus' mountain, and thus proceeding passed through a kloof, leaving a mountain on the N.W. side, which was slightly stony and had a small bush on the top, through which we passed, when we arrived in a valley at a river with rushes, where we passed the night.

On the morning of the 16th we proceeded E.N.E., leaving the 'Peerl' and 'Diamantbergen' on the N.W. side. Here we remained to rest our cattle, camping at the Berg River in a small copse, when we heard the discharge of two pieces of cannon, which we supposed came from a ship just arrived in Table Bay.

On the 17th we proceeded N.E. about 40 roods and passed the Berg River without difficulty. It takes its course from the S.S.W. to the N.N.E., dividing itself into 3 streams. We left the 'Peerl' and 'Diamantbergen' on the N.W. side and proceeded towards the mountains E.N.E., a distance of about 2 miles, where we saw a kloof which our burdened beasts could not pass, so that we were obliged to change our course and proceed due N.W. about 2 miles, where we slept.

On the 18th we proceeded straight north passing three or four ridges of mountains trending E. and W., a distance of about two miles. We then changed our course to the N.E. for about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles, passed 5 mountain ridges and plains, over a very difficult road indeed. We rested here under the mountains, as well as the following day (19th), for the sake of the cattle, and sent out Pieter Hansz, Jan Baptist, of Frankfort, and Georgius Fredericus to discover whether we would be able to pass through the mountains or not. This having been found to be impossible we were obliged to alter our course, leaving on the 20th and proceeding W.N.W. round a mountain about $6\frac{1}{2}$ miles long; we then again changed our course to the N.N.E. for about three miles, when we found three Hottentots, but smaller in person than those at the Cape, who promised to guide us through the mountains. This caused us to rest there that night, whilst Theunis Kagh and Jacob Pritsel, guided by a Hottento, went to see whether we could pass through or not. On their return they reported that we would not be able to do so without great difficulty, and as Pieter Roman had shot a hartebeest we remained here for the night.

On the 21st and 22nd we took our course towards the mountains trending N.W., up which we had to carry all our baggage, as our cattle had enough to do to ascend without being burdened. We went straight east, leaving Table Mountain on the west side, and remained here for the night.

1861.

On the 23rd our cattle could proceed no further, so that we were again obliged to carry our things down the mountain and in some places fill up holes to make a passage for the cattle. We proceeded about $\frac{2}{4}$ mile, and as much in a N.W. direction, when we reached a beautiful valley at a river running from W. to E. Here we rested, being all very tired, and our cattle completely exhausted. On the 25th we resumed our journey straight towards the north between the mountains stretching towards the east and west, about 600 roods. The mountain taking a bend here, we marched N.E. about 600 roods along a river, when the mountains again taking a turn, we marched N. along the said river the length of about a mile; here the mountains again took a bend and we proceeded in a N.W. direction along the said river the distance of a good half-hour's walk. We then crossed the river and rested. In the afternoon we resumed our march in an E. direction about 400 roods, where we changed our course, passing through a kloof running N.E., about 500 roods long, when it turned directly to the N. along a river, the length of $\frac{3}{4}$ of an hour. Finding good bearings we rested here.

On the 26th we proceeded due N. between the mountains the distance of about two Dutch miles, where we had to stop as our white ox could not proceed any further. In the afternoon we pursued the same course for about two miles, when the white ox could go no further, so that we were obliged to stay on the spot where 'Meester' Pieter also shot a hartebeest.

Left in the afternoon of the next day (27th) proceeding due N. a distance of 2 miles, and slept there.

On the 28th we saw a cloof among the mountains to the E. of us. Accompanied by Teunis Kagh I proceeded thither, about three hours distant from our camp. Arriving there we saw that it was impossible to pass through it; we therefore returned and found that our white ox could go no further. I then ordered it to be killed. The rest of the day we remained here to boil the meat.

During the afternoon of the 29th we resumed our course to a cloof lying N.W. from us the distance of $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. We had already consumed 18 days' rations of bread per head, and ordered that if any one wished to lay down half of his load he might do so in order to get on better. We slept here.

On the 30th we recrossed the mountains having for nine successive days fruitlessly endeavoured to cross the second mountain range. We marched N.N.W. about $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile and thence turned towards the N. about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. We then rested for the sake of our cattle. In the afternoon we again started towards the N., marching about 2 miles, leaving the mountain to the east of us. We then rested for the night.

On the 1st December we continued our journey to the N., about 50 roods, when we found a marsh which we could not cross.

We marched towards the mountains on the east, but could not penetrate them, so that we were obliged again to turn to the west more than a Dutch mile, when we crossed within the distance of $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile towards the N. about 20 rivers, where we were obliged to rest, having marched fully three Dutch miles, our progress northward having been only about half a mile. In the afternoon we continued our march northwards a distance of about 2 miles and slept there.

On the 2nd we proceeded northwards about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles and rested. In the afternoon we continued the same course about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles, passed through a river of rushes or marsh, through which we had to make a passage for the cattle, and slept there.

On the 3rd we marched in the same direction about three miles and then rested for the night. This place consisted of clayish ground full of stones, but provided with different kinds of roots.

On the 4th we continued our course about $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile and found it impossible to get across a hill, as the moles had so undermined the ground that we were obliged to change our course and proceed N.N.W. about $\frac{1}{4}$ of a mile. In the afternoon continuing the same course for about a mile we again turned toward the N.N.E. for about a mile, where we slept, having dug holes in order to get water.

This day Pieter Harthoven had to guard the cattle, and when on the march we encountered a rhinoceros. All the men went after it, so that I was alone with the said Pieter Harthoven whom I ordered to take good care of the cattle. He replied that he had nothing to do with me. I then threatened him that I would lay my musket between his neck and shoulders, but he replied that he was a man (carel), at the same time presenting his musket at me and saying that it would either cost my life or his. Getting angry I gave him a blow on the arm and left him, saying that I would remember it. At this time I have not the mastery so as to keep the men in good order, for they are daily quarrelling with each other, so that I am obliged to put up with every insult, keep my tongue, and get them with kind words to proceed.

On the 5th we resumed our course, proceeding N.N.W. about $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile; then turning we went as much in a N.E. direction when we rested for the day, as Theunis Kagh was faint from dysentery. To-day Georgius Fredericus requested for himself and Pieter Harthoven a letter permitting them to return to the Fort. This having been approved of by Joh. Darhagen, 'Meester' Pieter Meerhoff, Theunis Kagh, and Jan Baptist, of Frankfort, we consented.

On the 6th we gave them the note and permitted them to return, giving them bread and tobacco for eleven days. We then resumed our journey towards the N.N.E. fully three miles. Believe that this is the kingdom of the moles, for the country here is so

1661.

undermined that we are obliged to follow the rhinoceros paths, otherwise we sink away to over our knees into the sand. Finding ourselves here under the mountains, we decided once more to cross them, hence we rested here the remainder of the day.

On the 7th we skirted the foot of the mountains and found about 20 Souaques, whom with kind words we induced to come to us, and who showed us a path over the mountains about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles towards the N.-west from where we had slept. Here we rested and bartered from the Souaques honey for tobacco, whilst Anthony Doman obtained a skin for the beads in his ears. About noon we began to ascend, marching about $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile in a northerly direction and after that about the same distance towards the N.-east, when we reached the top more conveniently than the first time. We then descended through a cloof, when three other Souaques met us, who abandoned everything that they carried and ran away as hard as they could. Doman thus obtained a skin, a bag with roasted rock rabbits, one with honey and some other articles daily used by them. We had previously called out to them near a bushy river, but without seeing them again. Having travelled fully 2 Dutch miles in a E N.E. direction we rested for the night.

On the morning of the 8th we marched $\frac{1}{2}$ mile towards the north, when we passed the river running from the S. to the N., taking our course eastward towards a cloof which I thought passed through the other mountains. We advanced a good mile and then rested with our cattle. Alone I went towards the mountains to see whether they might be crossed or not. Finding this to be impossible I returned and we continued our journey about one mile towards the N.N.W., when we turned towards the N. for about $1\frac{1}{2}$ mile, when we off loaded and slept near a large river in which we caught the finest fish in the world, and that in great abundance. To the west of us against the mountains we saw from two to three hundred elephants together. It rained the whole night.

On the 9th our course was due north about 2 miles, when we rested.

In the afternoon we marched N.N.W. about $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile and then N. about $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile, and as it was already late and the weather rainy, we off loaded and built a few huts, the more so because Teunis Kagh, Pieter Roman and Pieter Hansz said that they did not feel well.

On the 10th we remained still, when they took medicine and Pieter Roman got rid of quite a kettle full of 'cherry' stones. The others also got rid of some. They were stones of a certain berry with which this sandy valley is covered, and which they had eaten with stones and all.

On the 11th after Pieter Roman had been relieved of all the foul stuff, and Theunis Kagh and Pieter Hansz were still in the

middle of it, I asked for volunteers among the men to accompany Doman to search for honey in order to make a 'posistorie,' but nobody came forward, though I offered two inches of tobacco to the one who would. Seeing this Pieter Roman, faint as he was, personally went, without however obtaining any.

On the 12th Pieter Hansz recovered, and Jacob Pritsel took medicine, fortunately also getting well again. But Theunis Kagh remains the same.

On the 13th he again took medicine without any perceptible improvement.

On the 14th we hardly knew what to do, but I decided to take up a pack with some of the men and to leave 'Meester' (surgeon) Peter Meerhoff on the spot with five comrades; accordingly

On the 15th I distributed bread and tobacco rations to last until the 12th January, 1661, and left

On the 16th with Jan Baptist, of Frankfort, Jan Dorhagen, Pieter Roman, Christiaan de Soete, Doman and Bitsente. I carried the rations of bread for myself as well as the Hottentots, the latter carrying the one the tobacco and the other the goods, beads, &c. I left 'Meester' Pieter in charge of the rest of the goods and men, viz.: the sick Theunis Kagh, Pieter Hansz, Coenraad Schatman, Jacob Pritsel and Pelagius Wackerlyn. We left them at the Great Elephant River. We went due north about three miles, passed two stony mountain sides, leaving the Oliphant River due north, and went a distance westward along a very difficult road, impossible for the cattle to travel along unless there were a better path on the other side of the mountains. We rested near the aforesaid river, caught a large number of fine fish for our dinner, and in the afternoon proceeded due north about $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile, when we passed a mountain or height which took us about an hour, when we again arrived at the Elephant River. We then advanced a mile along the mountains and the river, the ground being sandy and mixed with stones and covered with bush, all thorn trees; as bad a road as one could ever have. The river now taking an E.N.E. direction for about $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile we remained and slept there, all being very tired.

On the 17th we advanced due north about two miles, crossed a river running from the mountain from the E. to the W. and after that a height a good mile long, again reaching the Elephant River, where we rested. This forenoon we crossed seven heights of sandy mountains, mixed with stone and thorn bushes, at least as high as the Lion's Tail. During the afternoon we kept the same direction until we reached the foot of a mountain about $1\frac{1}{2}$ mile long, leaving the Oliphant River to the west of us. We crossed a mountain due north about one mile long, and then descended towards a river flowing from the S.E. to the N.W. about half a mile long. Here we slept.

1661.

On the 18th we marched due E.N.E. and crossed a marsh or river which divided itself into 8 or 10 branches, with rushes about 12 feet high. Thence we proceeded in the same direction over a very high mountain until we arrived at a river in a plain at the big mountains, a distance of fully $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles, and rested. In the afternoon we commenced to climb these mountains due east, but I lost sight of all my men excepting Jan Baptist, of Frankfort, and as I was obliged to ease myself, Baptist went on ahead a little, so that I could still call out to him. I called out to him to follow me, but I could not hear a word of what he said in reply. Observing that he was ascending I did the same, reaching the top. I then looked about on all sides for my men, but in vain. I fired more than 20 times without hearing anybody. I also lighted a fire in a kloof, but it was all in vain. At last I climbed to one of the highest peaks, and still seeing nothing, whilst night was coming on, I descended to a valley near a river, arriving there about one o'clock in the morning, so perspiring and exhausted that I did not know what to do. I remained there until about midnight, when my clothes, wet with perspiration, made me so cold that I saw no other course than to take up my pack once more and ascend straight again.

On the 19th at daylight I reached the summit once more, and again began my search, but not finding what I was seeking I decided to turn back from the mountains toward the place where we had camped the day before. Descending thither I observed smoke in a cloof. Proceeding thither I arrived there between 9 and 10 o'clock in the morning, and found all my people together, having advanced no further than a mile eastwards. I was, however, so badly conditioned and tired that I had to lie down among the trees by the river and remain there the rest of the day.

On the 20th we marched due east through the aforesaid cloof a distance of about a mile. Crossing a high mountain we arrived at a cloof at another mountain, due N.E. by N., a distance of $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles, when we rested by a beautiful river, with reeds, running towards the west. In the afternoon we crossed it, and ascending a high mountain about at least as high as Table Mountain, we came to a cloof before another mountain, certainly as high as the previous one, having marched N.E. by E. about $2\frac{1}{2}$ hours. Here we slept at a river flowing from the S.E. to the N.W.

On the 21st we marched N.E. by E. and reached the top of the mountain, passing five mountain ridges near each other, the lowest as high as Table Mountain. We reached the last and saw the nature of the country, which was full of mountain ridges as high as the tail of the Lion Mountain. About thirty miles further we beheld the Table Mountains, which seemed to be attached to the heavens. From the last mountain we descended into a valley, where our eyes were terrified, in descending, by the dangerous paths which we had to travel. We rested at a small

river, marching during the afternoon N.E. about 2 good miles, and leaving a stony point of the mountain to the N.W. of us. We rested among a large number of big boulders.

On the 22nd we proceeded N.N.E., descending through rocky cloofs mixed with thornbush, about 2 good miles. Arriving at a river we rested. Here I found that Pieter Roman and Christian de Soete had consumed 2 of the 3 portions of their bread, and that the Hottentots could proceed no further; that we were in a country from which nothing could be obtained, as thousand acres were not sufficient to afford food for one ox. I still felt the results of my having strayed from the troop, and knowing that between the Dassenbergen, which we had passed, and the other Table Mountains no rivers had been seen, I decided to return, and therefore

On the 23rd we retraced our steps. Christiaan de Soete refused to carry the rope any further, and Pieter Roman the pickaxe, saying that they would account for the same to the Commander.

On the 27th we arrived at the Elephants River.

On the 28th Pieter Roman had the fever and said that he had no more biscuits. Johannes Dorhage, however, gave him some.

On the 31st the Soaquas were with us. We obtained some honey from them for tobacco. They, however, did not know how to smoke it, but told us that the Namaquas were resolved to come to the Cape and to destroy everything that was there. This nation is armed with bows and arrows and shields of ox hides.

On the 4th January, 1661, Johannes Dorhage being very faint, I begged that some one might help him to carry his load, whether a kettle or 16 staves of copper. There was no one stronger, or who had less to carry than Christiaan de Soete, whom I commanded to do so, but he replied, "if those who had carried these things would not carry them any longer they might let them lie." I told him that I would remember this, when he at once reproached me with having filled my hungry paunch, adding many other terms of abuse, which I allowed to pass.

On the 5th we rejoined 'Meester' Pieter and found our people in good health, but Theunis Kagh was still very faint. Finding that I had no more salt in stock, I ordered that those who had taken any should return it. This was done by some of the men, but when I advised Christiaan de Soete to do the same, he replied that I might wait a little while longer, upon which I at once said that I would no longer give him his allowance of tobacco. He then submitted saying that my Commandship would soon be at an end and that he would then find me. Having heard this I said that if he did that he would act like a brave man.

On the 5th we rested at the Elephants River. I firmly believe that this Elephants River must be the great River marked on the chart.

1661.

On the 7th I was obliged to add a portion of bread to Pieter Roman's allowance. As it was rainy weather we only left in the afternoon, travelling due north about 500 roods, when we crossed the river. After that we proceeded due south a good 2 miles' journey and rested for the night.

On the 8th we continued the same course for three miles when we rested at the river and caught a large quantity of fine fish which we ate for our dinner. At noon we met some Soaquas, who at once again departed; and as Theunis Kagh and Pieter Roman felt very ill I was obliged to stay there.

On the 9th 'Meester' Pieter bled himself, as well as Theunis Kagh and Pieter Roman.

On the 10th we resumed our journey, marching S.S.W. about 2 miles, when we rested. Here some Souaquas visited us, from whom we bartered honey for tobacco. In the afternoon we took our course due west, ascending through a cloof for about two miles, after that about $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile in a S.W. direction, and again due south about the same distance, when we encamped for the night.

On the 11th we marched S. by E. about 3 miles, when we rested. In the afternoon we advanced due south about 3 miles and camped for the night.

On the 12th we proceeded in the same direction about $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles, when we rested. In the afternoon we marched another 3 miles S. and camped.

On the 13th we again distributed bread and tobacco for 10 days, marching due S. about $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles, resting at noon. In the afternoon we advanced another 3 miles, when we camped for the night.

On the 14th we marched another 3 miles S., resting at noon. During the afternoon we made another 3 miles and rested for the night.

On the 15th we advanced westward $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles, after that we went due south two miles, and passed the night.

On the 16th we proceeded due S.S.W. a good three miles' march, and rested at the Berg River. After noon we crossed it and marched S.S.W. $4\frac{1}{2}$ miles. We then went to sleep for the night. We were then distant a good $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile from the spot where Oedasoa was encamped when the Sergeant went to escort him to the Fort.

On the 17th we marched S.S.W. over the mountain, when we turned towards the west. We had walked 3 miles, and as 'Meester' Pieter said that we would not get water for a long time we remained there the rest of the day; and as the men complained that they had no more bread I was obliged to distribute biscuits for four days more.

On the 18th our course was S.W. by S. about 4 miles. During the afternoon we marched S.W. by S. about two miles and camped for the night.

On the 19th we marched S.W. by S. about 3 miles and rested among some rocks at a large water. In the afternoon we travelled in the same direction $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles, when we changed our course and crossed a high ridge, descending into a cloof due S.W. about $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile, when we slept at some Hottentot kraals.

On the 20th we proceeded south about $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile, after that we turned towards the S.W. and travelled a good quarter of a mile. Thence we again turned towards the S.S.W. for about 2 miles, leaving the Tiger Mountain to the east of us and the large saltpan on the west. We rested a little at a small copse and at once resumed our journey in the same direction about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles, when we crossed the Salt River, and so on until we passed the turnpike; arriving here at the Fort the Good Hope about noon.

Dated the 20th January, 1661."

(Signed) JAN DANCKAERT.

Regarding the coming of the Namaquas to the Cape, Doman, the interpreter, and the Hottentoo Bisenté, who had returned with our travellers, informed us that it was true, as they had been told this as the truth by the Souaqua hill tribes, who had further told them that the Namaquas wished to take possession of the territory about the Cape, in order alone to trade with the Dutch and drive away the Hottentoo nations; that they had already destroyed one of Oedasoas's camps (leggers) which had been pitched somewhat far away; burnt the huts, and carried off all the cattle, with two boys. One of the latter had escaped and returned home whilst he (Doman) was away, so that the latter was obliged to warn his people in every direction to be on their guard, &c. They were told that they might safely permit the Namaquas to come hither without in the least hindering them, that we would protect them well (behind the Lion and Forest Mountains, Hout and Berg Valleys) and endeavour to bring about peace between them and the Namaquas that thus they might mutually trade and associate with one another in confidence and friendship. This seemed to please him and other Hottentoes who were present, as well as the presents liberally bestowed on him and Bisenté, because they had accompanied our people such a long distance and returned home (with them).

January 21st and 22nd.—Fine weather. Bartered 19 sheep brought by Oedasoas's people. The *Perkyt* and the sloop 't *Musquitjen* leave for the 'Leeuwenbaytjen' behind the Lion Mountain to take on board the fuel cut there, before the time arrives for them to cruize about for the Return Fleet.

January 23rd (Sunday).—The same lovely weather.

January 24th.—Equally fine weather. After deliberation the following Resolution was adopted in connection with the travellers lately returned :—

Monday, the 24th January, 1661.

"It having appeared from further information obtained, that most of the travellers who were out did not show the indispensable

1661.

desire or zeal on the journey which they displayed at their departure, excepting Jan Danckaert, the leader, the provisional junior surgeon, Pieter van Meerhoff and 2 or 3 others, and that, therefore, they had been very much vexed and annoyed by their lazy and unwilling subalterns, according to the evidence adduced in the presence of all, it was decided for these and many other reasons not to allow them the promised double pay, &c., with the exception of Jan Danckaert, and as regards their allowance of brandy kept back, in order to prevent too great dissipation, to pay them the value in cash according to the price for which it is sold in the Company's stores; Jan Danckaert to have double.

And as in consequence of the said insubordination the journey has been practically barren of results, though it seemed to contain within it promises of success, seeing that our people have already been so far that they have seen the fires of the Namaquas, even during their return journey, and had even had communication with such tribes as were not more than 4 days distant from them, and might have brought our people thither in 2 or 3 days' journey, as they believed, so that a journey thither would not occupy more than 20 or 25 days at the furthest; it was decided to resume the venture, and to appoint as chief of the expedition the corporal of the 'Adelborsten,' Pieter Cruythoff, the Company's Master Builder, who has given proof of his ability to command, and has offered his services, being also fully assured that he will carry out his instructions in better order and maintain the necessary authority among the men, with the hope that he will realize what the previous expedition failed to accomplish. In this expectation we are confirmed by Jan Dankart and Meerhoff, who will accompany Cruythoff. Besides these two Cruythoff will select his own men, 13 in number.

And whereas Pieter Meerhoff has satisfactorily discharged for 2 years the duties of junior surgeon at the Fort and everywhere here and in the country on expeditions, &c., it was deemed just to give him the following testimonial:—

'Pieter van Meerhoff, of Copenhagen, arrived here on the 22nd March, 1659, in the *Princesse Royael* as soldier at f9 per month, and since employed as junior surgeon at the Fort and in several expeditions inland, &c., having everywhere given proof of his ability, is at his request and for his fitness as junior surgeon, confirmed in that rank, with a salary of f20 per month, from the 1st instant.'

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope' on the day and year as above."

(Signed)

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

ROELOFF DE MAN.

ABRAHAM GABBEMA.

PIETER EVERAERTS.

HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

The *Perkyt* and *Muskytjen* return this afternoon, reporting that in consequence of the heavy seas from outside they had at present found it hazardous to lie before the 'Leeuwenbaytjen,' in order to take in the fuel, so that this has to be postponed to a more favourable opportunity.

In the meanwhile the skipper reported that he had found a very serviceable anchorage for ships below the upper end of the plain (Green Point Common) between the rump of the Lion Mountain and the tail of the downs lying below the said rump, just slightly outside of the bay. That it would be very serviceable for ships prevented from entering Table Bay when the S.E. blows violently and they cannot reach the roadstead, &c.

January 25th.—Very fine weather. Commander Riebeeck proceeds in a row boat with the skipper very early this morning to inspect the aforesaid roadstead, which he also found very fit as a shelter for the ships from October to April when the S.E. winds are at their worst. It consisted of a beautiful sandy bottom about the distance of a pederero shot from the shore, and about 9 or 11 fathoms deep, so that henceforth no ship need pass by or miss the bay, excepting those who neglect to make use of this outer roadstead, or to study the memorandum and charts to be made of it.

January 26th and 27th.—Variable breezes, with a dark sky and some rain.

January 28th.—Lovely weather, with westerly breezes. The galiot 't *Perkytjen* beached near the gate of the Fort to be cleaned and have its rudder repaired.

January 29th.—The *Perkytjen* having been thoroughly repaired is again launched. Some rain fell.

January 30th (Sunday).—New moon this morning. About 8 or 9 o'clock this morning the fresh expedition leaves for the interior to resume their explorations, and if possible to reach the Namaquas, according to the Resolution of the 24th instant. It consists of the following members:—

Pieter Cruythoff, corporal of the 'Adelborsten' and master builder of the Company, as leader.

Pieter Meerhoff, junior surgeon, as second.

Barent Waender, free building master on the Commander's lands.

Harman Ernst, of Utrecht, the Company's orchardman.

Johannes Dorhagen, of Gronou, 'Adelborst.'

Pelagius Weckerlyn, of Cosnits, "

Jan Baptist, of Frankfort, "

Jan van Asse, of Brussels, "

Mathys Huybrechtsz, of Overkerck, "

Frans Martensz, of St. Antheunis, Soldier.

Jan Jansz, of Witmond, "

Cornelis Jansz van Royen, Arquebusier.

Christiaan van Kerekhoven, Soldier.

1661.

All these have volunteered for the service and have been provided with the following memorandum :—

“For the corporal of the ‘Adelborsten,’ Pieter Cruythoff, as chief of the troop of new adventurers.

As the last journey was once more almost a fruitless one in consequence of the laziness and unwillingness of some of the members, whilst the promises seemed so fair that according to the reports of the leaders who have returned, the Namaquas might have been reached if they had proceeded 2 or 3 days further, to find which nation (which is different from the Hottentoots and live to the north from this), as well as the Chobonas or Monomotapers, a great deal of trouble has for a long time been taken—every expedition being expressly fitted out for that one object—and whereas it is hoped that they (the Namaquas) will be reached in a 25 days’ journey, it is decided to let you (Cruythoff) resume the journey with 12 others under you, as you have offered your services for the purpose, and the more so as your future companions have shown themselves particularly zealous and inclined to accompany you and have volunteered their services to undertake the journey under your leadership. In the first place you shall proceed direct by the nearest and best route, according to the instructions of Pieter Meerhoff, but also in accordance with your own plans and observations, to the place where the previous travellers had seen the fires of the Namaquas pointed out to them by the Soaquas. ‘Meester’ Pieter Meerhoff is of opinion that these Soaquas are in communication with the Namaquas, so that they might guide you thither or show you the way; and should they or the Hottentoots who accompany you as interpreters, viz., Donckerman and Hans van Neurenburg, be at all inclined to impose on you, in order to keep you away from these Namaquas, you must not lightly accept their statements, but endeavour to see with your own eyes and hear with your own ears whatever pertains to that nation, as these Hottentoots have always endeavoured to divert us from all the tribes in the far interior and keep us ignorant. This for your guidance (pr. Gouverno).

Should you with God’s gracious ‘convoy’ reach them, you shall endeavour to make yourselves agreeable to them in all friendliness, and carefully observe all their industries, and how they support themselves. The Hottentoots would make us believe that they have copper vessels in which they churn their butter just as is done in Holland, preserving the milk in casks, &c., also that they make a living by manufacturing beads, preparing skins and by other handwork, besides rearing cattle, which it is said can be obtained from them in incredible numbers, as well as tusks, ostrich feathers, and many other things; also that having heard of our residence here, they are already on the way to us, or at least intend to pay us a visit to make our acquaintance and form an

alliance with us. All this makes us hope that they will receive you with pleasure, and to show them what they may obtain from us, we entrust you with samples of various articles to be shown to them, and convince them that here at the Fort an abundance of all these things is obtainable, &c., at the same time employing all practicable and conceivable means to induce them to come here, or at least some of their people in your company (when you return), that we may be able to convince them of the truth of everything here, and give them a fine reception, &c.

On your journey to and fro you shall especially attend to the following:—

(1). As soon as you have passed the Bracke Rivier and the turn-pike you shall at once lay down your course by compass, and note down the number of hours and half hours, longer or shorter, marched by you on the course taken, just as the steersmen do at sea, in order that the whole may be marked down in a chart for the Lords Masters in the Fatherland. This should in the first place, and especially, be observed and not neglected.

(2). You shall also mention where there are clay or cultivable lands, sandy, stony and mountainous soil, waters or running rivers, and in what direction the latter run; also whether any minerals exist anywhere in the mountains or rivers, whence silver or gold may be obtained. You shall also observe whether the roads can in every instance be travelled over with wagon, or how this is to be done; giving names to some conspicuous spots and rivers, and asking after the names of the tribes visited by you, their chiefs and towns for future service.

(3). When any tribe is met, inquiry should be made as to their means of livelihood, what chief they have, what clothing, what industries, what religion, what residences, strongholds, and what they like best. For that purpose you will take with you different samples of beads and silk and linen, painted cloth and other merchandize, to show them, that we may know what they like best, and whether they possess any honey, ostrich feathers, tusks, silver, gold, pearls, tortoiseshells, musk, civet, amber, fine skins or anything else.

(4). What useful tree and ground fruit the countries produce, and should you reach the coast anywhere to observe what bays and rivers discharge themselves into the sea, what the facilities are for water, fuel or refreshment there, whether anywhere in the neighbourhood oysters or mussels containing pearls, or tortoise shells fit for making combs, are obtainable.

(5). What the numerical strength of the tribe is, and with whom it is living in friendship, or warring and why; how they are generally called, especially what the names are of their principal chiefs or kings, their places, towns, and villages, and

1661.

what kind of arms they possess. How they are inclined towards us; whether they are cruel and hostile, or reasonable beings under a proper government; and that you may thoroughly know how to note down everything, we have supplied you with a copy of the memorandum drawn up by the Directors which is to be followed in the compilation of your report. We further trust that besides our verbal instructions you will yourselves know what you are to do under certain circumstances for the maintenance of your own honour and the securing of the reward promised you according to the value of your discoveries, which, God grant, may be considerable; which promises consist of the following:—

Should the travellers remain away half as long as the time for which their provisions are calculated to last, their pay shall from that moment be doubled, but yours (Cruythoff's) from the day of departure until your return.

The full value of all gold, precious stones, pearls, or whatever valuables they may be, that you bring back on this your first trip shall be paid out to you in hard cash, at the Fatherland prices, no matter how costly they may be, or however cheaply they may have been obtained, independent of the present which everyone shall receive according to the importance of his discoveries.

The aforesaid Cruythoff shall during this journey be acknowledged as the head of the troop, and every member of it must make up his mind to go as far as his chief may deem fit, remain away all the time and accept the good and bad as they come, taking full or limited rations as the situation may afford or require. And the said Commandant shall employ such authority over the unwilling or obstinate as if he were the Commander (Riebeeck) in person.

In case of his death (which God forbid), we have appointed as his successor 'Meester' Pieter Meerhoff, but as long as it may please God to preserve Cruythoff's life the supreme authority shall rest with him alone, except in certain matters when he may consult the said Meerhoff, as he knows the roads and some other conditions of the country to a certain extent. All this we order the troop to obey promptly, not doubting the good management of the aforesaid Cruythoff or the honest young fellows accompanying him, their willingness, good disposition, &c., and we cherish the hope of a better success than before. And may God bless the undertaking, whilst we wish you a prosperous journey out and back under His Protection, to Whom we shall always pray for you in our daily supplications, that He may remain with you with His Mercy. Amen."

At Cabo de bonne Esperance in the Fort the Good Hope,
this 29th day of January, 1661.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

The provisions, ammunition and merchandize, loaded for this journey on 5 pack oxen are as follows :—

1661.

- 700 lbs. bread.
- 50 lbs. pork.
- 2 quarts brandy
- 2 do. Spanish wine } in two tin flasks.
- 2 quarts vinegar.
- 100 lbs. salt.
- 13 pistols.
- 13 matchlocks.
- 12 cutlasses.
- 80 lbs. lead.
- 50 lbs. powder.
- 4 bunches matches.
- 80 flints.
- 100 bunches red beads, weighing 8 lbs.
- 3 lbs. assorted French beads, as samples.
- 1 bunch yellow glass beads.
- 10 strings of all colours of sewing and stitching silk, weighing 2 'loot' (1 oz.).
- 1 roll of tobacco, weighing 25 lbs.
- $\frac{1}{2}$ gross of tobacco pipes.
- 1 piece of 1 St. Thomas cloth.
- 1 piece 'Negros' cloth, with red stripes.
- 2 do. Mouris.
- 2 do. Salmpouris.
- 2 do. Chintz.
- 2 do. Taffachelas.
- 1 do. Niquanias.
- 2 do. red
- 2 do. white } Cethilles.
- 2 do. blue }
- Some pieces of different kinds of silks, white worked lace, silk ribbons and trimmings.
- 10 lbs. yellow thin copper wire.
- 12 pieces 'Kabary,' weighing 5 lbs. viz.,
- 8 do. thick chains.
- 4 do. thin do.
- 1 pair of bracelets.
- 4 gilt chains.
- 1 doz. bead chains.
- 1 paper with earrings.
- 2 copper bells.
- 1 do. small bell.
- 4 'fauce' hatbands.
- 1 paper with 100 sewing needles.
- 2 small mirrors.
- 2 books white paper.

1661.

3 lead pencils.
 $\frac{1}{2}$ a bundle of quills.
 1 pick.
 2 hand axes.
 1 spade.
 8 lines.
 1 small bag of pepper.
 4 'loot' (2 oz.) mace.
 4 do. (do.) cloves.
 4 do. (do.) nutmegs.
 8 do. (4 oz.) cinnamon.
 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ doz. fish hooks.
 Some fish line.
 1 string of pack thread.
 1 small kettle.

January 31st.—Fine, lovely, calm weather, very serviceable for the travellers, whom may the Almighty attend with His Holy guidance, and enable to return happily with His blessing.

Yesterday one of the freemen's boats returned from Saldanha Bay, with fish, birds and eggs. They reported that they had seen no natives there all the while, and that their other boat would soon follow from Dassen Island with train oil. She also arrived towards evening with eggs and other delicacies, thinking that she would find a ship here which had been seen on the 19th under Dassen Island, sailing with a westerly breeze towards Table Bay. She was a square-sterned vessel (*spiegel schip*), apparently very large, so that she will most likely soon make her appearance. (*opdonderen*).

February 1st.—Cloudy sky, but fine weather. The *Perkytjen* despatched to cruize outside for the return and outward bound ships. The officers were handed the following papers, viz.: 10 original letters addressed to the Commander of the Fleet and each skipper of the return squadron dated 1st February, 1661.

A memorandum for the *Perkytjen* containing the secret signals for the Return Fleet.

Certain fixed marks showing the outside Roadstead.

A new chart, enlarged plan, showing the bay and the sea level of the outer roads.

She left in the afternoon with a S.E. breeze accompanied by the *Muskytjen* in order, if the weather be favourable, also to take on board the fuel lying at the 'Leeuwenbaytjen,' and at the same time lie out on the look out.

During the afternoon some Hottentoots brought the following note from the travellers:—

"To the Hon. Johan van Riebeeck.

We let you know that, thank God, we are now about 6 miles (Dutch) away from the Fort. Our oxen are beginning to accommodate themselves well to their work. We have nothing more to

add, but commend your Honour, Your Honour's wife and children to the Protection of the Almighty. The 31st January, 1661."

(Signed) PIETER VAN MEERHOFF.

February 2nd.—The air S.S.E. The freemen's boats take to Robben Island the secret signals for the Return Fleet enclosed in the following note to Jan Sacharias:—

"We send you this note expressly by the freemen's boats, enclosing the secret signals for the Return Fleet. Take care that you attend to them carefully, and look out daily for the ships until you see that they are inside. Then you shall until further orders keep those signals flying. But let no one read the code; it must be known only to yourself.

As soon as the *Perkytjen* and the *Muskytjen* have brought in the fuel from behind the Lion Mountains (for which they have been sent out) your supplies will at once be sent to you." (Signed) Johan van Riebeeck.

Oedasoa arrives with 11 cattle and 31 sheep, all bartered for beads, 'karaby,' and tobacco. Eight sheep, however, were obtained for copper.

February 3rd.—Fine, lovely weather in the morning. After Oedasoa's departure 4 more oxen were obtained from some late-comers. About the Namaquas he only told us that they were Hottentoots like his own people, dressed in skins and dwelling in mat huts. That they lived on cattle, which they possessed in great abundance, wore no entrails or chains round their necks, or beads in their ears, though they wore them round their loins, with red copper arm rings round their arms. And as they possess multitudes of cattle which cover an immense area, they are valiant in war, are armed with assegays, arrows and bows, and protected with a shield of dried ox hide which no arrows or assegays can pierce. They were always at enmity with the Seldanhars, but as he (Oedasoa) was at present in alliance with the Dutch, he did not think that the Namaquas, if they came here, would do him any harm.

He also mentioned that they were on their way hither in four sections or camps (negeryen), but that in consequence of the large number of their cattle, they could only advance very slowly; nor did he know where all those beasts would be able to obtain food, as the whole Cape would not have half enough for them to eat. Time will show the success. After having been well entertained, Oedasoa left well contented.

February 4th and 5th.—Lovely weather, with a N.W. breeze, as it has been a long while now; and as it looked rather dark last night, the *Perkytjen*, fearing bad weather, came in from the outer roadstead with a lot of fuel.

February 6th (Sunday).—Fine weather, with a W. breeze and sunshine. The *Perkytjen* again proceeds outside during the afternoon with a S. breeze, in company of the sloop, for the

1661.

purpose already mentioned. Bartered 3 cattle and 5 sheep from the Cochoquas. Towards evening some forerunners of the Chainouquas brought 14 cattle (which we bought) and informed us that not only their Lord or King Sousoa was coming on with a large troop, but also some of the Hessequas (their allies) with a still greater number of cattle. This must soon be evident, and is not undesirable.

February 7th — 9th.—Beautiful weather every day, with westerly breezes. Oedaso arrives with a lean ox and 20 sheep, some very old, and of the rest nearly all the tails cut off. As we were informed that this causes them to die within a few days we refused to barter them, and Oedaso was kindly told to bring in good cattle for our merchandize (which was good) which he and his people, being present, could well understand. He replied that he could do no better, that each of his people brought his own to market, and that, therefore, as his people refused our bad tobacco, we might in the same way reject their bad cattle, that thus they might be taught to bring better, &c. Being thus of one mind on the subject, matters were left as they were between the Commander and himself, and he was, as usual, well entertained in order to avoid all cause for mistrust.

February 10th.—The wind began to blow so stiffly from the N.W. that the *Perkytjen* again took refuge within the Bay, whilst the *Muskytjen*, laden with fuel, remained anchored in the 'Leeuwen-baytjen' as it could not reach Table Bay in time to escape the storm. Her position there is certainly not free from danger.

February 11th.—The gale continuing. The men of the sloop being without provisions, some were sent them overland in a waterproof cask, that they might be able to haul it intact on board through the surf. The bearers, however, returned and said that there was no chance to get the provisions on board, that the sloop had to take her chance to ride it out until the weather became more favourable, that she had already thrown all the fuel overboard, and as the weather was becoming considerably worse and bursting out into a complete storm, she was in great danger, and there was no chance for the men to save their lives.

During the afternoon the boat of the *Perkyt* broke loose and was cast on shore between Salt River and the Fort. Having been observed, she was hauled further up, and found to have suffered no damage. The galiot had also been drifting in consequence of one of its cables breaking, and had enough to do to outride the gale.

This afternoon there arrived here, in company of two Caapmen, a person who represented himself to be an emissary from the chief or king of the Heusaguas, more than once previously mentioned, in order to know whether he (the king) would be received as favourably as Sousoa (as he had been told); and if the report of this messenger were favourable, he would visit us with much

cattle, and enter into a permanent alliance with us, in order to obtain for his cattle iron from which to make assegays and arrows, his own having all been used up against his enemies, who had thus forced him to vacate his territory. They were a totally black nation with thick lips and striped clothing, well trained with bow and arrow, living in houses of clay walls into which wooden posts were inserted. He told us many other wonderful things through the interpreter Eva, which he would make us believe, but time will be our best teacher.

February 12th.—Better weather in the morning. The wind mostly S.W. In good time, thank God, the *Muskytjen* arrived here safely, having been obliged to throw all the fuel overboard and in a miraculous manner and at great risk outridden the storm. She was saved, not without the special help of God, to Whom we give the praise, as we never expected to see her or her crew of five men again, but fully believed that all would have been beaten to death among the rocks.

This forenoon the Heusaquas' emissary was interrogated by the Hottentots, when Eva was not present, and as what he now stated agreed with what he had said in the morning, he was shown all kinds of goods, and was given some to show his Lord on his return. After having been well entertained he left with some presents, and the request that we might look at him well in order to be able to distinguish him from others, as his words would be found to be true, and that he might thus always be received the more kindly.

May the Almighty but grant us something good.

February 13th (Sunday).—Lovely weather in the morning, but during the day somewhat showery, with hail and rain.

February 14th.—Full moon. With a S.E. breeze, the *Perkytjen*, having discharged its cargo of fuel, again went outside to watch for the Return Fleet, according to the orders inserted in this Journal on the 1st of this month.

The *Muskytjen* was sent to Robben Island with the following note to Jan Sacharias:—

“We send you supplies for 2 months, also some old carrots and beetroot for the pigs, as well as another copy of the secret signals for the return ships. Attend to them well, and let us know by bearer how many wethers and pigs you have suitable for the ships, and how many rams, ewes and pigs for breeding purposes, and whether diligence is displayed in destroying the snakes, which would otherwise do too much mischief among the rabbits. The garden must be properly enclosed in order to be able to sow something in it soon.”

In the Fort the ‘Good Hope,’ the 14th day of February, 1661.
(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

February 15th.—Lovely weather. Arrival towards evening of Sousoa, chief of the Chainouquas, with 50 cattle, 14 sheep and a large following. They were well entertained.

1661.

—

February 16th.—Fine weather. All the cattle bartered, mostly for beads and tobacco. They were also told as there were many lean ones among the number, that henceforth they would be pleased not to bring us such bad stuff, as they were always dying off and consequently of no service, whilst they would be personally inconvenienced by being obliged to take them back with them, &c., as Oedaso's people had lately more than once experienced.

When afterwards Sousoa, his wife, three daughters and sisters-in-law were apart and alone with us, we explained this to him more fully; but he replied that he could not compel his people, that each brought to market what he pleased, but that he would personally tell them to bring better cattle, when we might freely refuse the lean kine, as he would not be offended.

February 17th.—S.E. breeze in the morning, with a clear sky. About 9 a.m. Sousoa and his company leave with presents for himself and his companions, as well as with some tobacco for his son and heir Goeboe; all left well satisfied. According to him the Heusaquas would also soon arrive (opdonderen) with much more cattle, of which people his brother was Lord or King. We hope that this is true and that it may soon be evident.

February 18th and 19th.—Stiff S.S.E. winds.

February 20th (Sunday).—Same weather.

February 21st.—The Council adopts the following Resolution:—

Monday, the 21st February, 1661.

“As it is being observed more and more that the freemen, in order to make the most of their sheep, kill and sell to private persons as many as they secretly can, especially when ships are lying here, for the entertainment of this one and the other, so that we never obtain the best kind for the ships, which as a rule is done away with clandestinely (*verdonckert*) and nothing is further seen of it; and further, that this can hardly be prevented even by means of the severest punishment and the strictest watch placed on it; and that this restriction is a great hardship to the freemen, the more so as it has been found that they cannot possibly afford to sell their sheep to the Company at f3 each, as before they are able by breeding to obtain a good lot, half of the same have died, an experience which the Company itself has not undergone slightly with its own cattle, even more so than the freemen, who have to incur great expense in erecting stables, maintaining herds, &c., so that it is impossible to bind them down to such a small sum; and as besides the animals must be fattened with great expense and are of the freemen's own breed, and in course of time will be converted into Dutch stock (in consequence of the Dutch rams which every one now possesses) and the cross is at present found four times better than what is obtainable from the natives, as refreshments for the ships, which have hitherto, in consequence, never been supplied thoroughly with good cattle, for the reasons as above stated, the freemen naturally endeavour to sell their own slaughtered or

unslaughtered animals for the greatest amount and in secret to private individuals in the best way they can, &c.

And as the price fixed for an ox was f12 and for a sheep f3, when free barter with the natives was permitted to the freemen, so that they could make $1\frac{1}{2}$ p.c. by selling to the Company, a permission withdrawn by the Seventeen, in order not to cause an injurious rise in the price of meat, it follows that under these circumstances they cannot any longer be expected to supply at these low rates.

Moreover the Hon. Commissioner Sterthenius in his written instructions left here, ordered that the freemen should not be bound down so narrowly, but that they should be allowed to trade freely with each other, for reasons (in His Honour's opinion) which were in the interest of the Company, whilst the Directors' orders are that the agreements made with them shall be carried out, amongst them, free barter with the natives, on condition that they were to supply cattle to the Company on the terms abovementioned, which was, however, cancelled by their Honours, but again allowed, because it had been found injurious in every respect, as it was sufficiently evident that the freemen could not subsist on the price fixed.

Hence the question was considered, whether, in order to be able to supply the ships with that fine and better class of animals, the freemen should not for their fattened wethers and surplus rams be paid such a higher price as would enable them to make a profit, and so abandon their secret traffic, and make them more inclined to supply the Company with what they did not require for their own use.

And in order to avoid loss to the Company, it was further resolved, only to retain for the latter all the rams and wethers bartered, and to sell by public auction all the ewes to the freemen as fast as obtained in order thus to secure for the Company at once all the profits, for it would not have to pay more afterwards to the freemen for what it would require from them. And as the cattle is obtained cheaply, the freemen would be induced to bid against each other for the best for breeding purposes. And if the barter continues as it is now, the Company will soon possess more than it will require for the ships (independent of the rams and wethers which it will retain for itself), and will be able without inconvenience to sell the surplus to the Colonists, who require a good number, and must get it direct from the Company, so that it follows, that as the Company will sell more than it buys, the Company will be the gainer.

For our daily experience is that the cattle of the freemen are much better conditioned than those of the Company, and are increasing more rapidly, as every one looks better after his own, better than we can have done by the servants of the Company, however strictly and closely they are kept to their duty. It is miserable to see how the young lambs are trodden under foot by the old sheep in consequence of this neglect and thus shamefully lost; whilst more than the half of the full-grown stock perish from the same

1661.

cause, so that though they are cheaply bartered they finally become dear enough in consequence of death and neglect.

And if the Company, by selling their ewes by auction, obtains a good price, as will be the case, their produce will in any case be sold back to it at the highest figure obtainable, whilst the convenience would be this, that it will receive good cattle in exchange for bad, merely paying according to the fatness and weight of what it buys, so that once for all the complaints may cease regarding the leanness, &c., and effect given to the orders of the Directors to see that the cattle are better fattened.

Considering, therefore, that this is the only practicable plan, and that thus the freemen will be the better encouraged in this their heavy beginning (a matter strongly urged by the Lords Masters), and that thus their dissatisfaction with the restriction above-mentioned will be removed, and that they will in consequence be greatly helped for their better maintenance and prosperity, and accordingly the sooner forget their displeasure at being prohibited from bartering cattle from the natives, and set all that on one side:

In order to attain this good object, and all others above mentioned, it was unanimously decided that this was the best and most profitable course to pursue in every way, and to pay for every full-grown and well fed ram or wether alive at 2 stivers per lb., weighed in the morning before it leaves the stables.

Any cattle which they have bought from the Company, fattened and resold to the latter to be paid for one-third more than they gave for it; this will give them a little extra profit, and on these terms they will be bound to supply the Company.

Provided, however, that the Company shall not be bound to take more cattle from the freemen than it considers necessary for the ships, garrison, &c. It is hoped that henceforth an abundant quantity will be obtained by barter, and that the plan proposed will enable the cattle to collect flesh and so become better fit for refreshment, &c. It will also encourage the freemen to breed cattle, and withdraw them from the injurious habit of illicit slaughtering and selling to foreigners, which has more than once been the case to our great disservice. For their further encouragement the freemen shall be permitted to slaughter from their stock and sell to the residents here what the Company does not require for itself, provided that they in each case obtain beforehand a written consent from us, without paying any licence fee whatever.

Jan Jansz van Eyck, of Hasersouw, who arrived here in *de Parel* on the 30th March, 1659, as arquebusier, and who has since been employed on the Company's vessels, on which he displayed great zeal and industry, is made quartermaster on the sloop (*Muskytjen*) at fl4 per month, provided that he serves the Company a year longer than the term of his contract.

Pieter Hendricxz, of Odendal, who arrived here in the *'s Gravenlande* on the 21st January, 1660, as boatman at fl1 per month,

and has been since employed as carpenter, having been found to be a good and diligent workman, is accepted as such at f16.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope,' on the day and year as above."

(Signed)

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

The above Resolution was, with the following notice, published everywhere among the Colonists. The notice is as follows:—

"The Commander and Council of the Fort 'the Good Hope' notify that in the general interest it has been decided that henceforth all rams and wethers, which the freemen are bound to supply to the Company, shall be paid for at 2 stivers per lb., the animal being weighed alive in the morning when it leaves its stable.

And in order to induce everyone to breed as much cattle as possible, the ewes bartered from the natives will be put up to public competition in quantities of six at a time, or even less than that number, as the case may be. The cows also will be treated in the same manner, which not being in calf and fattened, will be bought back by the Company in cash for $\frac{1}{3}$ more than was paid for them, and these sums shall not go in reduction of the debts of such freemen owing to the Company, but these debts shall be reduced annually by means of the grain delivered by them. And everyone becoming an agriculturist shall in the beginning be accommodated for his farm work with 12 young and 8 old oxen for the plough 6, and where there is a woman, 12 cows at f12, and 25 sheep at f3 on credit just as all previous freemen have been accommodated and helped on; the produce of their cattle, however, and whatever they may buy besides they will be allowed to supply on the terms abovementioned, but no ewes shall be killed, and if anyone wishes to slaughter, he shall previously obtain a written consent, so that this business may be under proper control. And farmers and town residents who wish to keep cows may depasture them on the lands outside of Table Valley in which there is not sufficient grazing for the cattle of the Company, which is obliged to depasture its cattle about 3 or 4 hours away from this.

The first sale of sheep will take place on Thursday morning next. The cows will be sold at the Schuur. Notice of such sales will be always given the day previously. Let therefore everyone come and make his profit."

In the Fort 'the Good Hope,' the 21st February, 1661.

(Signed) By order of the Commander and Council,
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

February 22nd.—Very hot, calm weather in the morning.

February 23rd.—Same weather. Seven ships under the land.

1661.

February 24th.—The vessels anchor in good order this afternoon, being the Return Fleet under the command of the Hon. Andries Frisius (names given). The Hon. Frisius being also appointed Commissioner to inspect Cape affairs, he was readily acknowledged as such.

February 25th.—This day His Honour's Commission was promulgated at the proper place, &c. During the night the wind blew rather stiffly from the S.S.E., so that it is fortunate that the Fleet arrived in the Bay yesterday, for they would not have been able to reach the anchorage to-day.

February 26th.—Variable weather, consisting partly of stiff S.S.-Easters.

February 27th (Sunday).—Stiff S.S.-East winds during the morning.

February 28th.—It being favourable weather, Commissioner Frisius and Commander van Riebeeck went out to inspect the Company's settlement at the Cape, &c.

March 1st and 2nd.—(New moon). Lovely weather, cloudy sky and westerly breezes. The Hon. Commissioner Andries Frisius and Broad Council, strengthened with the Commander and Council of the Fort 'the Good Hope,' adopt the following Resolution:—

Wednesday, the 2nd March, 1661.

"Broad Council convened by the Hon. Frisius. The junior merchant Samuel de Ligne not permitted to take his seat at the present meeting in consequence of certain disputes between himself and his skipper during the voyage hither. Having proceeded to business, His Honour referred to the despatch from Batavia to Commander Riebeeck, dated the 13th December last, regarding the passage home of the French priests wrecked here in the *Marechal* and some 'stowaways' who had arrived here in the Fleet, &c.

Decided unanimously—

(1) Regarding the Priests, that they shall be distributed among the Fleet as follows. The Bishop Monsr. Estienne and the Priest Monsr. Fadyn at the table in the saloon, and outside of it his Surgeon Frere Patte, with the servant of the said Bishop named Fantasie, on the ship *Malacca*.

The Priest Monsr. d'Avroult at the table in the saloon next to the Vice Commander, and his servant Cordeleth with the Lieutenant de la Cloche outside the saloon, on the ship 't *Hoff van Zeelant*.

The Priest Monsr. de Fontaine at the saloon table, with his servant Binaire outside of it, on the ship *de Nagelboom*.

The young Priest Monsr. Bartomet at the saloon table, and a French carpenter outside of the same, on the ship *Amersfoort*.

The second Captain of the aforesaid French ship, named Monsr. Carguadion at the saloon table, Monsr. La Rosse and the cousin of the said Captain outside the saloon, on the ship *Orangie*.

(2) That the ten 'stowaways' from Batavia shall be brought in irons to the Castle as soon as possible, in order to be sent back to India by the first outward bound vessels, that it may serve as an example to those who might wish to hide themselves on board the return ships from the Cape to the Fatherland.

That the two steersmen of the *Malacca*, because of their dissolute and disobedient conduct shall be transferred, and the vessel provided as follows:—

With the 2nd skipper of the *Malacca*, named Jacob Claesz : le Bleu, who shall act as first officer in the place of Gerrit. . . . (?) who shall be placed on board the *Malacca* without employment.

The steersman Joost. . . . (?) of the ship *Het Hoff van Zeelant* shall be first officer on the *Mars*, vice the steersman Speelman, transferred to the *Hoff van Zeelant* without employment.

Commander Riebeeck submits certain charts which he had made of an outer roadstead, just at the outer point (om der hoeck) of Table Bay, examined by him and the skipper of the galiot, to serve as an outer anchorage for vessels that would be unable to enter the Bay when the South-East winds are blowing, and so prevent them from being drifted to sea. And as this fleet is provided with many old experienced skippers, the Commander requested that his charts and sea levels might be inspected and reported on. The Council decided to accept the same, but for the present to leave them in abeyance until the skippers of the Fleet have got through their heaviest work, and in the meanwhile to send the *Perkyt* to Robben Island for some of the fattest sheep there, when the skipper of that vessel may also be present, as he assisted the Commander in finding the aforesaid roadstead.

The disputes between de Ligne and his skipper Jan Munt were referred to a commission for investigation and report. The said commission to consist of the Vice Commander Dirck Knibber, the senior merchant Jan Abrahamsz : Voleq, and skipper Pieter Jonasz : in presence of Fiscal Abraham Gabbema.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope,' on the day and in the year as above."

(Signed)

ANDRIES FRISIUS,
JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
DIRCK DE KNIBBER,
PIETER JONASZ,
JAN ABRAHAMSZ,
JOACHIM CLAESZ,
REYNOUT VENHUYZEN,
JACOB ENTERS,
ELBERT KES,
JAN MUNT,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
PIETER DANIELSZ,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA, and
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

1661.

March 3rd.—Cloudy weather. The *Perkytjen* leaves for Robben Island to fetch the sheep.

March 4th.—Cloudy weather, with varying breezes. Rain during the night.

March 5th.—Calm, rainy weather in the morning. The *Perkytjen* returns from Robben Island with 40 beautifully fat wethers, which were distributed among the fleet.

The freemen's boat *Het Zeeleeuwte* arrives from Saldanha Bay with 15,000 or 16,000 dried fish.

During the afternoon their other boat, the *Peguyn*, arrives from Dassen Island.

March 6th (Sunday).—Lovely, calm sunshiny weather until noon, when it began to blow stiffly from the S.S.E. Sousoa, the chief of the Chainouaques, arrives without cattle, having heard that there were ships in the bay. He accordingly came to visit the Commander, and was entertained as usual. The Admiral of the Return Fleet having been pointed out to him, the former promised him a present before his departure on the morrow, &c.

March 7th.—Same weather as yesterday. Sousoa gets his presents and returns home well satisfied, with the promise that he will be back soon with some cattle.

The following Resolution was adopted this day by the Hon. Frisius and the Broad Council :—

Monday, 7th March, 1661.

“Found that the ships were all ready and had taken in their water, but that on some of them there was still a considerable number of sick, suffering from dropsy as well as ‘beri-beri’ (barbary). Decided to fix the 12th for the Fleet's departure, with the hope that with the daily refreshments afforded, the sick will be on their legs again by that time, to enable the vessels to leave in the name of God.

The Commission appointed to investigate the disputes between skipper Jan Munt and the junior merchant Samuel de Ligne, as well as the improper conduct of the mate Michael Jansz : Van Diepen towards the said skipper, found that Munt and de Ligne had very grossly forgotten themselves against one another in their words and language, as well as depriving each other of some necessities, so that instead of promoting harmony on board such a valuable vessel and setting a good example, the worst estrangement had been the result. The Council accordingly decides to summon Munt and De Ligne before it, or to censure them severely through commissioners, and order them each to respect the other in his station and duties, to give each what he has a right to claim for himself, and should there be further estrangement or neglect of this command (which the Council does not hope) that the most rigorous means will be adopted to enforce it in the interest of the Company and for the salvation of the ship, as well as the peace of the crew. At the same time it fines Munt and De Ligne Rds. 30 cash each,

the half for the Fiscus and the other half for the poor of the Reformed Church of Amsterdam.

Regarding the charges of Munt against his steersman Michiel Jansz: Van Diepen, the Commissioners found that he had behaved improperly towards his superior officer, and the Council accordingly decides to place the said steersman without employ on the *Nagelboom*, skipper Munt to appoint a successor from the ablest unemployed mates on his board.

Skipper Jacob Enters of the *Orangie* submits that the sailor Jacob Spinnet, who earned f5 per month, had done duty as cook's mate since he left Batavia's roadstead, and therefore requested that he might be allowed extra pay. Decided to allow him f10 per month from the time that he commenced his extra duties.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope,' on the day and in the year as above."

(Signed) Andries Frisius, Johan van Riebeeck, Dirk de Knibber, Pieter Jonasz, Jan Abrahamsz, Joachim Claesz, Reynout Venhuyzen, Jacob Enters, Elbert Kes, Roeloff de Man, Abr. Gabbema and H. Lacus, Secretary.

March 8th.—Lovely calm weather. Commissioner Frisius and the Commissioner appointed for the purpose proceed to inspect the outer roadstead, which was approved; the older skippers, however, considered it unnecessary, as they knew the place well, which was dangerous for novices as it was rather too near the shore, according to the said chart and large plan of Table Bay and the outer roads submitted to the said skippers.

March 9th.—Cloudy weather, but fine.

March 10th and 11th.—Same weather. About 7 a.m. our travellers returned, having found the Namaquas and brought back with them some curiosities from that nation. They had treated them well, bartered all their caps (mutsen) and shown themselves very partial to red cloth, 'cauries' or 'bongys,' and many other things besides, as mentioned in the journal kept by the travellers. They were a finely formed nation, like half giants, dressed in all kinds of fine, many coloured prepared skins, beautifully adorned with copper, iron and other beads. They wore long locks and mostly lived in mat houses like these Hottentoots, and lived on their cattle principally. Their king had sent the Commander a small goat, the first that we had ever seen in this country, regarding which goat they had spoken a great deal whisperingly (binnensmonts) before they gave it. They would very much like to visit us, but wished before doing so, to destroy the Soaquas or mountain Hottentoots, who robbed them of large numbers of their cattle; as well as have a battle with Oedasoa, the chief of the Saldanhars. Our people, however, had made them promise that if Oedasoa sent 2 or 3 men of his own people with us to offer them peace they would accept it and come down with large troops of cattle to sell, and in order to make our further acquaintance.

They would also show our people their permanent residences, as well as a nation called by them Bryckje (Briquas), with whom they were at present at war, as the following journal will show more fully.

JOURNAL kept by the junior surgeon Pieter van Meerhoff during the last journey, in which he acted as 'Second.'

"Anno 1661.

On the 30th January, we, thirteen all told, started on our journey towards the Namaquas. (Names given—see above, 30th January, 1661.)

We took with us 2 Hottentoots and 5 pack oxen to carry our things. Having passed the Salt River we marched N.N.E. towards the tail of the Tigerberg, passing the night at a brack water, having marched 4 Dutch miles.

On the 31st we proceeded N.N.E. $\frac{1}{2}$ mile, then went N.E. Saw 7 rhinoceroses. Marched over the Tygerberg and encamped at a small river. Travelled that day $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles, having rested a while. Four of Oedasoa's people visited us, and as they were going to the Cape, we sent a note to Mr. van Riebeeck to inform him that our oxen were getting used to their work. The same afternoon I shot a hartebeest. During the night it commenced to rain and we had enough to do to keep our things dry.

On the 1st February Oedasoa brought us 2 sheep for barter. We would have bought one, but he asked 5 staves of copper and a piece of tobacco for it, which we refused to give. We left at once, proceeding N.E. towards a fine river, which, however, was not then running, though it is strong in winter. It is full of mussels like those in the inland waters of the Fatherland. Here we rested and saw 2 rhinoceroses and 3 ostriches. We had travelled 3 miles.

On the 2nd we marched N.N.E. towards a small water valley, where we rested, having travelled $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. We then went N. to a dry river in which we obtained as much water as we required. We saw 9 mules (? Quaggas) and 4 ostriches. We rested here for the night, having marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

On the 3rd we marched N.E. a mile and then N.N.E. Saw a lion right across our path, but as soon as he saw us he ran away. That forenoon we marched towards a dry clayish river, when our cattle could go no further. We dug for water, but obtained so little, and that so thick, that we could not drink it. We had marched $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles, and then proceeded N., straight towards Riebeeck's Kasteel, which is a mountain thus named by us, about 7 or 8 miles in circumference. Here we rested at a fine river sprouting from this mountain range. Here all kinds of animals are found, viz., lions, rhinoceroses, horses (zebras), ostriches and hartebeesten in multitudes, there being always good water and grass here. This mountain is very conspicuous and can be seen from the Cape. Around it is fairly arable land, according to Pieter Cruythoff. That day we marched $4\frac{1}{2}$ miles. During the night the lion was continually near us, but did us little damage.

On the 4th we crossed the ridge on the side of Riebeecks Kasteel. Having marched an hour we proceeded N.E., and about the same time lost sight of Table Mountain so that we did not see it again. Having passed over the ridge, we arrived at a small river, where we found some Souaquas in three huts, being, as our Hottentoots told us, some of the robbers who steal the cattle of the other Hottentoots. I asked them about the Namaquas, but they could give us no information whatever. Having crossed another low ridge, we arrived at a beautiful valley on the eastern side of the Riebeecks Kasteel, where we rested, having marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles that day. We also saw 13 horses (zebras), 5 rhinoceroses, some ostriches and thousands of hartebeesten.

On the 5th, the weather being rainy, we marched N.E. I went ahead, as I usually did, followed by our two Hottentoots, and came on a hollow river, where a lion made a jump at our Hottentoots who called out "‘Meester’ Pieter, he will bite us" (bytamar). However, as soon as he saw me he made tracks for Riebeecks Kasteel. A little further on I encountered a herd of hartebeesten, four of which I wounded, though I only secured one, which I laid on one of the oxen. We marched as far as the Berg River, passed it, thank God, without trouble, and rested on the other side, having marched 3 miles. Whilst we were busy cutting up the hartebeest, some of the men made a fire for cooking purposes, but all the brushwood and dry trees caught fire and we had enough to do to save our powder and bread bags, being in great danger of losing our lives. If a spark had come in contact with the powder we would all have been blown up, for the fire had almost completely surrounded us. During the night a sea cow came very near our fire, and the sentry discharged his musket at it. Three wolves were also howling about us the whole night.

On the 6th we were obliged to rest our animals. The same day I purged Harman Ernst, who did not feel well.

On the 7th we marched N.E. $\frac{1}{2}$ mile and arrived at a river flowing from the main mountain range towards the N.N.W. We gave it the name of the Kleine Berg Rivier. It is full of sea cows. Here we rested, and were visited by 8 Souaquas who wished to make us believe that the Namaquas would kill us. I asked them through our Hottentoots whether one or two of them would accompany us and show us the Namaquas. I would give them beads and tobacco. Not one, however, would venture it. They then left us and our Hottentoots nearly lost heart and said, like the others, that the Namaquas would kill us. I encouraged them and promised that they would be exposed to no danger. We packed up at once and marched N.N.E. along the spur of the mountain range named Blocxbergh. Having proceeded $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles we reached a marsh springing on the N. side from the aforesaid Blocxbergh. Having passed this marsh, we went N.N.E. $\frac{1}{4}$ mile and rested. That day we had walked $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles. Here we saw a troop of fully

1661. 16 zebras, of which I wounded one, but he escaped me. In the meanwhile Jan Jansz: Wit had swallowed something poisonous, but I immediately gave him an antidote which helped him.

On the 8th we took our course towards the mountains and having marched an hour altered our course, following the mountains stretching N.N.E. After $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles' walk we reached two beautiful rivers running parallel to each other and rested there. Here we were again visited by one of the Soaquas who had been with us yesterday, who told us that he would accompany us to the Namaquas. I promised him that if he did I would give him a piece of tobacco as long as my musket, a copper stick, a copper chain and a few beads. I also wished him to show us a proper passage for the cattle, but as he wanted everything beforehand we did not like it, for his intention was to deceive us if he had a chance. I accordingly had all our goods shown to him, in order the better to encourage him. This pleased him well and our Hottentoots also regained courage. After having rested we went in a northerly direction along the mountain range, passed two beautiful rivers and rested at the third, having marched 2 miles.

On the 9th we marched N.E. and on the way passed good arable lands, according to Pieter Cruythoff; also 10 or 12 beautiful valleys with running rivers and grass as long as half a man's length, very good to make hay of. We went on to another fine river, at which we rested, having marched 2 miles. Having rested awhile we proceeded northward to a valley with a beautiful running stream, where we spent the night. We had marched 2 miles.

On the 10th we marched along the mountain range due north until it gradually turned towards the west. Marched 2 miles and rested. Whilst resting I bled Barent Wander who complained of a severe headache. We then continued our N. course, following the rhinoceros paths which skirt the foot of the mountains. Had we not found them we would have found it very difficult to proceed, as only thorns and cripple bush (creupel bosch) are growing here. On the way we saw a rhinoceros with a little young one at her side. Having marched 2 miles we reached a fountain, where we camped.

On the 11th we continued the same course N. towards the 'Castle Meerhoff.' It is a round mountain, lying on the mountain range like a castle, and is very distinguishable, being sighted at a distance of 17 or 18 miles before being reached. We marched to a valley at the S.W. point of the 'Castle,' and having travelled 2 miles rested. Under the said mountain are 4 or 5 beautiful fountains, at which stood many Souaqua huts, which they occupy when it suits their convenience.

Within musket range on the N. side of this 'Castle' is a suitable passage over the mountain towards the Oliphants River, which we made use of in 1660. After having rested we continued our course, and passed many Souaqua huts, which they use as temporary abodes.

We marched towards the aforesaid path which goes over the mountains, and found some Soaqua huts unoccupied, which were very welcome to us for the night, as it commenced to rain very hard. We had marched 2 miles, but found no Soaquas on this side of the mountains. The one who had promised to guide us to the Namaquas left us on the 10th among the mountains to shoot rock rabbits, but hitherto he has not returned. We doubt whether he will ever do so.

On the 12th it was decided that Pieter Cruythoff shall remain on this side of the mountains with the cattle, and that I, Pieter van Meerhoff, with four men and a Hottentoo, named Hans van Neurenburg, with bread for 4 days, would cross the mountains towards the Oliphants River, to see whether we could not find the Soaquas, as we otherwise would have none of them to guide us to the Namaquas. I proceeded S.E. over the mountains, and having gone some distance observed 3 Soaquas. At first they ran away, but as soon as they saw me they at once came to me, recognizing me from my former journey. They accompanied me towards the Oliphants River, so that we had marched 2 long miles. I went to sit by them, made them 'suck' a pipe of tobacco, and sent two of my men away fishing. In the space of $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours they had caught as much as they could carry—beautiful carp. We told our Hottentoes to ask the Soaquas which was the best road by which to reach the Namaquas. They told us to follow the Oliphants River, for if I followed the paths on the western side of the mountains I would find no water anywhere. In the meanwhile I made the men eat something, and was visited by Cruythoff who came with 3 or 4 men to me to view the river. He had left the cattle on the other side of the mountains. I informed him of everything that I had discovered, and he returned to his camp. I remained with three men to interrogate the Soaquas further, and as we sat talking, the Soaqua joined us who had left us on the 10th, and informed the others of our presence.

On the 13th Pieter Cruythoff joined me with the cattle, and we marched another $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles along the river, which was continually trending northwards.

On the 14th we rested our cattle, and our men caught a large quantity of fish. During the afternoon 3 Soaquas came to us. We asked them after the Soaqua who had accompanied us. They replied that he had gone to the Namaquas, and would return to-morrow. I gave each some bread and tobacco. They said that the Namaquas had said that they would give us sheep when we came there, and then attempt to seize and kill us all. We replied that we did not fear that. They ate something and then left. I, Pieter Meerhoff, then took my musket and went a short distance along the river to shoot a bird, but I found a living monster with three heads like three cat's heads. It had three long tails showing above the water. I did not know what sort of an animal it was.

1661.

—

On the 15th we followed the river, which continued its N. course. We passed many unoccupied huts of the Soaquas and marched $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles. We then rested and were visited by 12 Soaquas, who brought 5 or 6 rock rabbits and some honey, which we bartered for tobacco. Having rested an hour, our Soaqua returned and said that he had seen Namaquas. He wished us to fulfil our promise made to him. He wished to deceive us, but I told him that he would get what we promised him as soon as we saw the Namaquas. Here he told us no end of stories. I could not accept them as truth. He said that the Namaquas had seen and pursued him with assegays, but that he had escaped. We could not induce him or any of the others to proceed with us further, in spite of what we promised them. Their only answer was, "the Namaquas will kill us." We then proceeded on our journey, and they went back. As far as we could understand, they did not wish to see us among the Namaquas. We marched as far as a muddy river, taking its source from the mountains to the west of us, and discharging itself into the Oliphants River. Here we rested, having travelled $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

On the 16th we followed the river, always north. The whole day we had a very difficult road, for the mountains run close to each other on either side of the river, so that we could with difficulty get our cattle over. Having marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles we reached the height where, during our previous journey, we had seen the fires which the Soaquas had said were of the Namaquas. Here we left the Oliphants River and proceeded N.W. between the mountains about $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile. We then rested the cattle, proceeded another 2 miles, and whilst the cattle were resting, looked everywhere among the mountains for a passage through. The rest of the day we devoted to this work, as I did not wish to proceed further north, as I knew that we would find nothing there. We could see nothing but big mountains, whilst I knew that towards the west there was level country, as I had, ere this, seen from a high mountain.

On the 17th we marched N.W. between the high mountains and followed the elephants' paths, as it would otherwise have been impossible to proceed with oxen. We marched 4 miles.

On the 18th we travelled N.W. and arrived in a valley, where we saw some prospect. We saw level country. Between W. and N. we could see no more mountains. We marched about 3 miles and reached a kraal where the Namaquas had lain about 3 or 4 weeks previously. Here we rested. The rest of the day we spent in ascending one hill after another to see whether we could not find what we sought, but we found no Namaquas. Everywhere we saw old kraals near new ones where they had camped with numerous herds of cattle and sheep. Towards evening we observed a fire on a mountain W.S.W. of us. I, Pieter Meerhoff, then, with two Hottentots, proceeded thither. But when we had proceeded about half way Donckeman called out "'Meester' Pieter,

Namaqua." I looked up and counted 23, who were standing on the rocks and looking at us. I went up a little higher, but the Hottentoots who were with me became very frightened. They took their shoes off their feet and wished to run back, saying "Namaqua Boeba, Krosmoscoqua." I took my spy glass to see whether it was so. I saw that they were armed with dry hides and had a skin hanging over their left arm, with bow and arrow on their shoulders and in each hand an assegay. I gave kind words to my Hottentoots, telling them not to be afraid, as the Namaquas would do us no harm. I promised them something if they accompanied me, but if they did not wish to do so I would tell it to 'Mijnheer' (Riebeeck) as soon as I arrived at the Cape. They could from terror hardly say a single word when I said that. Finally they went with me. Having reached the top, we could not discover what had become of the Namaquas, or where they had concealed themselves among the rocks. I ordered the Hottentoots to call out to them that they should come to us and that we would give them tobacco, beads and brass, but we received no answer. I waited there half an hour on a mountain thinking that they would come to us. But I could wait no longer; night was setting in, and it was quite dark before I rejoined my men. We hoped, however, that they would visit us the next day if they cared to see us.

On the 19th we decided to lay quiet during the forenoon, hoping that they would come to us, which they did. About 10 o'clock we saw them where they had been the night before. They came down a little lower and we commenced to call out that they should come to us, as we would do them no harm. They then came a little nearer and we again called out to them, until seven of them approached us within musket range, the rest remaining in the bush. I made my Hottentoots go forward to meet them. The Namaquas thereupon went to sit down on the one side of a marsh and our Hottentoots on the other. They then called to each other a long time before the former would come nearer. At last they came, when I, Pieter van Meerhoff, having put a pipe of tobacco in my mouth, went to meet them to see whether they had any knowledge of tobacco. As soon as I was among them one immediately came, took the pipe out of my mouth and began to smoke. He had more than once been among the Cape Hottentoots. I accompanied them to their camp and asked them through Donckeman whether they were chiefs, because they were dressed in such costly fashion, as more fully narrated below. Donckeman asked one of the most inferior looking among them who was the King of the Namaquas. He was pointed out to me, but even without that sufficiently distinguishable, as he is a man like a giant, much taller than Cattibou, the biggest slave of the Company, stationed at the 'Schuur.' We immediately gave them bread, which they ate with relish. After having eaten, I gave each a clean pipe with tobacco.

They certainly wished to smoke, but most of them were unable. The King, instead of drawing the smoke towards him, blew it away from him. I took his pipe 4 or 5 times and showed him how to do it. Gradually he got into the right way, and while we were here, they all began to learn, both men and women, so that they commenced to be fond of tobacco. We let the King see all our goods, which pleased him much, especially the copper staves and tobacco. I presented the King with an imitation gold hatband and some French beads. His son I gave a gilt chain, all which they civilly accepted. The King made the interpreter tell us that we were to visit him to-morrow at his house, which was about half a day's journey from where we were. We asked that one or two of his people might remain with us to show us the way. This he allowed, leaving two of his men. He then left, but when he had rejoined the men who had remained behind in the bush he sent two more men to us, and these four remained with us until the following day.

On the 20th we proceeded towards the King's residence, proceeding westwards over the back of a stony mountain range; after that we marched S.W. across 2 or 3 sanddowns, when we reached a sandy valley, where their kraal was situated. When we were nearing the kraal the King and his three sons, who were also tall fellows like their father, came forth to meet us. They showed us a spot alongside their kraal where we might camp. We selected a spot near two high rocks, packed our goods on a heap, and sent the oxen out to graze, but there was little grass to be had as they have a mighty number of cattle. We gave each of the four who had shown us the way a bunch of beads and some tobacco. The King, his sons, and three captains sat with us. We gave them each a chain of French beads as a welcome, which they courteously accepted. I also gave the King a glass (scoopje) of brandy. He at once sent for a fat calf, and his sons also ordered a sheep to be brought. They told us that they made a present of them to us, and that we were to eat lustily of the same, and when we had consumed them they would send us more. At first we did not like to accept them for nothing, hence we made them a present of a staff of copper, a bunch of red beads and a piece of tobacco. They then left for their kraal. When I, Pieter Meerhoff, had rested a little I went into their camp. The King sent word to me that I was to come into his house. I did so, and when I arrived there he at once had a beautifully prepared skin spread for me on which I was to sit. The skin was as soft as long cloth. The King ordered a large wooden bowl with sweet milk to be brought in on which he regaled me. I gave him some more French beads, which he kindly accepted. At once they hung them round their necks. I took out my tobacco box and made them smoke, and I made our interpreter tell the King that all this was but a mere sample, that there was enough at the Cape of everything that he might desire.

if he would only be pleased to visit us there. He replied that he could not come just yet, as he had first to do battle with Oedasoa, or make peace with him, and that there were also some Soaquas whom he had to destroy. After that he would come to the Cape. I requested him to allow some of his men to accompany us, offering to leave a Dutchman with him as a hostage until we had brought them back. The Dutch captain would give them what they liked if he only saw them, but he replied that at present he could not spare any of his men as he intended to look up the Soaquas. Towards evening the King's son brought us another sheep and a young goat, which we were obliged to accept. We once more presented each with a copper stave and a piece of tobacco. During the greater part of the afternoon the king sat with us, and we treated them on bread, mutton and tobacco. Towards evening the king ordered a 'triumph' to be blown (triumph blasen). I stood near and it was done as follows. From one to two hundred persons formed a circle, each had a hollow reed in his hand, some were long, some short, some thick and some thin. One stood in the centre with a long stick and sang, the others blew on the reeds and danced around, performing fine actions with their feet. The women danced round the ring and the sound was as if one heard trumpets blowing. The King sat on his chair a little distance off. This chair is a round piece of wood three or four fingers thick, beautifully ornamented with beads, and is generally carried with them wherever they go. This amusement lasted about two hours and consisted of all sorts of dances. They then left off, and the king accompanied us to our camp, where he smoked a few pipes of tobacco. Darkness coming on he went back to his house. The blowing of trumpets then recommenced and lasted about 3 or 4 hours in the night, when they went to sleep.

Here follows a sketch of their mode of life and manner of dress:—

In the first place, where the King has his house, they have made their camp like the Hottentoots at the Cape. Their huts are also covered with mats. Seventy-three huts stand in a circle. Outside of this kraal are three other huts, and those occupying them have no cattle. They are like messengers who run from the one kraal to the other, wherever the king wishes to send them. Their furniture consists of large wooden bowls, hollowed out of one solid block and having narrow necks; they also have gourds which can contain from 20 to 30 quarts of fluid, and which grow in the country. In them they collect their milk, whilst they churn in the large bowls (pullen).

The King is named Akembie, and about 60 or 70 years old; when he speaks he does so in well-considered words. Their dress consists of all kinds of beautifully prepared skins of tigers, leopards and rock rabbits, splendidly prepared and gorgeously ornamented with copper beads. They have hair on their heads like that of the

1661. Hottentoots at the Cape, but some have locks as long as those of a Dutchman; these locks they thread with copper beads, covering their heads all over. Around their necks they have chains slung round them 15 or 16 times. Many have round copper plates suspended from the chains. On their arms they have many copper and iron rings promiscuously. Around their middle they have chains of copper and iron beads which go round their bodies 30 or 40 times. Before their nakedness each one has an ivory plate hanging. Their legs are encased in plaited skins, ornamented with beads. They consist of 300 well built men and 400 women and children. They live mostly on their cattle, consisting of about 4,000, with at least 3,000 sheep. They often hunt, as may be seen from the skins in their possession. Their only industry is working in copper and iron, from which they make very neat beads and chains; they also prepare fine hides and skins. When they go to war they have shields of double ox hides, which are dry. The latter are so large that they can completely shelter themselves behind them. Their arms are assegays, bows and arrows. They are very kindly disposed towards our nation, and are besides very faithful, so that we have experienced nought but friendship from them. This is what I have been able to gather regarding the habits of this nation. As regards the country, it consists of nothing else than sanddowns covered with 'cripple' bush and thorns. Here and there is a valley in which they reside. I have reason to believe that further inland there is better country. They are at present lying here because of the war.

On the 21st the King broke up his camp and moved away about an hour's walk towards the E.S.E. from us, where he stayed for the sake of the grass for his cattle. During the afternoon he sent us a young ox, with the message that it was a present to Cruythoff and myself. We presented him in return with six staves of copper and a piece of tobacco.

On the 22nd we proceeded to their camp to bid the King farewell. When we approached, his sons met us and showed us where we were to lie. We off loaded our oxen to let them rest. In the meanwhile we sent for the King, his sons and four chiefs, presented them with 50 lbs. of biscuits, and each individually with a fathom of tobacco, pipes and the rest of the copper which they very much longed for. One of the King's sons had both his ears torn asunder. I joined them together, as well as those of one of the chiefs, for which they loved me very much. I had to promise them that I would soon return. I had a fine cloth nightcap, which pleased the King very much, who wished to have it. I made him a present of it. When his sons saw that, they also wanted one. We at once made 3 or 4 of the blue cloth that we had, and gave one to each, but they had a mighty liking for the red caps. Some of our men had red caps. I made them give them to them, promising that I would pay them on our return to the Cape.

The King told me that he intended to ornament with beads the cap which he had received from me. We bade farewell and packed our oxen in order to return home. The King and his chiefs accompanied us a good mile and showed us how we might best cross the mountains. We took our course straight east from their kraal, to a small river, where we rested. I regaled them once more on bread, mutton, tobacco and a dram of brandy. About $\frac{1}{2}$ an hour before dark they left us. The day before they had set fire to the the mountains, in order to be able to pass over them with their cattle, but the fire descended and became so mighty strong that about one o'clock in the morning we were obliged to resume our march for more than one hour before we were out of danger. We then unloaded our oxen and remained on the burnt veldt until daylight.

On the 23rd we passed through the mountains due east and arrived at a valley where we rested, having marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. While we were resting here they arrived here in the valley with their cattle, and put up their huts about $\frac{1}{4}$ of an hour from us. Having rested we went on for another half hour eastward; we then went S.E. half a mile. After that we marched due east about $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile, when we reached the Oliphants River, having marched $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

On the 24th we followed the Oliphants River towards the east; having marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles we crossed it, as the Soaquas had burnt all the grass on this side, and travelled towards the old place where I had camped the first time after Jan Danckaert had left me. We had marched 3 miles, when we rested. We were obliged to lie still here for two or three days to rest our cattle, which had been fatigued so much among the mountains that they could proceed no further.

On the 25th and 26th we lay still.

On the 27th we followed the river to a spot where the elephants cross it. There we crossed it, proceeding southward $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles and then resting. Having again started, we crossed the mountains by the path through the cloof; having advanced $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles we rested.

On the 28th we marched N.W. over the mountains, and rested in a beautiful valley after a march of 2 miles. Here we resighted the Castle Riebeeck lying S.S.W. from us. Having rested a little we proceeded due east to a fine valley at the S.W. point of the 'Castle Meerhoff,' where we rested for the night, having marched 2 miles.

On the 1st March we travelled due south two miles. We then marched S.E. to a valley close under the mountains, a distance of 3 miles, and rested. Here I bled Matthys Huybrechts, as he did not feel well; the rest of the day we stayed here.

On the 2nd we continued our march southwards for 3 miles and rested in a fine valley. Here I, Pieter van Meerhoff, shot a hartebeest. Having rested and salted the meat, we continued our

1661. journey towards the south for three miles and rested in a fine valley.

On the third we continued our march due south towards the Blocxbergh and rested in a fine valley through which a beautiful river was running. Having resumed our march for 2 miles, we altered our course and proceeded S.S.W. as far as the path crossing the marsh which takes its origin on the side of the Blocxbergh. Here we passed the night, having marched 3 miles.

On the 4th we marched south about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. We then changed our course and left the Blocxbergh to the east of us. We proceeded S.S.W., right towards the 'Castle Riebeeck'; having marched a mile, we reached the Little Berg River, where we rested, having travelled $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles that day.

On the way we saw 23 beautiful horses (zebras) together. While resting here I bled Frans Martens, who did not feel well. Having rested a little, we continued our march towards the S.S.W. to the Great Berg River, where we slept, having marched a mile.

In the afternoon of the 5th, about 2 o'clock, we resumed our march to the S.S.W. towards the eastern point of the 'Castle Riebeeck,' where we rested, having marched 3 miles.

On the 6th we proceeded S.W. to the top of the ridge at the S.E. point of the 'Castle Riebeeck,' where we sighted Table Mountain lying S.S.W. from us. We then changed our course and marched W.S.W. about half a mile to a small river at the W.S.W. point of the 'Castle Riebeeck,' where we rested, having marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

On the 7th we lay quiet with our cattle.

On the 8th we proceeded S.S.W. towards a dry river, obtaining, however, as much water as we required. Here we rested, having marched 3 miles. Having rested we went on S.W. to a marshy river where we packed off, having marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. Here we saw 15 beautiful horses, which had been drinking here. As soon as they saw us they ran towards the mountains.

On the 9th we continued our march southwards, and rested at the 'Mosselbanck,' having marched about 3 miles. After the rest we went S.W., and were obliged to leave one of our pack oxen behind, as he could go no further. Marched to a small piece of water, where we rested, having marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. Having rested a little, we proceeded straight S.S.W. towards the 'Bracke Rivier' and marched towards the watch house "Keert de Koe." Here we remained the whole night, having marched about 3 or 4 miles.

On the 10th we marched straight to the Fort 'the Good Hope.' The journey was commenced on the 30th January and completed on the 11th March by your humble servant.

(Signed) PIETER VAN MEERHOFF.

March 11th.—Heavy S.E. winds during the afternoon and night.

March 12th.—Lovely weather in the morning. The following Resolution adopted by the Broad Council of the Return Fleet.

Saturday forenoon, 12th March, 1661.

The Broad Council of the Fleet having been convened by the Hon. Commodore Frisius in the Fort the Good Hope, and the Fiscal of the said fort having appeared before it charging Hans Ditmarsz, of Hamburg, late boatswain, and at present ex-boatswain's mate of the *Wapen van Amsterdam*, that on the 11th instant he had fought with knives near the watering place with Adriaan Joppen, of Haarlem, cook on the *Orangien*, and that they had severely wounded each other, the one in the face and the other in the head and hand; yea! that they had been at each other in mortal combat, &c. In order to prevent such evils in time the Council decides to condemn Hans Ditmarsz, at present a prisoner, that, as soon as his wound is healed, he shall be brought on board the *Perkyt*, in order to fall thrice from its main yard, and after that to be thoroughly thrashed before the mast, with confiscation of 6 months' wages, the half for the poor and the rest *pro fisco*, and further that he shall be detained a year at the Cape, as having made himself unworthy to proceed home in the Return Fleet. Regarding the other—the cook of the *Orangien* being at large and not to be found—his account on board shall be closed, and himself brought on shore in irons with his property, in order to be punished by the Council of the Fort like the other.

Willem Salomonsz, of Haarlem, boatswain on the *Malacca*, having behaved himself last night below and before the gate of the Fort in a most insolent manner towards the sergeant on guard there, challenging him to come outside the gate, throwing down a stick which he had seized and throwing stones at the sergeant, affronting the latter and committing many other improper acts,—the Council decides that he shall fall three times from the yard arm, and receive 100 lashes, with forfeiture of six months' wages, to be distributed as above, and further to remain on shore here at the discretion of the Commander and Council of the Fort.

As Pieter Direksz, soldier on the *Nagelboom*, has on the 1st instant and at night violently and maliciously wounded the wife of the free innkeeper, named Jannetjen Ferdinandus, in her right arm above the elbow, but has not yet made his appearance; and as we have not yet succeeded in capturing him, as he appears to know how to hide away in safety; it was decided to close his accounts, and, if found in the ship, to be brought on shore in irons, that at the proper time he may be prosecuted for the crime and properly punished.

Skipper Jan Munt, of the *Amersfoort*, reports that a person on his vessel, named Hendrik Jansz van de Nes, had been wounded either by himself or by another. Decided—in order to find out whether it was the result of a fight, to land the wounded man with his account and goods.

1661.

—

It was also decided to transfer the chief boatswain of *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* without office to the *Amersfoort* on account of his lazy and disobedient conduct, and replace him with the chief boatswain of the latter vessel, Isbrandt. . . .

Thus done and passed on the day and in the year as above in the Fort the Good Hope.

(Signed)

ANDRIES FRISIUS,
JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
DIRCK DE KNIBBER,
PIETER JONASZ,
JAN ABRAHAMSZ,
JOCHIM CLAESZ,
REYNOIJT VENHUYZEN,
JACOB ENTERS,
ELBERT KES,
JAN MUNT,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

Saturday afternoon, the 12th March, 1661.

The sick comforter Pieter van Stael submits that his five years' contract had expired, but expresses his wish to continue in the service. He accordingly asks for an increase, as he also attends the hospital, being also by virtue of his office a governor of the same; that he is also doing his best to teach some Hottentoots to learn the Dutch language as well as the slaves of the Company and its servants.

Decided to re-engage him on the following terms :—

Pieter van der Stael, of Rotterdam, who arrived here on the 4th March, 1656, in the yacht *Weseph*, as sickcomforter at f36 per month, is, because of his ability and at his own request, continued in office for three years longer; and as he is also a governor of the hospital, and instructs the slaves of the Company and the Hottentoots in the Dutch language and Christian doctrine, in which he is already succeeding, is granted, subject to the approval of the Directors, a monthly salary of f45, commencing on the 4th March last.

And as the Provost of the Fort, Nathaniel West, has also completed his five years' contract at f15 per month, and is inclined, if promoted, to continue in the service, it was decided to continue him for 3 years longer as Provost, and, should occasion arise, also as executioner, and instead of 2, henceforth to allow him 3 reals per month for board money.

Thus done in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed)

ANDRIES FRISIUS,
JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GAEBBEMA,
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

March 13th (Sunday).—Wind and weather as yesterday. The Hon. Frisius having completed his visitation here, and taken on board abundant refreshments for the Fleet, bids farewell and proceeds on board, escorted by Commander Riebeeck, who returns on shore before nightfall, leaving the Junior Merchant Roeloff de Man and Fiscal Abraham Gabbema on board to search for ‘stow-aways.’

March 14th.—About 2 o’clock in the afternoon the Fleet leaves with a fine S.-Easter and finely reaches the open sea. God grant them a safe passage home.

March 15th.—A S.E. breeze. The Commander proceeds to the country to inspect the farming operations of the burghers and the Company. The presence of the Return Fleet has prevented him from doing so earlier. He left such orders as were necessary. This evening the drummer of the fort, named Louys Isaacsz, of Amersfoort, died from a sudden sickness.

This day the Junior Surgeon, Pieter van Meerhoff, was sent to Oedasoa, king of the Saldanhars, because he hastened himself so little in coming hither, in order to confer with us on the matter of the Namaquas.

March 16th.—During the afternoon he arrived at the fort with his secunde named Koukoso and some elders, besides the first son of the Caapmen chief, when he was told how our people had arranged with the Namaquas that if he sent 2 or 3 of his people with our men and expressed his wish for peace they would accept it, and coming hither would in no way molest him or do him any injury, but live with him in complete peace; whilst on the other hand he might expect a heavy attack from them, which we, as peacemakers, endeavoured to prevent, and the more so as we have discovered that the Namaquas were very much embittered against him. As he was our friend and ally we were very anxious to make peace between him and them, which they (the Namaquas) had promised to accept if he would only send 2 or 3 of his men with our people, who would be soon returning thither with presents to bring them to us, or at least some of their number, in order to form a closer alliance with us, and thus make friendship with all the nations of this country and cause them to live in peace with each other; and whatever might further serve to make him understand that our one great object was to live in peace and friendship with all nations.

But Oedasoa finally answered that he could persuade none of his people to go thither; that the Namaquas were rich in cattle, but did not possess nearly as many fighting men as they (the Saldanhars) did, and that therefore they feared them very little. If they did him no harm he would not interfere with them. That if they came here, peace would surely be concluded between him and them, and if not he was encamped in the neighbourhood with the Gorachouquas or tobacco thieves and the Goringaiquas or

1661. — Caapmen, about half a day's journey from this, and strong enough to act on the defensive. Moreover his comrade or second chief of the Cochoquas, named Gounomoa, could command 6,000 or 8,000 men, so that if the Namaquas intended anything against them they were quite consoled, though they fought with shields and were men of large stature, &c. He was, however, prepared to send a message with the Hottentoots that would accompany the expedition informing the Namaquas that he was willing to make peace.

He was told that we had informed him of the matter as a friend, to show that our only object was to let all the tribes live in good friendship with each other, also to find out his meaning, in order thus to consult with him as our ally, for the best. This pleased him, but he then changed the conversation and spoke of tobacco, eating and drinking, so that as we could get nothing more out of him, the matter was not again mentioned.

This evening the Junior Merchant Roeloff de Man and Fiscal Abraham Gabbema returned to the Fort in the sloop 't *Muskietjen*, having found only one 'stowaway.' They had been detained 2 days at Robben Island by the S.-Easter, whilst the *Perkytjen* had accompanied the Fleet further, in order, if possible, to bring back the rest of the deserters. Stiff S.E. during the night.

March 17th.—Same wind. The following Resolution adopted:—
Thursday, the 17th March, 1661.

"As the last expedition has at last discovered the Namaqua nation dwelling to the north of this, as mentioned by our travellers in their journal of the 11th,—It was decided, in order to encourage the thirteen amateurs, to give them each for discovering the Namaquas and the proofs brought with them of the fact, six reals of eight, and to pay them f3 for the young goat, and f12 for the young ox according to the promise given them, viz., that whatever they found or bought during their first journey, no matter how little they had paid for it, would be given them as a present, whilst in order to prevent dissipation their arrear brandy rations were paid out to them in cash at the price at which it is sold in the Company's stores. And as the late chief of the expedition Pieter Cruijthoff had also, according to promise, earned double pay, to pay it out to him in cash and place the whole to the account of extraordinary expenditure, as well as the provisions and merchandize which they had taken with them for their own consumption and as presents to the aforesaid nation, &c., that everything might appear as it should be.

And though Oedaso, chief of the Saldanhars, seems to have little inclination to send any of his men to his enemies the Namaquas to offer them peace, which the Namaquas promised our men they would accept it if Oedaso sent 2 or 3 of his men with our people to them,—It was decided, whether Oedaso were willing or not, to send another expedition to the Namaquas before the rainy season, together with a handsome present for the King and his 3 sons, as

well as some of the principal chiefs, in order to make them more amicably disposed towards ourselves and induce them to visit us or at least some of their people specially commissioned for the purpose, in order to entertain them well here, &c., with the assurance that we would protect them from the Saldanhars their enemies; and the more so as most of the beads bought from the French clergy are very much willed by that nation, as well as red caps and red cloth from which such caps can be made, therefore as many caps as possible shall be searched for among our people and paid for at Rd $\frac{1}{2}$ each, or more according to value, in order without delay to show that nation how we are able to accommodate them with everything, as it has been found a very active one, which trades with others further in the interior, and perhaps has more in its possession than we have hitherto been able to discover.

And as the Junior Surgeon Pieter van Meerhoff, who wrote the description of the last journey and was the second in command, and who knows right well how to get on with that nation, has again offered his services,—It was decided to appoint him the head of this fresh one, together with 8 persons, mostly members of the late expedition, who have also volunteered.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope' on the day and in the year as above."

(Signed)

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK
ROELOFF DE MAN
ABRAHAM GABBEMA
PIETER EVERAERTS
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

March 18th.—Strong S.E. in the morning. Oedasoa decides to send 3 men with the expedition to the Namaquas in order to offer them peace. These three men promised to be here to-morrow. Having received presents and been well entertained, Oedasoa, with Koukoso and his elders, returned home.

March 19th.—Heavy south-easters, which went down during the afternoon.

March 20th.—Fine weather. Cloudy sky and westerly breeze. The three men of Oedasoa arrive at the Fort.

March 21st.—Stiff, dry S.S.E. winds. The expedition leaves with Oedasoa's three men and two Hottentoots as interpreters. They took with them the following presents:—

For the King or Chief of the Namaquas named Akembie.

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| 1 bunch of the largest light blue beads. | |
| 1 do. of a smaller size. | |
| 2 do. of a third assortment of the same colour. | |
| 1 do. blue of the smallest kind ('quispel greyn'). | |
| 2 do. dark blue, large size, glistening with crystal. | |
| 1 do. violet coloured small beads | } 'quispel greyn.' |
| 1 do. orange coloured of larger size | |
| 1 do. milk white of the same size | |

1661.
—
- 1 bunch of 14 strings red "quispel," for which cattle are bartered.
 - 1 do. white beads of the largest kind.
 - 1 do. white, streaked, of crystal.
 - 1 do. gilt and blue, large size.
 - 1 do. yellow gilt.
 - 1 do. green, yellow spotted.
 - 1 do. blue, white spotted.
 - 1 do. violet, large size.
 - 2 gilt chains for bracelets.
 - 2 bead bracelets.
 - 1 silver chain.
 - 1 yellow copper chain.
 - 1 ring with an emerald stone.
 - 1 imitation gold hatband.
 - 1 cap of red serge with three galloons, and
 - 1 jewel, being a rose of 7 red, white, and green stones sewn on it.
 - 2 yellow copper plates, weighing 3 lbs.
 - 2 staves thick, and } copper wire, weighing ? lbs.
 - 2 do. thin }
 - 1 lb. Brazilian tobacco and 1 lb. Virginian tobacco.
 - 1 doz. tobacco pipes.
 - 1 knife.

For his eldest son.

- 1 bunch of 'quispel greyn' beads, for which cattle are bartered.
- 1 do. violet beads
- 1 do. light blue beads } 'quispel greyn.'
- $\frac{1}{2}$ do. milk white }
- 1 do. light blue beads of medium size.
- 2 do. of the third assortment.
- 1 do. white beads of the largest kind.
- 1 do. violet, large size.
- 2 do. dark blue, large size, glistening with crystal.
- 1 do. blue with white stripes.
- 1 do. green with yellow stripes.
- 1 do. blue gilt
- 1 do. yellow gilt.
- 1 do. white striped beads of crystal.
- 1 copper ring with an emerald.
- 1 small gilt chain.
- 1 bead bracelet.
- 1 imitation gold hatband.
- 1 cap of red serge with 2 galloons.
- 1 plate yellow copper.
- 1 stave thick, and } copper wire.
- 1 do. thin }

- $\frac{3}{4}$ lb. Brazilian tobacco.
- $\frac{1}{2}$ doz. tobacco pipes.
- 1 knife.

For the second and third sons similar presents were sent.

For the first Chief.

- 1 bunch of red beads, for which cattle are bartered.
- 1 do. light blue beads, medium size.
- 1 do. 3rd assortment.
- 1 do. violet, large quality.
- 1 do. dark blue, large size, glistening with crystal.
- 1 do. white, streaked, of crystal.
- 1 do. white of the largest kind.
- 1 do. blue with yellow and black spots.
- 1 do. blue "quispel greyn," small size.
- 1 imitation gold band.
- 1 red Rouan cap.
- 1 imitation silver ring.
- 1 knife.

For the second and third Chiefs, the same.

Provisions, ammunition, for our men and the Hottentots Jan Koninke and Tousabey as interpreters, besides Oedasoa's three commissioners.

- 350 lbs. biscuits.
- 50 lbs. pork.
- 4 quarts brandy
- 4 „ Spanish wine } in 4 tin flasks.
- 50 lbs. salt.
- 1 pick.
- 1 spade.
- 2 axes.
- 1 bag pepper.
- 4 loot mace.
- 4 do. cloves.
- 4 do. nutmegs.
- 8 do. cinnamon.
- 20 lbs. powder.
- 20 lbs. lead.
- 12 lbs. shot.
- 2 bundles fusees.
- 40 flints.
- 1 roll tobacco at 30 lbs.
- 6 lines.
- 9 pistols.
- 9 muskets.
- 9 cutlasses.

1661.

—

All this was placed on three pack oxen, whilst our nine travellers were furnished with the following instructions for the Junior Surgeon Pieter van Meerhoff as their Commander on their journey to the Namaquas:—

“As the Namaquas have been discovered, we have decided to send another expedition to them, with such presents and beads as have been selected by yourself in accordance with your previous experience. We have also deemed fit to send under your care presents for the King, his three sons and lesser chiefs, with our congratulations and request that they may visit us in your company, with their huts and cattle, or at least some of them, that they may make closer friendship with us and a more permanent peace with Oedasoia, who at our instigation has sent two of his domestics in your company in order to offer peace to the Namaquas, that their approach to us may be safer. For that purpose you may also represent to them that we will gladly leave one of our people with them, in order to travel to and fro, as if they cannot make peace with Oedasoia, his presence among them would prevent the latter or his people from doing them any hurt; adding further whatever you may deem necessary in order to induce them to visit us with their chattels that we may know whether they are inclined, besides their cattle, to sell us also their prepared skins and beautiful ostrich feathers, as well as elephants’ tusks, musk, civet, large tortoiseshells and furs. You shall also carefully observe whether there is any gold among their adornments consisting of armlets and beads, testing the same on your touch stone and showing us the results.

For the rest you shall carefully question and inquire into everything, in accordance with the previous instructions given to Pieter Cruythoff, which are now again given you for your guidance. Should Oedasoia’s ambassadors desert you on the way and through fear or otherwise refuse to complete the journey, it must not effect your purpose, but you shall proceed on your way and endeavour by means of the presents or otherwise to persuade the Namaquas to visit us under the protection of our own men, &c. Regarding the mussel pool which you have mentioned in your journal as having crossed more than once, and which contains many mussels, you must open some of those bivalves to see whether they do not contain any seed pearls, and for the rest carefully look about you and observe everything, in order to report to us. Your chief object, however, will be to induce the Namaquas to come down to us, in order to show them here all sorts of things and treat them right royally. By doing so you will do the Company good service, which will not be left uncompensated, according to the importance of matters. In this your men will share with you, who are expressly ordered by this to acknowledge you as their head and to do whatever you order them, as if we ourselves were present.

Hence entrusting this enterprise to you, we wish you good luck and the blessing of the Lord on your journey to and fro.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

In the Fort 'the Good Hope,'
the 21st March, 1661."

To-day the Commander was out inspecting the state of agriculture.

March 22nd.—Lovely weather. Arrival over land early in the morning off the bookkeeper of the yacht *Anckeveen*, Hendrik Pax, the chief surgeon, two sailors, and the free Saldanha trader Gerrit Harmansz. They had landed opposite Dassen Island and mentioned that the *Anckeveen* had arrived at that Island on the 11th quite destitute of water, but without any sick and only two dead. She had left Texel on the 24th November, 1660, with 78 men, among them the skipper Barent Jochimsz and the aforesaid bookkeeper, and in company of the ship *Marseeven* and the flute *Vogelsangh*, from which she had parted in $28\frac{1}{2}$ and 47° N. Latitude. The *Marseeven* had then already 30 ill in bed, but the *Vogelsangh* not one. She had crossed the line fairly quickly on the 20th January and was detained near the Cape by S.E. winds and calms, so that finally she reached Dassen Island, where she was joined on the 15th by the *Perkyt*, which had that same day parted from the Fleet, which with a fine permanent breeze very likely passed Saldanha Bay that night. The Almighty grant it a safe voyage and that the vessels may again unite, as Admiral Frisius was alone ahead in company of the *Nagelboom* and out of sight of the other five ships. In the morning the *Anckeveen* had seen the two ahead and in the afternoon the five astern, passing Dassen Island, and looking for each other. This was also reported by the officers of the galiot *de Perkyt* which was at the time lying near the *Anckeveen* waiting for a favourable breeze to make for Table Bay. And as the bookkeeper stated that his vessel was completely destitute of water, the sloop 't *Muskytjen* was at once despatched with 20 half-aums of water, and further filled with carrots, turnips, cabbages, watermelons, &c., as refreshments. She also took the following note :—

To Skipper Barent Jochimsz.

"Honourable Discreet!

Received your letter of the 20th this morning with your bookkeeper. As you are in want of water, we have sent you the sloop 't *Muskytjen* full of water in half-aums, as well as a large quantity of cabbages, carrots, parsnips, turnips, watermelons and other refreshments, which you must take over at once, sending the boat back immediately, in order should you be at all delayed to render you further succour. When you arrive here you will find cattle and fruit in sufficient quantity for refreshing yourselves.

1661. With God's help we expect you here soon, and with greetings to
 - you all, remain your good friend "

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

In the Fort 'the Good Hope,'
 the 22nd March, 1661.

March 23rd.—Fine lovely weather. The wind being from the N.W. a ship arrived in the Bay towards evening. Fiscal Gabbema having been sent on board to make inquiries, returned and reported that she was the *Anckerveen*, which had with the *Perkyt* left Dassen Island yesterday and on the way hither had taken out of the *Muskytjen* the water and refreshments.

Wednesday, 23rd March, 1661.

Resolution.—"The Amsterdam Chamber having on the 11th November, 1660, ordered us to put ourselves in a state of defence against 8 French ships which were reported as about to proceed to India, it was decided to convey at once into the Fort and within the horn works the ten guns lying at Salt River in front of the French wreck, and to take out of the latter all the gun carriages that they may not be too handy for the enemy to annoy us, which, should it entertain any project, would have beforehand some work to do in landing guns, without which we hope that with God's help they will not be able to harm us much.

Jacob Huybrechtsen van Roosendaal, of Leyden, who arrived here on the 9th April last as 'adelborst' in the *Walvis* at £10 per month, and since the 15th May following has been in charge of the Company's gardens and the distribution of their produce to the ships as master gardener ever since the master gardener Marten Jacobsz, of Amsterdam, became a freeman, and having given better satisfaction than his predecessor, is confirmed in his appointments with the full pay of £25 per month, for which amount the first master gardener Hendrik Boom had been engaged by the Directors, who likewise gave great satisfaction. The increase to take effect from to-day, on condition that he serves out his five years' engagement.

Thus done in the Fort the Good Hope on the day and in the year as above."

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK
 ROELOFF DE MAN
 ABRAHAM GABBEMA
 PIETER EVERAERTS
 HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

March 24th.—Lovely, calm, cloudy weather in the morning. The *Anckerveen* towed to its proper berth. The sloop *Muskytjen* and galiot *Perkyt* return during the afternoon. The skipper of the latter stated the same as above regarding the Return Fleet. She was at once sent away again to cruize outside for the last return

and other ships, in order to inform them of the good state of affairs here, and in case she encountered any French, at once to bring us warning.

March 25th and 26th.—Warm sunshiny weather, with a W. breeze. Sousoa, chief of the Chainouquas, arrives with 9 sheep, among them 2 fat rams, which he brought as a present to the Commander. He had come to bid farewell, because he and his people were returning to their own country until the following year, when he hoped again to sell us 400 or 500 head of cattle and also bring some one with him of the nation among whom he had told us gold and white stones were found.

He was once more kindly urged to maintain his friendly alliance with us and to keep his promise. For the last time fine presents were made to his wife, son, &c., and he left this morning with great satisfaction and promises as above.

March 27th (Sunday).—Misty weather. Towards noon it cleared up and a fine westerly breeze commenced blowing from the sea, bringing into the Bay the outward bound flute *Hilversum*, skipper Jacob Backer, bookkeeper Daniel Raphoen and 66 men. She had left the Texel on the 17th November last, had had one death on board, and having run into 'Brouwershaven' to escape a storm, three of her men had deserted there.

March 28th.—The sloop *Muskijtjen* sent to Robben Island with a secret signal letter addressed to our men there; with orders also to let us know at the same time how many wethers there were again fit for the ships.

March 29th.—Stiff S.S.E. wind, preventing the departure of the *Anckeveen*, which had received its despatch yesterday already. Oedasoa also brought in to-day some cattle and sheep.

March 30th.—New moon. Fine lovely weather this morning.

March 31st.—The same, with rain and a westerly breeze, still preventing the *Anckeveen* from leaving.

April 1st.—Dark, cloudy, moist weather, with a light westerly breeze.

April 2nd.—A clear S.E. breeze in the morning, enabling the *Anckeveen* to leave for Batavia, with the papers, &c., addressed to their Honours there.

Despatch was also given to the flute *Hilversum*, with secret signals and orders to cruise outside in company of the *Perkytjen*, and inform our out and homeward bound vessels of our condition here.

April 3rd.—Calm weather in the morning. The *Hilversum* unable to leave.

April 4th.—Same weather; the *Hilversum* becalmed. The *Perkytjen* in sight. The further secret signals sent on board of her with a row boat. After that she proceeded to sea again. The following Resolution adopted by the Council:—

1661.

Tuesday, the 5th April, 1661.

“As further orders have been received from the Directors, dated the 11th November, that we shall not desist from maintaining ourselves in a posture of defence against the eight French ships which had been heavily armed and manned in the harbours of France, as well as victualled for a long time, and had already gone to sea, &c., and as this had been further urged on Commander Van Riebeeck in a secret letter from the Amsterdam Chamber of the 25th October, 1660; and as in order to inform the approaching ships of the state of affairs here, it had expressly been ordered to let the flute *Hilversum* and the galiot *Perkyt* cruise off the coast for them, and to strengthen the garrison here with 40 or 50 men, and for that purpose to take out of the said flute as many as she could possibly spare, in order afterwards to be exchanged for soldiers from other vessels arriving; and as these other vessels are staying away a long while and may possibly through fear of the French have passed this place, with permission of the Directors, and selected another refreshment spot, so that we remain debarred from fortifying ourselves as ordered by their Honours, and prevented from maintaining our position here (certainly our most necessary duty) by repairing the old neglected Earthen Redoubt ‘Duynhoop’ and building another between it and the Fort, the site of which had already been selected by the Council, as most highly necessary as any thing in the world, in order to prevent the landing of artillery, without which there will be very little chance to capture the Fort, no matter how many men were landed, which might, however, after a short siege be by means of artillery compelled to surrender; and as the loss of such a watering and refreshment place would severely inconvenience the Company, and the enemy might further by obtaining possession of the private signals capture many of the Company’s vessels arriving here and suspecting no harm,—It was felt that it was of the utmost necessity to fortify the shore, and after mature deliberation we finally decided, with the assistance of the men and carpenters of the *Hilversum*, because of the want of men from other ships, as quickly as possible to build on the selected site between the ‘Duynhoop’ and the Fort on the beach a good strong wooden redoubt of 20 feet square and covered with a hood, in order not to be driven out of it by hand grenades, and doubly lined with planks and so shot free for a three pounder fired from boats; also to make under the ground on each side two broad closing loopholes (ports) like on board ship through which to play with cannon, &c., and to use for the purpose, because it is so conveniently near, the woodwork of the French wreck, according to orders from Batavia that it was to be broken up.

And as the skipper of the *Hilversum* understands this sort of work, having more than once been engaged in it, and is prepared to finish it with his men and carpenters almost this week, and as

he says that the *Perkyt* which is now at sea will for the present suffice for cruizing purposes, besides the men on the look out in every direction, who would at once notify us of the approach of a vessel which we could quickly reach with a row boat to inform her of our condition here; whilst it would remove the anxiety of ships coming before the Bay if they saw a Dutch vessel at anchor in it to give the appointed signals, and moreover the *Perkyt* would also be at sea; and further considering that the first and valuable fleet of the Company has already left this place well refreshed, so that for the reasons given the strengthening of this place is deemed to be most urgent,—It was unanimously decided to let the skipper and his men at once commence the work, remaining on shore during the day and returning on board towards evening, and in the meanwhile to let the flute fly the signals on the roadstead.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope on the day and in the year as above.”

(Signed)

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK

ROELOFF DE MAN

JACOB BACKER

ABRAHAM GABBEMA

PIETER EVERAERTS

HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

April 6th.—Quite dark, misty, calm weather. Work at the Redoubt commenced. About 9 a.m. the mist cleared off when the Fiscal was sent out with the interpreter Doman and the Hottentoo Carabinga, *alias* Platneus, to show them the spots behind the ‘bos-heuvel,’ beyond the Company’s lines, covering all the hills and dales as far as the Hout and Berg valleys inclusive, as well as along the sea shore below the “Gevel bergen” (for the natives to occupy), as well as the passages by means of which they could visit us without being molested. Through these two Hottentoes the Goringhaiquas or Caapmen and Gorachouquas or Tobacco Thieves had requested us to be allowed to occupy this area and find shelter under our protection from the Saldanhar Oedasoas who seems to be inclined to attack them, as they are afraid, as they say, of his doing so because he is displeased with them, because he thinks, as they say, that it is at their instigation that we now look into the mouths at the teeth of the animals which he brings for sale to find out their age, at the same time endeavouring to prejudice us against him by pretending that he is harbouring much ill will towards us. But all this should not be lightly believed, but accepted with discretion, as only lately he left us in a friendly manner, though he is for all that closely watched.

April 7th —Dark sky in the morning, with a N.W. breeze.

April 8th and 9th.—Same weather, with now and then a little rain. About noon it commenced to blow somewhat hard from the S.S.E.

1661.

—

April 10th.—(Palm Sunday.) S.S.E. wind still blowing.

April 11th and 12th.—Same wind.

April 13th.—Beautiful calm weather.

April 14th.—Calm, cloudy atmosphere. Warm sunshine during the day, with a S.W. breeze.

April 15th and 16th.—The same lovely weather, with the wind westerly as yesterday.

April 17th.—Easter Sunday. Cloudy sky. Calm weather.

April 18th.—Somewhat clearer weather, with a westerly breeze. During the afternoon the Cloof-watchman signalized that 2 vessels were approaching from the south. As the wind was too light for them to come in, the Fiscal was sent out to them with the sloop and the following note:—

To the officers of the approaching vessels outside the bay,
“Honour fast! Prudent! Very discreet! Good friends!

As we find that the *Perkyt* is too low down to be able to give you any warning, we have decided to send you our sloop with our Fiscus on board to inform you of our condition here, and also enable you without delay to inform us who our friends are, and whence they have come, whom we wish a safe arrival and send a loving greeting. We remain your friend to command

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

In the Fort ‘the Good Hope,’ the 18th April, 1661.”

About one o’clock in the morning the skipper of the *Perkyt* landed and reported that he had boarded the vessels, which were the flute *Venenburgh* and the yacht “’t Calff,” which had left Batavia on the 27th January last, under the command of Johannes Bouheljon, having had fine weather all the way.

April 19th.—Very lovely weather in the morning, with a westerly breeze during the night, and, guided by the beacon fire on Robben Island, the two vessels, thank God, arrived safely on the roadstead, bringing us our letters from India. On the way the *Venenburgh* had lost four, and the *Calf* three men. For the rest they were well conditioned, bringing only 10 or 12 sick, who were removed to the hospital to be nursed there.

April 20th—23rd.—Fine weather daily, with westerly breezes. About 8 o’clock in the morning our travellers returned from the Namaquas. They had not found the King at the old place; but having travelled 5 days further, and each day 6 German miles in a northerly direction, they had at last reached the great Chariguriquas, among whom were some of the Namaqua people, who at once recognised our men and informed them that their King had left instructions with the great Chariguriquas that should our people arrive among them with Oedasoas emissaries to accept and ratify the peace in his name. This was done, the terms including also the Soaquis or the Mountain tribes (Bergh Volcq), after they had been conquered by the Namaquas; so that there is now peace everywhere among them, as it seemed to the great joy of them all.

The Soaquas also promised our men to bring us elephant tusks, honey and wax.

1661.

This war the Namaquas had made not on their own account against Oedasoa, but on that of the great Chariguriquas, who had been deprived by Oedasoa of all their cattle and rightly so, as they had received the same from him on hire and merely to depasture; instead of which they had appropriated all to themselves; so that Oedasoa took the whole lot back by force. They thereupon took refuge among the Namaquas, who gave them other cattle on the same terms, and accepted them as their tributaries. They are, however, desirous to keep the peace with Oedasoa in order to be able to come hither without fear. All this the Namaqua King had instructed the Chief of the great Chariguriquas to tell us, and also:—

That at present he was compelled to march against the Brigodys, ere this wrongly mentioned as Brichje, in order to make war on them and bring them to peace and under subjection. He would endeavour to be back among the great Chariguriquas towards the beginning of the dry season and there expect the ordinary emissaries of Oedasoa, named Kerrahi and Hachora, with some Dutchmen like those who had been there now and were always employed for that purpose.

He would then in their company proceed to the Cape to visit the Dutch Commander, not empty handed, but with all kinds of goods collected from among all the tribes with which he was acquainted and associated; among which goods there would be also gold obtained from a nation in the country called Geyry-Eyqua, and by the Hottentoots Chori-Eyqua, that is to say “gold people,” which also have red copper in their country, and for the present have shown us the arm rings made of the same. Besides the Namaquas and Brigoudys, that tribe had also frequent intercourse with the Choboquas or those of Monomotapa, meeting each other in the towns (*vaste plaatsen*) of ‘*Vigiti Magna*,’ Mossata, Samot Cumissa, and Jeuras, going to and fro, so that this appears to begin to agree with what Linschoten mentions among other matters, viz., that the blacks of Angola sometimes journey over land towards those of Monomotapa, who bring their gold to the Portuguese at Sofala, for, according to present information more and more obtained by us, the Geyry-Eyquas, or the “Gold nation,” bring their gold to the Brigoudys, who in their turn sell it to the Namaquas discovered by us, and according to the information given us by Kerrahi and Hachora, Oedasoa’s messengers, considerably large pieces, which the Namaquas usually sell to a nation like the Dutch, living very far towards the north on the sea coast, which is visited by ships and where there are fortresses with guns. These are evidently the Portuguese in “Loango St. Paulo” and neighbourhood; but as these Namaquas now saw that there were at present

1661.

also people lying at the Cape from whom everything in the world could be obtained, they wished, having settled the Brigoudys, to come down to us with all their force, and visit the Cape about the time of the dry season. He would bring with him all kinds of things that were obtainable among the various tribes in those regions, to show the Dutch what might please them, because moreover it would not be such a difficult and long journey for him to the Cape as it was to the Portuguese settlements.

The result will be seen about October next. All this information, which agrees with the report of our travellers, we have obtained from the aforesaid Kerrahi and Hachora, who appear to know a great many things, amongst others also this that in the far interior there are people living in permanent abodes and cities, provided with much household furniture, quite black, with thick lips, and possessing many elephant tusks and gold, which they again trade away to others.

Also that there was a certain little people, not taller than children of 4 or 5 years old, who are hung round with glistening beads, which if broken to pieces the latter glisten like the rays of the sun.

That the Namaquas were at present marching against the Brigoudys was because the latter had kept back for themselves fully half of the gold which they had bartered from the Geyry-Eyquas for the Namaquas, so that they had defrauded and robbed the Namaquas. These Brigoudys appear to be partly subject to the Namaquas, and obliged to bring to the latter all the gold obtained from the Geyry-Eyquas; but as they sometimes act treacherously in this and rob the Namaquas, the latter are obliged to bring them under proper devotion by force of arms. Time will bring further developments.

The King of the Namaquas is called Akey.

The King of the Brigoudys is called Eyra.

But the name of the King of the Geyry-Eyquas, or the gold people, they had not yet been able to discover.

Here follows the Journal kept by the Junior Surgeon, Pieter Meerhoff.

“On the 21st of March, 1661, we once again set out to the Namaquas, whom we had discovered. There were nine of us, viz.:—

I, Pieter van Meerhoff, as chief in command.

Johannes Dorhagen, of Gronou.

Johannes van Asschen, of Brussels.

Frans Martensz, of St. Anthennis.

Christiaan van Kerckhoven.

Jan Jansz Wit, of Witmont.

Bartholomeus Rudolphus, of 't Weert.

Lourens Jansz, of Delft.

Pelagius Weckerlyn, of Cosnits.

Three Hottentoots of Oedasoa's people to make peace between the Namaquas and Oedasoa.

Two Cape Hottentoots as interpreters, and three pack oxen to carry our goods and some presents which the Hon. Commander was sending to the Namaquas.

Having passed the Bracke Rivier we proceeded N.N.E. four miles and rested at the foot of the Tygerbergen.

On the 22nd we went N.E. towards a small river behind the Tygerbergen, where we rested, having travelled 2 Dutch miles. We then proceeded on our way in the same direction to the Mosselbanck, where we stayed for the night, having marched another 2 miles. Here I gathered some of the mussels by order of the Commander, which I thought might have some pearls in them, but I could find none.

On the 23rd we proceeded N.N.W. about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles, and then northwards towards a dry river, at which we rested, having travelled 3 miles. We then marched N.E. towards a salt-peterish water, where we rested for the night, having travelled $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

On the 24th we marched N.N.E. towards a dry river having its sources in the Riebeecks Casteel, and where we rested, having travelled 4 miles. About 8 o'clock at night a lion came on our board and kept us almost the whole night under arms, so that we had enough to do to defend ourselves and the cattle.

On the 25th we marched E. over a ridge on the E. side of the Castle Riebeeck. Having reached the top we proceeded in a N.E. direction to a valley on the E. side of the Castle Riebeeck, where we rested, having marched two miles.

On the 26th we travelled N.N.E. to the Great Berg River, which, thank God, we crossed without mishap. Here we rested, having marched $5\frac{1}{2}$ miles. We then went on in the same direction to the Little Berg River, where we rested, having marched a mile. Here some Hottentoots of the Gonnomas, *alias* Saldanhars, informed us that the Namaquas had had a fight with the Soaquas and wished to make us believe that the Soaquas had gained the victory and taken all the cattle of the Namaquas. This, however, we could not believe, but on the contrary took it for granted that they wished to stop our journey if they could only bring it about. They also said that we would not find the Namaquas, and might just as well go back whence we came. We told them that we would look so long until we had found them.

On the 27th we marched N.N.E. towards the Bloecxbergh, arriving at the great marsh. Having crossed it, we had also completed 2 miles of walking. We then went E.N.E. one mile and rested for the night, having marched 3 miles. The captain of the aforesaid Gonnomas had followed us all the while and had with him a Cape Hottentoot whom we knew, and who said that he was going to the Cape. We at once entrusted him with a letter to the

1661

Commander, informing him of what had been told us by the Hottentoots.

On the 28th we travelled N.N.E. along the mountains, towards a small river having its source in the large mountain range. We had marched $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles, and having rested awhile we proceeded N. straight towards the Castle Meerhoff, to a marshy river, where we slept, having covered two miles.

On the 29th we again proceeded N.N.E. to a little river proceeding from the main mountain range. Having marched 3 miles we rested. We then went N. to a fountain where the rhinoceroses generally drink, and where we rested, having travelled $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

About 2 o'clock in the morning a rhinoceros passed us, so that our cattle commenced to jump very much. We all seized our arms, believing that it was a lion. I ordered the sentry to discharge his musket, which he did, but his powder horn caught fire, so that his arm and hand were severely burnt.

On the 30th we continued our N. course towards the path crossing the mountains towards the Oliphants River, where we rested, having travelled two miles.

On the 31st we crossed the mountains in a S.E. direction. Having reached the top in fine clear sunshine we had once more a view of Table Mountain lying S.S.W. from us. We then marched towards the Oliphants River, where we rested, having travelled 2 miles. The rest of the day we lay quiet to rest our cattle.

On the 1st April we marched N. along the Oliphants River about 3 miles and rested our cattle. We then went northwards about a mile along the river, and came to a fire which the Soaquas had lit; we told our Hottentoots to call out to the Soaquas to come to us. At last one crossed the river and came swimming towards us. We asked him after the Namaquas. He told us that they were at war with some other nation still further inland, to which they had gone; adding that the Namaqua (chief) had said that if the Dutch came to look for him, that the aforesaid Soaquas were to tell them that they would return when the rainy season was over as they had first to do battle with the others. They strongly advised us to return to the Cape, but we again replied that we would search for them until we had found them. This did not exactly please these Hottentoots, who only said that our best plan would be to return, as we would not find the Namaquas. We parted from the Soaquas and marched towards a marshy river, sprouting west from the mountains and discharging itself into the Oliphant's River, where we rested, having marched 3 miles.

On the 2nd we marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles N. Here we left the Oliphant's River and proceeded N.W. among the mountains half a mile and rested our cattle after having travelled 2 miles. We then marched further N.W. following the elephant paths about $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles. Changing our course to the W. $\frac{1}{2}$ mile, we arrived in the valley

where we had in our last journey parted from the Namaquas. We concluded from the grass and the dung of the cattle that after we had left them they had remained there only 1 or 2 nights. This did not please me very well. However, I did not despair, but decided to follow the spoor of their cattle, thinking that I would surely find them, and having unpacked our oxen we rested, having marched 3 miles.

On the 3rd we continued on the trail N.N.W. towards a marshy river, where the Namaquas had encamped for one night. Here we rested, having marched $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles. After a little repose we continued following the spoor of the cattle, as it would otherwise have been impossible for us to find the way. We changed our course and went N.E. between high mountains, passed 3 or 4 stony ridges of mountains and finally arrived in a small valley where they had lain for a night with their cattle. We had marched 4 miles.

On the 4th we travelled N.N.E. about 4 miles and again arrived at the Oliphant's River which the Namaquas had crossed with their cattle. Here we rested, having completed 4 miles. Whilst resting our cattle I sent some of the men to run from one mountain to another, to see whether they could discover any Hottentoots or cattle, but they saw nothing. We then marched N.N.E., crossed over 3 or 4 stony ridges, and arrived at a marsh where the Namaquas had passed a night. Here we rested, having travelled about $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles. About midnight we heard 3 or 4 cannon shots, which, however, appeared to be far away from us, about 16 or 18 miles to the N., but as I presumed, near to the sea shore or some towns (vastigheden).

On the 5th we continued our N.N.E. course, crossed 2 or 3 sandy ridges about 1 mile in length and arrived in a valley. Hence we travelled N. about 3 miles and again came to the Oliphants River, which here trends towards the N.E. We marched a mile along it, and came to a place where the Namaquas had lain for a night. Here we rested our cattle, having walked 4 miles. We then went N.E. and N.N.E. along the river about 2 miles and saw 2 Hottentoots coming towards us, whom we found to be Soaquas. Here we off loaded our cattle, having marched 2 miles. I asked them after the Namaquas, but through the interpreter they replied that we would not be able to reach them this year as they had gone so far away. We asked them further whether there was no other nation in the neighbourhood, but the interpreter refused to translate the question. We, therefore, could conclude from the Soaquas and our Hottentoots that we were no longer far away from them. We offered each of the Soaquas a copper plate and a quantity of all kinds of beads if they would only give us the slightest inkling. This they would have done if our Hottentoots had not dissuaded them. This I could plainly perceive. I gave the Soaquas tobacco and they lustily drank in the smoke. I

1661.

personally spoke to them, and showed that I was prepared to make them a liberal present if they would only accompany us. This they promised me, going home to fetch their arms and saying that they would be back the same night. About 10 o'clock they returned, bringing 4 other Soaquis with them, two of whom I had seen with the Namaquis during my last trip. They remained with us and promised to accompany us. Our Hottentots sat up the whole night conversing with the Soaquis about our journey, Oedasoia and the other Cape Hottentots. We asked our interpreter about 10 times what they were talking about, but he replied "Nothing at all." This was generally the answer we received.

We could come to no other conclusion than that our interpreters had imposed on the Soaquis with many untrue statements.

On the 6th we marched N.N.E. one mile, the Soaquis accompanying us. We then crossed the Oliphants River once more and left the Soaquis, taking a N.N.W. direction. Having passed some sandy mountains we again reached the Oliphants River. Here the Namaquis had camped 4 or 5 days. Having marched 3 miles we rested awhile and then proceeded northwards. Here we left the Oliphants River which takes an easterly course, and marched towards a large mountain like the Tafelberg, when we rested for the night, having travelled $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

On the 7th we marched northwards to the foot of the said big mountain, about $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles and rested a while. Here we found some Hottentots, called Chariguriquas, from whom I understood, as well as previously from the Soaquis, that I would not be able to reach the Namaquis before the rainy season. When I heard this from them I asked them whether one or two of them would not accompany us to the Cape, as I would give them as much copper, beads and tobacco as one of us could carry, as well as bring them back again. They replied that the rainy season was too near at hand, which would prevent their return this year. They would otherwise have done so with pleasure.

These Chariguriquas had, ere this, been at war with Oedasoia who had taken from them all their cattle. They and the Namaquis are very good friends, because the latter had taken their part against Oedasoia; otherwise there had been always peace and harmony between the Namaquis and Oedasoia. I brought matters to such a successful issue that peace was made and ratified between the three emissaries of Oedasoia and these natives, who promised that, as soon as the rainy season was over, they and the Namaquis would come to the Cape together, and that they had made this arrangement with each other for a certainty.

Seeing therefore that there was no chance to reach the Namaquis, and that we could proceed no further on account of the want of water, we resolved to return to the Cape, and put together a present of some beads and tobacco for the Chief of these aforesaid tribes, leaving with him also another to be delivered by him to the King

of the Namaquas. At the same time we showed him all our other things, copper plates, as well as beads and tobacco. They said that the King of the Namaquas would be very sorry when he heard that we had been there, as the Namaquas had spoken to them about the Dutch, that they had of everything; adding that the King had only left to fetch his cattle, which were a considerable distance further in the interior, and that the Namaquas wished always to remain at the Cape and always travel thence. They had said the same at the Cape of the Chariguriquas, as the friendship between them both was very great. This I could plainly see, as the Namaquas had given them cattle again and on their behalf made war against Oedasoa. After the peace had been concluded they entertained the ambassadors of Oedasoa right royally and were very merry with one another. I poured out brandy to the Chief until he became drunk. I asked them from whom they had obtained all their iron and copper out of which they made their beads. They said from the Coboquas. I further asked them how far they were distant from that nation? They replied about one month's journey. These Coboquas are also Hottentots, but rather blacker than these. They, however, trade with real Cabonnars of Monomotapa. They could tell me clearly that Portuguese lived there, whence all their copper and beads came. They said that if they wished to get there they must commence their journey shortly after the rainy season, as it would otherwise be impossible in consequence of the formidable droughts, as there are nought but sand hills there, and the cattle can only obtain short grass and the branches of the 'cripple' bush. In all my life I have never seen such a poor land, which does not carry a handful of good grass. We now took our leave in order to return, as it was already commencing to rain, fearing that if we waited longer we would not be able to cross the Oliphants River, as we found to be the case last time, when we saw with our own eyes that in 12 hours it rose 9 feet, and that even in the dry season.

On the 8th we took our leave from the Chief, in order to return to the Cape; taking a southerly course we reached the Oliphants River, having marched $7\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

On the 9th we marched S.S.W. about 2 miles; then S., when we arrived once more at the Oliphants River, having covered 4 miles. After a rest we travelled 3 more miles, crossed the Oliphants River, walked a distance along its banks in a S.S.E. direction and rested, having travelled 4 miles.

On the 10th we followed the river 4 miles and rested. Here our men bartered some rock rabbits from the Soaquas for tobacco. These Soaquas had before this always warred against Oedasoa, so that we brought it so far that we made peace between them and Oedasoa's emissaries, and ended the war. We asked these Soaquas to go with us to the Cape, but they also promised to come after the rainy season and to bring honey and elephant tusks

1661.

which they have in abundance here; they had had also on hand tusks which they had ere this bartered to the Cobonas, who in their turn had negotiated them to the Portuguese. All this they explained to me. They are at present very much inclined to trade with the Dutch, as they saw that we had of everything, and the peace had now been concluded. The rest of the day we rested our cattle.

In the afternoon about 3 o'clock a heavy thunderstorm with rain and lightning broke loose from the N.W. and continued until midnight.

About 10 o'clock in the evening a wild beast passed near us, which made our cattle jump. We presumed that it was a sea cow. I myself went with my musket to fire at it that it might leave us, but the musket burst into at least 25 pieces about my ears, and God Almighty mercifully saved me that I did not lose my whole hand, as I escaped without being greatly wounded. Only my thumb was broken. I thanked God for the merciful escape.

On the 11th we continued our march S.S.W. along the river about $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles, when we reached a fountain where we rested awhile, and then proceeded 3 miles further, when we rested.

On the 12th we marched $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles S. along the river, with rainy weather, and when resting, about 40 Soaquas came to us with some rock rabbits and honey, which our men bartered for tobacco. Having marched 3 miles further we rested for the night.

On the 13th we marched 3 miles S. towards the pass in order to cross the mountains and, having rested, walked W., crossed the mountains and after a march of 2 miles rested in a valley.

On the 14th we reached a valley on the S.W. point of the Castle Meerhoff having marched 2 miles; proceeding 3 miles further we came to a fountain where the rhinoceroses generally come to drink, and rested there.

On the 15th we continued our S. course 2 miles to a valley under the main mountain range. Having rested we went 3 miles further to a fine river sprouting from the said range. Here we rested.

On the 16th we went 3 miles further S. to a small river. We now divided our bread, that each might carry his own, as two of our oxen could hardly get along even without any burden, in consequence of the forced marches day and night. Having rested awhile we marched $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles S.W. to the Castle Riebeeck as far as the great marsh, where we rested.

On the 17th we travelled S.W. 2 miles to the 'Kleine Berg Rivier' and rested. Having marched one more mile we arrived and rested at the 'Groote Berg Rivier.'

On the 18th we marched $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles S.W. to the Castle Riebeeck and rested our cattle. Marched one mile further and then altered our course to W.S.W. as far as a small river at which we rested, having marched $1\frac{1}{2}$ mile.

On the 19th we were obliged to lie quiet to rest our cattle.

On the 20th we proceeded 3 miles S.S.W. to a brackish water, where we rested. Afterwards we went $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles further to a marshy river, where we camped for the night.

On the 21st we marched 3 miles S. to the 'Mosselbanck' and rested a little. After that we walked $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles further S.W. to a little river behind the Tiger Mountains and rested there.

On the 22nd we marched 2 miles S.W. to a fountain behind the 'Tygerbergen,' where we rested. We then went S.S.E. 4 miles straight for the 'Bracke Rivier,' where we rested.

On the 23rd we marched straight to the Fort the Good Hope, where we were well received by the Hon. Commander.

This day, the 23rd April, 1661.

(Signed) PIETER VAN MEERHOFF.

The Council having read the above journal and heard the verbal report of the travellers, adopts the following Resolutions:—

Saturday, 23rd April, 1661.

"As during the last journey of the Junior Surgeon Pieter van Meerhoff and the emissaries of Oedasoia peace was made between the Saldanhars and the Namaquas, and the latter had promised to come down to us after the rainy season, not only with much cattle, but also, as is said, with all kinds of other things which they will obtain from other tribes further inland in order to show us, among which will be gold, &c., it was decided in order to maintain the courage of the travellers, to give each of them a present of four reals in cash, especially as the journey had been far more difficult than the previous one, having extended six days further, and the men had suffered much in the wear and tear of their clothes. And in order to prevent too great a dissipation, it was further decided to pay them out in cash for their arrear rations of brandy, at the price at which it is sold out of the Company's stores; and as Pieter van Meerhoff as head of the expedition has merited double pay, to pay the surplus out to him in cash, and place the whole to the account of extraordinary expenditure, as well as the provisions and merchandize expended on the natives during their travels.

And in order to retain the good will of Oedasoia's men, and of the two Hottentots who accompanied the expedition as interpreters, it was decided to give good presents to them also, as had been done on former occasions.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope,' on the day, and in the year as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERT and
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

The watchmen on the cloof this afternoon report the approach of two vessels, and as the *Perkyt* and *Hilversum* were becalmed,

1661.

—

we decided to despatch our boats thither to inform them of our condition here. They remained away the whole night.

April 24th.—The boats return in the morning, not having been able to reach the vessels, and were at once sent back with fresh men, who on their return reported that the vessels were the *Vogelsangh* of Amsterdam and the *Erasmus* of Rotterdam.

April 25th.—Arrival of the above named vessels with a stiff N.W. breeze. The *Vogelsangh* had left the Texel on the 24th November last with 198 men, of whom 2 had died and 2 or 3 were ill in their bunks. The rest were fairly well. The skipper was named Thomas Michielsz, and the bookkeeper Jacob van Straten. She had crossed the line very quickly and had been becalmed off the Cape only 2 or 3 days. She had called at Cabo Verde and been fairly refreshed there.

The yacht *Erasmus* of Rotterdam had left Goeree on the 7th January last with 163 men, of whom 1 had died and 1 been drowned. The rest were all well, including the skipper Dirck van Duynen, the bookkeeper Jhannes van Hul, and a minister named Johannes Doncker. They had been becalmed about three weeks near the line and about 25 or 26 days near the Cape; otherwise they would have had a very short voyage.

Towards evening another vessel was sighted between Robben Island and the Continent.

April 26th.—Dark, misty weather in the morning, which cleared up during the afternoon, and with a fresh W. breeze the aforesaid vessel arrived on the roadstead at nightfall. She was the *Dordrecht*, with merchant Pieter de Lange and skipper Adriaan Gilde, for the Delft Chamber. She had left Goeree on the 16th December, 1660, with 291 men, of whom 5 had died, and as the rest were suffering from scurvy they had called at Martynbaes, the island Trinida, where they had sent the boat on shore which, however, could find no fresh water. The place has beautiful anchor grounds though.

April 27th.—Calm weather in the morning.

April 28th–30th.—(New moon.) Fine, lovely weather. The *Vogelsangh* and *Erasmus* receive their despatch to Batavia, as well as the letters, &c, for India.

May 1st.—(Sunday.) Lovely, calm weather. Towards evening it began to blow from the N.W.

May 2nd.—Same unfavourable weather for the departure of the two vessels.

May 3rd.—Clear sky in the morning, with a fresh N.W. breeze. Our letters for Patria handed to the Hon. Johan Boucheljon.

Arrival of the long expected *Maerseeven* in a pretty desolate state, the chief merchant Willem van de Graaff having died on the 2nd February last, and the skipper Pieter Barckout the day before yesterday. Besides these, 71 others had died, including the senior and junior surgeon. About 80 were laid up, and the rest

were so weak that they could not berth their ship. Accordingly the skippers Gilde of the *Dordrecht* and Pieter Danielsz of the *Perkyt*, together with the junior merchant Roeloff de Man and the Fiscal of this Fortress at once went on board to provide for the vessel, and find out how matters were situated. Returning in the afternoon, they confirmed the above description, adding that the control on board was satisfactory, that the ship's council had appointed the chief mate Jan Jansz Swart as skipper, the second mate as chief mate, and the sailmaker as third officer. The Rev. Cornelius Colledius was also very ill. They had been kept 54 days by calms at the line, which they had crossed thrice. Of the 348 men with whom she had left on the 24th November, in company of the *Anekeveen* and *Voglesang*, she had brought only 265, whom we hope with refreshments and the blessing of God soon to put on their legs again. They had taken two months sailing from the Equator to this, which may be considered very fair.

May 4th.—Stiff N.W. winds, which going down towards evening the sick of the *Maerseveen* were landed.

May 5th.—A S.E. breeze. The *Vogelsangh* and *Erasmus* leave for Batavia, and shortly afterwards the Hon. Jan Boucheljon with the flute *Venenburgh* and yacht *Calf* for the Fatherland, taking with him our letters to the Directors. God grant that these precious return cargoes may arrive safely home and the outward bound likewise at Batavia.

In the meanwhile the chief merchant Pieter de Lange and skipper Gilde were with the Fiscal commissioned to proceed on board the *Maerseveen* to inquire how it was situated with the chests and goods of the deceased chief merchant Willem de Graeff and skipper Pieter Barckout, and how matters were on board as regarded the command of the ship, &c. On their return they reported what they had done, and submitted lists of the chests and goods of the aforesaid deceased, which they had sealed down; they also reported that the government of the ship by the new skipper and other officers appeared to be satisfactory.

May 6th.—Fine weather. The Commander, accompanied by the upper merchant Pieter de Lange and other commissioners, proceeds on board the *Maerseveen*, and finding everything without the least confusion, adopts with the Council this afternoon the following Resolution:—

Friday, the 6th May, 1661.

“After an investigation twice held, and a personal examination by commissioners, it having been found that there was good harmony among the officers promoted on board the *Maerseveen*, that there has never been the least disorder or dissipation among them, but on the contrary that they appeared to be sober persons in their conduct; and further it having appeared from the journals of the late skipper as well as those of his officers that the latter were fully competent

1661.

for their duties, it was unanimously decided by the Commander and Council, after ripe deliberation, and with the assistance of the upper merchant Pieter de Lange and Adriaan de Gilde, skipper on the *Dordrecht*, to confirm the appointments made by the ship's council of the *Maerseveen* as follows:—

The chief mate Jan Jansz Swart of Letko to be skipper *vice* the deceased Pieter Barckout.

The junior mate Cornelis Jansz of Bergen to be senior mate.

The third officer Jan Evertsz van Nes of Batavia to be junior mate. And the sailmaker Sacharias de Groot to be third officer, as he had before this often acted in that capacity in India.

These appointments, however, to be subject to the approval of the Governor-General and Council at Batavia.

Further the required orders were issued regarding one thing and another, both as regards the rank to be taken at table and otherwise, that everyone might know how he was to regulate himself.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed) Johan van Riebeeck; Pieter de Lange; Adriaan de Gilde; Roeloff de Man; Abraham Gabbema and Hendrik Laeus, Secretary."

May 7th.—Windy weather from the N.W.

May 8th.—(Sunday.) Fine, calm, lovely, sunshiny weather in the morning.

May 9th.—Hard, dry, S.S.E. winds.

May 10th.—Calm in the morning. The officers of the *Dordrecht* take on board their refreshments for the voyage, and receive their despatch, in order to leave with the first favourable breeze for Batavia, and with the despatches to their Honours there.

May 11th.—The above vessel leaves towards evening with a fine S.E. breeze. God grant her a safe voyage.

May 12th.—Calm, cloudy weather. The Commander proceeds to the country to inspect the lands and the agricultural work in general. He found some of the freemen rather slow, they not having as yet put even a plough into the ground, whilst the Company and some other freemen had already half their lands ploughed and sown, it being now the time for that purpose, which should not be neglected. They were therefore urged not to delay any longer, as there would be no provisions for sale to them out of the Company's stores, and whatever more might induce them to better and greater exertion.

May 13th.—Fairly fine weather. The Commander busy further marking off the fence which he had begun to plant with wild bitter almonds, which are growing well and will in a few years' time become a fine, thick and high hedge. Within it are now embraced the two Bush hills (Bosheuvels) and the 'Baers rivieren' which during a heavy rainy season discharge themselves into False as well as Table Bay, and that for the pastures and

the hay, which are highly required on both sides of its banks for the cattle and the horses.

May 14th.—(Full moon.) Fine, calm, cloudy weather, with now and then a slight shower.

May 15th.—(Sunday.) The same weather.

May 16th.—Same weather. Gonnoma, the second Chief of the Saldanhars or Cochoquas, arrived at the Fort with 3 cows and 29 sheep, not having dared to show himself here for the last seven years, namely, ever since Herry in 1653 for the first time stole the Company's cattle, as he was also at the Fort the night before, and feared that we considered him also guilty of the crime; (we used to call him the black captain). In order to give him firmer confidence in us, we treated him the more liberally and said that we were now at peace with all the great of the land, and endeavour to make more with other tribes and also with himself; a peace unbreakable. This seemed to please him much; and he was mightily astonished at the buildings which had been erected in every direction since his absence, and said that no one in the world any longer harboured any evil intentions against the Dutch, but that all the great in the neighbourhood were all completely at rest regarding what had occurred, and were with heart and soul disposed to visit us for trade and intercourse. Herry is at present living near the Fort and with Doman employed as interpreter, though Eva is the principal exponent of the language, as she speaks Dutch thoroughly and perfectly. Through her Gonomoa informed the Commander that he had purposely come to see him once more, having heard of his approaching departure, and to request that like Oedaso and so many others he also may be accepted and continued in the same friendship, and for that purpose submitted himself for favourable recommendation to the new Commander, as he would on his part not desist from bringing on cattle. He was answered as was required, as well as to his satisfaction, and assured of our friendship. After which his men also were lustily entertained with food and brandy to the height of merriness, and it having in the meanwhile grown dark, they went to sleep a little.

May 17th.—Very fine, lovely, sunshiny weather. The Commander again went out, having instructed the Fiscal and Land Surveyor to survey the land fence as it had been marked off, that the whole might be laid down in a chart before his departure; and also to give the necessary orders for the tillage.

May 18th.—Fine weather as before. Gonomoa leaves with a good present, and well satisfied.

May 19th.—Same lovely weather. The *Maerseveen* receives her despatch, as well as the papers for India. She will leave with the first favourable breeze.

May 20th.—Dark, rainy weather in the morning, with a stiff N.W. wind. Gonomoa's men bring for barter 8 sheep and 2 cattle.

1661.

May 21st.—The wind being S.E. the *Muerseveen* leaves during the afternoon with 280 healthy men, the sick having been exchanged for healthy men, whilst 15 more were given her here than the number she brought. May the Almighty keep her safely.

To-day some forerunners of the Chainouquas were again at the Fort with three cattle, reporting that their Lord was on the way hither with a considerable quantity of cattle. He may therefore be here before the time supposed, which may be hoped.

May 22nd.—(Sunday.) Dry S.S.E., with clear weather.

May 23rd.—Wet weather and westerly wind from the sea.

May 24th and 25th.—Fine, lovely, clear, calm weather. Oedaso's people bring 4 sheep.

May 26th.—(Ascension Day.) The same lovely, dry, cool, healthy weather.

May 27th.—The *Hilversum* arrives with a westerly breeze to obtain some water. She had as yet seen no ships at sea. The *Perkyt* was also in sight to-day.

May 28th.—(New moon.) The *Hilversum* leaves during the afternoon with a gentle S.S.E. breeze to cruise for the winter ships expected from home, together with the *Perkyt*.

The following Resolution was adopted:—

Saturday, the 28th May, 1661.

“Jochum Blanck of Lubeck, keeper of the pay books of this Fort ‘the Good Hope,’ having betrothed himself to Johanna Boddys of Doesburgh, widow of the late Jan van Harwarden of blessed memory, and during his life Ensign of this Fort, and both having appeared before the Council, requesting that they may be united in the Holy Bonds of Matrimony and allowed that their first banns may be published to-morrow after the sermon; the Council not knowing otherwise than that both are free and according to their own declarations, which they offer to confirm by oath, have no engagement with any one else, resolves to grant these persons their reasonable request, and have their first banns published to-morrow after the sermon, and so consecutively every Sunday until the third, after which the solemnisation shall be solemnly effected and the marriage publicly proceeded with.

And as the said Jochum Blank, in consequence of his marriage, intends at once to ‘enter into freedom,’ he is, because of his diligent services in superintending the Company’s stores and appendices, the keeping of the garrison pay books and the specification of the expenditure of the ships, &c., an office which he has satisfactorily held for 3 years, gifted by this, as soon as he has entered into freedom, with the appointment of country bailiff (land-schout) of the free Colony here, provided that he shall support himself with agriculture.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope,' on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA.

Outvoted in case of the 'land bailiff,'

PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary."

May 29th.—Fine weather.

May 30th and 31st.—Lovely weather. The Commander went out again into the country to inspect everything there, as well as the spots on which the Caapmen and Gorachouquas had requested permission to settle with their families and cattle, mostly in an E.S.E. direction, about an hour's walk from the Fort, beyond the Salt and 'Bracke' Rivers, behind the beach downs, fully half an hour beyond the circle marked off for the Company, because as they professed that there was no grass sufficient for their cattle in the Hout and Bergh valleys, where they had before this with our consent settled when they parted from Oedasoa. Yesterday they had pointed out the spot to the Fiscal and Doman and asked that they might encamp there. This was granted, provided that they remained outside the land fence now being planted (with the wild bitter almond), as well as away from the Fresh River embraced within it for the Company; also that they were to use no other road than through the field gates expressly made for that purpose in the said fence, according to the conditions of the last peace made with them, to which all the tribes in this country are already as accustomed as if they were the gates of a town or province.

On his return to the Fort in the evening, the Commander found there the first and second king of the Cochoquas or Saldanhars, viz., Oedasoa and Gonnomoa, with 15 fairly good old and young cattle and 48 sheep, which were obtained from them for yellow copper, red beads, tobacco and 'kabary,' which are chains of red copper. The aforesaid captains were well entertained.

Regarding agriculture many of the freemen had to be considerably urged to their work; nevertheless a large quantity of wheat will be sown this year. In some parts the seeds are springing forth beautifully, so that it is a pleasure to see them.

June 1st.—Fine, lovely, clear, sunshiny weather, with calms and variable breezes.

June 2nd.—Towards evening the S.S.E. wind blew rather stiffly until about 9 o'clock. The two Saldanhar kings leave with considerable presents after having been well entertained. At our suggestion they promised that when the new Commander arrived they would personally bring in some fat cattle and sheep as a welcome to him and in order to be introduced to him by the present Commander, that he might be able to see and know what sort of people they were who were in alliance with us, and inclined to

1661. — associate and trade with him, as with the present Commander in all peace and friendship.

Herry and Doman taking this to be a good work, undertook also to advise the Hanquaes or chief of the Gorachouquas or Tobacco Thieves, as well as the Goringhaiquas or Caapmen, to do the same thing, as they could clearly see that they would breed affection.

The Chainouquas were living too far away, otherwise they would very likely also come; though no doubt they will come in good time, having sufficiently witnessed the disposition of the Hollanders to a familiar intercourse and trade with all the nations of this country.

June 3rd.—Fine, lovely, calm weather in the morning.

June 4th.—The same pleasant weather.

June 5th.—(Pentecost.) It may be supposed that the outward bound ships, in consequence of the calms all about, are lying off the coast, longing considerably to reach the land. May God grant them a speedy arrival. The *Hilversum* and *Perkyt* are still outside, cruising for them.

June 6th.—Dry, calm weather, contrary to the nature of the season.

This morning, after the reading of the sermon, the following persons were married publicly before the Council in the Council chamber, according to the Resolution inserted below.

Monday, the 6th June, 1661.

“After the conclusion of the sermon this morning, the third publication of the banns having taken place, without the least impediment, according to Christian usage, of the betrothed persons Jochum Blanq of Lubeck, dispenser and keeper of the pay books of this Fortress ‘the Good Hope,’ and Johanna Boddys of Doesburgh, widow of the late Jan van Harwarden of blessed memory, during life Ensign in this Fort, and nothing having appeared before us to show that they should be hindered in their purpose—the Council decides, according to its resolution of the 28th May last, to allow the solemnisation to proceed in the name of the Lord, and that everything may be lawfully done, as we have no minister here, to authorize the Secretary to perform the ceremony after the conclusion of the service and in the name of the Lord. This was accordingly done publicly and lawfully.

Thus done in the Fort ‘the Good Hope,’ datum ut s.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.”

June 7th.—Hot, calm sunshine in the middle of winter.

June 8th.—Towards the afternoon the air became cloudy, with a N.W. breeze. At nightfall the *Hilversum* and *Perkyt* arrived

off Robben Island. Yesterday and to-day we bartered three sheep from Oedaso's people, as well as 6 old and young cattle from other natives professing to be emissaries from the Chainouquas, who wished to mention that their king Oedaso was coming down from the Interior with a large number of cattle. This would be most desirable as we have generally obtained from him the largest number of animals.

During the evening and night it blew and rained very much from the N.W.

June 9th.—Same weather. Arrival of the ship *Prins Willem* about two o'clock in the afternoon, having on board the chief merchant Johan Pelletier and skipper Daniel de Looper, as well as a minister named Johannes van den Swaerden. She had left Wielingen on the 7th February, in company of the *Stad van Honingen* and *Nieuwenhoven*, with 392 men, of whom 15 had died and 50 or 60 were at present on the sick list, suffering from scurvy. She had called nowhere.

The *Hilversum* also arrives, whose officers were ordered, in accordance with instructions received with the *Prins Willem* from Holland, at once to transship her cargo into the latter vessel and get herself ready without delay in order to proceed with all despatch to Ceylon with such orders as will be prepared for her by order of the Directors, as well as for the *Perkyt*, which is still cruising outside and may be expected every moment.

June 10th.—Loose, wet weather, with variable breezes. The *Perkyt* arrives and receives the same orders as those given to the *Hilversum*.

June 11th.—Strong N.W. wind.

June 12th.—(Full moon.) Fine, lovely weather. A portion of the sick of the *Prins Willem* landed, and those of the *Maerseveen* who have been restored to health sent on board instead, to make room here.

This morning Cornelius Hermansz of Utrecht, a carpenter of the *Maerseveen*, died.

This afternoon the signalmen at the kloof watch house notified that there were two vessels in sight.

June 13th.—Fine, lovely, sunshiny weather, with a N.W. breeze. About one o'clock in the morning the two vessels, guided by the beacon fires on Robben Island, arrived safely in the roadstead, viz., *Het Slot van Honingen* and *Nieuwenhoff*, which had left the Wielingen with the *Prins Willem* on the 7th February last. On board the *Slot van Honingen* were skipper Willem Volkertsz, and junior merchant Cornelius van Essen, with 374 men, of whom 4 had died; excepting 6 or 7, the rest were all well. She had called at Cabo Verde and there heard from the Commander Hendrik Kops that two days before her arrival 5 large English ships had been there carrying 1,200 men, who had told him that in six months' time they would bring about that the place would be annexed

by the King of England, and that with similar instructions they were to proceed along the whole coast of Africa as far as the Cape of Good Hope, as will more fully appear from the letter of the said Cops to Batavia.

On the *Nieuwenhore* were skipper Frederick Jansz and book-keeper Jan de Witte. She carried 136 men, 6 of whom had died. She had called nowhere, except last week at Saldanha Bay, where she had obtained a little water, a small lean ox, and three or four sheep. The crew were all well excepting 5 or 6 suffering from scurvy.

June 14th.—Pleasant weather, but too calm for the ships lying outside to come in.

June 15th and 16th.—The same weather, but with variable breezes. The ship *Zeepaart* of Zealand towed to the roadstead this morning. She had left the *Wielingen* on the 1st March with 242 men, of whom 2 had died; the rest were all well. She had called nowhere. Yesterday she had seen two ships near here. Her skipper's name was Hendrik Lucifer and that of the junior merchant Cornelis van den Mande.

Another ship was towed in during the afternoon, the breezes being variable. She was the *Arnhem* which had left the Texel on the 7th February last in company of the *Wapen van Holland* and *Overveen*. She carried 358 men of whom 31 had died, among them skipper Reus Jansz and the Rev. Henricus Pelius, with wife and 2 children. With the exception of 8 or 10 the rest were fairly well. The chief mate Dirk Gerritz of Norden had been appointed provisional skipper. The junior merchant's name was Abram Ardes, who had his wife and children on board. She had called nowhere and met with nothing worth mentioning. Like the other vessels she was at once provided with refreshments, and orders issued that this should be daily attended to.

June 17th.—Rainy weather and strong breeze from the N.W., preventing the *Perkyt* from leaving for Ceylon. Towards evening two vessels reached the mouth of the bay, but in consequence of the rising S. Easter, they were unable to come in. The *Perkyt* however left.

June 18th.—Calm weather in the morning. The Fiscal reported that the two vessels were *Het Wapen van Holland* and the yacht *Overveen*, which had left the Texel together with the *Arnhem* on the 7th February last.

The Commander Gerrit van Harn, who had been appointed successor to Commander van Riebeeck, had departed this life on the 17th March and been buried on the island St. Vincent, where the two aforesaid ships had called. *Het Wapen van Holland* had on board 343 men, among them skipper David de Coninck and junior merchant Hendrik Henk. Of this number 25 had died, as well as the aforesaid Commander designate, Gerrit van Harn.

On the *Overveen* were skipper Hendrik Franken and bookkeeper Cornelis Rosendaal. She had had 164 men on board of whom none had died. She had always remained in the company of *Het Wapen van Holland*, because her skipper was ill unto death at St. Vincent, so that she was in a very desolate condition. Now, however, both officers and men are all in fair health, excepting the junior merchant of *Het Wapen van Holland*, who is very ill.

June 19th.—(Sunday.) Hazy weather, with a N.W. breeze. The Rev. Johannes van den Swaerde administers the Holy Sacrament on shore.

During the afternoon 6 cattle and 4 sheep were bartered from the Gorachouquas, and 13 yesterday from Oedasca's people.

June 20th.—Misty, calm weather in the morning, preventing the *Hilversum* from leaving for Ceylon. She had received her despatch yesterday.

The yacht *Nieuwenhove* hurriedly despatched to Batavia in advance, with letters from the Commissioners at the Hague.

This day died the junior merchant of *Het Wapen van Hollandt*.

Towards evening the *Hilversum* makes an unsuccessful attempt to leave.

June 21st.—Fine weather. The *Nieuwenhove* leaves, but the *Hilversum* fails in doing so. The *Zeevaart* receives her despatch, with copies of the letters sent to Batavia in the *Nieuwenhove*. May the Almighty grant them a speedy voyage.

June 22nd.—Dark sky in the morning, with a N.W. breeze.

June 23rd.—Variable, loose weather. The *Hilversum* and *Zeevaart* leave. Those of the *Prins Willem* very busy taking on board their refreshments for the voyage, in order to be able to leave tomorrow.

June 24th.—Rather boisterous, wet weather from the N.W., preventing the *Prins Willem* from leaving.

June 25th.—N.W. weather as above. Death of the soldier Antonio de Wit of the Hague.

June 26th.—(New moon, Sunday.) Wet, boisterous weather, with a stiff N. Wester.

June 27th.—The weather somewhat milder. The *Slot Honingen* receives her despatch.

June 28th.—Weather the same as yesterday.

June 29th.—Very fine, calm weather. The *Prins Willem* and *Honingen* doing their best to get outside. Towards evening a S.E. breeze sprang up and they left. God grant them a safe voyage to Batavia.

June 30th.—A stiff S.S.E. wind, so that no boats could sail; otherwise the *Arnhem* would also have received her despatch, and, should it please God, also in three days' time the *Wapen van Hollandt* and *Overveen*, the last to arrive.

July 1st.—Fine, lovely weather in the morning. The *Arnhem* receives her despatch, but cannot leave.

1661.

July 2nd.—Boisterous, wet weather, with a stiff N.W. breeze. The following Resolution adopted in connection with the under-mentioned betrothed persons:—

Saturday, the 2nd July, 1661.

“Thomas Christoffel Muller of Leypsigh, bachelor, 25 years old, a free Saldanha trader, having betrothed himself to Catarina Croons of Bommel, spinster, 21 years old, formerly servant maid to the late Rev. Henricus Pelijs, and passenger on board the *Arnhem* now lying here; and both requesting to be lawfully joined in wedlock and that their first banns may be published to-morrow after the service; the Council considering that both are free persons who, according to their own statement, which they are prepared to confirm by oath, have nothing outstanding with anyone else, decides to grant their reasonable request and let their first banns be published to-morrow after the Christian service and so consecutively on every service day until the third have been read, that after that the solemnisation may take place legally and publicly.

Thus done in the Fort ‘Good Hope,’ datum as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.”

July 3rd.—(Sunday.) The same wet, boisterous weather. The wind the same as yesterday from the north-west.

July 4th.—Calm weather. Westerly breeze.

July 5th.—Calm weather. The *Arnhem* unsuccessful in attempting to leave. *Het Wapen van Hollandt* and *Overveen* receive their despatch and the papers for Batavia.

July 6th.—A S.S.E. breeze in the morning, with beautiful clear weather. The three above named vessels leave. God grant them safe voyages.

July 7th.—Same lovely weather.

July 8th.—Same weather. The Commander, accompanied by Fiscal Gabbema, and Sergeant Everaert, went to the country to have a look all round. They found the cultivated lands of the Company progressing finely, as well as those of some of the free-men, who were further encouraged in their works, whilst the dilatory were urged to do better.

The posts of the horse and other guards in the country were everywhere in good order. Yesterday the Caapmen and to-day the Gorachouquas in sight of the Commander removed from behind the Boshervel to behind the downs adjoining the Salt River, about half way to the Saltpans or a stiff hour and a half's walk from this, beyond the limits of the Company as fixed by us, and according to their request previously made to us, that as they had no fresh water and would not be permitted to come to or be

tolerated at our own (according to the agreements made with them) they might be permitted to dig holes in the brackish grounds for their cattle to drink from.

July 9th.—Dark, hazy weather in the morning, with stiff N.W. storm winds.

July 10th.—(Sunday) About the same, but not so bad. This morning after the sermon the undermentioned persons were married before the Council in open Council chamber, according to Resolution inserted below.

Sunday, 10th July, 1661.

“After the reading of the sermon this morning, the third banns having without hindrance been published, according to Christian usage, of the betrothed persons Thomas Christoffel Muller of Leypsigh, free Saldanhar trader, bachelor, and Catharina Croons of Bommel, young maiden, and as nothing has appeared before us to show why they should be retarded or prevented in their purpose; the Council decides according to Resolution of the 2nd instant to permit the solemnization of the marriage in the name of the Lord, and that everything may be done legally, orderly and to the greater honour of God, to authorise the Secretary, as we have no minister here, to perform the ceremony before all the people in the open Council chamber. This was accordingly done on the same day after the service publicly and legally in the name of the Lord.

Thus done in the fort ‘the Good Hope’ datum ut s.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.”

July 11th.—Fine, lovely, sunshiny, calm weather.

July 12th.—Same weather. The second chief of the Cochoquas or Saldanhars, namely Gonnomoa, brought 5 cattle and 21 sheep, which were bartered from him. Among them was a large bull which he presented to the Commander, which having been accepted for the Company, was richly paid for in contra presents, whilst the chief was well entertained in order to make him the more accustomed to us. In opening the Company’s cash box this morning it was found that it barely contained 200 reals, and that as the garrison had received no cash payments for 9 months it was necessary, in order to prevent dissatisfaction among them, to pay them out one month’s wages. The Council accordingly decided to use for the purpose some of the Orphan Funds in its charge, according to the undermentioned Resolution, viz :—

Tuesday, the 12th July, 1661.

“As there are at present hardly 200 reals in the Company’s treasury, out of which, if the daily expenditure for board money, subsidies and other payments for train oil for India, sea’s’ flesh for the slaves here, and material are to be found, there will not be

1661.

enough left for such a large disbursement as the payment of one month's wages to the garrison, which has for nine months received no cash on account; and in order not to discourage them, as they cannot much longer be prevented from becoming dissatisfied, it was unanimously decided to borrow one thousand reals of three guilders each at one half per cent. per month from the sum belonging to the orphans and at present in custody of the Company, until the Treasury is able to repay it.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed)

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary."

July 13th.—Dry, windy, S E. weather.

July 14th.—Calm, lovely, dry weather. This day a notice was issued and affixed mentioning that for the comfort of all the freemen and Company's servants for cash, or in case of the freemen who have a credit balance in the Company's books, the following goods are offered for sale, viz. :—

Inland	and	Guinea linen.
English sheets	„	Taffachelas.
Serge	„	Narrow Baftas.
' Heresayen '	„	St. Thomas cloth.
Silk	„	Knitted worsted stockings.
Cotton thread	„	Hats.
Chintz	„	Wheat.
Ribbons	„	Seed sieves.
Mouris	„	Striped cloth.
Salmpouris	„	Negros cloth.
Tobacco	„	Blankets.
Sugar	„	Nutmegs.
Pepper	„	Cloves, and
		Cinnamon.

Whoever requires any of the above, let him come every Saturday morning when he will be supplied for his money or what he has in his favour (on the books).

Tell it further."

July 15th.—Lovely calm but very cold weather in the morning, as if it was freezing.

July 16th.—Dark, rainy weather, with a westerly breeze.

July 17th.—(Sunday.) Fine, clear, lovely weather, with a S.S.E. breeze.

July 18th.—Same weather, but calm. The junior merchant Roeloff de Man, and the Fiscal Abraham Gabbema went out with sergeant Everaerts to inspect the lands and plantations of Commander van Riebeeck at the ' Bosheuvel,' which he is endeavour-

ing to sell, that if found serviceable they may be bought for the Company, and planted with a large orchard of oranges, lemons, vines, &c., with which a commencement has already been made, as the place is most conveniently situated and sheltered from all the hard winds. Moreover, it will in any case be necessary to look for a large plot of ground for the Company, and clear the same of bush, which it will be too late to do this season, in order to transplant in it the rooted plants and young shoots of the orange and lemon trees before September, and the vine stocks in ten or twelve days' time. This spot the Commander had selected for himself, but as he intends to leave soon, he does not care about planting anything more, but, as aforesaid, desires to sell the whole plantation. Hence the above mentioned members of the Council, commissioned for the purpose, went out in order to make a thorough inspection of the whole, and see how it can be taken over for the Company. Returning towards evening they reported that from long experience they had found it to be the most sheltered spot for the cultivation of large trees, against the heavy winds, within the circle marked off for the tillage area of the Company and the freemen. Hence it was decided after a long previous deliberation and consultation to adopt the following Resolution:—

Tuesday, the 18th July, 1661.

“It having been found more and more that neither in the Company's gardens nor anywhere else in this Table Valley high or big fruit trees can be reared, and that but few of the little ones will succeed, so that it is in the interest of the Company, and getting high time to select a large piece of land, clear and prepare it, in which all the young olive, and especially the orange, pummelo and lemon trees, besides different kinds of young Dutch fruit trees, may be planted in large numbers about the month of September, and thus a large orchard be formed, from which in due course the ships may be abundantly refreshed; and as moreover the vine slips must be put into the ground about the first of August next; and as it will be a very long and costly work to prepare new lands for the purpose, and there is for such a plantation no better situated land—better situated than any belonging to the Company—as regards shelter from the S.E. winds than the orange, lemon and vine plantation which the Commander van Riebeeck has commenced to lay out, with corn lands, and everything connected with the same, and which he is endeavouring to sell, favourably situated as it is within the area marked off by the Company as its possessions, within sight of the watch house ‘Hout den Bul’ (Hold the Bull) and sufficiently protected; and as it would be a great pity and loss if this beautiful plantation were to fall into private hands, which, as is generally seen, instead of further developing such a useful work, would rather allow it to go back—there being none among the freemen inclined to cultivate trees or vines, preferring to use their lands only for grain, garden and

1661.

earth fruits, because the returns are quick : Moreover should any of them care to nurture the trees and vines already planted until they bear fruit, they would, as has already been observed in the case of the grain, feel little inclination to supply any to the Company but endeavour to sell everything to anybody just as they like, so that the Company would never reap any advantage from the fruits of such beautiful orange, apple and lemon trees, as are promising so finely there, in order to supply the ships in proportion to the number of their men and sick, just as has already happened a long time in the case of vegetables, earth and other fruit grown in the Company's gardens. It is therefore necessary that such an orchard should be planted for the Company, as it has been proved by examples that private individuals would rather neglect than take care of the said plantations of young orange and lemon trees as well as the vine slips planted there in good order and large numbers.

Hitherto certainly hardly any one has any of the plants, especially of the vines, distributed annually by hundreds, growing on his lands or at his house. It was further considered, that as we have already mentioned a large orange and lemon orchard is very much required in the interests of the Company for the purposes mentioned, and that the preparation of new lands for the purpose would entail very great expense and long labour necessary for uprooting the trees and other wild bush ; that besides such a new plantation would produce so much later, whilst on the other hand the Bosheuvel has been completely cleared of all bush and is lying quite ready as a spot like unto which there is no other in the whole of the Cape so suitable for the growth of large trees as this same 'Bosheuvel,' whose lands are also sheltered from the violent S.S.E. winds, on account of which only dwarfed trees can be reared here in the Company's gardens, as already remarked, a hundred of which would not be able to produce much more than one large tree at the aforesaid Bosheuvel. It was accordingly decided, for all the reasons mentioned, that it would be for the best interests of the Company to take over for the Company the plantation at the Bosheuvel belonging to the Commander ; but as regards compensation for his outlay, the price for the land and plantation, the buildings consisting of granary, ricks, wagons, ploughs, harrows and other material—as proposed by the Commander—it was understood to leave that entirely to the Commissioner annually arriving here from Batavia to inspect affairs, to make a fair valuation of the whole, that we may remain above all suspicion. Accordingly the whole place as far as it has been cleared, and more than once broken by the plough, sown, planted or otherwise is taken over for the Company, the whole consisting of morgen, of which at present morgen are sown with wheat and barley, and planted with

1,162 young orange, lemon and pummelo trees.
 10 pisang do.
 2 olive do., and
 70 Dutch fruit trees, viz. :—
 3 walnut.
 6 quince.
 5 apple.
 2 pear.
 11 cherry.
 24 chestnut.

And 19 plum trees, making a total of 1,244 young fruit trees, independent of the lands sown, and some thousands of young vines of fair growth.

A further portion of the land will also be ready next season for early grain, and the rest will be fit for vines, orange, lemon and other kinds of fruit trees, which on account of the violent S.S.E. winds at the 'Doornbosjen,' it has been found advisable no longer to plant there, but merely to keep it for a nursery. Moreover it is urgently necessary to find a place for the more than thousand young orange and lemon trees, which will have struck root about September next, as well as for the numerous vine slips, for which the land at the 'Bosheuvel,' as often said, has been beautifully made ready. And as the Directors, with an eye on the poor soil and violent S.S.E. winds in this Table Valley ordered in their general despatch of the 2nd September, 1658, that on account of these violent winds, in consequence of which vegetables will not thrive or come to proper perfection in Table Valley, we were to form new plantations behind the Table Mountain and in the neighbourhood of the corn lands or elsewhere, where there was no such exposure to those winds, how much the more then will it be expedient to assume possession of such a useful plantation of orange, lemon and other fruit trees, vines, &c., thus far created and maintained by the Commander with great care, and which, should it fall into private hands, would make no progress, but, as already said, would fall into complete decay. Moreover the pulse or white beans grown there would also fall to the Company, a matter of great importance, as it is more and more seen that the freemen mostly squander away their corn and beans to the men of the passing ships, so that only a tithe of their corn and nothing of their beans reaches the Company's stores, however carefully this is watched, so that the Company is obliged itself to sow annually at least 60 or 70 morgen of ground with grain. And it being further considered of the aforesaid 'Bosheuvel' that a portion of the land of the Bosheuvel, independent of what has been sown and planted, has been cleared, prepared, and ploughed, and is lying fallow; It was unanimously decided to adopt this resolution not only for the sake of the corn which may be grown there next year

1661.

in larger quantities, but especially on account of the olive and other trees mentioned, which can be better grown there than in any other spot at the Cape. Moreover for the reasons alleged and for many other weighty ones the planting of trees is of the highest importance to the Company. The lands also contain a quantity of sweet potatoes which are thriving well, the farming operations being conducted by two Dutchmen (loan servants) and eight slaves who have 22 good draft oxen for the work, with everything else required. And as the Commander leaves the valuation of the whole completely to the Commissioner from Batavia, he also forgoes completely all claim on 101 morgen, the remaining portion of the ground to which he is entitled on the 'Bosheuvel,' and which for the purpose of sowing and planting he has enclosed with a fence of wild trees all round. He therefore transfers, on the conditions mentioned, the whole to the company, in whose behalf this resolution will serve as a complete transfer, the Commander arranging in due course with the Hon. Commissioner regarding the price."

Thus unanimously resolved.

(Signed)

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

July 19th and 20th.—Heavy, stormy weather, with much rain and hail.

Wednesday the 20th July, 1661.

"The following persons having submitted to the Council that their time had expired and that they are willing to renew their engagement, it was decided by the Commander and Council to accept them according to the conditions and improvements as mentioned below, viz :—

Jan Carstense of Sunderburgh, who arrived here in the *Prins Willem* in July, 1658, as arquebusier at f10 per month, and has since been employed in the Company's large cattle kraal and sheep stables, for cleaning the same and collecting the manure for the gardens and the lands, having been very diligent, is engaged for 3 years longer as arquebusier at f13 per month.

Maarten Reeselaer of Cerenburgh, who arrived here in the yacht *Hasselt* on the 10th August, 1657, as cooper at f15, and has since been employed in the Company's warehouses, in which he has given satisfaction, is at his request re-engaged for three years longer, as master cooper at f20 per month.

Roeloff Michielsz of Gothland, who arrived here in the *Oliphant* on the 15th November, 1660, as arquebusier at f12, and has since been employed as carpenter, having been found a good industrious workman, is accepted as house carpenter at f15.

Willem Adriaensz of Amsterdam, who arrived here in the yacht's *Gravelandt* in January, 1660, as boatswain at f11 and has

since been employed as carpenter in which he gave satisfaction, is at his request and for his ability accepted as house carpenter at fl5.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above."

(Signed)

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

July 21st.—Somewhat less boisterous weather, with a stiff gale from the N.W.

July 22nd.—The same weather. About noon a very heavy hailstorm and rain.

July 23rd.—About the same weather, but somewhat milder.

July 24th.—(Sunday.) Fine, lovely, calm, sunshiny weather in the morning.

July 25th.—Dark, sharp, cold weather, which would chase one rather to the fire than outside, with a fairly stiff N.W. breeze, with which the *Beurs* of Amsterdam arrived, having on board skipper Reyer Mauritszen and two assistants, viz., Anthony van Zoomeren and Gerrit Pauw. She had left the Texel on the 11th April last, in company of the ships *Het Huys te Swieten*, *de Rysende Son*, *de Wassende Maen* and *Het Raedthuys van Amsterdam*, having on board 247 men, of whom 9 had died and 3 been lost overboard; the rest were somewhat troubled with scurvy, but only 7 or 8 were laid up. Yesterday she had seen the *Raedthuys* under the land. The *Huys te Swieten* she had last seen under the line. Off Cape Finisterre the storm had parted her from her comrades; she had called nowhere, so that the men had become somewhat ill from scurvy and required the more refreshment.

This afternoon Commander Riebeeck and his wife plucked the two first oranges from a small tree standing in the Company's gardens. They were beautifully yellow, coloured, and nicely large, and taken from the St. Helena young trees which we ere this obtained from that Island. It is to be hoped that soon more will begin to bear.

Towards nightfall another ship sailed into the bay, but on account of the drizzling weather could not be recognised. Guided by the signals, she anchored just outside the roadstead, and on the

July 26th.—(New moon.) On the right place. She proved to be the *Raedthuys van Amsterdam* (see above). She brought 241 men, of whom 8 had died, among them the bookkeeper Anthonio la Faillje and the assistant Salomon Sandra. The rest of the men were fairly well; a few were somewhat weakened with scurvy, though still on their legs. She had called nowhere. On the 8th June in 3° N. Lat., she had been boarded by the skipper of the *Mayboom*, whose condition was still very good, she having no sick or dead. She was in company of an Englishman also proceeding

1661. to India, which already had 7 dead and various sick. For the rest she had had no further adventures, nor did she fall in with other ships.

The weather remained loose and showery, with heavy rains.

July 27th.—Same weather. Wind N. West. The hunters bring to the fort the skin of a full grown lioness, which they had shot yesterday at the request of the Caapmen near the cattle kraal of the latter, five hours distant from this. But the hunter Carel Broers and their servant Jan Wolff, as well as two Hottentoots, had been very much wounded by the lioness, so that independent of the reward to which they are entitled, their wounds are to be healed by the Company's surgeon free of expense. The Hottentoots know how to manage for themselves.

July 28th.—Dry, stiff S.S.E. wind and weather in the morning. A ship seen tacking into the bay, which arrived on the roadstead about noon. She was the yacht *Mayboom* with skipper Gysbert Janszen Strantwyk and bookkeeper Willem van Colter on board. She had left Rotterdam on the 11th April last with 91 men, one of whom had fallen overboard. The rest were quite well. Had sailed in company of a Rotterdam ship, the *Ida Maria*, as far as Böa Vista, where they looked for water but obtained none. They only obtained 12 or 13 goats and some sweet potatoes. Proceeding on their voyage they had met an Englishman near the line, named the *Loyal Marchiant*, of about 250 lasts, carrying 36 guns, and 120 or 130 men. She was bound for Bantam. Her captain's name was Nicolaes Milet, and that of her bookkeeper Vincent Velte who had in 1660 proceeded home as bookkeeper in the Company's service in the overwintered yacht *Erasmus*. They had remained in company about 12 or 13 days and two or three times visited each other on board in which the Englishmen showed great civility and friendship.

To-day the Commander was on the roadstead to attend to some orders that had been issued.

July 29th.—Lovely weather. The air variable. The Commander proceeds to the roadstead for the same purpose.

July 30th.—Same weather. A wolf shot by the freemen during the night. The usual reward was paid out to them.

July 31st.—(Sunday.) The same beautiful weather, with calms. This enables the vessels to get their affairs rapidly in order to be able to leave soon, though those still outside are prevented by the calm weather from coming in.

During the night a soldier died named Claes Permaet of the Hague.

August 1st.—Lovely, pleasant sunshine, but during the afternoon it blew so strongly from the N.W. that the ship's boats had much difficulty in sailing to and fro.

The *Beurs* and *Het Raedthuys van Amsterdam* received their despatch.

August 2nd.—Particularly fine weather in the morning. Towards evening the two vessels leave with a gentle breeze.

August 3rd.—Same weather as yesterday. The two vessels reach the open sea towards evening. God grant them a speedy and safe voyage.

About the same time another vessel is sighted through the telescopes.

This afternoon a certain Chaihantima, a subject of the Chainouquas, brought 13 cattle to the Fort, which were bartered for beads, copper and tobacco. He told us that his Lord Sousoa would during the dry season come down with even a larger number of cattle than that of last year. This Chaihantima we have not seen for three years, and is the same who had told us such stories about his wife having been brought up at the court of the Chobonas, having worn many jewels, and afterwards been killed by the Cochoquas or Saldanhars. Though he still adheres to them, we can no longer believe him. Time will show what truth there is in his story about his Lord.

August 4th.—Calm, cloudy sky in the morning. The following Resolution adopted:—

Thursday, the 4th August, 1661.

“As the widow of the late Ensign Jan van Herwarden has been remarried to the dispenser of the Fort and accordingly has given up her tap business and inn for the accomodation of those on the passing vessels, and it is necessary to appoint some one else instead, the Council, aware of the fitness of the freeman Hendrick Hendricksz of Surwarden and his wife, permit them to take over the business of the large inn, provided that he builds on the plot granted to him a proper house for the purpose.

And as it has been observed that much vile ugly money is beginning to be circulated and the best kept back, the following notice was published and affixed at the proper place, viz.:—

‘Whereas it is daily seen more and more that different kinds of money are received here by the servants of the Company and freemen from the men of the out and homeward bound ships, which moneys are not current in India, but have been condemned by the High Government there, so that every effort is being made to get rid of them here, and the result will soon be that we will have an abundance of the same, and left thoroughly destitute of good coin, unless provision be made in good time;—the Commander and Council of this Fort warn all Company’s servants and freemen here, as well as those on board the calling ships not to receive the coins specified below, or to pass them, on pain of 2 reals of eight for the first and double that sum for the second offence, viz.:—

The “Spaansche Matten” (Spanish dollars) on which are the two pillars of Hercules and named *Plus Ultra*.

The dollars of 28 stivers. ‘Flabbe’ or 4 stiver pieces.

All eight stiver pieces. Also all half skillings.

1661.

And all single stivers without arrows, so that of the stivers no others shall be legal tender than those coined with the seven arrows of our General State, generally known as "besemstuyvertjes" (broom pennies).

If any servants of the Company or freemen have at any time received any of this class of money from the Company, they shall be bound to bring the same within twice twenty-four hours after the publication of this to the Office of this Fortress, in order to be exchanged and withdrawn; as whosoever delays longer than that time will not be compensated, we deeming this to be for the good of the Company. Hence let every one beware of loss.'

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year aforesaid, and published likewise as far as the notice is concerned."

(Signed)

JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

August 5th.—Fine, lovely weather in the morning. Towards evening the vessel above mentioned succeeded by tacking to reach the roadstead. Captain Borger Cox landed in his sloop in but indifferent health. He mentioned that the vessel was *Het Huys te Swieten*, with skipper Gerrit Pietersz of Vlaerdingen, and book-keeper Johannes Brakel. She had left the Texel on the 11th April last in company of the *Beurs*, &c., with 326 men, of whom 48 had died from severe illness which not more than 10 or 12 persons escaped. At present all were once more in a fair state of health, only slightly suffering from scurvy, which soon disappears here with refreshments. She had called nowhere, but at the line had spoken the ship *De Jonge Prins van Hoorn*, which was at the time in good condition and without any sick. We hope that she also will soon arrive (opdonderen sal).

This night the steward of the *Raedthuys* died. With others he had been left here in a very weak state. He was named Lubbert Olphertsz Tettens.

August 6th.—Very lovely, calm weather. Fourteen soldiers transferred from the *Mayboom* to the *Huys te Swieten*.

August 7th.—(Sunday.) The same lovely weather. Eleven head of cattle bartered from the forerunners of the Chainouquas. The fine weather appears to tempt them out.

August 8th and 9th.—The same very beautiful weather. The yacht *Mayboom* receives its despatch and leaves during the night with a fine S.S.E. breeze. May the Almighty bring her safely to her destined haven.

August 10th.—(Full moon.) Pleasant, lovely, sunshiny weather as before.

August 11th.—Dark, cloudy weather, with a N. breeze.

August 12th.—Fine weather, with variable breezes. Some more of the Chainouqua forerunners arrive, with 14 head of cattle and 2 sheep, which we bartered from them. And in order to attract them the more to us, they were well entertained, and informed us that their Lord Sousoa was gradually approaching with a considerable troop, in order not to tire the cattle too much. God grant a desired success.

August 13th.—Rough, wet, cold weather in the morning, with stiff N.W. winds blowing into the bay.

August 14th.—(Sunday.) The same weather, but not so severe.

August 15th.—Variable winds. About 11 o'clock in the forenoon the *Rysende Son* arrived safely, on which was skipper Andries Blauw. She had left the Texel, in company of the *Huys te Swieten*, with 253 men, among them 14 dead, one missing and one deserted at Serra Lionas, where, on account of the many sick, she had called. After a stay of 11 days (having obtained a fair supply of refreshments in the form of oranges and pisangs) they had left and after 9 weeks' sailing reached the Cape. All the men were in good health, excepting 7 or 8. For the rest she had no adventures worth speaking of, so that she will receive quick despatch.

The *Prins van Hoorn* also arrived on the roadstead towards evening. Her skipper Cornelis Veldemuys and junior merchant Melchior Houwardt having landed stated that she had left the Texel alone on the 11th April last with 316 men, of whom two only had died, though among the rest scurvy was very much spreading. She had called nowhere and had had no particular adventures. She also had on board a minister and his wife named Godefridus van Akendam.

To-day 20 soldiers and sailors, among them a ship's carpenter, were transferred from the Fort to the *Huys te Swieten*.

August 16th.—Fine, lovely weather in the morning. Commander van Riebeeck proceeds to the roadstead, and with Captain Cox selected 50 of the healthiest soldiers on the *Jonge Prins* and transferred them to the *Huys te Swieten*, removing from the latter to the *Jonge Prins* 16 weaker persons. Six sick were also landed. It was also ordered that should the wind be favourable the *Huys te Swieten* was to leave to-morrow.

August 17th.—The same pleasant weather. The *Huys te Swieten* receives its despatch.

August 18th.—The same lovely weather. The above mentioned vessel leaves about 4 o'clock in the afternoon with a fair S.E. breeze. God grant her a safe voyage.

August 19th and 20th.—Very calm, lovely weather. The Commander again proceeds to the roadstead and transfers 24 more of the strongest soldiers from *De Jonge Prins* to the *Rysende Son*. Fifteen sick were landed from the latter vessel and taken to the Hospital for recovery in order to be restored to health before the arrival of other ships.

1661.

This day the following persons betrothed themselves before the Council, as will appear from the Resolution inserted below.

Saturday, the 20th August, 1661.

"The Commander and Council of the Fort the Good Hope, strengthened with the officers of the *Jonge Prins*, having been informed that Jan Pietersz of Caspel ter Mare agriculturist here at the Cape of Good Hope, 33 years old, widower of the late Hubbeken Reyniersz, had promised marriage to Beatrix Weyman of Utrecht, spinster, and 22 years old, a passenger on the *Jonge Prins*, and that they wish to be joined together in Holy wedlock, and that for the purpose their first banns may be published to-morrow after the sermon; and as the said ship is nearly ready to leave and should not for the purpose be delayed, decides that as from all that is known, both are absolutely free, and according to their own declaration, which they are prepared to confirm by oath, have nothing outstanding with anyone in the world, their reasonable request shall be granted, and for the reasons mentioned their first banns shall be published to-morrow after the service, and the second and third on the Monday and Tuesday following, that they may be married immediately after the third publication and before all the people by the Rev. Godefridus van Akendam who will on that day preach on shore.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope on the day and in the year as above."

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
CORNELIS VELDEMUYS,
MELCHIOR HOUWAERT,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

August 21st.—(Sunday.) Very fine weather. Three Hottentoots sent off this morning with the following note to

"The officers of the unknown vessel in Saldanha Bay.

As it is rumoured among the Hottentoots that a ship is lying in Saldanha Bay, we have sent you these three Hottentoots, named Claes Das, Jan Eraso, and Bisenté, with this note, by whom we expect a proper reply from you. In the meanwhile you are to do your best to come hither, should you not be prevented by the indisposition of the men or otherwise. Of which one thing and another informing us you will, oblige &c.

In the Fort of the Good Hope,
the 21st August, 1661.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

P.S.—"Fill the knapsack of each of these three Hottentoots with bread, and give each half a fathom of tobacco and a piece of cheese, besides the entertainment of eating and drinking which must be afforded them as long as they are on board, and let them return at once."

August 22nd.—Lovely weather. The *Rysende Son* receives its despatch. At dark those on the island notified by beacon fires that a vessel was sailing into the bay.

August 23rd.—Calm weather. Said vessel seen in the morning anchored just beyond the point of the bay on the outer roadstead. Skipper Hendrik Pietersz Springer and bookkeeper Abraham van de Woestyne having landed, reported that she was the *Wassende Maen*, which had left the Texel on the 11th April last, in company of the *Rysende Son*, &c. Of 258 men on board, 23 had died and the rest were very bad with the scurvy, though they had been six days at St. Vincent and obtained about 30 goats there for refreshment and filled their water casks. They had been becalmed more than five weeks at the line, which caused the length of the voyage and the scurvy among the men. The refreshments here will, however, thank God, be a good remedy for this. They had been becalmed six days off Saldanha Bay, hence the rumour that a large ship was lying in it.

To-day the free Saldanha traders, who arrived yesterday with 14 half-aums of train oil, also informed us that they had seen no ship there, so that the mission of the three Hottentoots thither with a note will most likely be fruitless, but in one sense not so, as it will accustom these natives to carry news for the rich payments made to them for the purpose.

August 24th.—(New moon.) Cloudy sky and a stiff N.W. breeze, preventing *De Son* from leaving.

August 25th.—Fine, lovely weather in the morning, with varying breezes, mostly S.S.E., so that *De Son* left early with 248 smart, well refreshed and healthy men. But as the wind turned towards the N.W. she could not succeed in getting outside.

In the meanwhile Sousoa, king or chief of the Chainouquas, arrives at the Fort, with 16 cattle and 22 sheep for barter; as well as 2 splendid fat wethers as a present to the Commander. The first mentioned were bought and the latter accepted for the Company with good presents given in return, and liberal entertainment.

The Commander asked Sousoa, amongst other things, whether he had brought with him now any samples of gold and white stones, or any of the natives among whom such were found (according to his promise of last year). He replied "No," because this time he had not been so far, but that for the present he had only endeavoured to bring down a large portion of cattle from as near as possible; and though he had now commenced with only a little lot, a sufficient abundance would follow during the approaching dry season. Cattle being bartered for beads and sheep for copper, tobacco, and pipes, two oxen come to hardly as much as one sheep. This, however, makes no difference, as our only object is to obtain a large number. And as we observed last year that by refusing animals that were too lean or too

1661.

—

old the trade was checked and the natives made unwilling to sell, it was decided not to look at that any longer, even if we were to use the meat for the slaves, as it comes out to be as cheap as seals' flesh, and will cause the said natives the least dissatisfaction.

August 26th.—Stiff N.W. winds in the morning, so that the *Rysende Son* is obliged to remain at anchor in the mouth of the bay.

August 27th.—Somewhat better; but still rather loose weather. The wind from the west, with rain and hail. Veering towards the south the *Rysende Son* succeeded in leaving between 10 and 11 o'clock in the forenoon, and successfully reached the open sea during the afternoon. May the Almighty guide her safely to her destined haven.

More Chainouquas arrive to-day, with 11 old and young cattle and 5 sheep, which were bartered. To allure them the more, they were well entertained.

The three Hottentoots who had been sent to Saldanha Bay return this day, and though their mission was in vain, they were richly rewarded for their trouble in order to keep them always willing.

August 28th.—Same weather as yesterday. The following notice affixed at the proper place and everywhere about:—

“The Commander and Council, &c.

As it appears more and more from the complaints laid before us by those on board the passing ships that their goods and linen, which they bring on shore to wash and lay open on the veld to bleach and dry, are taken away by the brutal aboriginals of this country, even in their presence, without being able to recover anything of it, as the thieves at once run away, and because of their fleetness cannot be overtaken;—And as it has been further observed that this is done not only by the aforesaid brutal natives, but that also some of the Netherland residents here (the virtuous excepted) have a hand in it, who manage to screen them and buy from them at a trivial price the said stolen goods, by which the said persons instead of, according to their bounden duty, setting a good example to these brutal persons, rather instigate them more and more to steal the property of the aforesaid persons, yea! to such an extent that they (the natives) seize the hats and caps from off the heads of the same and run away with them, managing to sell them to the Netherlanders;—And as provision should be made against this, as it cannot be tolerated in such a young and just developing colony, the Commander and Council of the aforesaid Fort—bearing in mind the great audacity and wantonnesses of the aforesaid brutal natives in stealing the aforesaid goods, as well as the vile, ugly and shameful employment of the aforesaid natives by our Netherlanders for that purpose, from whom they buy the stolen articles—by these expressly forbid all and every one to accept or buy any goods whatsoever from the aforesaid natives, no matter

what may be given for it—that is, goods which can be known and seen as having been stolen by them, as such things cannot be made or imported by them into their own country; on pain that offenders shall be publicly and corporally punished and corrected as thieves (*praem dieven*); and anyone able to point out those abetting such thefts and buying from the natives their stolen goods as aforesaid, and encouraging them in their evil course, shall receive a present or reward of 10 reals of eight, and his name shall be kept secret, as this is deemed to be in the interest and for the welfare of the public.

Thus done in the Fort the Good Hope, the 27th Aug., 1661, and promulgated and affixed on the 28th following. (Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK."

August 29th.—Lovely, calm, but somewhat loose weather during the day. *De Jonge Prins van Hoorn* receives its despatch.

August 30th.—The above vessel leaves with a fine S.S.E. breeze. God grant her a speedy and safe voyage.

To-day the *Muskytje* sailed to Saldanha Bay in company of one of the free Saldanha traders to fetch a cargo of salted seals' flesh for the slaves here, a quantity lying ready there.

August 31st.—Fine, lovely, dry weather, but so cold as if it had been freezing.

September 1st.—Calm weather. Cloudy sky. Varying breezes.

September 2nd.—Hard weather from the W., with rain. Signal made from the watch house 'Kyk Uyt' on the beach that there was a ship under the land, which during the forenoon safely arrived on the roadstead. Her officers on landing reported her to be the *Parel* of Amsterdam, which had left the Vlie on the 23rd April last, in company of the *Princes Royael* and the galiot *Nachtegael* (destined for this place). She carried 323 men, among them skipper Robbert Ram and the junior merchant Pieter van Leeuwen. She had parted in a storm in the North Sea from her consorts, and had called nowhere. Had been fortunate in crossing the line, but had encountered hard winds off the Cape. She had from sickness and other causes lost 17 men during the voyage. About 120 were suffering from scurvy, of whom only 30 were laid up. Yesterday she had sighted Dassen Island, whence she proceeded to the Cape. Having encountered heavy weather during the night she had lost her foretopmast this morning. For the rest nothing remarkable had occurred.

To-day the wife of the freeman Jan Martensz de Wacht was delivered of a young son.

September 3rd.—Stiff N.W. breeze, with cloudy sky, but fairly dry weather. The *Wassende Maen* having received all her refreshments on board, also receives her despatch. Towards evening the *Muskytjen* arrived and reported that having left this the day before yesterday in company of the Saldanha Bay trader, she had arrived off that bay in due time, but being becalmed could not get in.

1661.

—

Towards evening however the wind commenced to blow so violently from the west, that she was obliged to return hither. During the night the wind became even more vehement, so that she was parted from her companion and was driven towards a lee shore which she just managed to clear with small sail. With a broken mast and other damage, she had the next day, the wind being more favourable, and her companion out of sight, returned to Table Bay, where, thank God, she had arrived safely. We trust that the other vessel has reached Dassen Island or Saldanha Bay without loss.

More than 100 sick were landed to-day from the *Parel*, in order to be restored to health in tents, as there is not sufficient accommodation for so many in the Hospital. Proper orders for their refreshment have been issued.

September 4th.—Clear sunshine in the morning, with a fairly stiff S.E. wind. The *Wassende Maen* left early. The Almighty grant her a prosperous and safe voyage.

During the night three of the sick of the *Parel* died.

September 5th.—Calm, lovely weather in the morning. But a violent S.S. Easter in the afternoon on the opposite side of the bay, which enabled the *Muskytjen*, whose damages had been repaired, to leave for Saldanha Bay and call at Robben Island on the way to know why they had lit beacon fires during the night.

The watchmen on the kloof signalled that a vessel was under the land. Coming home in the evening they stated that it had been seen to the west of the Lion's Head, and appeared to be a fairly large ship, and that on account of the heavy S.S.E. wind it would not be able to come in to-night.

A sick sailor left behind by the *Huys te Swieten* named Jan Teunisz of Muyden died this day.

September 6th.—Lovely, calm weather in the morning. The above named ship arrives. She was named the *Princes Royael*, and had left the *Vlie* on the 23rd April last, in company of the *Parel* and the galiot 't *Nachtegaaltje*, with 340 men of whom 35 had died. The skipper was named Marten Doedsz and the junior merchant Cornelis Bartelsz of Marsere. The rest of the men were fairly healthy, excepting about 20 who were suffering from scurvy, 5 or 6 of whom were laid up in a very weak state. She had called nowhere and been parted in a storm in the North Sea from her consorts. Having like the *Parel* sailed round the North of Scotland, she had met no ships or observed anything particular. On the line, they had had to struggle with calms and contrary winds, whence, however, they had a fairly speedy passage to this. At once vegetables and earth fruits as well as fresh meat were sent on board for the refreshment of the scurvy patients.

The *Muskytjen* returns during the afternoon from Saldanha Bay, but had on account of contrary winds not been able to complete her voyage. She had, however, called at Robben Island and been informed that the beacon fire had been lit on the previous Sunday

evening on account of a sick female slave, whom she brought with her. She was ordered to return to the Island with the first fair wind and deliver the following letter to Jan Sacharias there.

"We are very much astonished that contrary to our orders you have sent this vessel back, as, though the wind was contrary, she might have waited there. Above all you go and light a beacon fire at night and that for a female slave, whilst you have never thoroughly minded your business. When ships were approaching the bay, of which we again had an example last night, when the *Princes Royael* sailed in, we could not see the least sign of a fire. Yea! even the quarter-master Jan Piguyn also testifies that last night no fire had been made, as he had remained drifting the whole night round the Island; for which reasons we shall be obliged to send another in your stead. But we warn you for the last time that better care must be taken, as otherwise we shall for every neglect on your part, deduct a month's pay from your wages as well as punish you.

The female slave we shall keep here in order to have her cured, but no other can be sent in her stead, so that you must get on there as well as you can until she is cured, when she will be sent back to you.

This vessel when returning from the bay and calling at Robben Island when it has accomplished its voyage, shall bring thence Otto Jansz, permission having been granted him for the purpose, and should there be room in the boat you must also send us one of the best and fattest hogs, and attend better to the firing."

In the Fort the Good Hope, the 6th September, 1661.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

September 7th.—Hazy, rainy, calm weather. During the afternoon the *Muskyt* leaves for Saldanha Bay with a slight S.S.E. breeze.

The free burgher Frans Gerritz van den Uythoorn reported that his servant Jan Quever of Stammerbergh had died during the night. Yesterday and to-day we were busy in the Company's garden transplanting all the Dutch fruit trees and grafting quinces on the European and Cape thorn, which seem to promise success. Also orange trees, of which some are already beginning to blossom more than last year and promising fruit, which in course of time, when more trees have been planted, will afford very splendid refreshment for the passing ships.

8th September.—(Full moon.) Cloudy sky in the morning, with a N.W. breeze, which commenced to blow very hard into the bay in the course of the day. Towards evening, as it began to rain, it abated somewhat.

September 9th.—The wind again from the sea, with very heavy showers.

September 10th. — Fine, lovely, clear sunshine, but rather cold weather, with westerly breezes. During the afternoon Gonnomoa's

1661.

men brought 3 sheep, which we bartered for copper and tobacco. They told us that their chief would himself arrive in a few days' time with a lot of cattle. Time will make us wiser. They are well entertained at all times, with the hope that they will thus be induced to bring us more cattle to sell.

September 11th.—(Sunday.) Clear sunshine. Warm weather. Westerly breeze.

September 12th.—Cloudy sky and a stiff N. Wester, which during the afternoon changed into a violent N.W. gale. Arrival of the *Muskytjen*, which, according to the report of the quartermaster, had been twice under Dassen Island, but each time compelled to retire before the rapidly rising N. winds, so that this trip was also unsuccessful.

The officers of the *Parel* receive their despatch. It was found on inspection that only five of the crew had to remain behind on account of sickness. She also receives on board our letters and papers for Batavia. God the Lord be her guide, and grant her a prosperous and safe voyage.

Towards evening the wind began to blow very hard, preventing the boats of the *Parel*, which were laden with refreshments for the voyage, and of the *Princes*, which were full of drink water, from proceeding to their respective vessels. They were obliged to wait for more favourable weather.

Last night one of the outer buildings on the farm of Commander Van Riebeeck, named 'den Uytwyck,' was burnt down to the ground. The cause of the fire is uncertain owing to the doubtful reports concerning it, but it is presumed that it is to be ascribed to the carelessness of the people living there.

September 13th.—The same boisterous and rainy weather from the N.W., preventing the *Parel's* departure. During the afternoon, however, the weather moderated so that the boats could sail to and fro in the bay.

To-day a soldier of the ship *Het Huys te Swieten* named Joost van Eertvelt of Ghent left here sick, rested in the Lord.

September 14th.—Same wind and weather, preventing the *Parel's* departure.

September 15th.—Fairly good weather, with a N. breeze. The officers of the *Princes Royal* receive their despatch for Batavia, as well as our letters and papers to the Governor-General and Councillors of India. God the Lord grant them a safe arrival at their destined haven.

September 16th.—Rainy weather and the same wind, preventing the ships from leaving.

September 17th.—Fine weather in the morning. The breeze being somewhat easterly the *Parel* and *Princes Royal* leave. The Almighty grant them a safe voyage.

September 18th.—(Sunday.) Fine, warm, sunshiny weather, with a S.S.E. breeze during the afternoon. The *Muskytjen* leaves for

Saldanha Bay laden with fuel for Robben Island for the beacon fires there, when ships are endeavouring to reach the bay and the roadstead during the night, according to orders already issued. She has also on board the free Saldanha trader Thomas Muller who is going to see how their vessel fared during the late hard weather, as well as the one that previously belonged to us.

September 19th.—Very beautiful, lovely and warm weather, with a sea breeze during the morning. The wife of the free brick-maker Wouter Mostaert was delivered of a young daughter and laid up in child-bed. In the afternoon a stiff S.S. Easter blew on the other side of the bay, which at this time of the year generally begins to show itself towards evening.

One of the sick left behind in Hospital by the *Parel*, named Wiggert Saackes of Leeuwaerden, soldier, died this day.

September 20th.—Misty, wet and cloudy weather, which cleared up about noon, with a fairly stiff N.W. breeze. Until this moment, in spite of every search made by Dutch and Hottentots, a certain person of the *Princes Royael*, left behind here by sickness, and named Christiaan Pietersz of Sunderburgh, soldier, has not been found. Very early in the morning of Friday last when the reveille was beaten, he left the Hospital and has not been seen since, so that it is to be presumed that on account of his weakness, not being able to get along any further, he must have lain down somewhere and perhaps been devoured by some beast of prey of which some are infesting this neighbourhood.

September 21st and 22nd.—Clear sunshine, but fairly cold weather, with a stiff S.S.E. breeze.

September 23rd.—Fine, lovely, warm, calm weather. Some emissaries from the Chainouqua kraals bring 11 fairly large and small cattle and 36 sheep, with the request of their chief Sousoa to the Commander to be so good as to send him some tobacco with them. The sheep were bartered for copper and the cattle for beads and tobacco. The emissaries were well entertained, and the tobacco got ready and sent with them to their chief with the hope that he would be induced to bring us more cattle.

This day one of the Company's Guinea slaves departed this life; a great loss indeed, as they are getting very handy and as good as any Dutchman in the gardens.

September 24th.—Cloudy sky; inclement, cold, rainy weather, with a stiff north-wester.

September 25th.—(Sunday.) Fairly fine weather, with fickle breezes. Bartered from the Chainouquas 17 cattle and 9 sheep for copper, beads and tobacco. They informed us that Sousoa and some of his chief men were ill, otherwise, according to his promise, he would have been here with a larger number of cattle to sell.

During the afternoon some of our cattle and sheep herds found the runaway Christiaan Pietersz of Sunderburgh, referred to some days ago. He had been ten days and nights, as is presumed,

1661.

wandering about in the veld without food or drink. It is wonderful that he is still alive, considering the heavy rains that fell during day time and the severe cold at night, besides the danger from wild beasts to which he was exposed.

It was also reported that a ship had been sighted far out at sea to the west of the Lion, which on account of the slack breezes will not be able to reach the bay before nightfall.

September 26th.—This morning early the above vessel was riding safely on the roadstead, having during the night been guided to her berth by the fires on Robben Island. She was the *Klaverskerke*, a flute ship of the Chamber Zealand, and had left the Wielingen on the 13th May last with 94 men, among them the skipper Jacob de Bruyne and the bookkeeper Jan de Loper; three had died during the voyage, and one had been lost overboard. The rest were suffering to some extent from scurvy. She had taken the back course, and contended much with bad weather. From the 1st to the 6th July she had been at St. Vincent, where she had obtained water, fuel and some groats.

September 27th.—Fairly good weather, with fickle breezes. Eleven sheep bartered this day from the Saldanhars or Coehoquas.

September 28th.—Same weather. Eleven more sheep obtained from the same tribe.

September 29th and 30th.—Cold, cloudy sky and westerly breezes.

October 1st.—Cloudy, sultry weather.

October 2nd.—(Sunday.) Wet, boisterous weather from the N.W. The *Muskytjen* and the freemen's vessel, the *Peguyu*, which had safely weathered the late storms, returned from Saldanha Bay laden with fish, train oil, and seals' flesh for the slaves. A few Chainouquas brought 11 oxen and 2 little calves and 12 sheep. The cattle were bartered for beads, and the sheep (which cost two or three times as much as the cattle) for copper, which are worth a great deal more than beads and tobacco.

October 3rd.—Somewhat milder weather than yesterday, with a cloudy sky. The *Klaverskerke* receives her despatch and our letters for Batavia. The Almighty grant her a safe passage.

October 4th.—N.W. breeze, unfavourable for the above vessel.

October 5th.—Clear weather. The S. Easter commencing to blow, the flute leaves. The following Resolution adopted by the Council:—

Wednesday, the 5th October, 1661.

“Whereas the free wood sawyer Leendert Cornelisz of Zevenhuyse, elected last year as burgher Councillor, instead of setting a proper example to the freemen, is daily debauching himself in drink, fighting, throwing and bad language, &c., not only to the great disrespect of himself and his important office, but also to the tarnishing of the lustre of the Council, in which, when there is anything on in connection with any faults of the burghers, he has

his seat, in order to assist in censuring, &c.—It was decided for these and many other reasons besides, as well as for preserving the dignity and lustre of the Council, &c., no longer to permit him to have a seat at the Board, but to dismiss him from office, and from the double number submitted to us by the burghers commissioned for the purpose, to elect in his place the free burgher and ex-burgher Councillor Hendrik Boom of Amsterdam.

'Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above.'

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

October 6th.—Dry, stiff S.E. wind in the morning. During the afternoon it lulled.

October 7th.—The same weather.

October 8th.—The same fine, calm weather. (Full moon.) The following persons plighted their troth to each other, according to the following resolution:—

Saturday, the 8th October, 1661.

"Frans Gerritsen of den Uythoorn, bachelor, 27 years old, free agriculturist, having betrothed himself to Neeltje Jacobs of Rosendaël, spinster, 22 years old; accordingly the bridegroom, assisted by Jacob Cloeten of Cologne and Jacob Pietersz of Caspel ter Mare, both likewise free agriculturists, and the bride, with her father Jacob of Rosendaël, master gardener of the Company's garden, and her mother-in-law Barbara Geens, appeared before the Council with the request to be joined together in lawful wedlock, and that their first banns may be published next Sunday after the service. The Council finding that they were both free, and had nothing outstanding with anybody else in the world, as well as according to their own declarations and those of their parents and assistants, which they are prepared to confirm by oath, decides to grant their reasonable request and have the banns published as usual, after which the marriage shall be lawfully solemnised.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.'

October 9th.—Fine, lovely, calm weather.

October 10th.—N.W. breeze, with a grey cloudy, damp air, and now and then a little rain. Obtained 2 cows and a calf from the Cochoquas or Saldanhars for copper, beads and tobacco. Also 5 sheep for tobacco only.

1661.

October 11th and 12th.—Fine weather, with variable breezes. Before midnight it began to blow stiffly from the S.S.E.

October 13th.—The S.S.E. still blowing. After the Thursday's sermon the following persons were married before the Council according to the Resolution inserted below.

Thursday, the 13th October, 1661.

"After the service this morning, the third publication of the banns having taken place according to Christian usage of the betrothed couple Frans Gerritsz of den Uythoorn, free agriculturist, bachelor, and Neeltjen Jacobsz of Rosendaël, spinster, and nothing having come before us to show why they should be retarded or prevented in their purpose, the Council decided according to the Resolution of the 8th instant to permit the further solemnisation of the marriage in the name of the Lord, and that everything may be done lawfully and in good order, to appoint the Secretary to perform the ceremony (we having no minister here). This was accordingly done publicly and lawfully after the service, in the name of the Lord.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK IACUS, Secretary."

October 14th and 15th.—Lovely, fine weather. Since last Monday we bartered from the Caapmen 4 young bulls and 3 sheep for copper, beads and tobacco, &c.; from the little Chariguriquas 7 sheep for the same articles and the usual entertainment. Yesterday died a freeman named Barent Waender of Varik, and to-day in the Hospital two boatmen named Claes Salomonsz of Amsterdam and Jan Willemsz of Ter Gouw, both lately landed sick from the *Parel* and *Princes Royal*.

During the night it began to blow hard from the S.S.E.

October 16th.—(Sunday.) The same wind, with a clear, dry air.

October 17th.—The same weather.

October 18th and 19th.—Calm weather. The Commander goes out for the first time after his illness in order to make a personal inspection all round in the country, and found that the Fiscal, to whom specially all these matters and others had been entrusted, had conducted them well, as far as he could see to-day.

To-day another of the Company's Guinea slaves, well trained in agricultural work, died. At present many others are sick, whilst the freemen have lately also suffered considerable loss by deaths among them.

October 20th.—Same weather. Another of the best of the Company's Guinea slaves, who had been placed under the Provost, died this day.

October 21st and 22nd.—Fine weather. During yesterday and to-day two female Guinea slaves of the Company died, one of them from Robben Island.

October 23rd.—(New moon. Sunday.) Damp, dark weather in the morning, with a westerly breeze.

October 24th.—Same weather. Another female slave of the Company dies.

October 25th.—Lovely weather. The Commander again proceeds to the country to inspect affairs there, which, as on the 19th, he found in good order. He left orders and instructions for their continuance and maintenance. The corn is already standing beautifully, on which may the Almighty grant his blessing.

In the meanwhile 5 sheep were bartered for copper and tobacco from the Cochoquas, and three days ago seven more.

Fine weather, with variable breezes. Bartered 2 cattle and 5 sheep from the Cochoquas.

October 26th to 29th.—The Company's agriculturists shot a lion near the 'Schoor.' Three others are still roaming about among the agriculturists and are daily doing damage among the latter's cattle by carrying off their oxen. During the night of the day before yesterday one robbed an agriculturist of two of his sheep, and another, shoving open the door of the house, carried off the dog from inside. In order to enable them to keep the plough going, they were accommodated by the Company with other cattle.

October 30th.—(Sunday.) Dry and hard windy weather from the S.S.E.

October 31st.—The same weather. The junior merchant Roeloff de Man and Fiscal Abraham Gabbema were out with Sergeant Everaerts and the men under the latter's command to repair and strengthen the Pega Pega, just as shortly before the Commander had explained it to the aforesaid persons and with them decided to do it. For this purpose the freemen and all their wagons were employed to assist in carrying in trees. A reward was promised them for the work, which, is being done to prevent the driving off of the cattle of the Company as well as their own by the Hottentots, which is always to be feared.

It blew very hard during the night. Two lions broke through some old palings on the canal, which had been emptied of its water in order to have some repairs done, and entering the kraal behind the Fort destroyed a young ox and calf, at the same time wounding many others. We have not yet been able to attrap them.

November 1st.—The same hard, dry S.S.E. wind.

November 2nd.—The same.

November 3rd.—Calm until the afternoon.

November 4th.—The same weather. The wind being S.S.E., Fiscal Abraham Gabbema proceeds in the *Muskytjen* to Robben Island, in order to inspect affairs and also erect a flagstaff there for the secret signals, &c.

1661.

November 5th.—Mostly S.S.E. winds. Death of another of the Company's slaves.

November 6th.—(Full moon.) The Fiscal returns before daylight with a W. breeze, having erected the flagstaff on the 'Vuyrbergh' (Fire hill), from which to fly the secret signals for the Company's return and other ships arriving here after the New Year. He had found everything in good order there, also that one or two troops of swine were supporting themselves in a wild state and breeding much better than those kept at the homestead. There were already more than one hundred. The sheep, 134 in number, were also thriving well, also the rabbits, which however are seldom seen, as they remain in their holes during the day.

November 7th.—Cloudy, westerly weather. The breeze rather stiff.

November 8th.—The same weather, with rain. Another of the Company's female Guinea slaves died this day.

November 9th.—Wet, loose weather, with stiff N.W. winds. Death of Isaacq de Graeff of Leyden, 'Adelborst.' Many others are laid up in Hospital, which has remained fairly full this season; nor is the number growing less, as those recovering suddenly have a relapse. There have also been great sickness and mortality among the Hottentots, so much so that it seems to have been a general plague equally felt by the freemen in the deaths of some of their slaves, before it broke out among those of the Company, many of whom are growing ill at present, dying shortly afterwards. We hope that God the Lord may soon be pleased to restore them to health.

Five sheep bartered from Oedasoa's and Gonnomoa's people for copper and tobacco.

November 10th.—Loose weather. Westerly breezes. The following Resolution adopted by the Council:—

Thursday, the 10th November, 1661.

"As the roads in consequence of the dry season are now becoming fit for another expedition to the Namaquas, discovered last year, whose king then promised to meet our travellers this month at a certain place about 60 or 70 Dutch miles from this, in order thence to accompany our people to the Fort—It was decided, in order to proceed as soon as possible in this matter, according to the orders of our Lords and Masters, to resume the land journey without delay, with a good present for the king and his sons. And that everything might be executed with the better order and the men kept under proper discipline everywhere on the way, it was decided to appoint Sergeant Pieter Everaert, the head of the Military here, as Commander of the expedition, as he has personally offered his services for the purpose. He has served the Company many years in India, and been a member of this Council for a long while, so that with his experience and knowledge of matters, we trust that he will be able, better than any one of lower rank, to

carry out the Company's intentions, and at the same time gain honour for himself.

And as the junior surgeon Pieter Meerhoff has been there twice last year; once as second, and the last time as Commander of the expedition, and acquitted himself well; it was decided to let him accompany the sergeant as his second, and from the office the writer Cornelis de Cretser as third, so that in case of death they may succeed each other as Commander of the troop; the said Cretser to note down their adventures everywhere, according to the memorandum given them for their guidance. The following persons will accompany them, who have been selected by the sergeant as the best out of those who had volunteered their services:—

Jan Dorhagen of Gronouw, 'adelborst,'	} All these were members of the previous expedition.
Jan Baptist of Frankfort, 'adelborst,'	
Pelagius Weckerlyn of Cosnits, 'adelborst,'	
Pieter Roman of Schorsel, soldier,	
Lourens Jansz of Delft, soldier,	
Bartholomeus Rudolps of 't Weert, 'adelborst,'	
Coenraet Schatman of Dunkirk, 'adelborst,'	}
Jan Bartelsz of Steenberg, 'adelborst,'	
Hendrick Hagens of Lochum, 'adelborst,' and	

Jan Hendrixs de Vries of Leeuwarden, 'adelborst,' who before his tour in the Fatherland had accompanied various land expeditions; so that they are all fine, picked courageous fellows, accepted for the journey at their own desire, and personally anxious to undertake it under the command of the said Sergeant Pieter Everaerts, subject to the conditions and promises expressed last year in the Resolution of the 10th November at present again brought to their notice. And as our Lords Majors in their despatch above mentioned, ordered us as much as possible to make further discoveries inland, it was decided, after careful deliberation and consideration of the good friendship which these aborigines are very beautifully maintaining with us, so that travelling will be everywhere safe for the expedition, not to delay this important journey but to speed it as much as possible, and accommodate the sergeant with 6 of the best pack oxen for carrying their provisions and merchandize.

It was also decided to make the following promotions for the reasons annexed:—

Christiaen Christiaensz of Vleckeren, who arrived here in the *Arnhem* on the 22nd of March, 1659, as boatswain at f8, and has since been employed as woodcutter and sawyer in the Company's forests, having properly discharged his duties, is, at his requests, and on account of his fitness, appointed woodcutter and sawyer at f12, provided that he serves three years longer after the expiration of his present contract.

1661.

Jasper Andriesz of Langesond, who arrived here in the flute *Vollenhoven* on the 21st October, 1660, as arquebusier at f12, and has, since the departure of the late 'baas,' been employed as superintendent over the woodcutters and sawyers, and has done good service, is confirmed in his appointment at f16, &c.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERAERTS,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary."

November 11th.—Westerly breeze and lovely weather. Towards evening Oedasoia and Gonnomoa, the head chiefs of the Saldanhar or Cochoquas, arrived. They had nothing else to say than that, having approached very near with some of their tribe, viz., behind the Salt pans, about five hours on foot from this, they had come to visit the Commander. Their visit was accepted with pleasure, and they were well entertained, though they had not brought with them a living eye of cattle, complaining, as they did, of mortality among the latter, as well as among their people.

Regarding our expedition to the Namaquas, they seemed to have nothing to say against it, and made no objections.

Two children of the Company's slaves died this day, as well as the very best slave of the agriculturist Steven Jansz, of Wageningen, for whom, shortly before, he had been offered f500.

November 12th.—Loose, rainy weather, with a W. breeze. The Saldanhar chiefs, after having been well entertained, left during the afternoon well satisfied, and with many presents. Eighteen sheep were brought in by their people and bartered.

November 13th.—(Sunday.) Drizzly weather, which towards evening changed into a stiff, dry S.S. Easter. Five sheep were bartered from the Saldanhar.

November 14th.—Dry, sunny weather, with a stiff S.S. Easter. At nine o'clock this morning our men packed their goods on 6 pack oxen, and in the name of the Lord commenced their journey, with the following instructions.

"Memorandum for Sergeant Pieter Everaerts as head of the expedition sent to the new tribes, called Namaquas, discovered last year.

In order to be certain in every sense that every effort will be properly made, we could not refuse the offer of your services, for the present land journey, to the new tribes, named Namaquas, discovered last year. We have accordingly furnished you with a beautiful present of such goods and beads, as have been carefully selected, for the King, his three sons and other minor chiefs. You are to request the King to come down to us in your company with his huts, merchandize and all his cattle, in order to

make closer acquaintance, and form an alliance with us; and in order to give them greater confidence in us you may leave one of your own men, who may be willing, among them, in exchange for some of their own, to remain at the Fort here, for their greater sense of security in travelling to and fro, as regards the Saldanhars and other Hottentoo tribes living between them and us, and maintaining good peace and friendship with us. Among them Oedasoa and Gonnomoa, the chiefs of the Cochoquas and Saldanhars, are well known to us, who would accordingly, for the sake of our people, not dare to do them any harm, adding whatever else you may think of to induce them to visit us with all their chattels, that we may see whether, besides their cattle, they would also be inclined to sell us any of their prepared skins and beautiful ostrich feathers, as well as elephant tusks, musk, civet, tortoiseshell and fur. You are also carefully to note whether there be gold among their arm-rings, or beads, testing as often as you can the same on your touch stone, in order to report to us.

Should the Hottentoes that are to accompany you as interpreters desert you on the way, and through fear or otherwise refuse to complete the journey, you must not give it up, but endeavour to accomplish your purpose, and by means of the presents which you carry with you and otherwise induce the Namaquas or other strange tribes to come down to us, or leave, as above mentioned, one of your own men among them as a hostage in exchange for some of their principal men, that is to say, if any one voluntarily offers himself for the purpose. He will be properly rewarded by the Company for so doing.

And as we firmly believe that these Namaquas have communication with the people of Monomotapa so rich in gold, from whom the Portuguese of Mosambique receive most of the precious metal, we advise you to make careful observations and inquiry, and among others attend to the following instructions.

Firstly.

As soon as you are over the 'Bracke Rivier' and through the barrier, &c. (For the rest of these six sections see above Journal, 29th January, 1661.) In conclusion we wish you a prosperous journey to and fro, under the protection of the chief Guardian of all the pious, to whom we shall daily pray for you that He may remain with you with his grace. Amen.

In the Fort 'the Good Hope,' this 10th day of November, 1661.
(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK."

And that the men may be kept under proper discipline, the aforesaid sergeant was furnished with the following commission.

"JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK, Commander, and the Council
of the Fort the Good Hope, &c., notify that

Whereas by Resolution of the 10th November, 1661, it was decided to send an important embassy to the Namaquas and

1661.

other unknown tribes which may also be discovered, and it was deemed that the matter was of such great weight that a member of this Council should be employed for the purpose as chief of the expedition; and whereas the Sergeant Pieter Everaerts has long ago already and again lately offered his services, we have accepted the same, being well aware of his capacities, and also authorize him by this to command the men as their leader during the journey, in accordance with the instructions given him; at the same time we command all who will accompany him to acknowledge the said Sergeant Pieter Everaerts as their commander and obey him as such in everything that he may order them as if we ourselves were the leader, and in case of his death such person or persons as must succeed him according to our Resolution of the 10th November, 1661, a copy of which has been entrusted to the said sergeant, as we believe that this arrangement will be in the best interest of the Company.

Given in the Fort the Good Hope, the 10th November, 1661.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK."

Here follows the list of the goods and provisions taken by the travellers on six pack oxen.

For the King or Paramount Chief of the Namaquas—

- 1 string of the largest light blue beads.
 - 1 „ of somewhat smaller size.
 - 2 „ of the third assortment of the same colour.
 - 2 „ blue, large size, glistening with crystal.
 - 1 „ violet, large size.
 - 1 bunch small ditto
 - 1 „ orange, somewhat larger
 - 1 „ milk white, of the same size
 - 1 „ of twelve strings red beads, with which cattle are bartered.
- } 'quispel greyn.'
- 1 string milk white beads of the largest sort.
 - 1 „ large striped crystal beads.
 - 1 „ gilt blue, large size.
 - 1 „ gilt and yellow.
 - 1 „ green with yellow spots.
 - 1 „ blue with white ditto.
 - 1 „ violet beads, large size.
 - 1 copper ring set with an emerald.
 - 1 imitation gold hatband.
 - 1 red serge cap with three galloons on it.
 - 1 rose, a stone attached to the said cap.
 - 2 gilt chains, being bracelets.
 - 2 bead bracelets.
 - 1 silver chain with links.
 - 1 yellow copper chain.
 - 2 copper plates, weighing $3\frac{1}{2}$ lbs.

- 2 sticks of thick copper wire } weighing 6 lbs.
- 2 " of thin " " }
- 2 pieces of iron, weighing 3 lbs.
- 1 knife.
- 1 lb. tobacco, viz., $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. ordinary and $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. Brazilian.
- 1 dozen tobacco pipes.
- 2 small mirrors.

For his eldest son—

- 1 bunch red beads, 'quispel greyn,' with which cattle are bartered.
- 1 bunch milk white } 'quispel greyn'
- 1 " blue }
- 1 " violet }
- 1 string light blue beads of the medium sort.
- 2 " of the third kind.
- 1 " white beads of the largest size.
- 1 " violet of a large kind.
- 2 " dark blue, large size, glistening with crystal.
- 1 " blue with white streaks.
- 1 " green with yellow ditto.
- 1 " blue, being gilt.
- 1 " yellow as above.
- 1 " white streaked beads of crystal.
- 1 copper ring with an emerald in it.
- 1 small gilt chain, a bracelet.
- 1 bead bracelet.
- 1 imitation gold hatband.
- 1 cap of red serge embroidered with two galloons.
- 1 plate yellow copper, weighing $1\frac{1}{2}$ lbs.
- 1 bar thick copper wire } weighing 3 lbs.
- 1 " thin " " }
- $\frac{3}{4}$ lbs. Brazilian tobacco.
- $\frac{1}{2}$ dozen tobacco pipes.
- 1 knife.

For the second son—

The same as above.

For the third son—

The same.

For the first chief—

- 1 bundle red beads, with which cattle are bartered.
- 1 string light blue beads of medium size.
- 1 " of the third sort.
- 1 " violet beads, large size.
- 1 " dark blue, large size, glistening with crystal.
- 1 " white, striped with crystal.

1661.

—

- 1 string white beads of the largest kind.
- 1 „ blue with yellow and black spots.
- 1 small bunch 'quispel greyn,' small size.
- 1 imitation gold hat band.
- 1 Rouan cap.
- 1 false silver ring.
- 1 knife.

For the second chief—

- 30 bunches or $2\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. red beads, with which cattle are bartered.
- 20 lbs. tobacco.
- 1 gross tobacco pipes.
- 37 lbs. copper, viz. :
- 10 lbs. thick wire.
- 9 lbs. thin wire and
- 18 lbs. plate copper—12 pieces.
- 12 pieces 'Kabary,' weighing 7 lbs.
- 12 red Rouan caps.
- 6 „ flaying knives.
- $3\frac{1}{4}$ lbs. divers imitation gold beads.

Office Material or Stationery.

- 2 books of paper.
- 1 bundle quills.

War Ammunition.

- 53 lbs. powder.
- 60 lbs. bullets.
- 10 lbs. shot.
- 4 bundles matches.
- 100 flints.
- 11 muskets.
- 12 pistols.
- 12 cutlasses.

Other Material.

- 17 lines of 12° .
- 20 fish hooks..
- 3 strings of twine.
- 3 sail needles.
- Some small nails.
- 1 empty tent with its belongings.
- 1 pick or mattock.
- 1 spade.
- 2 axes.

Cooking Utensils.

- 1 small copper kettle.

Provisions.

- 750 lbs. biscuits.

70 lbs. pork.	
4 quarts brandy.	
2 tankards Spanish wine.	} in a small liquor case with four tin bottles.
2 quarts vinegar.	
10 lbs. sugar.	
50 lbs. salt.	

Spice.

4 oz. mace.
 4 „ cloves.
 4 „ nutmegs.
 8 „ cinnamon.
 4 lbs. pepper.

Equipage.

68 ells new sail cloth, converted into bags in which the goods were packed.

After the departure of the travellers, who, on account of the unwillingness of the oxen, had some trouble, and could get no further than the Bracke River, 4 cattle and 12 sheep were bartered from the Saldanhars for copper, tobacco, and pipes.

November 15th.—Fine, lovely, calm, warm, sunshiny weather in the morning. About eight o'clock our travellers crossed the Bracke River, and proceeded on their journey inland. Not more than 10 little sheep were to-day bartered from the Saldanhars, though at present, as already mentioned on the 11th instant, they are settling near us in large numbers. Notwithstanding the mortality among the cattle, they still possess many beautiful animals. It is their custom, however, only to sell their refuse, as is evident from the fact that about the half of what we barter from them dies off. Daily they are arriving in greater numbers, encamping all about the neighbourhood, so that orders have been issued that the horse and other outside guards shall keep close watch, independent of such other orders deemed necessary by the Commander, who was out to-day, and found the corn mostly everywhere very beautiful in the ear. In many places the barley was ripening. On his farm, named the “Uytwyck,” he had already commenced mowing some ripe barley, where the corn always ripens first every year.

November 16th to 18th.—The same lovely weather. The Commander proceeded inland with 21 horses to visit the Saldanhars, especially their chiefs Oedasoa and Gonnomoa, who, not expecting him at all, appeared to be very glad, as well as all their people, their wives and children, who showed their delight by clapping their hands and joyous exultations. They wished to make it appear that this visit was the closest bond of unbreakable friendship, &c. To that end each brought in pots as much milk for all our people to drink as they wished, whilst Oedasoa and his Chief Councillor Coukasoa brought each a lusty fat wether as a present

to the Commander, which were acknowledged with a return gift of tobacco, bread, and brandy, which were right royally enjoyed by them. After that Oedasoah himself brought the Commander to the camp of Gonnomoa, where the same mutual entertainment and promises of perpetual friendship again publicly took place, and the chief and many of their people were so treated that many could no longer stand on their legs, and remained lying in different parts of the veld, even Gonnomoa also. Oedasoah however and Coucosoa kept themselves straight, so that they accompanied the Commander to the Fort, and were there helped to slumber with a good entertainment.

The cattle which they possessed and were seen all about in the neighbourhood of their encampment was countless, the country appearing to be covered with them on all sides. It is surprising, therefore, that they part with any with such unwillingness, for during the last 3 days we only could obtain from them five badly conditioned cattle and 27 small sheep, so that all the good entertainment provided for them appears but little effective in obtaining from them any good cattle.

Commander Riebeeck, however, accompanied by the junior merchant Roeloff de Man, paid this personal visit and showed his particular friendship by his liberal entertainment of the natives, that they might feel themselves more closely connected with us; whilst the display of the horsemen was expressly intended to make them see that we could speedily be everywhere with them, and suppress any inclination on their part to do our travellers any harm, but on the contrary to urge them to assist and accommodate them in every way.

November 19th.—Fine weather, with a cloudy sky. Oedasoah and his chief councillor, or captain of his tribe, leave, each with a fine present, and therefore wonderfully pleased, and under the impression that they had now for the first time celebrated the true festival or fair (kermis) in honour of the perpetual maintenance of the mutually promised friendship.

During the day it commenced to rain pretty hard, with a stiff sea wind, with which the Company's vessel arrived, now generally employed in bringing to Robben Island fuel for the beacon fires, and conveying hither shells for the lime kilns. On account of the heavy weather, however, she had not been able to bring any. For the same reason the freemen's vessel was obliged to leave Dassen Island with only 20 half-aums train oil. Their other boat is lying in Saldanha Bay, also engaged in burning oil. With this industry, as well as with fishing, the collection of eggs, rearing of pigs, &c., they are doing good service, whilst the train oil is very acceptable to the leather factory at Batavia.

November 20th.—(Sunday.) Cold, windy weather, mostly from the S.S.E. Gonnomoa with some of his elders and wives were at the

Fort, and, like Oedaso, was well entertained, but only eleven sheep were bartered from them yesterday and to-day.

November 21st.—(New moon.) Lovely, calm, sunshiny weather. Oedaso arrives about dusk, and like Gonnomoa submitting that they had been forced to settle nearer to us. Fully more than half of their tribe had accordingly already arrived, whilst the Caapmen and Gorachouquas, who are evidently retiring before them, had already during the night retired within the Company's circle, and under our protection, but as their cattle would soon eat away the grass, which is already getting scarce for the Company's stock, they were told to-day to move away and look out for other pastures. This they promised to do the day after to-morrow. They would very much like us to keep back the Saldanhar Oedaso and his tribe, who told us that their retreat hither was the result of the approach in great numbers from the far interior of the Chainouquas, Heusaquas, and many other tribes, in order to trade with us, according to the information received by him from the mountain tribes, the Soaquas. And as we do not know that some treachery may not underlie all this, as we are already sufficiently surrounded on all sides, the horse guard was strengthened with three extra horses, and orders were issued in every direction to keep careful watch. After good entertainment, &c., Oedaso returned home before nightfall, saying that he intended to-morrow to have a further interview with the Commander, in order to (be permitted to) camp behind the 'Bosheuvel', taking care that his cattle will not trespass within the Company's boundaries; by which the Caapmen's location will be very much narrowed. What the end will be, time will show. Oedaso seems always desirous of pressing forward, and the rest to retire before him. The greatest pity, however, is that very little cattle can be obtained from them by barter, only two sheep having been brought in this day.

This day died the Master Smith, a fine, sober, good workman, named Pieter Egbertsz, 'Uytten Dam.' A good many others are laid up and more follow suit, so that we are at present rather weak handed, whilst the sickness among the slaves is not lessening. On the 11th instant we mentioned that Steven Jansz lost his slave, and to-day his female slave also died, to their great loss.

This disease is also so virulent that Oedaso was obliged to leave behind a whole troop (*leger*) which could not accompany him, and will only be able to follow him slowly, if it only be no rear division, which he is keeping back, though according to his countenance he appears to have no evil intentions.

November 22nd.—Clear, sunshiny weather. Towards evening, according to summer fashion, hard S.E. winds, which enabled the boat to leave for Robben Island with fuel for the beacon lights, &c.

To-day the Saldanhars had already grazed their cattle right to the palisades within the lately planted fences, so that the young trees were very much trodden down, and the plantation was put back

1661.

for a whole year. We can only with sweet words keep them beyond. The Caapmen also, camped near the 'Bosheuvel,' had trodden down the whole plantation far within the beacons erected between them and ourselves, and moreover had been depasturing their cattle almost among those of the freemen on the other side of the river. The latter had accordingly been obliged to retreat inward, so that the departure of these natives will be highly necessary. Hence the corporal of the mounted guard had kindly advised them to retire, but they had requested to be allowed to tarry a little longer, until they had spoken with the Commander, whom at present they did not dare to approach from fear of the Saldanhars (who were encamped midway), who might detain them. They accordingly requested the corporal to escort them, but as he could not take this upon himself, he was given instructions to conduct hither to-morrow some of their principal men. It seems (if their be no deceit towards us, to which strict attention is paid) that they are thoroughly afraid of Oedaso, who on his part seems to have something in his mind against them, so that they dare not remove into the open country beyond the mountains, but are creeping gradually closer towards us.

November 23rd.—Heavy south east winds.

November 24th —Calm in the morning, with hot weather. The following warning issued to-day :—

"Whereas the natives of this country, Saldanhars, Caapmen, &c., have settled with all their herds and cattle near about, yea! some of them are already squatting within our extremest boundaries; and whereas there is great sickness among them, as well as among their cattle, of which many have died, pieces of which they offer for sale, as if slaughtered, bartering the same everywhere to our people, among whom, God better it, many are ill, and may become even worse by using such diseased meat—We therefore by these once more warn and order both Company's servants and freemen not to barter any slaughtered or unslaughtered cattle, either directly or indirectly, under whatsoever pretext, on pain of the penalties attached ere this to the offence.

Thus done in the Fort the Good Hope, on the 24th of November, 1661.

"(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEFCK."

To-day one of the Company's slaves, who worked in the smithy, died. He did his work there as well as any Dutchman. Within three or four days he was healthy and dead. This was also the case with many others, whilst daily more are falling in, among them at present the Company's slave carpenter, who is as good as a Netherlander. Many of the Company's servants are also falling ill, which is very inconvenient, now that the Saldanhars and Caapmen are pressing us so close, purposely encircling us in the form of a crescent from the foot of the 'Bosheuvel' towards the seaside, with huge troops of cattle, so that all the pasturage on the

other side of the Liesbeek River within the Company's limits and the mounted guard has been eaten off, and the husbandmen in the neighbourhood have been greatly inconvenienced. This must naturally react on the Company and the freemen on this side of the said river, where almost all the grass has also been eaten off. But for all that these tribes are to be treated gently because of their multitudes compared with our few people, &c.

Hitherto the Caapmen and Tobacco Thieves do not appear to listen to kind words, and move away; they pretend that they dare not leave us because of the Saldanhars, who have also forbidden the naked (? poverty-stricken) 'fishers' (fishmen) to approach our neighbourhood. It is the express wish of Oedasoia and Gonnomoa that their people alone shall have direct intercourse with us; who bring us for milk and many kinds of roots a great quantity of a good kind of ground nuts (aardakers), and desire to serve us by carrying water, washing, scrubbing, &c., for tobacco, bread, brandy, and other things, from which they have debarred the other above-named tribes completely, so that not one of them is seen any longer, as they have all retired together to the place above-mentioned, as they say, because should the Saldanhars attempt anything against them, which they fear, they might be stronger together; not even Doman or anyone else of their number venturing to visit us unless accompanied by some of our own people.

This day and yesterday only three cattle and fifteen sheep were obtained from the Saldanhars. But this is better than nothing.

November 25th.—Very lovely weather in the morning. The Commander went out himself and amongst others saw encampments of the Saldanhars who had already squatted down in every direction on the other side of the Liesbeek River, whilst the Caapmen were coming nearer from the 'Bosheuvel,' where they have encamped in 90 or 100 huts, each calculated to contain 8 or 10 capable of bearing arms, besides their wives and children, and a considerable number of cattle. The Saldanhars, however, appear to be ten times as strong. The Caapmen and Gourachouquas are still keeping together, and would very much like to come nearer to us, which, however, cannot be permitted on account of the pasturage required for the cattle of the Company and the freemen. They were, therefore, by all friendly means advised to return towards Hout Bay, which they say they hardly dare do in order not to be completely enclosed there by the Saldanhars. Regarding the Saldanhars, no other course is open than to continue our intercourse with them, as we obtain something more from them by barter, as well as for other reasons.

Heavy S.E. winds during the afternoon, as usual in summer.

November 26th.—Same weather. Oedasoia, with the Captain of his tribe Coukosoia, with Herry on the part of the Caapmen, &c., were together at the Fort. It appeared as if the Saldanhars or

1661.

Cochoquas, of whom Oedasoia is paramount chief, had made some treaty with the Gorachouquas, or Tobacco Thieves, and Goringhaiquas or Caapman, but as we have gathered, through fear of the Chainouquas, Heusaquas, and some of the Hancunquas, who are on their way hither, and already so near that last night they were able to spy the camps of the aforesaid Saldanhars and Caapmen. Oedasoia and Herry accordingly proposed that we should render them assistance against the aforesaid nations, and make prisoners of their chiefs, who might visit the fort. But we told them that we would mediate between them in order to avoid any encounter, and whatever more might tend to mutual friendship, but that it was contrary to our principles to do anybody any harm, especially persons who endeavoured to trade with us, and had never done us any harm. Moreover that we had last year made friendship with the Chainouquas, as well as with themselves, which we did not dare to break; but that if Oedasoia and Caapmen had been pleased to provide us with as much cattle (which they have in thousands and in great abundance) for our merchandize, as we require for the Company's ships, &c., we would never have thought of looking about us for other tribes, so that we could not refrain from inviting them to us. Besides that it was the Hollander's nature to endeavour to make friends with all people on earth, and give every one his due. Having sufficiently understood our meaning, they requested our kindly protection and prevention of trouble by our kindly mediation, &c. This was promised them, as far as it lay in our power, they undertaking to retire to the southern quarter of the Cape, that is, the Houtberg Valleys, behind the 'Bosheuvel,' Table, Bos, and Steenberg, a fit hoopnet, in which they can always remain imprisoned, should only the Company deem it serviceable for its purposes.

November 27th. — (Sunday.) Lovely weather in the morning, but very hot, sunshiny weather. Towards evening some dry thunder and lightning. When Herry was alone with the Commander in his office, he said that the Caapmen or Goringhaiquas and Gorachouquas or Tobacco Thieves had made up their minds to ward off an attack of the Saldanhars, and that though they were not nearly as strong as the latter, they had decided to await their coming and venture a battle rather than surrender to them the rest of the pasturage of this Cape lying outside of our circle. On the other hand the Saldanhars had meant to take them for themselves, in order completely to domineer over them, as they had already commenced to do by completely cutting their people off from us and forbidding them to visit the Fort. These Saldanhars had also, as four years ago, been very anxious once more to do battle with the Chainouquas and deprive the latter of their cattle, and that he (Herry) had heard that they (the Saldanhars) intended (if they were successful) to barter the booty to the Company, in order to play the master in this neighbourhood; and

only allow their own people to have intercourse with us. But having yesterday morning heard from the Soaquas, or mountain tribes, that also the Heusequas and some of the Henucumquas were coming down together, against whom they (the Saldanhars) even if tenfold in numbers would not prevail, they had plausibly out of liberality permitted the Caapmen and Tobacco Thieves to visit us according to old customs, and told them that they should make a mutual covenant to proceed together to the southern portion of the Cape, in order to be stronger in unity and live there as far as practicable under our protection and safe from the aforesaid tribes, as they did not now dare to retire inland as their enemies were too near. But had this not been the case and Oedasoahad heard only of the approach of the Chainouquas, it would certainly have been their turn already to have been attacked by him, and that of the Chainouquas afterwards. All this had already been arranged, so that they (the Caapmen) intended to ask our assistance rather than surrender their own country which was still left to them outside our limits to the Saldanhars; but as the latter are too strong for them, the present arrangement had appeared to them the best, as Oedasoahad deemed it expedient that they should not be weakened by mutual strife and so become an easier prey to the inland tribes, &c.

November 28th.—Very hot weather in the morning, with a westerly breeze. The *Muskytjen* returns from Robben Island with a load of shells for the lime kilns.

A garden slave of the Company died rather suddenly, having been in bed only five days.

Yesterday and to-day we could only obtain one old and lean ox and six sheep in the same condition from the Saldanhars, though Oedasoahad settled as above mentioned on our borders with countless numbers of cattle, and in sixteen locations, nor are the Caapmen thinking of moving off with their cattle, thus completely barring the passage to us of other natives. Instead of breaking up their camp, as they had promised since the day before yesterday, Oedasoahad squatted down with even a stronger force all about. What will be hatched from this we do not know; on our side, as far as we can, we keep a strict watch.

November 29th.—Calm, cloudy weather in the morning, but hot sunshine during the day, with heavy S.E. winds towards evening. The *Muskytjen* leaves for Robben Island with fuel for the beacon fires, and will bring back a load of shells.

November 30th.—Wind and weather as above. This morning early the chiefs of the Gorachouquas arrived at the Fort, namely, Choromet, his brother and three of their elders. They were escorted by one of our country guards, and brought with them six head of cattle as a present. They requested us to protect them against the Cochoquas or Saldanhars, who had yesterday again cut off their approaches to us and commenced to cause them great inconvenience,

1661.

forcing them to permit them to search their houses, bags and packs, nominally in order to find tobacco, which they knew they did not possess. They were also already commencing to drive their cattle almost among their own, and suddenly and purposely drove off some last night. They had also been forbidden by them to retire to the Hout Bay or elsewhere, as Oedasoia having used up all the grass round about intended to keep those places for himself alone, without leaving any access to us to anyone. Already they had pitched their camps in such a manner as is their custom when they intend to harass anyone (*te benauwen*); so that they fear that the blow on their heads will be given them perhaps so soon as this evening or to-morrow, that they will be robbed of everything, and with wives and children made slaves of the Saldanhars. They therefore prayed for our assistance and mediation, that this might be prevented, as they would as far as possible in return provide us with sufficient cattle, and that for the present one of the country guards may visit them every morning in order to enable them to call on the Commander daily under his protection. This was allowed them. And regarding the Saldanhars (who are now often at the Fort and in the neighbourhood) they stated, when alone with the Commander and others, that 2 or 3 days ago Oedasoia made believe that he intended to make an alliance with them, in order in the meanwhile so to surround them that they would be able to go nowhere, but would of necessity fall into his hands, before they could beg our assistance. This arrangement had already been completed nearly so far, so that as their need was most pressing, they asked us to help them.

It being considered that the country belonged to them, and that the portion occupied by the Company had been very willingly granted by them to us, and that Oedasoia is rather a too powerful and bold a neighbour for us, and would become more so if he were left unhindered, whilst we see him endeavouring completely to play the little Lord over the aforesaid nation and the Caapmen, as well as the 'fishers' (whom since yesterday he has also bitten away from us), and that besides he is threatening to keep away from us the Chainouquas (our best clients) and monopolise for himself alone all intercourse with us, which in that form is not considered to be of advantage to the Company, as very little cattle is obtained from him and that only of the leanest quality, —the aforesaid Gorachouquas and Caapmen were promised for the present that we would speak to Oedasoia about it and this evening already send to request him not to attempt anything against them before he had further spoken with us, or we with him. In consequence these people felt as glad as if they had already been delivered from slavery. To their request that we would assist them to retain their country we replied secretly that that would be practicable, but that to interfere in their quarrels would not be expedient unless in the way of mediation; and further unless they

(as they had up to the present brought us, just like Oedasoa, not half of the quantity required by us, and much less by the coming ships) bound themselves faithfully to supply us for every such vessel arriving, and at a liberal price 20 oxen and 20 sheep, in that case we would no longer trouble ourselves about inducing other and more tribes from the interior to come down to us for the sake of cattle; but that we would take them completely under our protection, and that they were to consider the matter among themselves and come to a decision as soon as possible, seeing that last year they had by our means made friends with the Chainouquas from whom they might always obtain cattle with merchandize obtained from us, and so be able to supply us continually with great profit to themselves. This was thoroughly impressed on them, to make them fully understand that by taking our advice they would become rich and respected by our means, &c. They undertook to discuss this matter with the elders of their people and accordingly took their leave and sent 6 of their men home escorted by one of our soldiers. But in the meanwhile Gonnomoa, the second Chief of the Saldanhars, had arrived at the Fort and having heard and seen that they had had a private interview with us, had at once returned home with all his people. The six Gorachouquas and Caapmen who had remained behind to await a reply with the men whom they had sent away, thereupon begged us also for a soldier to escort them home, fearing that Gonnomoa being encamped very close to them, might attack them even this night. This was done and the interpreters Eva was also sent to Oedasoa to tell him that before having seen us he would be pleased to commit no act of hostility on our ground against our aforesaid neighbours who have requested our assistance. He sent word back through her that he would come and speak with the Commander only to-morrow, but that they (Gorachouquas and Caapmen) did not deserve so much grace from him or from us, as they had robbed us so meanly two years ago, and returned us nothing of the stolen cattle, only nominally ceding to us the land which we were occupying, as they plainly saw that it could not possibly be recovered from us. In fact the one endeavours to prejudice us against the other.

December 1st.—Fine, lovely weather. Oedasoa and the chief of his kraals or camp, named Koukoso, arrive at the Fort. For the present they promised regarding our request, &c., that they would do nothing on our land, but that at the same time they did not forgive the Gorachouquas and Caapmen, and would not wait longer than after the coming down of the Chainouquas (with whom they had allied themselves last year) from whom they would then be able to obtain a sufficient number of men for their assistance, so that their numbers might be equal and they might be tempted to come into the open, as the question had to be settled by battle or arbitration, and these Caapmen and Tobacco Thieves be taught to

1661.

understand that he, Oedasoa, was the paramount chief, not only of the Saldanhars, the great and little Chariguriquas, but also of all this Caap tribe, who were beginning to give themselves too many airs towards him, and were therefore to be somewhat humbled. It had happened once, before the Company had settled here, that a lion came among them and was shot through the body with an assegay by one of Oedasoa's brothers (since dead), and with such force that it also hit and killed one of the Caapmen tribe who was standing on the other side. This was quite an accident, but it offended them so much that when the aforesaid brother once more went out with them to hunt a lion, instead of shooting the animal when they came upon it they shot at the brother and attempted to kill him as it were by accident. Fortunately he was only wounded in the leg, so that they wished to avenge an accident with a treacherous deed. This he had to teach them to forget, and make them once for all feel who he was. For, said he, they are a bad lot, who do not respect their own chief Gogosoa, the old man, more than a child. By birth the latter was their true chief, and had been a firm ally and friend of his (Oedasoa's) father. Yea! they sometimes ignored him altogether as a beggar. This had also become evident to us, so that we had daily fed him well as a poor man. That they still retain him is more for the sake of appearance than reality, as Usinghkamma, his eldest son, is playing the chief, and cared too little for his father. He it was, who by means of another, sent the assegay against his (Oedasoa's) brother, as above stated. For this they had to pay, or they were to acknowledge the crime. Moreover Oedasoa's father had told him (Oedasoa) that he was Lord over all these Caap tribes, and that he was to take care that they did not become too bold and play him an ugly trick as they had sometimes done to his ancestors, as they are continually endeavouring, under one pretext or another, to throw off their allegiance; for that purpose especially they had allied themselves to the Chainouquas on condition that the latter were to protect them &c.

They also considered it a grievance that in former times Oedasoa's brother had eloped with a wife of one of them and kept her for himself. He had however not done this by force but with ten unarmed companions, for the sake of the love which the two felt for each other, so that the Caapmen and Gorachouquas were only trying to hunt up excuses here and there for not living under anybody's dominion, but only by themselves; but as his father had properly impressed it upon him that he and no one else was their true Lord, he could not, now that he had come to man's estate, refrain from having himself acknowledged as such. This he had to teach them. On the other hand Sousoa, the chief of the Chainouquas, was his superior, whom, when he came here, he acknowledged as such; why then, said he, should these people not acknowledge him as their superior. This he had to teach them, and if Sousoa

came here and understood that the Caapmen and Gorachouquas had, for the aforesaid reasons, cause sufficient not to acknowledge him as their chief, he had made such a firm alliance with the Namaquas (which was not without benefit to the Company) that he would no longer acknowledge Sousoa as his superior, but would with the assistance of others endeavour to secure the Paramount Chieftainship for himself, as the Caapmen were trying to do, &c.

After this conversation he was well entertained, and being very much pleased he left for home towards evening.

December 2nd.—At noon Herry and Doman arrived at the Fort escorted by one of the mounted guards and related that since yesterday Oedasoia had sent word to them that he would not do them any harm, but that nevertheless they did not dare to come to us openly as before, as he had added to his message that if he found them in the open beyond our limits he would not forgive them. They accordingly begged very hard that we should make Oedasoia depart as they would otherwise have no peace from him but always be afraid and anxious.

We made them understand that as they were encamped in their own territory Oedasoia should leave them in peace; that therefore they need not surrender their rights, but should he overpower them there was no better way of escaping from his dominion than to place themselves with all their cattle under our protection under the same conditions proposed yesterday to Choro, the chief of the Gorachouquas, their allies, viz., that he, and they, the Caapmen, having sufficient cattle, and by our means having become last year good friends with the Chainouquas, shall undertake to supply every ship arriving here with 20 good cattle and 20 sheep for merchandize, for, in order to obtain that quantity at least, we were taking much trouble to invite down to us the tribes of the interior; but that we would cease doing this if they undertook the supply, and we would protect them all, and make them sufficiently master of their own country beyond the limits of the Company, so that they need not fear the domination of Oedasoia, but would be able to retain their independent Government, without contributing to anyone (as they have to do at present, in order to be able to live in peace, at one time to Oedasoia, at another to some one else who might overpower them) except ourselves, in exchange for merchandize, anything more than the said quantity of cattle, on which they might profit more than 100 p.c., for if they employed the wares obtained from us in bartering other cattle, they would as merchants in a short time become very rich and as great Lords as those who are now trying to become their masters; and as they had associated with us so long they ought to understand this. They fell in with our proposal, but feared that their people would with difficulty be made to understand it.

They were told that we would like to keep Oedasoia near us because of his cattle (from whom a larger number is obtained than

1661.

—

from them), and that they would have to thank their own want of comprehension if, by delaying longer, they fell completely under his power, as he had offered us already half of his cattle if we would only permit him to attack them on our ground, as he has now so closely encircled them that they have no other refuge than with us, so that they were now to consider what was best for them, to live independently, or become the servants of the Saldanhars, and further whatever else they might think of, that in our opinion would be of advantage to the Company, &c.

They begged very hard that we should give them, if only two, soldiers to reside permanently with them, when they would be sure that Oedasoia would not molest them. They were told, however, that for various reasons this could not be done before they had completely surrendered themselves to our protection under the aforesaid conditions, and furnished us beforehand with a good quantity of cattle for the ships daily expected, and gave us such further assurances on which we might always mutually depend.

They were further made to believe that if this offer were made to Oedasoia he would at once accept it, and then trouble them should he so please. They were therefore to know what they were about, and carefully consider what course they were to pursue, and so forth.

December 4th.—(Sunday.) Dry, windy S.E. weather in the morning.

December 5th.—The same weather. Oedasoia and his Captain Koukasoa called at the fort with two fat wethers as a present, and in order to say farewell, as they intended, now that all the grass had been eaten off, to go away again, and trek along the beach to the back of the Luipaard Mountains (Tigerbergen). In order to maintain his friendship he was given a present and provided with good entertainment. Little, however, could be bartered from his people; but it is to be hoped that as they have proceeded north, the Chainouquas from the east will be near at hand, and bring sods to the dike, as since the 1st of this month not more than 12 young and old inferior cattle and 34 sheep have been obtained from the Saldanhars collectively, though they encamped here in our neighbourhood with so many thousands of animals.

December 6th and 7th.—The same fine weather. To-day the following Resolution was taken:—

Wednesday, the 7th December, 1661.

“After the distribution in cash of f2,059·4 among the men on the 1st November last, it having been found that there was hardly more money on hand than the f990·1 belonging to the orphans of the late Ensign Jan van Herwerden, and that already a portion of it had been used to pay for train oil for Batavia, fish, material and various kinds of refreshments for the sick, besides the daily payment of board money and subsidies, &c.—It was unanimously

resolved, in order to strengthen the Company's treasury and enable it to pay one thing and another, for the present to borrow from the aforesaid orphans, besides the Rds. 1,000, borrowed on the 12th July last, the said 320 reals or f990.1, and from the interest due to add to that amount 20 similar reals, or together 350 reals of 60 stivers each, at $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. per month, reckoned from the 12th November last, when the said sum was made use of.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope,' on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.
ROELOFF DE MAN.
ABRAHAM GABBEMA.
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

To-day the Saldanhars in a body broke up their camp, and Oedasoa and his Captain Koukosoia once more visited the fort for another entertainment. What agreement they made with the Gorachouquas cannot very well be made out; it was only seen that they brought some assegays to Oedasoa, tied together in bundles.

December 8th.—Heavy, dry S.S.E. winds; the farmers mostly mowing barley in every direction.

December 9th.—Fine weather, with a N.W. breeze.

December 10th.—Rather strong N.W. winds, with a cloudy sky and a little rain. Since the 7th we have bartered one cow and 7 small sheep from the Saldanhars, who are now encamped at a distance of about $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours' walk from the Salt River in the direction of the Leopard Mountains.

December 11th.—(Sunday). Fine, lovely weather. The mare with which the ass had been playing foaled a mule. Two or three more are in foal from the same ass, which is very welcome, as the female ass died last year whilst foaling.

December 12th and 13th.—Same weather. The Fiscal sent with some merchandize to the kraals of the Gorachouquas and Caapmen to see whether trade would be more successful with them there than here at the Fort. They also had broken up their camp at the tail of the 'Bosheuvel' and removed towards and near the pass and the Houtvalley. They were found to be little inclined to barter, so that the Fiscal returned during the evening with only 3 cattle and 12 sheep.

During the day it blew very stiffly from the S.S.E.

This day was given to the freeman Tielman Hendricksz of Utrecht (who has already been a freeman for three years and with his wife had now accepted 12 more years of freedom) about 50 morgen of land where the redoubt 'Coorenhoop' is situated. The ground was surveyed and given him in freehold that he might use it for growing wheat, &c. Only a third of the plot will be fit for that purpose, whilst there is still about as much between the

1661.

‘Bosheuvel’ and the ‘Bosbergen,’ but as it is the furthest distant, not very much desired. It may, however, be left as pasture-lands as it is poor and of little value.

December 14th and 15th.—Windy weather from the S.E. The Fiscal sent with merchandize to the Saldanhars, but during yesterday and to-day he could only obtain 2 cows and 13 little sheep. He found these natives journeying further away, but Oedaso ordered them to halt and pitch their camp in order to enable our people to trade with them. But they could obtain no more than 3 cattle and 17 sheep, with which he returned home in the evening.

December 16th and 17th.—Stiff south easters. The Little Chariguriquas brought a cow and 4 sheep. They also told us that four days ago they had seen a large and a small vessel in Saldanha Bay, which after lying there three days had proceeded to sea again. What the condition of the men was could, however, not be ascertained. They are very likely the *West Vrieslandt* of Enckhuysen, bound to Batavia, and the little *Nightingale* of Amsterdam, destined for the Cape.

December 18th.—(Sunday.) Cloudy weather in the morning, but during the day the same hard south easter with rain, preventing the aforesaid vessels from arriving here.

December 19th and 20th.—The S.E. wind still blowing and with even greater force, doing very little good to the ripe corn now being reaped. In many places and especially on the lands of the Company the crops have been very successful; it is a pity however, that within the present limits of the Company no more land exists fit for wheat growing.

The Dutch fruit trees are also more and more proving successful, especially apples and quinces; some of the young trees, though having only 3 or 4 fruits on them as yet, the latter are beautiful: others again are beginning to blossom and promise to bear in future, as soon as they are a little older and better rooted. The best of all is that the fruit will be ripe and in full beauty when the return fleet and the outward bound autumn and winter ships arrive here. This we have also observed in the lemons and oranges, some of which trees are already in fair bearing. The vines are particularly full, as well as the olive tree which bore last year and is now so covered with fruit that its branches bend down to the earth. The other, however, has hitherto only shown 2 or 3 blossoms. What it will still do, time will show. Of the currants and gooseberries a few ripe berries were plucked this month; and the cherries are beginning to ripen. When the trees are older they will perhaps bear better; but this fruit will be for the people who live here, as about that time ships seldom call here.

December 21st.—(New moon.) The *Musketjen* arrives from Robben Island with a westerly breeze, and a load of shells for the lime kilns. The S. East wind had detained her three days. She had heard nothing of the ships mentioned on the 17th instant as

seen by the Hottentoots in Saldanha Bay, and which are prevented from reaching Table Bay by the continuous S. Easters which again began to blow during the night.

December 22nd.—The S.E. wind still blowing.

December 23rd.—This morning Fiscal Abraham Gabbema was sent with some merchandize carried by two pack oxen to the Saldanhars, encamped about a day's journey from this, in order, if possible, to barter some cattle from them, as we have hitherto heard nothing further of the rumoured approach of the Chainouquas and Heusequas, and it has been found that cattle may be bartered from the Saldanhars with greater facility when they are a distance away than when they are near, for in the latter case they are able to obtain from the freemen and private individuals so much tobacco for milk, a certain kind of ground nut, roots, and other wild fruit, such as 'porey,' useless ostrich feathers and shells, little tortoises and other similar trifles (leuren en sleuren), that the Company has very little chance of obtaining any cattle from them, to say nothing of the trouble which we have to suffer from them when they are encamped in our neighbourhood because of their shameless importunity, &c.

December 24th.—Cloudy, fickle weather, with a stiff south-easter during the night. Since the 17th 4 sheep were obtained from the Saldanhars, and 2 from the Caapmen.

December 25th.—(Christmas Day.) The strong S.E. winds continue to blow, with parching drought.

December 26th.—The same weather.

December 27th.—Calm weather. Towards evening Fiscal Abraham Gabbema returns from the Saldanhars, who were encamped much further off than was supposed. He had bartered from them 4 good cattle and 90 sheep, 6 of which he had to leave behind on the way, as the distance was long and they could not get further. He, therefore, brought home a fine troop of 84 sheep, as well as the aforesaid 4 cattle.

December 28th.—The same fine weather, with varying breezes. During the night, however, the S.E. winds again began to blow hard. The following Resolution was adopted:—

“Wednesday, the 28th December, 1661.

“Whereas it has pleased God the Lord to bless us fairly well this year with our wheat crop, in the case of the burghers as well as that of the Company, so that some of the former, who have hitherto been obliged to obtain their bread corn from the Company, not only are able to subsist on their own, but will also have some over to deliver to the Company for the reduction of their debt, &c.—It was decided, in order the more to encourage them in that necessary industry, and also in consequence of the expectation of a large supply of rice from India, to allow each of the agriculturists, for the use of themselves and their households, one-and-a-quarter bushel per head monthly, whether man, woman, or maid ;

1661. — or 50 lbs. wheat to be brought by them to the mill, and which shall be ground at once, because, living in the country, they cannot be at the mill every day. After them those living near the Fort will be served. The rest of the time to be at the disposal of the Company's servants.

Reynier Dryver of Cleeff, who arrived here in the *Musquaet Boom* on the 23rd July, 1660, as 'adelborst' at fl10 per month, and is at present provisionally holding the rank of corporal, in which he is giving satisfaction, is accordingly, at his request, and because of his ability, confirmed in his corporal's rank, with a salary of fl14, commencing on New Year's Day.

Thus done and arrested in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above."

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

December 29th, 30th, and 31st.—Continuous hard S. E. parching winds.

1662.

1662. — January 1st.—Calm, hot sunshine.

January 2nd.—Cloudy sky in the morning. Clear during the day, with a S. W. breeze. The *Musketjen* arrives from Robben Island with shells for the lime kilns.

January 3rd and 4th.—Calm, warm, sunshine. The following persons betroth themselves according to the following Resolution:—

Wednesday, the 4th January, 1662.

Abraham Gabbema, bachelor, born at the Hague, Fiscal in the Company's service and appointed to the Fort of Good Hope, having pledged his troth to Petronella Dous of Dousburgh, spinster here, and both having appeared before the Council, the bride assisted by her mother Johanna Boddys, with the request to be lawfully joined in wedlock, the Council decided to grant their reasonable prayer. (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, Roeloff de Man, and Hendrick Lacus, secretary.

Towards evening the said Fiscal Gabbema was again despatched to the Saldanhars with merchandize packed on 6 oxen, to see whether he could not again make such a fine barter as last time.

January 5th, 6th and 7th.—Fine, calm weather, sometimes cloudy, with a little moisture.

January 8th.—(Sunday). Pleasant weather in the morning, with a slight W. breeze.

January 9th.—Same weather. The *Musketjen* arrives from Robben Island with another load of shells for the kilns. Everything was still well there.

Towards evening the freemen's vessel *Peguyu* also arrived from Saldanha Bay, with 11 half-aums train oil, bringing news that for a month the ship *West Vrieslandt* of Enckhuysen and the *Nachtegaaltje* of the Chamber Amsterdam had been lying there according to the following letter to the Commander.

"Honour fast, Worshipful, Prudent, very discreet Sir!

Sir,—As we left the Vlie on the 18th July last for the Chamber Enckhuysen, in the *West Vrieslandt*, with 374 men, of whom up to date 34 have died, we reached the N. of Dassen Island on the 6th instant, intending to anchor on the roadstead there. We found a vessel there under the land flying the Prince's Flag. It fired a shot and hoisted a distress signal. We therefore sailed towards her, and found her to be the *Nachtegaal* fitted out by Amsterdam. She had left the Texel on the 15th June with 20 men. Four had died and the rest were very weak, so that they could not manage their vessel. We therefore gave him 8 men, but as the wind was southerly we were unable to reach the roadstead and were compelled to make for Saldhana Bay, where we are still lying with the *Nachtegaal*, trusting that the Almighty God will give us a favourable wind. We shall not waste time in prosecuting our voyage as soon as possible in order to reach you, but we beg you, as long as we are detained here, to provide us with some refreshments, for which we shall be deeply grateful, as they are very much required for our crews sake."

Your Obedient Servants,

(Signed) CORNELIS JANSZ BACKER, skipper,
and ELBERT BROUWER, junior merchant.

On board the *West Vrieslandt* in

Saldanha Bay, the 7th January, 1662.

The letter of the skipper of the *Nachtegaaltje* was as follows:—
December 27th, 1661.

"SIR,—With proper respect I write you by Bartholomeus who has suddenly decided to sail for Table Bay as during the early night the wind suddenly changed towards the north. This is why I cannot write circumstantially, or say more than that we have arrived here safely on the 6th. Since that day we have longed for a favourable breeze. We have had a long voyage on account of the unfitness of our vessel. We left the Texel on the 15th June, having made 2 previous futile attempts from Amsterdam, frustrated each time by the fault of the vessel. Of my third effort I will speak when I am present with you. This I wish very much, as many of my people are again out of their beds and on their legs, though not yet quite well. I brought here 8 in bed and four dead of scurvy. Two died within sight of land, so that we had 12 unfit to do duty out of our full complement of 20. Among them are 3 boys; the rest of the 12 are supposed to be in good health, as we kept them out of bed by force. If there

1662.

— had only been one capable of taking his turn during 4 successive glasses at the rudder! It was a misery to behold, as we could not work our ship. On the 6th we saw your freemen of Dassen Island, having been carried thither by a S. breeze. We intended to anchor on the roadstead there, when to our joy we saw a vessel towards the N. also making for the same roadstead. I fired a gun and hoisted a distress signal. She came down to us and we found her to be the *West Vrieslandt* of the Chamber Enckhuysen. I called out to her, "Board me, I am unable to put out a boat or manage the ship." This he did and after I had been provided by him with men, we decided to sail together to this Bay (Saldanha)."

Your Servant,

(Signed) Skipper FIJAERT MEYNDERTS BACKER.

A later note from the skipper of the *Nachtegaeltjen* contained the following:—

7th January, 1662.

On board the *Nachtegaeltjen*.

"With greeting and respect this is to inform you, that, on account of the change in the wind, the enclosed could not be sent on; and as it has to be done hurriedly, as the boat is leaving, I have no other opportunity to write. I trust that the present N.E. breeze will continue." (Signed) Skipper Fyaert Meijndertsz Backer.

January 10th.—A fine N.W. breeze, growing stronger towards evening, with some rain.

January 11th.—The same rainy weather and the same breeze, so that we expect the above mentioned vessels every hour from Saldanha Bay. They can reach us now for refreshments, whilst the wind is against us to send them any.

January 12th.—Cloudy weather, with varying breezes in the morning. The *Musketjen* hurriedly despatched to Robben Island with the secret signals for the return fleet and outward bound vessels that they may receive them in good time. She is to bring back shells for lime.

During the forenoon the freemen's vessel also left full of cabbages and earth fruits for the ships in Saldanha Bay. She took the following letter with her.

To the officers of the ship *West Vrieslandt* and the galiot *Nachtegal*.

"With the freemen's boat we received your letters, and looked forward to your arrival with the W. breeze. And though we do not doubt that you are now near here, but should, through some cause or another, this not be the case, we have sent you the freemen's vessel full of cabbages and other vegetables. As it is too small it has not been able to take on board any cattle, but we do not doubt that you have been able to obtain some in the bay, as well as geese, ducks, and other birds; also that with these W. breezes you have been able to touch at Dassen Island, where you would

obtain from the freemen sheep and pigs, which we have in sufficient numbers there, as well as good vegetables. It has pleased us to learn that the freemen are very accommodating in conveying to you water and vegetables, as well as in the catching of birds, &c. If you happily reach us (each little breeze to be taken advantage of), you will find no want of better water and refreshment here in abundance. If you find, however, that you are delayed there longer, then be so good as to send us by the first boat the letters for the Cape. The refreshments are to be divided among you, and whichever of you first meets this boat shall take out its share. We trust that the Almighty will soon conduct you hither." . . .

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

In the Fort 'the Good Hope,' the 12th January, 1662.

During the afternoon it again began to blow hard from the S.S.E., preventing the vessels from coming on.

January 13th.—Wind as boisterous as yesterday. During the afternoon Fiscal Abraham Gabbema arrived from the land of the Saldanhars (three day's journey from this), bringing 117 sheep and 17 cattle which he had bartered; so that he again had a fortunate journey. According to his opinion, however, not much more will be obtainable from them at present, as he brought back a large quantity of merchandize which he had hoped to barter away, as they were well provided. This is surprising, as they are so hot on tobacco, and having so much cattle that they part with any with such great difficulty. But it more and more appears that this is the only field which they cultivate for their subsistence, using the meat and milk for food and the skins for clothing.

January 14th.—Lovely weather, with varying breezes.

January 15th.—(Sunday.) Same pleasant weather, with a N. breeze.

January 16th.—The same weather. It is strange that the vessels do not make their appearance with it from Saldanha Bay.

January 17th.—Cloudy sky, with N.W. breezes, very favourable for the above mentioned ships. Fiscal Abraham Gabbema proceeds with merchandize on two pack oxen to the Gorachouquas or Tobacco Thieves, to see what he may obtain there. They are encamped at the extreme point of the Steenberg and False Bay, a stiff day's journey from this, with burdened oxen, &c.

In the meanwhile the *Nachtegaal* arrives after a tedious voyage (about 10 o'clock in the morning). According to the skipper she had called at Cabo Verde on the 12th August for water, and there heard that the English had altogether forbidden the West India Company to trade in the river Gamla, and ordered it to surrender its Fort within three months to the King. They therefore lived there in great anxiety, and though re-enforced, were very soberly provided with provisions, besides having daily to suffer the annoyance of the English, &c.

1662.

On the (?) October this galiot had crossed the line between five and six degrees of longitude and there and during the whole voyage had to contend much with calms. On the 6th December last she had fallen in, in a quite helpless state, with the *West Vrieslandt* below Dassen Island, which gave her 8 men, and together they proceeded to Saldanha Bay. Between the 11th and 12th of this month they left with a N. breeze and anchored below Dassen Island, where they were becalmed. Yesterday she left for this bay.

The *Musketjen* returned from Robben Island with shells.

Towards evening the *West Vrieslandt* arrived in company of the freemen's boats laden with train oil.

January 18th.—Fine weather. Skipper Cornelisz Jansz Backer and junior merchant Elbert Brouwer of the *West Vrieslandt* land, and report that they had left the Vlie on the 18th July last with 374 men, of whom 34 had died and 8 had been transferred to the *Nachtegael*. Excepting 4 or 5, the crew were in good health, thanks to the refreshments obtained at Saldanha Bay where they had obtained 15 sheep from the Hottentoots and daily a fair quantity of vegetables from the islands, brought on by the boats of the freemen, from whom they had, besides water, received much assistance. They had touched nowhere and had almost during the whole voyage, and especially at the line, to contend with adverse winds. They had crossed the line on the 3rd October in $253^{\circ} 27''$ longitude, but the helpless state of the *Nachtegael* caused their chief delay, as they might easily have reached the Dassen Island roadstead, and taking advantage of the slight breezes, reached Table Bay the next day; for the Dassen Island roadstead is so favourably situated for sailing hither, as full advantage can be taken of the slightest breeze, which often fails a vessel before she can get clear of Saldanha Bay. With the N.W. breeze they had sailed away yesterday morning, and arrived here the same evening. This, however, can seldom be done from Saldanha Bay at this time of the year, but very readily from Dassen Island.

January 19th.—(New moon.) Fine weather, with a N.W. breeze. During the afternoon a stiff S. Easter.

Towards evening the Fiscal returned from the Caapmen and Tobacco Thieves, bringing only 20 sheep and 7 little oxen, notwithstanding they are in their position sufficiently rich in beautiful cattle. It is therefore evident that most cattle can only be obtained from the tribes further inland.

January 20th.—Wind and weather as yesterday forenoon, but towards evening again a stiff S.S. Easter.

January 21st.—The same stiff S.E. wind.

January 22nd.—The same. During the night it became fine weather.

January 23rd to 26th.—Continuously fine weather. After the Thursday's sermon Fiscal Abraham Gabbema was married to Miss Petronella Does in presence of the Council, according to the Resolution dated this day.

1662.

January 26th, 1662.

(The ordinary form—see preceding marriages).

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

January 27th.—Fine weather, with N.W. breeze.

January 28th.—Same weather. The *Nachtegael* receives her despatch to India, also our letters and papers for that Residency. S. East wind suddenly springing up she is unable to leave to-night.

January 29th.—(Sunday.) The S.E. still blowing. At noon a vessel was sighted below the land by the kloof watchmen. She was becalmed, whilst here in the bay it was blowing so hard that the vessels were obliged to lower their top masts.

January 30th.—Calm weather during the morning, and as the vessel was still lying becalmed, the Fiscal was sent off to her with the following note.

To the officers of the unknown vessel below the land.

Honourable, prudent, very discreet, good Friends!

“As the *Nachtegaeltjen* is prepared to leave and we see you under the land, we send you Fiscal Abraham Gabbema without delay for the letters belonging to the Cape, as we believe that they will contain matters which should be despatched with the said galiot without delay; be pleased therefore to deliver the letters to the said Fiscal, that we may the sooner learn their contents and delay the galiot as little as possible.”

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

In the Fort ‘the Good Hope,’ the 30th January, 1662.

A N.W. breeze blowing during the afternoon, by means of which the above vessel safely arrived on the roadstead. The Fiscal landed with the letters, but they contained nothing that was necessary to be despatched in the *Nachtegael*. About the same time the skipper Jan van Campen and the junior merchant Casper van Dalen also landed and reported their vessel to be the *Wapen van Amsterdam*, which had left the Vlie on the 27th September, 1661, in company of the *Amersfoort*, with 350 men, of whom only three had died and 2 been drowned. The rest were in good health. She had called nowhere and had lost sight of the *Amersfoort* the same day that she left. The *Malacca* was then also ready to leave the Vlie.

January 31st.—The wind N.W. from the sea. The *Nachtegael* ordered to leave and to endeavour to do so by tacking.

1662.

The *West Vrieslandt* receives her despatch and our letters for India.

The *Nachtegael* gets outside during the afternoon with 52 men on board. God grant her a prosperous voyage.

February 1st.—Lovely, cloudy N.W. weather, unfavourable for the departure of the *West Vrieslandt*. The *Nachtegael* puts back.

February 2nd.—A S.E. breeze in the morning. Both vessels leave, the *West Vrieslandt* with 301 men. God grant them a quicker voyage than they have had from Patria to this.

The two freemen's boats leave for Das-en Island and Saldanha Bay for fishing and burning train oil.

February 3rd.—Lovely, calm weather.

February 4th.—The same weather. Arrival of the *Malacca*, skipper Pieter Jansz Veltmuys and junior merchant Isaacq Grammond. She had left the Vlie on the 3rd October, 1661, with 345 men, 12 of whom had died; the rest were fairly well. Between Yarmouth and the Wells she had bumped three times, of which they had informed the Directors by means of a man-of-war from the Channel. They came straight on hither, but were becalmed 3 weeks at the line. She had been 19 days in company of the *Amersfoort* in this neighbourhood, which vessel may therefore also be daily expected.

February 5th.—(Sunday.) Heavy south-easters since last night. They continued until midnight.

February 6th and 7th.—Fine weather, with a N.W. breeze. Heavy S. Easter in the afternoon, preventing the officers of the *Wapen van Amsterdam*, who were on shore to receive their despatch, from returning on board. They had to spend the night on shore.

February 8th.—The same heavy S. Easter.

February 9th.—Calm in the morning. The officers proceed on board with our letters and papers for Batavia. During the afternoon the vessels reached the open with a fine S.S.E. breeze, and 345 men on board. The Almighty grant them a happy and prosperous voyage.

February 10th and 11th.—Lovely weather, with N.W. breezes. Since the Fiscal returned from his journey, on the 19th of last month, we have bartered 3 cattle and 23 sheep from the Saldanbars.

February 12th.—(Sunday.) Very lovely, calm weather. About 9 o'clock in the evening news was brought to the Fort by one of the guardhouse 'Keert de Koe' (Turn the Cow), that our travellers under command of Sergeant Pieter Everaerts had arrived in the neighbourhood; all were in good health and strength, excepting one who had been killed by an elephant. They hoped to be early to-morrow morning at the Fort; we therefore sent them a flask of wine and some food, in order to refresh them somewhat, &c.

February 13th.—Dark weather in the morning, with a W. breeze. About six o'clock a vessel anchored in the roadstead, and

the officers landing reported that she was the *Amersfoort* (skipper Adriaan Joosten Swaen, and junior merchant Rudolph van Ommeren), with 341 men, of whom 14 had died or been lost. She had left in company of *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* on the 27th September last, and between the 6th and 7th of this month anchored below Dassen Island, where they had been fairly well refreshed by the freemen with vegetables, eggs, birds, sheep, and pigs. Yesterday before daylight they left, and, thank God, arrived here safely this morning. She had called nowhere, and was becalmed more than six weeks at the line.

In the meanwhile Sergeant Pieter Everaerts and his twelve companions arrive hale and hearty; their 13th companion had been killed by an elephant ten days after they had left us. In substance they mentioned that they had not been able to find the Namaquas, though they had marched more than 48 Dutch miles beyond the spot where they had last been met; but if they had been able to find water further on, which the sergeant, three of his men and the chief of the Great Chariguriquas had searched for in vain for four days, they might have been able to have found them. But between a certain water which runs into an inland lake, named the 'Oliphants River' and the place where the Namaquas were now encamped, was a space so dry and salt that it could not possibly be travelled. The aforesaid chief and some of his men, however, rapidly crossed it towards the Namaquas, and brought us news, after 10 or 12 days, that the Namaquas had said that there was no chance this season for us to reach them. This was soon proved, for the sergeant having attempted it for four days, had returned to his men half faint with thirst. The said chief and his men had taken 10 or 12 days to and fro over this salt territory and suffered much more from thirst, as the ground there is as dry and barren as a plank and full of sandy mole hills, without a green herb or grass, and only here and there a little pool of salt, muddy water, the sides of which were quite white with salt. This inconvenience compelled them to return before the time, as well as the sickness of one or two, who, however, soon recovered after they had left those barren regions. All declare that nowhere a tithe has been found of such good land and water as are found here in this little corner of the Cape, as will more fully appear from their journal inserted below.

Journal kept by me, Cornelis de Cretser, of the journey to and fro in the land of Africa, made by Pieter Everaert, Sergeant (in accordance with certain instructions given to him), in his quality as Commander, with his companions, consisting of 12 persons, by order of the Hon. Johan van Riebeeck, Commander of the Fort of Good Hope and its dependencies; commenced on the 14th November, 1661, when they left our aforesaid Fort.

Anno 1661.

1662. — November 15th.—Left the barrier at the Salt River, taking our course towards the N.E. about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles. Having rested we went $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles further, when we were among the Tigerbergen, where we passed the night.

On the 17th we rested at the Mosselbanks Rivier during the hottest part of the day.

On the 19th the rain prevented us from advancing more than $1\frac{1}{2}$ Dutch miles.

On the 20th we passed over the 'cloof' of a certain mountain called by us 'Riebeecks Casteel.'

On the 21st we reached the 'Groote Berg Rivier,' where we caught an abundance of beautiful fish.

On the 22nd we were busy the whole day, as the river was so very deep, floating across our victuals. We camped on the other side during the night.

The land from the 'Riebeecks Casteel' to this, and that for three-quarters of an hour towards the Cape, is fairly well suited for cultivation, but rather sandy. The rest passed by us is altogether sandy, pebbly and rocky. The passage (track) towards the aforesaid river (if necessary) might be travelled with a wagon.

On the 23rd we reached the 'Cleyne Berg Rivier,' which we crossed, and then rested during the heat of the day, and afterwards crossed sixteen large and small rivers, all discharging themselves into the Berg Rivier.

The country passed this day is entirely sandy and stony.

On the 24th, early in the morning, we decided to lay quiet during the forenoon, and provide ourselves with 'hartebeesten' and other game, as they could not very well be obtained further on. We therefore spent the night at a river, but at nightfall we observed an elephant not far from our resting place. Its intention seemed to be to attack us, and therefore, in order to protect our cattle, we advanced towards it, in order to attempt, if possible, to get him away from us; but in doing so (though various shots had been fired at it), one of our companions, named Pieter Roman, was not only overtaken, but so cruelly mangled by it, that he died about two hours afterwards.

Because of the burial of the deceased, and the weakness of Coenraedt Schatman, we lay still the whole forenoon of the 25th.

The country here is as already described, but hay might be obtained from it.

On the 29th we reached a high mountain range which we had to cross, but on account of the weakness and exhaustion of our cattle we were obliged to rest there.

On the 30th we reached the 'Groote Oliphants Rivier.' The country travelled hitherto is sandy and stony.

On the 4th we crossed the Oliphants Rivier, and rested near a marsh in consequence of the weak state of Schatman.

On the 6th we lay quiet for the same reason, and supplied ourselves with birds, which we shot, and fish caught in the river, which were obtained in great abundance and of a large size.

On the 7th, before sunrise, we loaded three of our pack-oxen, and left the two others with two men and sufficient victuals with the sick man. We marched northwards $2\frac{1}{2}$ hours, re-crossed the Oliphants Rivier, rested and went on again in a N.W. direction for two hours; then we changed the course towards the N. for one hour, when we reached the spot where Meerhoff had on his last trip met the Chariguriquas and the Namaquas, near the banks of the Oliphants Rivier.

The land as poor as before, but about half-an-hour from this, towards the Cape, good soil for agriculture exists.

On the 9th we crossed the Oliphants Rivier, and marched fully three hours, when we reached a very beautiful green valley near the said river, where we rested during the heat of the day, and then followed the course of the river for half-an-hour N. by E. After that, for an hour and a half, N.N.W., and rested near the river. After sunset two Chariguriquas and some Soaquas visited and promised us to bring us to their kraal, where we would be able to obtain exact information regarding the whereabouts of the Namaquas.

On the 11th we rested on account of the exhaustion and weakness of our cattle. Here we were visited by two chiefs of the Chariguriquas, who invited us to their kraal, which, they said, was not far from us. We therefore accompanied them in the afternoon, our course being N.W. by N., and passed the whole night without a drop of water, the chiefs aforesaid preceding us to their kraal.

On the 12th we reached the aforesaid kraal, where we stayed the day and refreshed ourselves a little.

The country travelled this day has fairly good soil for cultivation.

On the 13th we continued our rest, but at the same time enquired after the Namaquas. We were told that we would not be able to reach them this time, as they had retired far into the interior, and that no water would be obtainable for the cattle on the way, nor anything else. The Namaquas had commenced their journey in the rainy season, as they said, but as we did not place much confidence in what they said, we determined to start early to-morrow morning to search for their (the Namaqua) old camp, and having found the same and the spoor, to follow the latter if possible.

On the 14th we marched in a zig-zag direction, accompanied by the 2 chiefs, until we reached the spot where the Namaquas had lain with their cattle. Afterwards we crossed a mountain, and finally encamped at a brack water.

The land here is fairly good for cultivation.

1662.

—

On the morning of the 15th we marched S.W. by W. one good hour; then W. half an hour, then W. by N. half an hour, then S.W. half an hour, when we again reached the Oliphants Rivier, and again found the spoor of the Namaquas, which we had lost. We then lay still for the rest of the day waiting for the Chariguriqua chief whom we had promised to meet here with his cattle, in order together, should water not fail us, which, he said, would surely be the case, to look for the Namaquas. The country as already described.

The chief not having arrived on the morning of the 16th, we thought that he had been befooling us. He, however, came after we had left the spot, and said that he had left his cattle at the place which we had left in the morning. He again told us that if we wished to march further we had to leave this (Oliphants) river for good, and make up our minds to find no water for four days, and even if we did reach any it would be so salt that we could not possibly drink it, and certainly not the cattle. He offered his services to let us see it, if we accompanied him. Having carefully considered the matter we decided that 2 or 3 men should for 2 or 3 days follow the spoor further and carefully observe whether matters were as stated by the chief. They were then to return and report to us, who would wait for them here, so as, after having seen and heard everything, to decide accordingly. The sergeant would form one of the number, with the intention to start tomorrow morning early.

On the 17th the sergeant and two of the men, accompanied by the chief and an interpreter, left early in the morning and returned on the 20th in fair health, reporting that they had not been able to obtain water anywhere, or grass for the cattle; they had only found some brackish or salt water, as will appear more fully from their annexed journal, viz. :—

“On the 17th at daybreak we left, marching N.N.E. for an hour, then about three hours N. by W., when we arrived at a small water, but so brack and salt that it was undrinkable. Having rested, we marched two hours further, and again rested, without finding any water. We rested once more, and then marched three hours further, and again found some water slightly better. Here a Souqua told us that the Namaquas were about three days’ distant from us. We accordingly decided to go to them, and, having found them, to endeavour to induce them to accompany us to our camp, in order to receive our presents. To this the chief, who accompanied us, agreed. We, therefore, decided to stay here for the night.

Early in the morning of the 18th we started, and marched four hours, then rested near a little water, and went on again for three hours, when we arrived at a kraal where the Namaquas had camped with their cattle, and we found some water similar to what we had previously tasted. Having rested we marched on two

hours longer, when we reached two Souqua huts which were untenanted. Here the chief wished to remain, whilst we, on the other hand, desired to go on. He told us that we could not possibly reach the Namaquas, and even if we did they would never accompany us back, with many other similar subterfuges. He showed great unwillingness to go further, and desired to go back. This we opposed for a long while, but finally, considering the great scarcity of water, we decided to give in. We, therefore, returned, and passed the night near a rock, where we found some rain-water which had fallen that day.

On the 19th we reached the aforesaid huts, where we spent the night.

On the 20th we returned to the camp.

The country travelled by us is altogether stony and sandy.

On the 21st, seeing that there was no probability of reaching the Namaquas (on account of the want of water and grass to save the lives of our cattle), we requested the chief to send some of his men to them on our behalf, in order to acquaint them with our coming, and induce them to come to us to receive their presents, which we had with us, and which we showed him. This he promised to do (after we had made him a present for having accompanied us, and promised him that if he could induce the Namaquas to come to us, we would give him a much larger one). He undertook to bring us back an answer in a short time.

In the meanwhile we resolved in consequence of the ebb and flow of the Oliphants Rivier, and the noise of its waters, which we daily heard, especially at night, to have its course followed by 2 or 3 men, in order to see whether there was no other water anywhere into which the said river discharged itself; for we presumed that the sea was very near here, and might be the cause of it (ebb and flow).

On the 23rd, therefore, the Sergeant and three men went out for the purpose and returned at nightfall the next day. They reported that they had followed the river course about 7 hours, that is S.W.; after that it was found discharging itself into a sea, cutting off, before it did so, a strip of land, which consequently lay between it and the sea. The water of the river must be distant fully 4 hours from the sea before it loses its saltish taste, as observed by them according to their statement.

On the 23rd we again arrived on our return journey at the Oliphants River where we met the chief and his three men, who informed us that according to promise, he had sent 3 men to the Namaquas, who would without doubt be back on the 9th day, when he would bring them back to us, or at least such information as would guide our further steps.

As the pasturage was so poor, we decided to-day (26th) to retire to the kraals of the Chariguriquas, which were on our way, and there await the answer. The next day we reached the kraals situated near the Oliphants Rivier.

1662.

On the 29th we retired with the chief and his kraal, to look for better pastures.

On the afternoon of the 31st we met some Chariguriquas, who informed us that the Namaquas were coming to us and were already very near; and that their chief had early this morning gone out to meet them, and that he would be here very soon. Contrary to our resolution we therefore decided to wait here a day or two longer.

The country all about here is as already described.

From the 1st to the 4th January, 1662, we lay quiet and rested.

On the fifth, the Chariguriquas broke up their camp and retired further back. We followed them and again reached their kraal situated at the Oliphants Rivier where we stayed.

The country here is altogether sandy, stony and rocky.

Towards evening of the 6th we ordered to us some of the Chariguriquas, who, (as we understood) had come from the Namaquas, and who were the same mentioned to us by the chief on the 23rd December last year. They told us, when strictly questioned, that the Namaquas and their chief would be here as soon as the moon was ended, or, as they expressed it, was dead. And as ten or twelve days would elapse before this happened, we deemed it undesirable, as our provisions did not permit it, to wait any longer, but to continue our return journey.

On the 7th we reached the beautiful valley in which we had camped on the 9th December last, and where we again rested awhile, as no water would be obtainable in the neighbourhood. Towards evening we arrived at the river, where we had spent the night of the 8th December last.

As the sergeant was purging and did not feel well, we lay quiet during the morning of the 10th. Starting in the afternoon we passed the night on the spot where we had left our companions on the 7th December, whom we found in good health, except one, viz., Laurens Jansz, who was very ill and weak, and had been laid up nearly three weeks. We trust, however, with the help of God, to get him soon on his legs again.

From the 11th we lay still until the 24th, when we decided to resume our march the following day, as our sick friend had regained some strength and felt well.

On the 25th we arrived at the place where we had passed the night of the 3rd December last. Here the long expected chief joined us, and told us that he had come from the Namaquas, who told him that they could not come down.

On the 26th we reached the spot where we had encamped on the 2nd December, and slept there.

On the 27th we lay quiet, because Laurens Jansz was not very well, and was again purging.

On the 28th we reached a branch of the Oliphants Rivier, and slept there.

On the 29th we continued our march to where we had slept on the 30th November last.

On the 30th we again rested, for the reason above mentioned.

On the 31st we reached the spot where we had slept on the 30th November last.

On the 1st of February the rain prevented us from proceeding very far.

During the evening of the third we camped at a clear running stream.

The night of the 4th we spent near another little river.

On the 5th we passed the last of the 17 rivers mentioned by us on the 23rd November and finally reached the 'Klein Berg Rivier,' where we slept.

On the 6th we rested our cattle the whole forenoon, as they were weak and tired, and towards evening reached the 'Groote Berg Rivier,' where we slept.

On the 7th we again lay still for the same reason.

On the 8th we reached the Kloof of Riebeecks Kasteel, through which we passed towards the spot where we had camped on the 20th November last.

On the 9th we reached the spot where we had rested on the 18th November last.

On the 10th we reached the 'Mosselbank,' where we spent the night.

During the afternoon of the 11th we marched two hours, and remained for the night on the spot where we had been on the 16th November last.

On the 12th we passed the 'Tyger bergen,' and finally arrived at the 'Zoute Rivier,' where we had commenced our journal. We therefore thank the Almighty for His mercy shown us. Amen.

To-day the Freeman's vessel arrived in company of the ship *Amersfoort* from Dassen Island, laden with eggs and fish; one of them had acted as pilot on the *Amersfoort* and accordingly been of great service to that vessel as testified by the Officers, so that their residence there is already becoming a great convenience for the Company's vessels.

The Officers of the *Malacca* receive their despatch and the papers, &c., for Batavia. The vessel leaves towards evening.

February 14th.—A stiff S.S.E. breeze enables her to reach the open sea. God keep her safely.

February 15th and 16th.—The aforesaid freemen's vessel returns to Dassen Island, taking with it some food for the Company's pigs at Robben Island, and the following letter to Jan Zacharias there.

"As the freemen informed us that you had called out to them that you required food for the sucking pigs, and the sows, we send you half a leaguer of the sweepings of barley, meal, &c. See that it is properly used, and be very attentive in looking out and

1662.

attending to the signals for the return ships from India, as they are expected every moment. We depend on you in this matter. Therefore take quick care and be commended to God and greeted by your good friend.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

In the Fort the 'Good Hope,' the 16th February, 1662."

The following was likewise resolved on in connection with the travellers who had returned.

Thursday, the 16th February, 1662.

"Although Sergeant Pieter Everaerts had travelled much further inland this time than had been done previously, but for all that did not succeed in reaching the Namaquas, in spite of every effort made by him, as they had retired from this side of the Oliphants Rivier far inland, beyond a large tract of arid, salt and sandy country, which at present cannot be crossed in this dry season through want of fresh water, though they promised to meet our people about 60 Dutch miles from this, so that we shall have to await another and more favourable opportunity, it was decided in order to keep these amateurs up to the mark, to fulfil the promises made to them when they were leaving, namely that the leader, viz.: the Sergeant would receive double pay as long as the journey lasted, and the others also double pay from the day that they remained away longer than they had been provisioned for. As they had only been provisioned for $1\frac{2}{3}$ months and had been away 3 months, or $1\frac{1}{3}$ months longer than they had been provisioned, to pay them out in cash for that period, as well as their rations of brandy, according to the price at which it is sold in the Company's stores here, lest there be too much dissipation among them, &c.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort the Good Hope, on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

ROELOF DE MAN.

ABRAHAM GABBEMA.

HENRICUS LACUS, Secretary."

February 17th and 18th.—(New Moon). Obtained yesterday from the Saldanhars 6 small oxen and 4 small sheep. Heavy S.S. easter during the evening.

February 19th.—Heavy S.S. Easter (Sunday).

February 20th.—Fine weather, with variable breezes. The officers of the *Amersfoort* receive their despatch and our letters for Batavia.

February 21st.—Fine weather, with a S.S.E. breeze. The *Amersfoort* leaves with 328 men. May the Almighty grant her a safe voyage.

February 22nd and 23rd.—The same fine weather, with northerly breezes. Bartered 5 oxen and 10 sheep from the Saldanhars. Their chief, Oedasoa, also visited us to express his joy that our

men had returned safely from the interior. He said that they had now been so far that he thought they would not only have found the Namaquas, but also other tribes living on this side as well as on the other of the great river at Vicity Magna; and if they had crossed that, he said, they would have found the country full of permanent habitations (*vaste plaatsen*), and nations such as the Brigondj, Chory-Eyquas—that is to say, Gold Nation, for Chory means gold, and Eyqua a nation—also the Cumissoquas. Whether this tribe is that of Cumissa, marked in Linschoten's Chart as dwelling somewhat more to the north, is a matter for conjecture. He also spoke of a large inland sea, discovered by our people, entirely surrounded by land; and also that the aforesaid river near Vicity Magna, divided the territory of the Hottentoots from that of the other nations, so that all dwelling on the south side of that river were of the Hottentoot tribe, and those to the north of it were black like our Angola and Guinea slaves, who were also subject to a paramount chief, who never left his house (which he described as much larger than our own) without being followed in state by a large retinue. The Hottentoots, however, had no such state among themselves. He also spoke of warrior women with one breast each, whom that chief possessed, and whose sons, as soon as born, were at once given to the men, whilst they kept the daughters to themselves, in order to be trained in warlike exercises. These women, according to him, were continually held everywhere ready for war, which he might have to wage from time to time against his neighbours or enemies. In how far his story of this, of the stone houses and others built with cow dung and clay is true, we hope will be discovered in time for the Company.

In the meanwhile the Caapmen came to complain that Oedaso was again forcing them to leave, threatening that he would ruin them. Hence with their huts and cattle they had retired within the lines of our mounted and other guards, requesting us to protect them, &c. But as their cattle would within three or four days eat off all the grass of the Company's and freemen's cattle, preserved for the dry season, they were told that it was necessary that they should leave, for if they did not, their cattle would consume all the grass and our own be left to die of starvation, &c. They, however, begged us to take them under our protection, as they would otherwise be robbed of all their cattle, and made slaves of the Saldanahs, who would treat them most tyrannically, &c.

February 24th.—Fine weather, with variable breezes. Very early this morning, Commander Riebeeck, with all the horses that could possibly be ridden, 21 in number, and accompanied by the sergeant, rode to the aforesaid Caapmen, whom he found within the limits of the Company at the fort of Bosheuvcl, and with them the Gorachouquas or tobacco thieves, encamped in four kraals consisting of 104 large huts, sheltered with branches, each hut consisting of at least 20 souls, men, women and children. All

1662.

appeared desirous of embracing the Commander for joy, when they saw him approaching. They raised some mats on poles to protect him from the sun, when the chief of the Caapmen, the old fat Gogosoa, his son Osinghkimma, the chief of the Gorachouquas, Coro, his brothers and all their elders went to sit down before all the horses in the veld, Doman on behalf of the Caapmen, and Herry on that of the Gorachouquas being the spokesmen. Herry, however, was the principal speaker, having been elected by them for the purpose and given a seat of honour among the chiefs, and elders. He orated generally, and submitted that the chiefs, &c., would have gladly visited the Fort, to speak to the Commander, but on account of the tyrannical threats of the Saldanhars, had not dared to leave their home, but been obliged to draw closely together to protect themselves against the Saldanhars as much as possible; and because they considered themselves not able to cope with the latter, they had taken refuge among us, begging the Commander to permit them to remain where they now were, and should it happen that the Saldanhars attacked them within the Company's limits, to be so kind as to defend them with the mounted guard.

The Commander replied that he had yesterday beheld the domineering conduct of Oedasoa towards them, when he drove them away home from the Fort and all the Hollanders, so that he could very well understand their anxiety, and that they were afraid of leaving home. He had, therefore, paid them a personal visit in order once more to remind them of what he had proposed to them a while ago, namely, that if they would make up their minds, and faithfully promise to provide every ship that arrived with 10 oxen and 10 sheep, which reckoning the number of ships at 30 would amount to 300 cattle and 300 sheep, or 3 oxen and 3 sheep per hut, they would obtain in exchange such merchandize as they might desire. From that moment our protection would be at their service and all their inner paths to and from us would be again opened to them. But if not, their staying where they were, greatly inconvenienced the Company, as their cattle were eating off all the grass, so that the Commander would prefer to see them depart before he left. He further asked them how they could be so foolish as always to suffer this domineering annoyance and anxiety caused them by Oedasoa, as in return for the cattle proposed to be supplied by them, not as tribute, but in exchange for merchandize, our protection was ready for them; whilst for the merchandize so obtained they might barter other and much more cattle from the Chainouquas, their good friends, than they had to supply us with, so that in course of time they would become very much richer than from what they hitherto only obtained by breeding. This pith of the case was clearly represented to them, and having been audibly explained to them by Herry as 'Orator,' the aforesaid chiefs, after some mumbling among themselves, replied

that they would confer with all their elders. They then got up and went into their huts, an old "patriot" preceding each section (leger) and crying out that they were to come together at the hut of Choro, in order to hear and assist in Council in order to decide what could be done under the circumstances, &c. In the meanwhile the Commander was requested to bide awhile outside in the veld. This he did, and waited fully four hours on horseback, after which they made their re-appearance in company of Herry and a large crowd, and once more went to sit before the horses, together with all their chief men about 100 in number. For nearly an hour Herry addressed them one, and then another, calculating the number of cattle that was required, &c. Finally he said, "Commander! To supply the cattle just when ships have arrived, cannot be done without injury to stock breeding. They had, however, agreed among themselves to supply a certain number annually, and accordingly sent out men to collect the quota of each, in order to show the whole to the Commander to see whether that would satisfy him. But as it would be evening before they got the number together, they begged the Commander that he would be pleased, in order not to travel home in the dark, to return and to send to-morrow morning to their camp a Corporal of the Cadets, Pieter Cruythoff, the Company's building master, who was living near them in the country, so that they may be able to approach the Fort along the inner roads with their cattle, in order to show them to the Commander. They also requested that the Mounted guard might be ordered to keep their eye on their camp as long as they were at the Fort. This was allowed, as it was not deemed advantageous to the Company that the Saldanhars should completely overmaster this people, as they are now audacious enough and might become bolder still, so as to dare to keep away from us the Chainouquas, our best customers, and the Caapmen and Gorachouquas, our good friends.

The Governor arrived at the fort about 5 o'clock (p.m.) and saw a Dutch ship under the land, which anchored on the outer roadstead in consequence of the sudden rising of the S.S.E. wind.

To-day we bought a calf and 7 sheep from the Saldanhars, who were entertained as usual.

February 25th.—The S.S.E. wind as strong as ever. In the meanwhile the chiefs of the Caapmen and Gorachouquas arrive at the fort with only 14 cattle and 11 sheep, saying that at present they could not spare any more. They were told that for such a small accommodation, which besides we paid for in merchandize, &c., we could not undertake such a weighty matter as their protection. They replied that they would at intervals bring more. But we told them that we had to depend on their good faith as much as they depended on ours. Finally the animals, a refuse lot, was bartered from them, and matters remained as they were. After they had been well entertained they left, with our request to retire

1662.

from our pasture grounds that our own cattle might not die of hunger. Against this they alleged that they did not dare to do so, as the Saldanhars would attack them. They pressed us hard to make war as their allies against the Saldanhars; but we told them that it was certainly not our intention to commence war with anyone in the world, but to retain the friendship of those whom we already knew, and make further friendship with others whom we might still become acquainted with, so that we will take them under our protection against those who might attempt to injure them on our borders, and that if they only supplied us with more cattle, we would put up with the inconvenience of their using our pastures. On no other condition would we act, as we would rather not interfere with their affairs. Having been treated with brandy and food, they left with our convoy, saying that they wished to have a further conversation with the Commander, who replied that he was at all times ready, whenever it pleased them, and that his only object was to enter into favourable arrangements with them for their own advantage and security, &c.

During the afternoon the aforesaid vessel, the little flute *De Zeeridder* reached the roadstead with rice and other necessities for the Cape. She had left Batavia on the 17th November, 1661, with skipper Jan Foran and junior merchant Johannes Barentsz Van der Veer. She carried 32 men, two of whom had died. In the straits of Sunda she had spoken the *Paerl* and *Klaverskercken*, also 2 English vessels, the one with 36 and the other with 30 guns, both bound to Bantam. On the one was Captain Duttem, who was proceeding to Banda as Governor of Pouloron on behalf of the English; he had with him a certain Vincent Romeyn, who had like Captain Duttem formerly served the Hon. Company as merchant, and had two years ago proceeded home as bookkeeper in the yacht *Erasmus* for the Rotterdam chamber.

From the letters received it appeared that the first squadron of the return fleet would consist of 7 ships. May the Almighty soon bring them safely to this refreshment station.

As she had had a long voyage, so that we may expect the squadron every moment, the skipper was ordered at once to supply himself with water in order to proceed outside to-morrow, or at the furthest, the day after, in order to cruize about for the return fleet with our letters of information, &c. For that purpose she had been sent on in advance in order to be first discharged and then ballasted. But in order not to waste time this cannot now be done, so that she will leave with her full cargo. But whilst she is taking in water, as much rice will be taken out of her by our own vessel as the time will permit.

February 26th.—(Sunday). Lovely weather in the morning. The above work therefore progressed the better.

February 27th.—The same fine weather, so that the *Zeeridder* took in sufficient water to enable her to go out cruizing for the

return fleet, taking with her letters, mentioning the good state of affairs here, &c. Letters addressed to the Admiral and the officers of the fleet, in accordance with copy inserted in the Cape letter book.

February 28th.—Calm, dark, cloudy sky.

March 1st.—Cloudy weather, with a N. breeze, and an attempt of the *Zeeriddertje* to leave.

March 2nd.—Calm weather, with variable breezes. The little vessel finally succeeded in getting outside. May the Almighty enable her soon to meet the fleet and conduct it safely to the roadstead.

To-day the Master Gardener, and expert in garden matters, died after a brief illness. He was named Jacob Huybertsz, of Rosendaal, and left a sorrowing and poor widow with two children behind him, the widow expecting her confinement of the third.

Accordingly, the gardener Harman Gresnich, of Utrecht, who had given good proofs of his abilities in the Company's orchards and other plantations behind Table Mountain, a smart young man, who has been staying here for six years, sober and of careful comportment, was appointed to continue the great work of the aforesaid Rosendaal, with the promise of the required promotion, &c., after having given proper satisfaction, for now that the return fleet from India and the winter ships from home are soon to be here he will be called upon to show his highest masterpiece.

March 3rd.—Very lovely weather, with a W. breeze.

March 4th.—(Full moon). The same weather. This evening a vessel was sighted under the land; very likely the *Zeeridder*.

March 5th.—(Sunday). Fine sunshiny weather, but towards evening it blew very stiffly from the S.S.E. At dusk we saw a sudden fire bursting out of the wreck of the French ship *Mareschal*. To put out the fire a sloop was at once sent thither full of men with fire buckets, &c., but before they arrived there the south easter had so rapidly driven the flames from one end to the other that the whole wreck was one mass of flame, so that it was impossible to approach it, much less to quench the fire. She therefore soon burnt down completely, as it was low water. We do not exactly know how the fire originated. It may be that some Hottentoots had during the night waded up to their middle towards the wreck for the sake of obtaining some iron, and whilst smoking had dropt some sparks somewhere. It is difficult to say how it could have originated otherwise, unless it has been caused by the carpenters who had been on board to-day in order to select some timber for repairing the jetty. Being interrogated they declared that they certainly had had some fire in the wreck, but that they had completely put it out before their departure. However, the wreck is gone and we have lost a great convenience as regards timber. On the other hand, the wreck, which was much in the way, is now so no longer. However, it was not so urgently necessary to get her out of the way considering the convenience of

1662.

now and then obtaining timber from it, whenever required, and removed as economically as possible.

To-day a freeman's boy, named Jan Matthysz, of Geertruydenburgh, died. He had arrived here lately in the *West Vriesland*.

March 6th.—No entry.

March 7th.—A stiff S. wester. Commander Riebeeck went out to inspect affairs in the country and issue the necessary orders. During the afternoon the *Zeeridder* returns in order to find shelter from the severe wind, as she could hardly hold her own outside with her foresail. When towards evening the weather had abated, the skipper landed and made his report. After scarcely a quarter of an hour he received his despatch to go out to sea again, as the fleet may arrive any minute, &c.

March 8th.—Calm weather in the morning with a cloudy sky. About 10 o'clock the *Zeeridderken* leaves for the open sea.

The free Saldanhars also leave in their vessel for Dassen Island with a letter to the Postholders at Robben Island, with strict orders to attend carefully to the signals.

March 9th-11th.—Very lovely calm weather. Towards evening, however, the S. Easter began to blow, a good thing for the return fleet, which having the same wind will be able to depart nicely with it. God grant it His blessing, that it may soon arrive safely. It has remained away somewhat longer than usual, as three days hence it will be a year since the return fleet under the command of the Hon. Frisius left this for home.

This day died Jan Evertsen, of Emmerick, of the ship *Malacca*, who had remained behind here sick.

March 12th.—(Sunday). Fine lovely weather in the morning, but too calm to enable the fleet to get along.

March 13th and 14th.—Same weather. Two vessels seen under the land; the one being towed in, arrived on the roadstead at nightfall; she was the *Phoenix*, commanded by skipper Cornelis Stamper; she had on board the Rear-Admiral of the Fleet, the Hon. Joan van der Laen, and the bookkeeper Gouda. The Hon. Arnold de Vlamingh Van Outshoorn, ordinary Councillor of India was Admiral of the Squadron, which consisted of the *Phoenix*, *Het Wapen van Holland*, on board of which was the Admiral, skipper Marten Doedese, and bookkeeper Vryenbos; the *Prins Willem*, on which was the Vice-Commander Jacob Willemsz: and skipper Adriaen van Leenen with the bookkeeper Jacob de Voocht; the *Princes Royael* on which was the merchant Gilles Nonnemans and skipper Cent Hamers, with the bookkeeper Jan van Schrieck; the *Marsseveen* with skipper Hoen and bookkeeper Denis de Meteren; the *Arnhem* with skipper Pieter Anthonisz: and bookkeeper Pieter Jansz Kermer; and the *Gecroonde Leeuw* on which were the skipper Pool and bookkeeper (?). All had left Batavia in company on the 23rd November, 1661, and only got out of the Straits of Sunda on the

9th January, whilst on the 12th February following they had encountered a severe storm about the latitude of St. Brandan and were thus separated from each other.

March 15th.—Very calm weather. Towards noon a dark mist with a N.W. breeze came up from the sea, which brought in the *Muersseveen* and *Princes Royael*. The look-out men also observed another vessel under the land, and those on Robben Island three more further out at sea. This news was brought us by the free Saldanhars, who, on their way from Dassen Island, had called at Robben Island, and there been informed of it. It is therefore hoped that with God's help, the whole fleet, should the wind be favourable, will be in to-morrow.

March 16th.—Calm in the morning. During the day a Westerly breeze blew, which brought back the *Zeeridder*. As no more than these three vessels have been observed under the land, the report from Robben Island must be erroneous, The *Zeeridder*, therefore, was provided in the afternoon with some water and refreshments and again sent out with a S.S.E. breeze in order to cruize for the Admiral's ship, and the others.

March 17th.—Calm weather in the morning.

March 18th.—Same weather. Nothing important occurred.

March 19th.—(Sunday). Calm warm weather as above.

March 20th.—(New moon). Same weather.

March 21st.—Calm misty weather in the morning. During the day a westerly breeze.

March 22nd.—Clear weather, with a heavy S. Easter, which went down towards evening.

March 23rd.—Lovely weather, with a W. breeze, with which the *Zeeridderken* again returns, with the report that she had observed nothing, but that her cargo of rice had been much damaged in the last S.E. gale, having had 17 inches of water in the hold. The skipper declared that with the least wind he was obliged to make for the roadstead, fearing to drift away, for when large ships could still carry their sails, he had to lay to, in consequence of the heavy cargo of rice on board. It was accordingly decided at once to land the rice, and to ballast the vessel with stone in order to make her more fit for a cruize.

March 24th.—Fine weather, with a W. breeze.

March 25th.—Very stiff S.S.E. winds.

March 26th.—(Sunday). N.W. breezes during the morning, with hard S. Easters during the night.

March 27th.—A cloudy, changing atmosphere. During the night heavy S.S. Easters.

March 28th.—The same S.S.E. wind continuing during the night.

March 29th.—Fine weather. As the Admiral (Vlamingh) and the other four vessels are not yet putting in an appearance, Commander van Riebeeck and Mr. van der Laen were out again, and

1662.

the latter was shown more fully the whole establishment at the Cape, in order to be able to report on the same to the Directors after his arrival home, should it happen, which God forbid, that the Admiral does not arrive, &c.

About 3 o'clock in the afternoon it began to thunder and rain, the first that fell after four months, and therefore very welcome to the plantations everywhere.

March 30th.—Very lovely clear weather in the morning.

March 31st.—Same weather.

April 1st.—Dark cloudy weather in the morning with a westerly breeze and rain. Two vessels seen under the land. The calm prevented them from coming in.

April 2nd.—(Palm Sunday). Hazy rainy weather in the morning. With a W. breeze the two vessels reach the roadstead. They were the yacht *Angelier* and the flute *Oijevaer* of the 2nd squadron. They had left Batavia on the 30th January last, under the command of the Hon. Zacharias Wagenaer, appointed as successor to Commander Van Riebeeck at the Cape, according to the letters of their Honours and the Commission issued by them. He was this day escorted on shore and welcomed with the proper solemnity.

April 3rd.—Very good weather. Mr. Van der Laen communicated to us that in the broad Council of the 3 first and 2 last mentioned returned ships, it had been decided to wait for the Hon. Vlamingh until the 10th instant, and should he not arrive before that date to proceed home together under the command of the Hon. v.d.Laen, calling at St. Helena to see whether Admiral de Vlamingh and the other four vessels of the first squadron might not be lying there.

April 4th.—Fine weather. Commander Riebeeck and the Hon. Commanders v.d.Laen and Zacharias Wagenaer rode out, in order to show his successor the establishment, that he may soon take it over, as well as to enable Mr. v.d.Laen to report to the Directors on one thing and another, should it happen, which God forbid, that Admiral de Vlamingh does not arrive, &c.

April 5th.—Fine calm weather.

April 6th.—The same. This day we bartered 38 sheep and one cow from the Saldanhars.

April 7th.—Calm weather, with slight rain. Obtained 28 sheep, 4 cattle and 1 calf from the Saldanhars.

April 8th.—Fine weather; bartered one cow and 9 sheep from the same.

April 9th.—(Easterday). Fine weather. The return ships very busy taking their refreshments on board. This day died Jacob Jantz, of Antwerpen, a soldier.

April 10th.—Fine weather. The five return ships leave, viz: the *Maerseveen*, *Princes Royael*, *Phoenix*, *Angelier* and the flute *Oijevaer*, under the Command of the Rear-Admiral, the Hon. v.d. Laen, intending to call at St. Helena for the purpose above men-

tioned; they urged very much that the *Zeeridderken* should accompany them for the reasons stated below.

1662.

Monday, the 10th April, 1662.

"As Rear-Admiral Van der Laen and the vessels under him are ready to leave, he proposes that the little flute the *Zeeridder* should accompany them as far as St. Helena, in order to inform us whether the Hon. Admiral Arnold de Vlamingh and the valuable return ships, *Het Wapen van Hollant*, *Prins Willem*, *Arnhem* and *Gecroonde Leeuw*, had perhaps called there, that we may be able to send the news to Batavia. And in case nothing is heard of them at that Island, and we must accordingly conclude that they are still behind, perhaps at Madagascar or Mauritius in order to undergo repairs, to consider whether the *Zeeridder* should not proceed to Batavia *via* those two places, and there report the result of the search. The matter having been considered, it was agreed to. Mr. v.d.Laen accordingly at once ordered that 15 leaguers of water should be put into her for ballast, that she may be able to leave with him this evening.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope,' on the day and in the year as above."

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
Z. WAGENAER,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
PIETER EVERARD,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary.

April 11th.—Fine weather continuing. The flute *Oijevaer* becalmed near the shore; the *Zeeridder* was towed out of the bay. Bartered 7 cattle and 9 sheep.

April 12th.—Fine weather.

April 13th.—Rainy weather in the morning, with a W. breeze.

April 14th.—Rain and heavy winds.

April 15th.—Cool dry S. easterly weather in the morning.

"Saturday, the 15th April, 1662.

The following persons having expressed their willingness to remain in the service, and accordingly requested promotion, some because their time had expired, and others for other reasons, the Council decided as follows:—

Jochem Blank, of Lubecq, who arrived here in 1655 in the *Salamander* as cadet at f10 per month, and was afterwards appointed dispenser at f24 in order to take charge of the Warehouse, &c., of the Company, having proved his ability and given satisfaction, whilst he had also kept the pay books under the supervision of the junior merchant *Sieur Roeloff de Man*, is at his request promoted, without increase of pay to the rank of first assistant, provided that he serves out his time.

Harman Ernst van Eresingh, of Utrecht, who arrived here in 1656 in the *Parel* as gardener, at f11 per month, increased afterwards to f12, and who, since the death of the late master gardener, Jacob Huybertsz, of Rosendael, has been in charge of the Company's gardens, and the supply of the produce to the ships, having shown his ability, and given satisfaction on various occasions during his stay here, is at his request confirmed in his appointment with the full pay of f25 per month, for which the first gardener, Hendrik Boom, had been engaged by the Directors, provided that he serves for three years longer.

Nicolaas Delbort, of Arien, who arrived here in the *Henriette Louise* as soldier at f9, and has since, on account of his good knowledge of mason work, been employed as assistant mason, so that in March, 1660, his pay was increased to f13, and who further, since the departure of the master mason, has satisfactorily filled the vacancy, is at his request confirmed in his present appointment with f20 per month, provided that he serves 2 years longer.

Christiaan Jansz, of Hoesum, who arrived here on the 9th July, 1654, in the *Goutsbloem* as soldier at f9, which was afterwards increased to f12, as superintendent of the Company's stables, in which he has given great satisfaction, and as the Company's horses are beginning to multiply, which makes his work heavier, and he has taken good care of the breeding stock, and is well versed in training horses and everything connected with the stables, is at his request appointed stable master with a salary of f15 per month, provided that he serves out his time.

Jaspar de Boye, of Bruges, arquebusier, who arrived here in 1659 in the *Hoogelande* at f10, and was afterwards appointed wagonmaker's assistant at f12, who has hitherto done his duty well, is at his request appointed as wagonmaker at f15, provided that he serves 2 years longer.

Jan Jansz, of Arnhem, soldier, who arrived here in 1660 in *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* at f9 per month, and who has since been mostly employed as miller in the Company's water corn mill, in which he gave good satisfaction, is, on account of the heavy work of carrying the bags up and down, and the consequent wear and tear of his clothes, &c., at his request allowed the sum of f14 per month provided that he serves out his time as miller.

Pieter Tobijas, of Harlingen, boatman, who arrived here in 1659 in the *Princes Royael* at f8, and has since been employed in the Company's garden as assistant, in which he has given good satisfaction, is confirmed in his appointment at f14 per month, provided that he serves three years longer after the 22nd of March, 1662.

Johannes van Asschen, of Brussels, cadet, who arrived here in the *Gecroonde Leeuw* in 1659 at f10, and is at present employed as cooper, is appointed assistant cooper at f13 per month.

Adriaen Pietersz, of Groningen, boatswain, who arrived here in the *Paerl* in 1661 at f10, and has since been employed as mason, is at his request accepted as mason, at f12.

Frans de Coninck, of Ghent, soldier, who arrived here in the *Leerdam* in 1659 at f9, and has since been employed as mason, is at his request accepted as mason, at f12.

Laurensz Jansz, of Delft, soldier, who arrived here in the *Venenburch* in 1657 at f9, and has since conducted himself satisfactorily, is at his request promoted to the rank of 'Adelborst' at f10, provided that he serves another year after the expiration of his present contract.

Cornelis Willemsz, of Lienen, 'Adelborst,' who arrived here in 1659 in the *Orangie* at f10, and has since acted as provisional corporal, is at his request confirmed as such with f14 per month.

Jan Jansz, of Munster, 'Adelborst,' who arrived here in 1659, in the *Hector*, at f10, and has since been mostly employed in the stables, in order daily to mow grass for the horses, and drive the manure carts to the Company's gardens and wherever necessary, is, because the work is rather hard, granted f12 per month.

Thus done and resolved in the Fort 'the Good Hope' on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
Z. WAGENAER,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
HENDRICK LACUS, Secretary."

April 16th.—Calm, fine, lovely weather.

April 17th.—Thick drizzling rain in the morning, with a stiff N.W. wind out of the sea.

This day died the drummer, named Huybert Roothoff, of Sluys, in Flanders.

To-day the first two ripe Dutch apples were plucked in the Company's nursery orchard, from a small tree not higher than 5 feet; they are known as 'wine apples,' the one weighed between 11 and 12 half ounces (loot) and the other not a grain more. They had grown close to each other and had come to full growth. Many of the medlars on the different trees are also nearly ripe.

April 18th.—(New moon). Fairly good weather, but with rather a cold breeze from the N.W.

April 19th.—Lovely cloudy weather, with variable breezes. The Hon. Zacharias Wagenaer, accompanied by Fiscal Gabbema, proceeds to Robben Island in the sailing sloop, the *Muskytjen*, in order to inspect the establishment, &c., there.

April 20th.—Lovely clear weather, with a W. breeze. Mr. Wagenaer returns during the forenoon, having found on the island 170 beautifully fat sheep, four goats and about 300 pigs, who are finding their own living and thriving well there. He also thinks that the island is suitable for both classes of animals, and large enough to let them breed there.

A ship was seen under the land, and 3 cattle and 10 sheep were bartered from the Saldanhars.

1662.

April 21st.—Light W. breezes. Arrival of the vessel during the afternoon. She was the yacht *Calff*, commanded by skipper Gerbrant Sterckman, and carried 100 men. One had died. The rest were all hale and hearty. She had left Texel on the 9th January last, with the *Venenburgh*, *Amstellant*, & *Veldhoen*, *De Nagelboom* and *Bunschoten*, from which she had parted in the N. sea, having run into Zealand. On the 26th January, she had again left, in company of the *Walcheren* and *Het Hoff van Zeelant*.

April 22nd.—A N.W. breeze. Arrival of the flute *Bunschoten*, of Euckhuysen, with skipper Aelbert Croll and bookkeeper Hero Vesterman, and 51 men. No dead. All well. Also of the ship *Mars*, of Rotterdam, with skipper Jacob Boom, junior merchant Jacobus van Nes, and 189 men. One fell overboard. Had left Goeree on the 25th January, and called nowhere. Also of the flute *Venenburgh*, of Amsterdam, with skipper Eldert Jansz, of Amsterdam, bookkeeper Marcelis Boevius and 158 men, of whom 5 had died and one been drowned. She brought 28 sick. The rest were fairly well. She had left the Texel on the 9th January last, and called nowhere.

April 23rd.—(Sunday). Dark, cloudy sky, with a N.W. breeze.

April 24th.—The same weather, with a N.W. breeze.

April 25th.—Dry weather, with a stiff S.S. Easter. A ship appeared before the bay, but could not come in.

April 26th.—Calm, clear weather in the morning. Another ship in sight, which being becalmed, could not reach the bay.

April 27th.—Cloudy, rainy, calm weather in the morning. The flute *Amstellant* was towed in, commanded by skipper Meyndert Harmans. She had left Texel on the 9th January, with 154 men, 8 of whom had died, among them the junior merchant Dirck Van Wyngaerden. The rest were fairly well. She had called nowhere.

The *Calff* left this day for Batavia, as well as the flute *Bunschoten*, taking our letters and papers.

During the evening the flute *Peperbael* arrived.

April 28th.—This morning skipper Vincent de Lange and book-keeper Levinus van Harpe landed and stated that they had left Goeree on the 25th January last, with 175 men, of whom they had lost none. The men were all well.

Arrival this morning of the ship *Nagelboom*, of Hoorn, under skipper Jacob Claesz Coper and junior merchant Cornelis Portier. She had left the Texel on the 9th January last, with 249 men, of whom 7 had died, among them Rev. Olij. The rest were fairly well.

April 29th.—Fine weather.

April 30th.—(Sunday). The same weather. The Holy Sacrament was administered on shore by the Rev. Petrus Sibelius, a passenger on the *Amstellant*. The thanksgiving service in the afternoon was conducted by the Rev. Henricus Walleus, passenger on the *Peperbael*. Since yesterday the Rev. Slippert, passenger

on the *Venenburch*, has been very ill, otherwise he would have administered the Sacrament.

May 1st.—Cloudy sky, with a W. breeze.

May 2nd.—The same weather. The following Resolution was adopted:—

Tuesday, the 2nd May, 1661.

“Whereas Our Lords the Committee of Directors within the Hague have written to, and ordered us in their despatch of the 30th November, 1661, to land, in addition to our ordinary garrison, one hundred, or one hundred and fifty soldiers, and not to mind 20 or 25 more or less, &c.

And whereas the Lords Directors of the Amsterdam Chamber, in their letters of the 6th December, 1661, have deemed that the soldiers to be landed according to orders shall be of the strongest and most experienced, and among them some of the best officers, for the reasons adduced by them; and whereas for such a large number of men it follows that a military officer is required of higher rank than the Sergeant at present commanding the few military here—it was decided to appoint as Commanding Officer of the present re-inforced heavy garrison, the Ensign François Tulleken, with two Sergeants and as many Corporals as may be found necessary; and in order to invest the said Tulleken with greater authority over so many soldiers, it was further decided at his pressing request, and because it was urgently advised, to grant him the rank of provisional lieutenant, without increase of pay, and that until the Directors shall issue further orders regarding the military; and as regards the Sergeant before mentioned, because of his good services rendered at the Cape, as well as to encourage him somewhat, and for necessity's sake, &c., to appoint him in addition to his present rank, as cavalry sergeant, according to the documents mentioned below.

In accordance with orders lately received from our Directors, to land a large number of soldiers from the ships for strengthening the garrison here, as well as to appoint suitable officers over them, we have in the first place, and until further orders, ordered François Tullekens to join the garrison here. On the 27th April, this year he arrived here in the flute *Amstelant*, with the rank of Ensign. He is henceforth to be employed as chief commander of the military. But as he preferred to proceed to India, instead of remaining here, on condition that his further promotion, based on influential recommendation, might not be lost to him there, we have, with that view, as well as at his earnest request, granted him the rank of provisional lieutenant, without increase of pay, subject to the approval of the Directors in the Fatherland, or their Honours at Batavia

And whereas Pieter Everaerd, of Cruijbaert, at present sergeant, and for a long while the only Commander of the military here, has

1662.

requested us, that in consequence of the promotion of Ensign Tulleken to the rank of provisional lieutenant, he might be promoted provisionally to the vacant rank of ensign, and whereas for reasons we have not been able to grant his request, it was decided to appoint him in addition to his present rank, because of his vigilance and courage displayed on various occasions, as cavalry sergeant, with an increase of pay from 20 to 25 guildens per month reckoned from to-day; provided that he serves out the time of his contract, and faithfully assists the aforesaid lieutenant as his adjunct.

Thus done and resolved in the fort the 'Good Hope' on the day and in the year as above.

(Signed) JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
Z. WAGENAER,
ROELOFF DE MAN,
ABRAHAM GABBEMA,
HENDRIK LACUS, Secretary.

May 3rd.—Fine W. wind and rain.

May 4th.—Stronger W. breezes preventing the ships from leaving, and the commander (Riebeeck) from getting his luggage on board, as he is about to leave.

May 5th.—Westerly and N. Westerly breezes, with showers. This morning the flute *Venenburch* left, and about noon reached the open sea, in order to continue her voyage to Batavia. God grant her His blessing.

May 6th.—Westerly and N. Westerly winds. Fine weather. At noon the Hon. Zacharias Wagenaer was in proper form introduced to all the people here as commander; his commission granted him by the Hon. Governor-General and Councillors of India was read by the Secretary from the balcony (puye), after which he was unanimously accepted and acknowledged as Commander in the place of the Hon. Van Riebeeck. God grant him happiness and prosperity in his government now begun.

Ensign François Tulleken was likewise introduced in the presence of all the military stationed here as their Chief Commander and the rank of Lieutenant conferred on him. As his 'Secunde,' Pieter Everaert was appointed with the rank of Cavalry Sergeant.

May 7th.—(Sunday). Wind and weather as yesterday, with rain until the afternoon, when it began to clear up, and the Hon. Commander Johan van Riebeeck, with his wife and family, embarked on board the ship *Mars*, in order to proceed in her to Batavia. The said Commander was properly escorted by ourselves as well as the burghers, &c.

May 8th.—S.E. breezes. During the past night with moonlight, the ship *Mars* with 154 men, and *Amstelland* with 118, sailed away to Batavia. This morning the flute *Peperbael* also left and

reached the open sea about noon. The *Nagelboom* encountered an adverse breeze and was obliged to remain.

1662.
—

Towards evening the wife of the free inkeeper, Hendrick van Zeurwaerde, was confined of a son and daughter.

Here ends Commander van Riebeeck's Journal.

APPENDIX.

SHIPS' ARRIVALS.

1652-1662.

- | | | | |
|-------|------|---|------------|
| April | 6.— | The <i>Drommedaris</i> and <i>Goede Hoop</i> , with Commander Johan van Riebeeck on board, the first-named vessel commanded by David de Coninck, the latter commanded by Symen Turver. All from Texel on the 24th December, 1651. | 1652.
— |
| April | 7.— | The <i>Reyger</i> , commanded by Skipper Jan Jansz Hooghsaet. Consort of the above. | |
| April | 15.— | The <i>Salamander</i> , Skipper Jan Ysbrantszen, from Batavia the 25th January, 1652. Hon. D. Snoeck on board. | |
| May | 7.— | The <i>Walvisch</i> , with 45 dead; <i>Oliphant</i> , with 85 dead; both full of sick; from Texel on the 3rd January. | |
| May | 25.— | The ship 't <i>Hoff van Zeelandt</i> , Skipper Jan Overstraten, from Zealand on the 31st January; 37 dead. | |

1653.

- | | | | |
|-------|------|---|------------|
| Jan. | 18.— | The galiot <i>Zwarte Vos</i> , from Texel on the 4th September, 1652, <i>viâ</i> N. Brazils, Skipper Teunis Eyssen. | 1653.
— |
| Mar. | 2.— | The ship <i>Het Hof van Zeeland</i> , with Vice-Admiral Junius on board; the ship <i>Walvisch</i> ; the ship <i>Parel</i> , with Gerard Demmer, late Governor of Amboina, on board (Admiral of the Fleet); the ship <i>Malacca</i> —all from India—part of return fleet; the ship <i>Princesse Royale</i> , from India. | |
| Mar. | 26.— | The yacht <i>Haas</i> , Skipper Joris Jansz Somer, from Texel on the 28th September, 1652. | |
| April | 12.— | The yacht <i>Windhond</i> , from Patria 21st October, 1652. | |
| April | 18.— | The yacht <i>Muyden</i> , Skipper Evert Teunis Harnay, from Texel on the 26th December, 1652; 6 or 7 dead. | |
| April | 19.— | The return ship <i>Oliphant</i> , from Batavia the 2nd February, 1653; the Hon. Frisius on board | |
| April | 22.— | The return ship <i>Proventie</i> , consort of the <i>Oliphant</i> , from Batavia 2nd February, 1653. | |
| May | 1.— | The return ship <i>Euckhuysen</i> , from Batavia. | |
| June | 2.— | The yacht <i>De Roode Vos</i> , from Texel 19th September, 1652, Skipper Elbert Cornelisz Kes; skipper and chief mate dead on the voyage. | |
| Aug. | 5.— | The ship <i>Zalmander</i> , from Texel the 10th April, 1653; a few sick. | |

1653. — Aug. 16.—The ship *De Vogel Phoenix*, from Texel the 10th April, 1653; a few sick.
 Aug. 29.—The flute *De Koning David*, from Texel 10th April, 1653.
 Oct. 10.—French ship in Saldanha Bay; had been there six months, and came from Rotterdam or Rochelle; owners partly Dutch, partly French. A Huguenot trading vessel sent out to kill seals and burn oil.
 Dec. 21.—The ship *Naarden*, from Amsterdam 23rd August; many sick of scurvy.
 Dec. 22.—The ship *Breda*, of Hoorn, from the Vlie 9th September; many scurvy patients.
 Dec. 22.—The flute *Het Lam*, of Amsterdam, from the Vlie 23rd August; many scurvy patients.

1654.

1654. — Jan. 5.—The ship *Vrede*, from the Vlie 23rd August, 1653, Skipper Cornelis Noortstrant; about 60 sick in bed, and many scurvy patients.
 Feb. 9.—The pinnance *Het Kalf*, of Amsterdam, from the Vlie 23rd August, 1653; 20 sick.
 Feb. 15.—The ship *Draak*, from Amsterdam 23rd August, 1653; full of sick and scurvy patients; more than 20 dead.
 April 18.—The galiot *Tulp*, from Texel 23rd December, 1653.
 June 11.—The galiot *Tulp*, from St. Helena 20th May, 1654.
 July 8.—A small English vessel, *The Merchant*, captured by the *Goudsbloem* at St. Vincent on the 15th April, 1654; renamed *De Caap Vogel*; Skipper Pieter Martensz Abbe Kerk.
 July 9.—The yacht *Goudsbloem*, Skipper Symon, from Holland 28th January, 1654; with supplies for the Cape; 30 dead.
 July 17.—The yacht *Haas*, from Batavia 7th March, 1654; with supplies for the Cape.
 July 23.—The galiot *Boterbloem*, consort of *Goudsbloem*, from Holland, 28th January, 1654.
 Aug. 13.—The yacht *Angelier*, of Hoorn, from Holland 26th April, 1654; many sick.
 Aug. 15.—The yacht *Vlieland*, from Texel 19th May, 1654.
 Aug. 16.—The ship *Parel*, from Holland 26th April, 1654.
 Aug. 25.—The galiot *Roope Vos*, from Mauritius.
 Aug. 30.—The ship *Henriette Louise*, of Zealand, from the Wierling 22nd April, 1654, Skipper Hendrik van der Putte; full of sick and scurvy patients.
 Aug. 31.—The ship *Dolphyn*, from the Vlie 26th May, 1654, Skipper Cornelis van Groot; 3 or 4 sick on board.

- Sept. 21.—The yacht *Gideon*, from the Vlie 26th May, 1654 ; 1656.
some sick on board. —
- Oct. 24.—The ship *De Zwarte Bul*, of Zealand, from the Vlie
30th May, 1654 ; more than 100 sick, including
skipper and officers ; many died whilst being
brought on shore ; a most deplorable sight ; not
one on board able to move a rope.
- Oct. 29.—The ship *Walvisch*, from the Vlie 30th May, 1654 ;
about 100 sick on board.
- Dec. 1.—The ship *Het Hoff van Zeelant*, of Amsterdam, from
the Vlie 6th August, 1654 ; 4 dead and about 30
sick.
- Dec. 12.—The galiot *Tulp*, from Madagascar 26th October, 1654.
- Dec. 18–19.—The English ship *East India Merchant*, Capt. Anthony
Nyport ; many sick on board, provided readily
with water and refreshments ; from Europe, with
introductory letter from the 17, stating that
hostilities had ceased between England and the
States, and the bearers were to be treated as good
friends.

1655.

- Jan. 9.—The ship *De Gekroonde Leeuw*, of Enckhuysen, Skipper
Schram, from Holland July, 1654 ; 50 dead and
100 sick. Chief merchant Pieter de Goyer on
board. 1655.
—
- Jan. 19.—The ship (return) *Draak*, from Batavia 7th November ;
cargo—sugar, pepper and sappan wood, valued at
ƒ379,034.19.11.
- Jan. 24.—The yacht (return ship) *Ter Schelling*, from Batavia
7th November, 1654.
- Jan. 29.—The ship *Muyen*, having on board Commander Hubert
Lairesse as Admiral, from Batavia ; all well on
board.
- Feb. 19.—The ship *Malacca*, from Holland 20th October, 1654 ;
a few sick on board, 4 dead.
- Feb. 21.—The ship *Olipbant*, from Holland 6th August, 1654 ;
some scurvy patients on board, 16 dead.
- Feb. 22.—The ship *Het Wapen van Holland*, from the Vlie 6th
August, 1654 ; a few sick, 2 dead.
- Mar. 5.—An unknown vessel, supposed to be a Frenchman,
observed by those on Dassen Island ; had come
from Madagascar.
- Mar. 18.—The ship *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, from the Vlie
the 20th October, 1654 ; 7 dead and 3 or 4 sick,
and some scurvy patients.
- Mar. 18.—The yacht *Domburg*, of Zealand, from the Wieling the
20th November, 1654 ; 2 dead, no sick.

1655. April 2.—The yacht *Koukerken*, from Zealand 10th December, 1654; 2 dead and no sick, but scurvy commencing.
- April 3.—The ship *Provintie*, from Zealand 18th November, 1654, with Hon. Sterthenius, Councillor of India, on board; 7 dead and fairly healthy crew.
- April 3.—The ship *Phanix*, from Texel 10th December, 1654; with 5 dead.
- April 3.—The yacht *Bloemendaal*, from Texel 4th December, 1654; 8 dead.
- April 3.—The ship *Koning David*, from Texel 7th December, 1654; no dead.
- April 3.—The ship *De Maagd van Enkhuysen*, from Texel 7th December, 1654; no dead.
- N.B.—All these vessels had very few sick on board and only some suffering from scurvy.
- April 9.—The yacht *De Cabeljau*, from Batavia 11th February, 1655; with provisions for the Cape and Mauritius.
- April 10.—The galiot *De Tulp*, from St. Helena 10th March.
- April 11.—The yacht *De Goes*, from Zealand 10th January last; healthy crew.
- April 12.—The ship *Prins Willem*, from Zealand 1st January last; 3 dead, crew healthy.
- April 21.—The return ships *De Parel*, *Tertolen*, *Princesse Royaal*, *Dordrecht*, *Gideon*, *Louise*, *Dolphyn*, all from Batavia on the 28th January, 1655, under the flag of the Hon. Ryckloff van Goens, Councillor Extraordinary of India.
- June 24.—The yacht *De Prins te Paard* from Batavia 1st April, 1655; 2 dead and many sick; short of water; Skipper Pieter Jonasz.
- July 8.—The yacht *De Tulp*, from St. Helena 11th June.
- July 18.—The ship *De Avondstar*, Skipper Jacob Claasz Bruyningh, from Texel 13th March; 137 men, 1 dead, no sick.
- July 22.—The ship *De Leeuwin*, of Delft, Skipper Jan Lucasz Meeuwen, from Goeree 31st March; 190 men, 1 dead, no sick.
- Aug. 24.—The ship *Nieuw Rotterdam*, Skipper Pieter Gerritz, from Goeree the 17th May; 307 men, 2 dead, a few scurvy cases.
- Sept. 11.—The little sloop *De Robbejacht* launched.
- Oct. 20.—The yacht *Nachtglas* of Amsterdam, from Texel 10th July, Skipper Jan Jacobsz.
- Oct. 21.—The ship *Arnhem*, from Texel 10th July; 6 dead, 60 sick.
- Oct. 27.—The English ship *de Liefde*, Capt. Elias Gordon (deceased); 40 dead. Acting Skipper Robert Tendel, from Mauritius; 60 men on board.

- Nov. 4.—The ship *Salamander*, of Delft, Skipper Claas Jansz Walingh, with the Hon. Herpers on board, from Texel 10th July; a few sick. 1655.
—
- Nov. 9.—The ship *Amersfoort*, Skipper Hendrik Grotenhuis, the Hon. Kemp on board, many sick, from Texel 10th July.
- Nov. 10.—The ship *Honningen* of Rotterdam, from Goeree 20th July; 1 dead, some sick.
- Nov. 16.—The ship *West Vriesland*, of Hoorn, Skipper Pieter Cornelisz Puyt, from the Vlie the 10th June; 290 men, 5 dead, 2 or 3 sick. The Hon. Frisius on board.
- Dec. 12.—The English ship *John Anthamis* or *John the Baptist*, of about 100 lasts, Capt. Thos. Poth, from London 24th April; 10 dead, 40 on board. Mostly all suffering from scurvy.

1656.

- Jan. 27.—The galiot *Nachtglas* from Tristan d'Acunha. 1656.
—
- Jan. 29.—A small English vessel, the *Ariosa* or *Star*, at Dassen Island, Capt. Stanjard, from London 20th March, 1655, bound to Bantam; arrives in Table Bay February 2nd, 1656.
- Feb. 8.—French ship *St. George*, from Madagascar. Captain killed by the natives there. Left Madagascar 19th Jan. Ship was 200 lasts large and had left Nantes on the 3rd March, 1654.
- March 1.—The yacht *Muyden*, from Texel 4th October, 1655; 2 dead, crew fairly well.
- March 5.—The yacht *Weesp*, from Texel 4th October, 1655; 2 dead, crew well.
- March 5.—The flute *Breuckel*, from Texel 4th October, 1655; all well on board.
- March 9.—The yacht *Draak*, from Texel 4th October, 1655; 2 men overboard.
- March 9.—The yacht *Zeepaard*, of Zealand, 22nd November, from Holland; 2 men dead, 185 men on board, mostly all well.
- March 10.—The ship *Dolphyn*, from Texel 21st November, 1655; 213 men on board, 1 dead, crew fairly well.
- March 11.—The ship *Hercules*, from Texel 10th December, 1655; 15 dead, 236 men on board, all fairly well.
- March 11.—The ship *Brouwershaven*, from Zealand 22nd November, 1655; 197 men on board, 2 dead, crew fairly healthy.
- March 12.—The ship *Achilles*, from Texel 10th December, 1655; 1 dead, 122 on board, all well.

1665. — March 13.—The yacht *Maersen*, from Texel 4th October, 1655; 75 men on board, all fairly well.
- March 15.—The return fleet under the Hon. Jasper van den Bogaerde, Extraordinary Councillor of India, &c.:—(1) *The Provincie*, (2) *Malacca*, (3) *Phenir*, (4) *'t Hoff van Zeeland*, (5) *Walvisch*, (6) *De Gekroonde Leeuw*.
- March 16.—The yacht *Zeehond*, from Zealand 22nd November; 105 men on board, all fairly well.
- March 19.—The ship *Ter Schelling*, from Zealand 10th December, 1655; 2 men dead, 198 on board, a few sick.
- March 25.—*La Ducesse*, Admiral's ship, Capt. La Roche St. Andries, 400 men, 40 pieces.
- March 25.—*La Marichal*, Vice-Admiral's ship, Capt. Mons. Colon, 300 men, 36 pieces.
- March 25.—*Lerman*, Capt. Richemond, 200 men, 30 pieces.
- March 25.—*St. Joris*, Capt. Labriante, 100 men, 20 pieces, from Nantes to Madagascar to colonize there.
- March 31.—The ship *Hector*, from Holland 5th December, 1655; 3 dead, 242 on board fairly well.
- April 11.—The ships *Oranje*, *Elephant*, *Enckhuysen*, of Amsterdam, *Nieuw Rotterdam*, of Rotterdam, all left Batavia the 3rd February last under command of the Hon. Sarcerius.
- April 11.—The yacht *Nachtglas* put back.
- April 15.—The yacht *Tertolen*, from Zealand 6th January; 1 dead, 169 on board, 4 sick.
- June 3.—A small English ship *The Good Will*, from Masulipatnam 26th January, Capt. Stephen Witchell, cargo, saltpetre and calico.
- July 5.—The galiot *Nachtglas*, from St. Helena 1st June.
- Aug. 3.—The ship *Henriette Louise*, from Zealand 8th April; 273 men on board, 1 dead, some scurvy patients; Skipper Cent Amers.
- Aug. 6.—The ship *Parel*, from Texel 11th April; 3 dead, some scurvy patients; Skipper Pieter Jonassen.
- Sept. 11.—The flute *De Wacckende Boey*, 40 men, from Texel 11th April; a few scurvy patients.
- Sept. 14.—The flute *Zeeridder*, of Zealand, from Zealand 11th May, Skipper Jan Leendersz Roseam; 64 men, 8 scurvy patients.
- Sept. 15.—The galiot *Emlo*, of Enckhuysen, Skipper Frans Hendriksen van Straten, from the Vlie 1st May; 19 men, some sick.
- Sept. 21.—The ship *Prinsesse Royaal*, of Amsterdam, Skipper Reynout Engelbrechts, from the Texel 31st May; 356 men, some sick.

- Sept. 30.—The English ship (small) *De Egel* (*Wcasel*), Capt. William Harwy, from Gravesend 10/20th April; 28 men, all sick of scurvy excepting 4 or 5. 1656.
—
- Oct. 3.—The English ship *Olivebranch*, Capt. John Bramton, from Dover 3/13th June; 42 men on board, 4 or 5 men sick; bound to Bantam.
- Oct. 17.—The ship *Breda*, of Hoorn, Skipper Albert Jansz Conyn, from the Vlie 1st June. Lost 40 men at the line from the pest. 30 or 40 still in bed; had 250 men on board, only 210 now.
- Oct. 31.—The flute *Ulysses*, of Amsterdam, from the Vlie 1st June; 30 men, 1 dead, 4 or 5 scurvy patients. Skipper Jan Thymonsz.
- Nov. 9.—The flute *Meulen*, of Hoorn, Skipper Jacob Stevensz Molenwerf, from the Vlie 1st June; 36 men, 2 dead, mostly all suffering from scurvy.
- Nov. 10.—The flute *Postilion* (English), of London, from Plymouth 28th June; 60 lasts; bound for Bantam; Skipper John Kingsman; 30 or 40 men on board, two sick.
- Nov. 26.—The flute *Wachter*, Skipper Evert, from Texel 11th April; 40 men, no dead or sick, a few slightly suffering from scurvy.
- Dec. 3.—The flute *Vogelsangh*, of Amsterdam, Skipper Robert Ram; from Texel 27th June; 208 men, 8 dead, many scurvy patients.

1657.

- Feb. 5.—The flute *Hilversum*, from the Vlie 19th October, 1656; 54 men; Skipper Jacob Jansz; all well. 1657.
—
- Feb. 21.—The return ships *Prins Willem*, *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, *West Vriesland*, *Amersfoort*, *Dordrecht*, from Batavia, 4th December, 1656; Admiral the Hon. Matthys Crab, Vice-Admiral Pieter Hackius, Rear-Admiral Pieter Kemp; cargo valued at cost price, fl,402,869.8.2; brought also some supplies for the Cape valued at fl,152.4.
- Mar. 16.—The ship *Oranje*, with Hon. R. v. Goens on board, from the Vlie 22nd November, 1656; 403 men, 3 dead, 2 drowned, 30 sick.
- Mar. 18.—The ship *Malacca*, from the Vlie 22nd Nov., 1656; 3 dead, a few sick.
- Mar. 31.—The French ship *La Marichal*, from Madagascar, Admiral de Laros, 170 men; had lost 400 men on that island because of its unhealthy climate. Had on board 4 men of the galiot *Tulp*, lost in a hurricane during the night of the 2nd Dec., 1655, at the river Calamboelo. All the men had been saved, but excepting 11, all had died of

1657.

- sickness, including the Junior Merchant Frederik Verburg, the Skipper Cornelis Jansz van Holstein and Assistant Cornelis van Heyningen.
- April 4.—The ship *De Vogel Phoenix*, of Delft, from Goeree 25th December, Skipper Cornelis Stamper; 312 men, 3 dead.
- April 19.—The flute *De Vincq*, of Zealand, left Holland 24th December, 1656; 76 men, 6 dead, including Skipper Jan Bartelsz; all suffering from scurvy.
- April 21.—Small English vessel *De Goudsbloem*, from Batavia 1st Jan.; cargo, pepper and cloth; 40 men; Captain Rogier Andries.
- April 21.—The flute *Venenburgh*, of Amsterdam, Skipper Hendrik Juriaenszen, 245 men; from the Vlie 24th December, 1657; 2 dead, crew fairly well.
- May 2.—The flute *Oyecaar*, Skipper Jacob Doorn, from Zealand 24th December, 1656; 219 men, 11 dead, 2 drowned; mostly all suffering from scurvy.
- May 5.—The ship *De Gekroonde Leeuw*, from the Vlie 24th December, 1656; 22 dead, 357 on board, all fairly well; Skipper Pirek Cornelisz Haen.
- May 9.—The English ship *Mayflower*, from the coast of Coromandel the 29th January, old style; 50 men on board; bound for London; Captain William White (deceased); his son in command.
- May 23.—The ship *Henriette Louise*, from Batavia 4th February; the Hon. Volquerius Westerwoldt on board as Admiral.
- June 13.—The English ship *Welcome*, Captain W. Hardgrave, 55 men; from India.
- July 13.—The yacht *Maria*, from the Vlie the 10th April last, of Amsterdam; 38 men, all well; Skipper Claas Fransz Bordingh; destined to trade on the coasts of Guinea and Angola.
- Aug. 7.—The ship *Provincie*, from Zealand, 13th April; 263 men, 7 dead, 2 or 3 slightly ill; Skipper Andries Van Nesse.
- Aug. 15.—The yacht *Hasselt*, Skipper Jacob Henricxsz Moocker, 10th April from the Vlie; 152 men, 1 dead; all well.
- Aug. 25.—The ship *Enckhuysen*, of Enckhuysen, Skipper Jan Cornelisz Swart, from the Vlie 30th April; 242 men, 5 dead, a few scurvy patients.
- Aug. 25.—The ship *Rotterdam*, of Rotterdam, from Goeree 19th April; 313 men, 3 dead, a few scurvy patients.
- Nov. 2.—The ship *Walvisch*, Skipper Barend Ham, of Delit, from the Vlie 27th June; 340 men, 5 dead, 8 or 10 sick.

Nov. 21.—The English ship *De Vergulde Dolphyn*, 150 lasts, 55 men, from the Downs 26th July, old style; destined for Bantam; Captain Daniel Morgan; belongs to the English Company. Had been chartered at Rds. 200 per last, conveyed from Bantam to England. Should he be delayed more than 4 months about Bantam he would receive at the rate of £220 per month for overtime.

1657.

The freemen pretend that certain of their sheep had been drowned, and wish to sell the meat to the English. This was refused, the story of the drowning not being believed, as it would be repeated whenever there were English in the bay. It was necessary to economize their stock at present. They were daily obtaining numbers of sheep from the natives. However, when the Chaynouquas were expected, the freemen were ordered not to go inland, as these natives became afraid and precipitately retired. They might, however, barter freely what was brought to their houses.

Dec. 16.—The *Slot Van Honingen*, from Batavia 4th February, in very desolate condition; cargo valued at 3 tons of gold.

Dec. 16.—The *Arnhem*, from Batavia 4th February; many sick, not 10 in health, 37 dead; cargo valued at 8 tons of gold.

1658.

Jan. 22.—The yacht *Maria*, from the coast of Angola *viâ* St. Helena; brings news of that expedition.

1658.

Feb. 18.—The yacht *Schelvis*, from Batavia 27th December, 1657; 38 men, with 40 lasts of rice, 8 lasts beans and cadjang and some clothing for the Cape, besides a separate cargo for the slave trade at Angola and Guinea.

Mar. 3.—The return yacht *Achilles*, from Batavia 20th December, under the flag of the Hon. Joan Cuneus; 92 men, 2 dead, the rest well.

Mar. 3.—The ship *Het Wapen van Holland*, from the Vlie 13th October, 1657; 296 men on board, 9 dead, many sick.

Mar. 5.—The return ships *Oranje* and *Hector*, from Batavia.

Mar. 6.—The return ships *Parel*, *Malacca*, *Gekroonde Leeuw*, under the flag of the Hon. Cuneus.

Mar. 6.—The English ship *Bantam*, Captain Isaac Teeler, from Batavia to Leghorn.

Mar. 9.—The English ship *Thomas*, from Plymouth 12th September, Captain Richard Alnoth; 50 lasts, 20 men.

1658. — Mar. 26.—The ship *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, from the Vlie 13th October; 317 men, 11 dead, various sick on board.
- Mar. 27.—The flute *Spreeuw*, of Zealand, from Zealand 12th October; 154 men, 15 of them taken out of the vessel in Plymouth by the English, 10 dead; arrived here with 129 men, many sick.
- Mar. 28.—The ship *Amersfoort*, from the "Vlie" 14th October; 323 men, 29 dead, 30 sick; the latter all brought on shore, also the slaves taken out of a Portuguese prize on the coast of Brazil; 170 brought here alive, many of them sick; mostly all of them girls and little boys.
- Mar. 30.—The return flute *Ulysses*, from Batavia 17th January; 44 men.
- Mar. 31.—The ship *Het Hof van Zeeland*, from Batavia 17th January; 150 men, 2 dead, the rest all well.
- April 1.—The ships *Princesse Royaal* and *Enckhuysen*, from Batavia 17th January; under the flag of the Hon. Cornelis van Quaelbergen.
- April 13.—The flute *Ellburgh*, of Amsterdam, Skipper Jacob Pietersz Peereboom, from Texel 14th December; 150 men, one sick.
- April 14.—The flute *De Meese*, of Zealand, from Zealand 12th October, 1657, Skipper Maarten Bastineq; 63 men, 6 dead, the rest all suffering from scurvy.
- April 27.—The ship *Dordrecht*, of Delft, Skipper Jacob Croon, from Goeree 17th December; 364 men, 14 dead, 6 deserted.
- May 6.—The yacht *Hasselt*, from Popo (Gulf of Guinea) 22nd February, with 271 slaves, 43 dead; had taken two Portuguese prizes, and sent the biggest to the Cape, which, however, had not arrived here; its cargo valued at £20,000; the slaves described as a fine lot; too many for the Cape; about 240 to be sent to Batavia.
- May 29.—The yacht *Maria*, from St. Helena 1st May; brings news that the yacht *Robbejacht* must have run on some rocks in the tropics.
- May 31.—The flute *Geelmuyden*, of Amsterdam, from Texel 14th December; 79 men, 1 dead; Skipper Jacob Symonsz Munnick.
- June 16.—The ship *Prins Willem*, of Zealand, from Zealand 20th January, Skipper Jacob Enten; 472 men, 16 dead, about 70 sick.
- July 25.—The flute *Nieupoort*, Skipper Fred. Hermansz of Enckhuysen, from Texel 16th April; 175 men, 20 sick.

- Aug. 7.—The flute *Leerdam*, Skipper Pieter Jansz Pietman, from Texel 16th April; 172 men, 3 dead, some sick; brought a lot of seed corn for the Cape, which was at once sown in the ground prepared for it. 1658.
—
- Aug. 22.—The ship *Henriette Louise*, Skipper Gerrit Jansz, from Zealand 5th May; 252 men, 3 dead, 3 sick.
- Sept. 9.—The flute 't *Hardt*, of Rotterdam, Skipper Harman Ruiter; left Holland the 27th May with 134 men, one dead and a few sick.
- Sept. 11.—The flute *Goeree*, Skipper Cornelis Vonck, from Rotterdam 27th May; 160 men, 2 dead and a few scurvy patients.
- Oct. 21.—The ship *West Vriesland* in Saldanha Bay, in a very desolate state; 150 suffering from scurvy and camped on Schapen Island; 72 already dead; she had left the Vlie on the 18th May with 351 men; her Skipper's name is Jacob Jansz Houtschip; she arrives in Table Bay on the 27th.
- Nov. 17 (Sunday).—The flute *Harp*, Skipper Conwalles, from Zealand 31st May; 128 on board, 5 women and children, 4 dead, 1 jumped overboard, some scurvy patients.

1659.

- Jan. 3.—English ship *Barbadoes Merchant*, Capt. Charles Whyls; 45 men, 8 blacks among them, from Masulipatnam the 9/19th September; cargo, saltpetre and coast linen. 1659.
—
- Feb. 12.—The boat *Emmenhoorn*, of Enckhuysen, Skipper Dirk Dirksz Jonas; 34 men, all well; had left the Vlie October 22.
- Feb. 23 (Sunday).—The return ships *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, *Olipfant*, *Vlissingh*. (No dates or particulars.)
- Feb. 24.—The return ship *Proventie*, having on board the Vice-Admiral Van der Marckt. (No dates or particulars.)
- Mar. 7.—The English yacht *The Surat Frigate*, 35 men, 100 lasts, Captain Henry Terel, from London 2/12th August; had been at Guinea, where it had obtained some ivory and gold; destination Surat and Coromandel.
- Mar. 8.—The ship *Princesse Royael*, Skipper Maarten Doedez; 394 men; 22nd October from the Vlie; 8 deaths, the crew all well.
- Mar. 16.—The ship *Aruhém*, from the Vlie 22nd October; 347 men on board; Skipper Jan Tymonsz; 11 dead, a large number sick of scurvy.

1659.

—1

- Mar. 17.—The English ship *Dolphin*, 140 lasts, from Bantam 7th January; laden with pepper and destined for London; Captain Thomas Morgan; in a very desolate condition; Captain dead and mostly all sick in bed and too ill to work the ship. A boat and 25 men of the *Princesse Royale* sent out to bring her in.
- Mar. 21.—The flute *Ulysses*, Skipper Cornelis Reyertz Steenhuisen, from Texel 3rd December; 95 men, 1 drowned, crew well.
- Mar. 21.—The flute *Loenen*, from Texel 22nd October last; 71 men, 1 dead; Skipper Jan Jansz Schrael; a few scurvy patients.
- Mar. 21.—The ship *Hector*, of Delfft, from Goeree 6th December; 173 men, 1 dead, crew well.
- Mar. 21.—The ship *De Parel*, with the Hon. Van Almonde on board, from the Vlie 22nd October; 382 men, 13 dead; Skipper Douwen Ankes.
- Mar. 21.—The flute *Cortenhoeff*, Skipper Luyt Pietersz; 67 men, 1 dead.
- Mar. 21.—The flute *Zuylen*; 26 men, all well. Both left the same day, *i.e.*, the Vlie, on the 22nd October, 1657.
- Mar. 28.—The yacht *Hoogelande*, from Zealand 6th December; 154 men, 23 dead; Skipper Pieter Pouwelsz Andriesz Steenhouwer; 50 sick.
- April 10.—The ship *Naerden*, from Batavia 15th January, Skipper Cornelis Roband, having on board the Chief Merchant Isaac van Tuysch.
- May 9.—The boat *Terboede*, of Zealand, 52 men, Skipper Cornelis Isaaksz van der Veere; 1 dead; from de Wielingen the 6th February.
- May 26.—The boat *Zuylen*, from St. Helena 27th April.
- June 28.—The ship *Orange*, Skipper H. v. d. Putten, of Zealand; had left Holland 12th February, with 410 men, 15 dead, 40 sick.
- July 7.—The ship *Het slot van Honingen*, Skipper Sander Gerritz van Os, of Rotterdam, from Zealand 12th February, with 341 men, 12 dead, 40 sick.
- July 14.—The ship *Het Hoff van Zealand*, Skipper Jacob Bartelse, from Middelburgh, with 362 men, 9 dead, 8 sick.
- July 15.—The yacht *Achilles*, of Rotterdam, Skipper Cornelis Reyerse, from Goeree the 2nd April, with 190 men, 1 dead, the rest well.
- Sept. 25.—The ship *Erasmus*, from Batavia 16th January; 30 dead; short of provisions; crew at present 86 all told; among the dead was the Skipper Daam Pietersz Lely.

- Oct. 5.—The ship *Malacca*, Skipper Van der Werve, from the Vlie the 29th May, with 352 men, 36 dead, 30 sick. 1659.
—
- Dec. 16.—The ship *Gekroonde Leeuw*, Skipper Frederik Pool, from Enckhuysen the 25th July, with 386 men, 32 dead.

1660.

- Jan. 8.—The ship 's *Gravelandt*, Skipper N. Enchuysen, from Holland 9th September last, with 207 men, 9 dead. 1660.
—
- Jan. 13.—The ship *Enckhuysen*, from the Vlie the 9th September last, with 283 men, Skipper Hendrik Siewertz; 10 dead, 10 sick.
- Jan. 14.—What is now Three Anchor Bay, mentioned here as the “Leeuwen Zand Baaitje.”
- Feb. 15.—The flute *Loenen*, from Batavia the 22nd December, with rice and other supplies for the Cape.
- Mar. 2.—The return fleet, consisting of nine vessels, under the Hon. Sterthemius. No names given.
- Mar. 28.—The ship *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, Skipper Michiel Engelken, from the Vlie the 17th December last, with 337 men, 8 dead, the rest all well.
- April 1.—The ship *Amersfoort*, from the Vlie the 17th December last, Skipper Jan Munt; 345 men, 31 dead, the rest all well.
- April 3.—The yacht *Naarden*, the 24th December from Enckhuysen, with 121 men, Skipper Pieter Egbertz Groot; 1 dead, the rest well.
- April 3.—The yacht *Zieriksee*, of Rotterdam, left 17th December last, Skipper Rut Jacobs Buys; 192 men, 2 dead, the rest well.
- April 3.—The yacht *Vlissingen*, Skipper Reynier Reyniersz, from Holland the 18th December, with 220 men, 9 dead, 2 drowned, the rest of the crew generally in bad health.
- April 4.—The ship *Walvis*, Skipper Albert Bruynvis, from the Vlie the 24th December, with 379 men, 20 dead and 40 sick.
- April 10.—The flute *Diemermeer*, Skipper Carel Alteras, from the Wielingen the 18th December, with 154 men, 1 dead and a few sick.
- April 22.—The flute *Vogelenzang*, from Batavia the 15th January.
- April 22.—The flute *Hilversum*, from Batavia the 15th January; 3 dead, a few sick.
- May 10.—The French ship *La Marichal*, Mons. Symon Veron, Commander, from Nantes the 20th January; 180 men, 7 or 8 sick; destination Madagascar; Mons.

1660.

- Pierre Gelton, Lieutenant on board, to succeed Mons. Durivée as Governor on that Island; said Durivée had been three years previously left there by Admiral Laros. He had during that time built a fort in the Bay St. Augustine, from which he might command the whole Island. Another ship would soon follow with many married people to enlarge the Colony there, and cultivate silk, &c. This vessel, *La Mariehal*, was wrecked seven days later near Salt River, and became a total wreck.
- June 9.—The ship *De Vogel Phenix*, Skipper Jan Lucasz Meeuw, from Goeree the 13th March, with 273 men, 2 drowned and 1 dead. Voyage performed in the very short time of 2 months and 26 days.
- June 14.—The ship *Nagelboom*, of Hoorn, from the Texel 10th March, with 299 men, 3 dead, the rest well; Skipper Dirk Cornelisz de Beer.
- June 28.—The flute *Loenen*, after a fruitless search for the supposed island St. Helena Nova.
- July 14.—The ship *Museaatboom*, from the Vlie the 8th December, Skipper Jan Harmansz, 299 men, 16 dead, the rest well.
- July 20.—(At Hout Bay.) The galiot *The Perkyt* arrives here on the 27th following, Skipper Isbrant van Bancke; 21 men, mostly all suffering from scurvy. Had left Amsterdam on the 8th March.
- Oct. 15.—The flute *Vollenhoven*, from Texel 22nd May; 126 men, 4 dead, 30 sick; Skipper Bastiaan Jansz van Nieuwendam.
- Nov. 15.—The ship *Oliphant*, Skipper Philips de Bakker, from the Vlie the 27th June, with 364 men, 6 dead and 40 sick.
- Nov. 17.—The flute *Loosduyenen*, from Texel 25th May; 55 men, 1 dead, 2 deserted; Skipper Carsten Crynsz Rechter.
- Dec. 24.—The little English vessel *I espatch*, of 40 or 50 lasts, Skipper Benjamin Fisher; 26 men, 5 dead; from Gravesend 14/24th December, 1659, to Leghorn, with pepper from Indrapoura. Would avoid St. Helena, in order not to be prevented in its object by the English Company there.

1661.

1661.

- Feb. 24.—The return fleet, consisting of (1) *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, (2) *Amersfoort*, (3) *Malacca*, (4) *Hoff van Zeeland*, (5) *Orangie*, (6) *Mars*, (7) *Nagelboom*,

under the command of the Hon. Audries Frisius ; some of the men are mentioned in the Resolution of the 7th March as suffering from the sickness known as "berbery."

- Mar. 11.—(At Dassen Island.) The yacht *Ankerveen*, from Texel 24th November, 1660, Skipper Barend Jochemsz ; 78 men, 2 dead, no sick ; arrived in Table Bay on the 23rd March.
- Mar. 27.—The flute *Hilversum*, Skipper Jacob Backer ; 66 men ; from Texel 17th November, 1660 ; 1 dead, 5 deserters.
- April 19.—The flute *Venenburg* and the yacht *Calf*, from Batavia 27th January ; under command of the Hon. Joh. Bouheljon ; the former had 3 dead, the latter 4 ; both about 12 sick.
- April 25.—The ship *Vogelsaugh*, from Texel 24th November, 1660, with 198 men, 2 dead and 3 or 4 sick ; Skipper Thomas Michielsz.
- April 25.—The yacht *Erasmus*, of Rotterdam, from Goeree 7th January, 1660 ; 163 men, 1 dead, 1 drowned, the rest well ; Skipper Dirk van Duynen.
- April 26.—The ship *Dordrecht*, of Delft, from Goeree 16th December, 1660, Skipper Adriaan Gilde ; 291 men, 5 dead, the rest suffering from scurvy.
- May 3.—The *Maerseveen* (ship) arrives in a desolate condition ; Skipper Pieter Barchout dead, also the Chief Merchant Willem van de Graaff, and 71 men, among them the chief and second surgeon ; 80 were still in their hammocks, and the rest were all so weak that they could not work the ship ; she had left the Texel the 24th November, 1660, with 348 men ; she only brought 265 alive to the Cape.
- June 9.—The ship *Prins Willem*, Skipper Daniel de Looper, from the Wielingen the 7th February, 1661 ; 392 men, 15 dead, 50 or 60 sick of scurvy.
- June 13.—The ship *Het Slot van Honingen*, from the Wielingen the 7th February last, Skipper Willem Volkertsz ; 374 men, 4 dead, about 6 or 7 sick.
- June 13.—The yacht *Nieuwenhove*, Skipper Frederik Jansz, from the Wielingen the 7th February last ; 136 men, 6 dead, 5 or 6 suffering from scurvy.
- June 16.—The ship *Het Zeepaard*, from the Wielingen 1st March ; 242 men, 2 dead, the rest all fairly well ; Skipper Hendrik Lucifer.
- June 16.—The ship *Arnhem*, from Texel 7th February ; 358 men, 31 dead, including the Skipper Rens Jansz, and the Minister Henricus Pelius, his wife and two children ; about 8 or 10 still ill.

1661. — June 18.—The ship *Het Wapen van Holland*, from Texel on the 7th February; 343 men; Skipper David de Coninck; 26 dead, among them Gerrit van Harn, sent out to succeed Commander Van Riebeeck.
- June 18.—The yacht *Overveen*, Skipper Hendrik Francken, 7th February from Texel; 164 men, no dead; skipper in a dying state; vessel in very desolate condition.
- July 25.—The ship *De Beurs*, of Amsterdam, Skipper Reyer Mauritzen, from Texel 11th April last, with 247 men, 9 dead and 3 overboard, 7 or 8 in bed.
- July 26.—The ship *Het Raadhuis van Amsterdam*, from Texel the 11th April last, with 241 men, 8 dead, a few suffering from scurvy.
- July 28.—The yacht *Mayboom*, Skipper Gysbert Jansz Strantwyck, had left the Meuse the 11th April last, with 91 men, one had fallen overboard, the rest were well.
- Aug. 5.—The ship *Het Huis te Swieten*, Skipper Gerrit Pietersz of Vlaerdingen, from Texel on the 11th April last, with 326 men, 48 dead; had heavy sickness on board; excepting 10 or 12 men, all had been attacked; no sick now.
- Aug. 15.—The ship *De Rysende Son*, Skipper Andries Blaauw, from Texel the 11th April last, with 253 men, 14 dead, 1 missing, 1 deserted at Sierra Leone, 7 or 8 sick.
- Aug. 15.—The ship *De Jonge Prins*, of Hoorn, Skipper Cornelis Veldemuys, from Texel the 11th April last, with 316 men, 2 dead, the rest suffering slightly from scurvy.
- Aug. 23.—The ship *De Wassende Maan*, Skipper Hendrik Pietersz Springer, from Texel the 11th April last, with 258 men, 23 dead, the rest mostly all suffering from scurvy. This was the same vessel reported by the Hottentoots as having anchored in Saldanha Bay.
- Sept. 2.—The ship *De Parel*, of Amsterdam, from the Vlie the 23rd April last, Skipper Robert Ram; 323 men, 17 dead, 120 sick, 30 in bed.
- Sept. 6.—The ship *De Princes Royael*, from the Vlie the 23rd April last, with 340 men, 35 dead; Skipper Marten Doedsz; crew fairly well, about 20 suffering from scurvy, 5 or 6 very weak in bed.
- Sept. 26.—The flute *Klaverskerke*, of Zealand, from the Wielingen the 13th May last, with 94 men, Skipper Jacob de Bruyne; 3 dead, 1 overboard, the rest suffering from scurvy.

1662.

- Jan. 6.—(In Saldanha Bay.) The ship *West Vriesland*, of Enckhuysen, from the Vlie the 18th July, 1661, with 374 men, 34 dead; Skipper Cornelis Jansz Backer; she arrives in Table Bay on the 17th January. 1662. —
- Jan. 6.—(In Saldanha Bay.) The yacht *Nachtegaaltje*, from Texel the 15th June, 1661; 20 men, 4 dead; Skipper Tyaart Meyndertsz Backer; mostly all of the crew too ill to work the vessel; assisted with men from the *West Vriesland*, she arrives in Table Bay on the 17th January.
- Jan. 30.—The ship *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, Skipper Jan van Campen, from the Vlie the 27th September, 1661, with 350 men, 3 dead, 2 drowned, the rest all well.
- Feb. 4.—The ship *Malacca*, Skipper Pieter Jansz Veltmuys, from the Vlie the 3rd October, 1661, with 345 men, 12 dead, the rest fairly well; had struck on three sandbanks off Yarmouth.
- Feb. 13.—The ship *Amersfoort*, Skipper Adriaan Joosten Swaan; 341 men, 14 dead; from the Vlie the 27th September, 1661.
- Feb. 25.—The flute *De Zeeridder*, with rice and necessaries for the Cape, from Batavia, the 17th November, 1661; Skipper Jan Foran; 32 men, 2 dead.
- Mar. 13.—The return ship *Phenix*, having on board the Hon. Joan van der Laen as Rear-Admiral, and Skipper Cornelis Stamper, left Batavia 23rd December, 1661, with the rest of the fleet.
- Mar. 15.—The return ship *Maarsseveen*, Skipper Haen, left Batavia 23rd December, 1661.
- Mar. 15.—The return ship *Princes Royael*, Skipper Cent Hamers, left Batavia 23rd December, 1661.
- April 2.—The return yacht *Angelier*, from Batavia 30th January, 1662.
- April 2.—The return flute *Oyevaar*, from Batavia 30th January, 1662.
- April 21.—The yacht *Calff*, Skipper Symon Pietersz of Hoesum and 100 men, 1 dead, the rest all well; had left the Texel on the 9th January last.
- April 22.—The flute *Bunschoten*, from Enckhuysen 9th January last, Skipper Albert Croll; 51 men, all well.
- April 22.—The ship *De Mars*, of Rotterdam, Skipper Jacob Bom, from Goeree the 25th January, with 189 men, 1 drowned, the rest well.

1662. — April 22.—The flute *Venenburgh*, of Amsterdam, Skipper Eldert Jans, of Amsterdam, from Texel the 9th January, with 158 men, 5 dead, 1 drowned, 28 sick, the rest well.
- April 27.—The flute *Amstelland*, Skipper Myndert Harmans, from Texel 9th January; 154 men, 8 dead, the rest well.
- April 27.—The flute *Peperbaal*, of Delft, Skipper Vineent de Lange, from Goeree 25th January, with 175 men, all well.
- April 28.—The ship *Nagelboom*, of Hoorn, Skipper Jacob Claesz Coper, from Texel 9th January, with 249 men, 27 dead, the rest well.
-

SHIPS' DEPARTURES.

1652-1662.

- April 20.—The *Salamander*, Skipper Ysbrantszer, to the Father-land. 1652.
 May 16.—The *Walvisch* leaves for Batavia. —
 May 17.—The *Oliphant* and *Reyger* leave for Batavia.
 May 28.—The *Drommedaris* to Batavia.
 June 3.—*Het Hoff van Zeelandt* leaves for Batavia.

1653.

- Jan. 23.—The yacht *Goede Hoop* leaves for Batavia. 1653.
 April 17.—The return ships for Patria, viz. :—*Parel*, 't *Hof van Zeelandt*, *Princesse Royaal*, *Malacca*, *Walvisch*. —
 April 17.—The yachts *Haas* and *Windhond* for Batavia.
 April 28.—The yacht *Muyden* for Batavia.
 May 6.—The return ships—for Patria—viz. :—*Oliphant*, *Provincie*, *Enckhuysen*.
 June 9.—The yacht *De Zwarte Vos* leaves for Surat and Persia.
 Aug. 16.—The ship *Zalmander* leaves for Batavia.
 Aug. 24.—The ship *De Vogel Phœnix* leaves for Batavia.
 Sept. 7.—The flute *De Koning David* leaves for Batavia.
 Oct. 31.—The French ship which had been lying in Saldanha Bay about 6 months, catching seals and burning oil.
 Dec. 31.—The ships *Breda*, *Naarden* and *Het Lam* to Batavia.

1654.

- Jan. 25.—The ship *Vrede* to Batavia. 1654.
 Mar. 12.—The ship *Draak*, the pinnace *Het Kalf* to Batavia. —
 April 23.—The galiot *Tulp* to St. Helena.
 May 8.—The *Rode Vos* (galiot) to Madagascar and Mauritius.
 July 3.—The galiot *Tulp* to Madagascar.
 Aug. 17.—The yachts *Goudsbloem*, *Haas*, the galiot *Boterbloem* to Batavia.
 Aug. 20.—The yacht *Vlieland* to Batavia.
 Aug. 26.—The yacht *Angelier* to Batavia.
 Aug. 29.—The ship *Parel*, with Hon. v. Hulst on board, to Batavia.
 Sept. 7.—The ship *Dolphyn* to Batavia.
 Sept. 17.—The ship *Henricette Louise* and the yacht *Caep Vogel* to Batavia.
 Sept. 27.—The yacht *Gideon* to Batavia.
 Nov. 11.—The ships *Walvisch* and *Bul* to Batavia.
 Dec. 13.—The ship *Het Hof van Zeeland* to Batavia.
 Dec. 29.—The English ship *East India Merchant* to India.

1655.

1655. — Jan. 28.—The return ships *Gekroonde Leeuw*, *Terschelling*, *Draak*, to Holland.
- Feb. 9.—The yacht *Mugen* to Holland.
- Feb. 14.—The yacht *Tulp* to Mauritius.
- Mar. 5.—An unknown vessel, supposed to be a Frenchman which had apparently intended to call at Dassen Island.
- Mar. 11.—The ships *Oliphant*, *Malacca*, *Het Wapen van Holland*, to Batavia.
- Mar. 30.—The yacht *Domburg* to Batavia.
- April 2.—The ship *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* to Batavia.
- April 15.—The ships *Provincie*, *Phoenix*, *Koukerken*, *Maagd van Enkhuizen*, *Bloemendaal*, *Koning David*, all to Batavia.
- April 21.—The yacht *Der Goes* to Batavia.
- April 21.—The yacht *Cabeljau* to Ceylon.
- May 9.—The galiot *Tulp* to St. Helena.
- May 9.—The return fleet under the flag of the Hon. R. v. Goens, viz. :—*De Parel*, *De Prinses Royaal*, *De Guleon*, *De Dolphyn*, *De Tertolen*, *De Louyse*, *De Dort*, to Holland.
- May 10.—*De Prins Willem* to Batavia.
- May 10.—*De Roode Vos* do.
- July 5.—The yacht *De Prins te Paard* to Holland.
- July 26.—The ship *Arondster* to Batavia.
- July 31.—The ship *De Leeuwin* to Batavia.
- Aug. 13.—The galiot *Tulp* to Madagascar (to explore, and for slaves, rice, &c.)
- Sept. 3.—The ship *Nieuwe Rotterdam* to Batavia.
- Oct. 31.—The English ship *De Lieffde* to England.
- Nov. 6.—The ship *Arnhem* to Batavia.
- Nov. 8.—The ship *Salamander* to Batavia.
- Nov. 18.—The ship *Honingen* to Batavia.
- Nov. 21.—The ship *Amersfoort* to Batavia.
- Nov. 22.—The yacht *Nachtglas* to Tristan d'Acunha (to explore).
- Nov. 25.—The ship *West Vriesland* to Batavia.
- Dec. 29.—The English ship *John Anthamis*, or *John the Baptist*, to Bantam.

1656.

1656. — Feb. 22.—The English vessel *Crosia*, or *Arosia*, or *Star*, to Bantam.
- Mar. 10.—The yacht *Muyden* to Batavia.
- Mar. 11.—The yacht *Weesp* to Batavia.
- Mar. 12.—The flute *Breuckel* to Batavia.
- Mar. 12.—The yacht *Draak* to Batavia.

- Mar. 21.—The ships *Dolphyn*, *Hercules*, *Brouwershaven*, *Achilles*,
Maerssen, to Batavia. 1656.
—
- Mar. 28.—The return fleet, consisting of the ships *Prorentie*,
Malacca, *Phoenix*, 't *Hoff van Zeeland*, *Walvisch*,
De Gekroonde Lecuw, to Holland.
- Mar. 28.—The yachts *Ter Schelling*, *Zeehond*, to Batavia.
- April 2.—The French ships *La Duchesse*, *Le Marichal*, *Lerman*,
St. Joris, to Madagascar, &c.
- April 9.—The yacht *Nachtglas* to St. Helena.
- April 17.—The yacht *Nachtglas* to St. Helena.
- April 26.—The yacht *Tertolen* to Batavia.
- April 26.—The return ships *Oranje*, *Elephant*, *Enckhuysen*, *Nieuw*
Rotterdam, to Holland.
- June 15.—The English ship *Good Will* to London.
- July 18.—The galiot *Nachtglas* to Batavia, *viâ* Mauritius and
Madagascar.
- Aug. 19.—The ship *Henriette Louise* to Batavia.
- Aug. 25.—The ship *Parel* to Batavia.
- Sept. 22.—The flute *De Waeckende Boey* to Batavia.
- Oct. 1.—The flute *Zee Ridder*, the galiot *Emlo*, to Batavia.
- Oct. 7.—The ship *Princesse Royael* to Batavia.
- Oct. 12.—The English ship *Olive Branch* to Bantam.
- Oct. 22.—The English yacht *Weasel* to St. Augustine Bay,
Madagascar.
- Nov. 1.—The ship *Breda* to Batavia.
- Nov. 2.—The flute *Ulysses* to Batavia.
- Nov. 19.—The flute (English) *Postilion* to Bantam.
- Nov. 24.—The flute *Meulen* to Batavia.
- Dec. 3.—The flute *Wachter* to Batavia.
- Dec. 15.—The flute *Vogelensangh* to Batavia.

1657.

- Feb. 12.—The flute *Hilversum* to Batavia. 1657.
—
- Mar. 8.—The return ships *Prins Willem*, *Het Wapen van*
Amsterdam, *West Vriesland*, *Amersfoort*, *Dordrecht*,
to Holland.
- Mar. 29.—The ship *Malacca* to Batavia, with 363 men on board.
- April 13.—The ship *De Vogel Phoenix* to Batavia.
- April 14.—The French ship *La Marichal* to Nantes.
- April 19.—The ship *Oranje* to Batavia, with Hon. R. van Goens
on board.
- April 24.—The English vessel *Goudsbloem* to England.
- April 27.—The flute *De Vincq* to the "South land" to search for
the *Draak's* crew.
- May 1.—The flute *Venenburgh* to Batavia.
- May 22.—The flute *Ooyevaar* to Batavia.
- May 23.—The *Mayflower* to London.

657. May 29.—The ship *De Gekroonde Leeuw* to Batavia.
 — June 7.—The ship *Henriette Louise* to Holland.
 July 2.—The English ship *Welcome* to London.
 Aug. 27.—The ship *Proventie* to Batavia.
 Sept. 10.—The ship *Enckhuysen* to Batavia.
 Sept. 10.—The yachts *Hasselt*, *Maria*, to the coast of Guinea for slaves, &c.
 Sept. 30.—The ship *Rotterdam* to Batavia; had drifted on shore in Table Bay during a heavy N.W. gale, but was fortunately got off again.
 Nov. 11.—The ship *Walvisch* to Batavia.
 Dec. 6.—The English yacht *De Vergulden Arend* (*Golden Eagle*?) to Bantam.

1658.

1658. Feb. 5.—The yachts *Maria* and *Robbejacht* to explore the coast as far as Angola.
 — Feb. 23.—The ships *Slot van Honninghen* and *Arnhem* for Holland, *viâ* St. Helena.
 Mar. 8.—The yacht *Achilles* to St. Helena.
 Mar. 19.—The return ships *Het Wapen van Holland*, *De Parel*, *Orangie*, *Malacea*, *Hector*, *Gekroonde Leeuw*, to Holland.
 Mar. 19.—The English ship *Bantam* to Leghorn.
 Mar. 26.—The yacht *Schelvis* to Mauritius, to demolish the Company's fort there, and carry everything away to Batavia or Ceylon.
 Mar. 28.—The English ship *Thomas* to Coromandel.
 April 1.—The flute *Ulysses* to St. Helena.
 April 8.—The flute *Spreeuw* to Batavia.
 April 9.—The ships *Amersfoort* and *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* to Batavia.
 April 11.—The ships *Princes Royael*, *Het Hof van Zeeland*, *Enckhuysen*, to Holland.
 April 23.—The flutes *Elburgh* and *Mees* to Batavia.
 May 13.—The ship *Dordrecht* to Batavia.
 May 22.—The yacht *Hasselt* to Batavia.
 June 14.—The flute *Geelmuyen* to Batavia.
 July 5.—The ship *Prins Willem* to Batavia.
 July 18.—The yacht *Maria* to Batavia.
 Aug. 1.—The flute *Nieuipoort* to Batavia.
 Aug. 21.—The flute *Leerdam* to Batavia.
 Sept. 1.—The ship *Henriette Louise* to Batavia.
 Sept. 17.—The flutes *'t Hardt* and *Goeree* to Batavia.
 Nov. 8.—The ship *West Vriesland* to Batavia.
 Dec. 3.—The flute *de Harp* to Batavia.

1659.

- Jan. 16.—The English ship *Barbadoes Merchant* to England. 1659
 Feb. 17.—The boat *Emmenhoorn* to Batavia, *viâ* Australia, to
 look for the *Draak*. —
 Mar. 8.—The return ships, *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, *Oliphant*,
Vlissingh, *Proxentie*, to Holland.
 Mar. 12.—The English yacht *Surat Frigate* to Surat.
 Mar. 19.—The ship *Princesse Royale* to Batavia.
 Mar. 31.—The ship *Arnhem*, the flute *Ulysses*, the flute *Loenen*,
 to Batavia.
 April 1.—The ships *Parcel*, *Hector*, *Cortenhoeff*, to Batavia.
 April 1.—The flute *Zuylen* to St. Helena.
 April 4.—The yacht *Hoogeland* to Batavia.
 May 2.—The return ship *Naarden* to Holland.
 May 2.—The English ship *Dolphin* to Leghorn.
 May 18.—The boat *Terboeden* to Batavia.
 June 12.—The boat *Zuylen* to Batavia.
 July 9.—The ship *Oranje* to Batavia.
 July 21.—The ship *Honingen* to Batavia.
 July 29.—The ships *Het Hof van Zeeland* and *Achilles* to Batavia.
 Oct. 22.—The ship *Malacca* to Batavia
 Dec. 31.—The ship *De Gekroonde Leeuw* to Batavia.

1660.

- Jan. 22.—The yacht 's *Gravesande* to Batavia. 1660.
 Jan. 25.—The ship *Enckhuysen* to Batavia. —
 Mar. 20.—The return fleet, under Admiral P. Sterthemius, nine
 vessels, names not given, to Europe.
 Mar. 20.—The yacht *Erasmus* to Europe.
 April 8.—The ship *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* to Batavia.
 April 14.—The yacht *Naarden* to Batavia.
 April 16.—The ships *Amersfoort*, *Walvisch*, *Vlissingen*, and
Zierikzee, to Batavia.
 April 27.—The flute *Diemermeer* to Batavia.
 May 5.—The flutes *Vogelensangh* and *Hilversum* to Holland.
 May 14.—The flute *Loenen* to search for the Island Nova St.
 Helena.
 June 19.—The ship *De Vogel Fenix* to Batavia, with 58 French-
 men of the wrecked ship *Le Marichal*.
 June 23.—The ship *Nagelboom* to Batavia, with 58 Frenchmen,
 one French woman and child of the *Marichal*.
 July 14.—The flute *Loenen* to Batavia.
 July 30.—The ship *Muscaatboom* to Batavia: takes 6 Frenchmen
 of the wrecked ship *Marichal*.
 Oct. 28.—The flute *Vollenhoven* to Batavia.
 Dec. 3.—The ship *Oliphant*, the flute *Loosduynen* to Batavia.

1661.

1661. Jan. 1.—The English vessel *Despatch* to Leghorn.
 — Mar. 14.—The return fleet, under Admiral the Hon. Frisius, viz.: (1) *Het Wapen van Amsterdam*, (2) *Amersfoort*, (3) *Malacca*, (4) *Het Hof van Zeeland*, (5) *Orange*, (6) *Mars*, (7) *Nagelboom*, to Holland.
 April 2.—The yacht *Anckeveen* to Batavia.
 May 5.—The flute *Vogelsangh* and the yacht *Erasmus* to Batavia.
 May 5.—The flute *Venenburgh* and the yacht *Calff* to Holland.
 May 11.—The ship *Dordrecht* to Batavia.
 May 21.—The ship *Maerseveen* to Batavia.
 June 21.—The yacht *Nieuwenhove* to Batavia.
 June 23.—The yacht *Hilversum* to Ceylon.
 June 23.—The ship *Het Zeepaard* to Batavia.
 June 29.—The ship *Prins Willem* and the ship *Het Slot van Honingen* to Batavia.
 July 6.—The ships *Arnhem*, *Het Wapen van Holland*, *Overveen*, to Batavia.
 Aug. 3.—The ships *Beurs* and *Het Raadhuis van Amsterdam* to Batavia.
 Aug. 9.—The yacht *Mayboom* to Batavia.
 Aug. 17.—The ship *Het Huis te Swieten* to Batavia.
 Aug. 25.—The ship *De Ryseude Son* to Batavia.
 Aug. 29.—The ship *De Jonge Prins* to Batavia.
 Sept. 4.—The ship *De Wassende Maan* to Batavia.
 Sept. 17.—The ships *De Parel* and *De Princes Royaal* to Batavia.
 Oct. 5.—The flute *Klaverskerk* to Batavia.

1662.

1662. Jan. 31.—The yacht *Nachtegaal* to Batavia.
 — Feb. 2.—The ship *West Vriesland* to Batavia.
 Feb. 9.—The ship *Het Wapen van Amsterdam* to Batavia.
 Feb. 14.—The ship *Malacca* to Batavia.
 Feb. 21.—The ship *Amersfoort* to Batavia.
 Mar. 10.—The return ships (1) *Marsseveen*, (2) *Princes Royaal*, (3) *Phenice*, (4) *Angeher*, (5) *Oyevaar*, to Holland.
 Mar. 11.—The flute *Zeeridder* to St. Helena.
 April 27.—The yacht *Calff*, the flute *Bunschoten* to Batavia.
 May 5.—The flute *Venenburg* to Batavia.
 May 8.—The ship *Mars* to Batavia, having on board Commander Johan van Riebeeck and family.
 May 8.—The flute *Amstelland* to Batavia.
 May 8.—The flute *Peperbael* to Batavia.

